

**About the Authors**

![Image of Kenneth C. Laudon and Jane Price Laudon](image)

**Kenneth C. Laudon** is a Professor of Information Systems at New York University's Stern School of Business. He holds a B.A. in Economics from Stanford and a Ph.D. from Columbia University. He has authored twelve books dealing with electronic commerce, information systems, organizations, and society. Professor Laudon has also written over forty articles concerned with the social, organizational, and management impacts of information systems, privacy, ethics, and multimedia technology.

Professor Laudon's current research is on the planning and management of large-scale information systems and multimedia information technology. He has received grants from the National Science Foundation to study the evolution of national information systems at the Social Security Administration, the IRS, and the FBI. Ken's research focuses on enterprise system implementation, computer-related organizational and occupational changes in large organizations, changes in management ideology, changes in public policy, and understanding productivity change in the knowledge sector.

Ken Laudon has testified as an expert before the United States Congress. He has been a researcher and consultant to the Office of Technology Assessment (United States Congress), Department of Homeland Security, and to the Office of the President, several executive branch agencies, and Congressional Committees. Professor Laudon also acts as an in-house educator for several consulting firms and as a consultant on systems planning and strategy to several Fortune 500 firms.

At NYU's Stern School of Business, Ken Laudon teaches courses on Managing the Digital Firm, Information Technology and Corporate Strategy, Professional Responsibility (Ethics), and Electronic Commerce and Digital Markets. Ken Laudon's hobby is sailing.

**Jane Price Laudon** is a management consultant in the information systems area and the author of seven books. Her special interests include systems analysis, data management, MIS auditing, software evaluation, and teaching business professionals how to design and use information systems.

Jane received her Ph.D. from Columbia University, her M.A. from Harvard University, and her B.A. from Barnard College. She has taught at Columbia University and the New York University Graduate School of Business. She maintains a lifelong interest in Oriental languages and civilizations.

The Laudons have two daughters, Erica and Elisabeth, to whom this book is dedicated.
Brief Contents

Part One  Organizations, Management, and the Networked Enterprise  1
Chapter 1  Information Systems in Global Business Today  2
Chapter 2  Global E-Business and Collaboration  40
Chapter 3  Information Systems, Organizations, and Strategy  78
Chapter 4  Ethical and Social Issues in Information Systems  122

Part Two  Information Technology Infrastructure  165
Chapter 5  IT Infrastructure and Emerging Technologies  166
Chapter 6  Foundations of Business Intelligence: Databases and Information Management  214
Chapter 7  Telecommunications, the Internet, and Wireless Technology  254
Chapter 8  Securing Information Systems  302

Part Three  Key System Applications for the Digital Age  345
Chapter 9  Achieving Operational Excellence and Customer Intimacy: Enterprise Applications  346
Chapter 10  E-Commerce: Digital Markets, Digital Goods  380
Chapter 11  Managing Knowledge  426
Chapter 12  Enhancing Decision Making  464

Part Four  Building and Managing Systems  499
Chapter 13  Building Information Systems  500
Chapter 14  Managing Projects  540
Chapter 15  Managing Global Systems  574

Glossary  G 1
Indexes  I 1
Part One  Organizations, Management, and the Networked Enterprise  1

Chapter 1  Information Systems in Global Business Today  2

◆ Opening Case:  The San Francisco Giants Win Big with Information Technology  3

1.1 How are information systems transforming business, and why are they so essential for running and managing a business today?  5

How Information Systems are Transforming Business  5 • What's New In Management Information Systems?  7 • Globalization Challenges and Opportunities: A Flattened World  8

◆ Interactive Session: Management  Meet the New Mobile Workers  9

The Emerging Digital Firm  12 • Strategic Business Objectives of Information Systems  12

1.2 What is an information system? How does it work? What are its management, organization, and technology components and why are complementary assets essential for ensuring that information systems provide genuine value for an organization?  16

What is an Information System?  16 • Dimensions of Information Systems  18

◆ Interactive Session: Technology  UPS Competes Globally with Information Technology  23

It Isn’t Just Technology: A Business Perspective on Information Systems  25
• Complementary Assets: Organizational Capital and the Right Business Model  26

1.3 What academic disciplines are used to study information systems and how does each contribute to an understanding of information systems?  29

Technical Approach  29 • Behavioral Approach  30 • Approach of This Text: Sociotechnical Systems  30

Review Summary  32 • Key Terms  33 • Review Questions  33 • Discussion Questions  34

Hands-On MIS Projects  34

Management Decision Problems  34 • Improving Decision Making: Using Databases to Analyze Sales Trends  34 • Improving Decision Making: Using the Internet to Locate Jobs Requiring Information Systems Knowledge  35

Collaboration and Teamwork:  35

◆ Case Study:  Home Depot Renovates Itself with New Systems and Ways of Working  35

◆ References:  39
Chapter 2

Global E-Business and Collaboration  40
◆ Opening Case: Social Networking takes off at Kluwer  41

2.1 What are business processes? How are they related to information systems?  43

Business Processes  43 • How Information Technology Enhances Business Processes  45

2.2 How do systems serve the different management groups in a business and how do systems that link the enterprise improve organizational performance?  45

Systems for Different Management Groups  46

◆ Interactive Session: Technology  Vail Ski Resorts Goes High-Tech for High Touch  50

Systems for Linking the Enterprise  53 • E-business, E-commerce, and E-government  55

2.3 Why are systems for collaboration and social business so important and what technologies do they use?  56

What is Collaboration?  56 • What is Social Business?  57 • Business Benefits of Collaboration and Social Business  58 • Building a Collaborative Culture and Business Processes  59 • Tools and Technologies for Collaboration and Social Business  60

◆ Interactive Session: Management  Is Social Business Working Out?  65

2.4 What is the role of the information systems function in a business?  67

The Information Systems Department  67 • Organizing the Information Systems Function  68

Review Summary  69 • Key Terms  70 • Review Questions  70 • Discussion Questions  71

Hands-On MIS Projects  71

Management Decision Problems  71 • Improving Decision Making: Using a Spreadsheet to Select Suppliers  72 • Achieving Operational Excellence: Using Internet Software to Plan Efficient Transportation Routes  72

Collaboration and Teamwork:  72

◆ Case Study: Should a Computer Grade Your Essays?  73

◆ References:  76

Chapter 3

Information Systems, Organizations, and Strategy  78
◆ Opening Case: Should T.J. Maxx Sell Online?  79

3.1 Which features of organizations do managers need to know about to build and use information systems successfully?  81

What is an Organization?  82 • Features of Organizations  84

3.2 What is the impact of information systems on organizations?  89

Economic Impacts  89 • Organizational and Behavioral Impacts  90 • The Internet and Organizations  92 • Implications for the Design and Understanding of Information Systems  93

3.3 How do Porter's competitive forces model, the value chain model, synergies, core competencies, and network economics help companies develop competitive strategies using information systems?  94
Chapter 4

Ethical and Social Issues in Information Systems  122

◆ Opening Case: Content Pirates Sail the Web  123

4.1 What ethical, social, and political issues are raised by information systems?  125
A Model for Thinking About Ethical, Social, and Political Issues  127 • Five
Moral Dimensions of the Information Age  128 • Key Technology Trends
That Raise Ethical Issues  128

4.2 What specific principles for conduct can be used to guide ethical decisions?  131
Basic Concepts: Responsibility, Accountability, and Liability  131

◆ Interactive Session: Management Edward Snowden: Traitor or Protector of
Privacy?  132
Ethical Analysis  134 • Candidate Ethical Principles  134 • Professional
Codes of Conduct  135 • Some Real-World Ethical Dilemmas  135

4.3 Why do contemporary information systems technology and the Internet
pose challenges to the protection of individual privacy and intellectual
property?  136
Information Rights: Privacy and Freedom in the Internet Age  136 •

◆ Interactive Session: Technology Big Data Gets Personal: Behavioral
Targeting  141
Property Rights: Intellectual Property  144

4.4 How have information systems affected laws for establishing accountability,
liability, and the quality of everyday life?  148
Computer-Related Liability Problems 148 • System Quality: Data Quality and System Errors 149 • Quality of Life: Equity, Access, and Boundaries 150

Review Summary 157 • Key Terms 157 • Review Questions 158 • Discussion Questions 158

Hands-On MIS Projects 159

Management Decision Problems 159 • Achieving Operational Excellence: Creating a Simple Blog 159 • Improving Decision Making: Analyzing Web Browser Privacy 159

Collaboration and Teamwork: 160

◆ Case Study: Facebook Privacy: There Is No Privacy 160

◆ References: 164

Part Two

Information Technology Infrastructure 165

Chapter 5

IT Infrastructure and Emerging Technologies 166

◆ Opening Case: Portugal Telecom Offers IT Infrastructure for Sale 167

5.1 What is IT infrastructure and what are the stages and drivers of IT infrastructure evolution? 169

Defining IT Infrastructure 170 • Evolution of IT Infrastructure 171 • Technology Drivers of Infrastructure Evolution 175

5.2 What are the components of IT infrastructure? 180

Computer Hardware Platforms 180 • Operating System Platforms 182 • Enterprise Software Applications 183 • Data Management and Storage 183 • Networking/Telecommunications Platforms 184 • Internet Platforms 184 • Consulting and System Integration Services 184

5.3 What are the current trends in computer hardware platforms? 185

The Mobile Digital Platform 185 • Consumerization of IT and BYOD 185 •

◆ Interactive Session: Technology Wearable Computers Go to Work 186

Quantum Computing 188 • Virtualization 188 • Cloud Computing 188

◆ Interactive Session: Organizations Is It Time for Cloud Computing? 191

Green Computing 193 • High-Performance and Power-Saving Processors 193

5.4 What are the current trends in computer software platforms? 194

Linux and Open Source Software 194 • Software for the Web: Java, HTML, and HTML5 194 • Web Services and Service-Oriented Architecture 195 • Software Outsourcing and Cloud Services 197

5.5 What are the challenges of managing IT infrastructure and management solutions? 200
Dealing with Platform and Infrastructure Change   200 • Management and Governance   201 • Making Wise Infrastructure Investments   201
Review Summary   204 • Key Terms   205 • Review Questions   206 • Discussion Questions   206
Hands-On MIS Projects   207
Management Decision Problems   207 • Improving Decision Making: Using a Spreadsheet to Evaluate Hardware and Software Options   207 • Improving Decision Making: Using Web Research to Budget for a Sales Conference   207
Collaboration and Teamwork:   208
◆ Case Study: The Pleasures and Pitfalls of BYOD   209
◆ References:   212

Chapter 6
Foundations of Business Intelligence: Databases and Information Management   214
◆ Opening Case: Better Data Management Helps the Toronto Globe and Mail Reach Its Customers   215
6.1 What are the problems of managing data resources in a traditional file environment?   218
File Organization Concepts   218 • Problems with the Traditional File Environment   218
6.2 What are the major capabilities of database management systems (DBMS) and why is a relational DBMS so powerful?   221
Database Management Systems   221 • Capabilities of Database Management Systems   226 • Designing Databases   227
6.3 What are the principal tools and technologies for accessing information from databases to improve business performance and decision making?   230
The Challenge of Big Data   230 • Business Intelligence Infrastructure   231
◆ Interactive Session: Technology Driving ARI Fleet Management with Real-Time Analytics   233
Analytical Tools: Relationships, Patterns, Trends   235 • Databases and the Web   238
6.4 Why are information policy, data administration, and data quality assurance essential for managing the firm’s data resources?   240
Establishing an Information Policy   240 • Ensuring Data Quality   241
◆ Interactive Session: Management American Water Keeps Data Flowing   243
Review Summary   244 • Key Terms   245 • Review Questions   246 • Discussion Questions   247
Hands-On MIS Projects   247
Management Decision Problems   247 • Achieving Operational Excellence: Building a Relational Database for Inventory Management   247 • Improving Decision Making: Searching Online Databases for Overseas Business Resources   248
Collaboration and Teamwork:   248
◆ Case Study: Does Big Data Bring Big Rewards?   249
◆ References:   252
Chapter 7

Telecommunications, the Internet, and Wireless Technology 254

◆ Opening Case: Wireless Technology Makes Dundee Precious Metals Good as Gold 255

7.1 What are the principal components of telecommunications networks and key networking technologies? 257

Networking and Communication Trends 257 • What is a Computer Network? 258 • Key Digital Networking Technologies 260

7.2 What are the different types of networks? 263

Signals: Digital vs. Analog 263 • Types of Networks 264 • Transmission Media and Transmission Speed 265

7.3 How do the Internet and Internet technology work and how do they support communication and e-business? 266

What Is the Internet? 266 • Internet Addressing and Architecture 267 •

◆ Interactive Session: Organizations The Battle Over Net Neutrality 270

Internet Services and Communication Tools 272

◆ Interactive Session: Management Monitoring Employees on Networks: Unethical or Good Business? 275

The Web 277

7.4 What are the principal technologies and standards for wireless networking, communication, and Internet access? 286

Cellular Systems 287 • Wireless Computer Networks and Internet Access 287 • RFID and Wireless Sensor Networks 290

Review Summary 293 • Key Terms 294 • Review Questions 294 • Discussion Questions 295

Hands-On MIS Projects 295


Collaboration and Teamwork: 296

◆ Case Study: Google, Apple, and Facebook Struggle for Your Internet Experience 297

◆ References: 300

Chapter 8

Securing Information Systems 302

◆ Opening Case: The 21st Century Bank Heist 303

8.1 Why are information systems vulnerable to destruction, error, and abuse? 305


◆ Interactive Session: Management Target Becomes the Target for Massive Data Theft 315

Internal Threats: Employees 317 • Software Vulnerability 317


### Part Three

**Key System Applications for the Digital Age**

#### Chapter 9

**Achieving Operational Excellence and Customer Intimacy: Enterprise Applications**

- **Opening Case:** ACH Food Companies Transforms Its Business with Enterprise Systems 347

9.1 How do enterprise systems help businesses achieve operational excellence? 349

- What Are Enterprise Systems? 350
- Enterprise Software 351
- Business Value of Enterprise Systems 352

9.2 How do supply chain management systems coordinate planning, production, and logistics with suppliers? 353

- The Supply Chain 353
- Information and Supply Chain Management 354
- Supply Chain Management Software 355

- **Interactive Session: Management** Scotts Miracle-Gro Cultivates Supply Chain Proficiency 357

- Global Supply Chains and the Internet 359
- Business Value of Supply Chain Management Systems 360
9.3 How do customer relationship management systems help firms achieve customer intimacy? 361

What is Customer Relationship Management? 362 • Customer Relationship Management Software 362 • Operational and Analytical CRM 366 • Business Value of Customer Relationship Management Systems 367

9.4 What are the challenges posed by enterprise applications and how are enterprise applications taking advantage of new technologies? 367

◆ Interactive Session: Organizations Graybar Goes for Customer Analytics 368

Enterprise Application Challenges 369 • Next Generation Enterprise Applications 371

Review Summary 372 • Key Terms 373 • Review Questions 373 • Discussion Questions 374

Hands-On MIS Projects 374


Collaboration and Teamwork: 375

◆ Case Study: Vodafone: A Giant Global ERP Implementation 376

◆ References: 378

Chapter 10

E-Commerce: Digital Markets, Digital Goods 380

◆ Opening Case: Pinterest: How Much Is a Picture Worth? 381

10.1 What are the unique features of e-commerce, digital markets, and digital goods? 383


10.2 What are the principal e-commerce business and revenue models? 394

Types of E-commerce 394 • E-commerce Business Models 394 • E-Commerce Revenue Models 397

10.3 How has e-commerce transformed marketing? 399

◆ Interactive Session: Organizations Can Pandora Succeed with Freemium? 400

Behavioral Targeting 402 • Social E-commerce and Social Network Marketing 405

10.4 How has e-commerce affected business-to-business transactions? 408

Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) 409 • New Ways of B2B Buying and Selling 410

10.5 What is the role of m-commerce in business and what are the most important m-commerce applications? 412

Location-based Services and Applications 412

◆ Interactive Session: Technology Will Mobile Technology Put Orbitz in the Lead? 414

Other mobile commerce services 415
10.6 What issues must be addressed when building an e-commerce presence? 416

Develop an E-commerce Presence Map 416 • Develop a Timeline: Milestones 417

Review Summary 418 • Key Terms 419 • Review Questions 420 • Discussion Questions 420

Hands-On MIS Projects 420

Management Decision Problems 420 • Improving Decision Making: Using Spreadsheet Software to Analyze a Dot-Com Business 421 • Achieving Operational Excellence: Evaluating E-Commerce Hosting Services 421

Collaboration and Teamwork: 421

◆ Case Study: Cultivating Customers the Social Way 422
◆ References: 425

Chapter 11
Managing Knowledge 426

◆ Opening Case: Jaguar Land Rover Transforms with New Design and Manufacturing Technology 427

11.1 What is the role of knowledge management systems in business? 429

Important Dimensions of Knowledge 430 • The Knowledge Management Value Chain 431 • Types of Knowledge Management Systems 434

11.2 What types of systems are used for enterprise-wide knowledge management and how do they provide value for businesses? 435

Enterprise Content Management Systems 435 • Locating and Sharing Expertise 437 • Learning Management Systems 437

11.3 What are the major types of knowledge work systems and how do they provide value for firms? 438

Knowledge Workers and Knowledge Work 438 • Requirements of Knowledge Work Systems 438 • Examples of Knowledge Work Systems 439

◆ Interactive Session: Technology Is 3-D Printing a Game-Changer? 440

11.4 What are the business benefits of using intelligent techniques for knowledge management? 442

Capturing Knowledge: Expert Systems 443 • Organizational Intelligence: Case-Based Reasoning 446 • Fuzzy Logic Systems 446 • Machine Learning 448

◆ Interactive Session: Organizations Facial Recognition Systems: Another Threat to Privacy? 451

Intelligent Agents 453 • Hybrid AI Systems 455

Review Summary 455 • Key Terms 456 • Review Questions 456 • Discussion Questions 457

Hands-On MIS Projects 457


Collaboration and Teamwork: 458

◆ Case Study: What's Up with IBM's Watson? 459
◆ References: 462
Chapter 12  Enhancing Decision Making  464
◆ Opening Case: Germany Wins the World Cup with Big Data at its Side  465
12.1 What are the different types of decisions and how does the decision-making process work? How do information systems support the activities of managers and management decision making? 467
  Business Value of Improved Decision Making  468 • Types of Decisions  468 • The Decision-Making Process  470 • Managers and Decision Making in the Real World  471 • High-Velocity Automated Decision Making  474
12.2 How do business intelligence and business analytics support decision making? 474
  What is Business Intelligence?  475 • The Business Intelligence Environment  475 • Business Intelligence and Analytics Capabilities  477 • Interactive Session: Technology Big Data Make Cities Smarter  480 • Interactive Session: Management America’s Cup: The Tension between Technology and Human Decision Makers  483 • Management Strategies for Developing BI and BA Capabilities  485
12.3 How do different decision-making constituencies in an organization use business intelligence? What is the role of information systems in helping people working in a group make decisions more efficiently? 486
  Decision Support for Operational and Middle Management  486 • Decision Support for Senior Management: Balanced Scorecard and Enterprise Performance Management Methods  488 • Group Decision-Support Systems (GDSS)  490

Review Summary  491 • Key Terms  492 • Review Questions  492 • Discussion Questions  493
Hands-On MIS Projects  493
  Management Decision Problems  493 • Improving Decision Making: Using Pivot Tables to Analyze Sales Data  493 • Improving Decision Making: Using a Web-Based DSS for Retirement Planning  494

Collaboration and Teamwork:  494
◆ Case Study: How Much Does Data-Driven Planting Help Farmers?  495
◆ References:  498

Part Four  Building and Managing Systems  499
Chapter 13  Building Information Systems  500
13.1 How does building new systems produce organizational change? 503
  Systems Development and Organizational Change  503 • Business Process Redesign  505
13.2 What are the core activities in the systems development process? 509
  Systems Analysis  509
◆ Interactive Session: Organizations Datacard Group Redesigns the Way It Works  510
  Systems Design  512 • Completing the Systems Development Process  513
13.3 What are the principal methodologies for modeling and designing systems? 515
- Structured Methodologies 515
- Object-Oriented Development 518
- Computer-Aided Software Engineering 519

13.4 What are alternative methods for building information systems? 520
- Traditional Systems Life Cycle 520
- Prototyping 521
- End-User Development 523
- Application Software Packages and Outsourcing 524

13.5 What are new approaches for system building in the digital firm era? 526
- Rapid Application Development (RAD) 527
- Component-Based Development and Web Services 527
- Mobile Application Development: Designing for a Multi-Screen World 528

◆ Interactive Session: Technology The Challenge of Mobile Application Development 530

Review Summary 532
- Key Terms 533
- Review Questions 533
- Discussion Questions 534

Hands-On MIS Projects 534
- Management Decision Problems 534
- Improving Decision Making: Using Database Software to Design a Customer System for Auto Sales 535
- Achieving Operational Excellence: Analyzing Web Site Design and Information Requirements 536

Collaboration and Teamwork: 536
◆ Case Study: SourceGas Goes for Better Workforce Scheduling Systems 536
◆ References: 539

Chapter 14

Managing Projects 540
◆ Opening Case: Harrah's Cherokee Casino Wins with Sound Project Management 541

14.1 What are the objectives of project management and why is it so essential in developing information systems? 543
- Runaway Projects and System Failure 543

◆ Interactive Session: Management New York's CityTime: An IS Project Goes Awry 545
- Project Management Objectives 546

◆ Interactive Session: Organizations Britain's National Health Service Jettisons Choose and Book System 547

14.2 What methods can be used for selecting and evaluating information systems projects and aligning them with the firm's business goals? 549
- Management Structure for Information Systems Projects 549
- Linking Systems Projects to the Business Plan 550
- Information Requirements and Key Performance Indicators 552
- Portfolio Analysis 552
- Scoring Models 552

14.3 How can firms assess the business value of information systems? 553
- Information System Cost and Benefits 553
- Real Options Pricing Models 556
- Limitations of Financial Models 557

14.4 What are the principal risk factors in information systems projects, and how can they be managed? 557
Dimensions of Project Risk 557 • Change Management and the Concept of Implementation 558 • Controlling Risk Factors 560 • Designing for the Organization 563 • Project Management Software Tools 564

Review Summary 565 • Key Terms 566 • Review Questions 566 • Discussion Questions 567

Hands-On MIS Projects 567


Collaboration and Teamwork: 568

◆ Case Study: A Shaky Start for Healthcare.Gov 569

◆ References: 572

Chapter 15

Managing Global Systems 574

◆ Opening Case: New Systems Help Fiat Become a Global Powerhouse 575

15.1 What major factors are driving the internationalization of business? 577

Developing an International Information Systems Architecture 578 • The Global Environment: Business Drivers and Challenges 579 • State of the Art 582

15.2 What are the alternative strategies for developing global businesses? 583

Global Strategies and Business Organization 583 • Global Systems to Fit the Strategy 584 • Reorganizing the Business 585

15.3 What are the challenges posed by global information systems and management solutions for these challenges? 586

A Typical Scenario: Disorganization on a Global Scale 586 • Global Systems Strategy 587 • The Management Solution: Implementation 590

15.4 What are the issues and technical alternatives to be considered when developing international information systems? 591

Computing Platforms and Systems Integration 591 • Connectivity 592 • Software Localization 593

◆ Interactive Session: Organizations E-Commerce Russian-Style 594

◆ Interactive Session: Management South Korea's Restricted Internet 596

Review Summary 597 • Key Terms 598 • Review Questions 598 • Discussion Questions 599

Hands-On MIS Projects 599

Management Decision Problems 599 • Achieving Operational Excellence: Building a Job Database and Web Page for an International Consulting Firm 600 • Improving Decision Making: Conducting International Marketing and Pricing Research 600

Collaboration and Teamwork: 600

◆ Case Study: Unilever’s Push Toward Unified Global Systems 601

◆ References: 604

Glossary G 1

Indexes I 11
This page intentionally left blank
BUSINESS CASES AND INTERACTIVE SESSIONS

Here are some of the business firms you will find described in the cases and Interactive Sessions of this book:

Chapter 1: Information Systems in Global Business Today
The San Francisco Giants Win Big with Information Technology
Meet the New Mobile Workers
UPS Competes Globally with Information Technology
Home Depot Renovates Itself with New Systems and Ways of Working

Chapter 2: Global E-Business and Collaboration
Social Networking Takes Off at Kluwer
Vail Ski Resorts Goes High-Tech for High Touch
Is Social Business Working Out?
Should a Computer Grade Your Essays?

Chapter 3: Information Systems, Organizations, and Strategy
Should T.J. Maxx Sell Online?
Nike Becomes a Technology Company
Identifying Market Niches in the Age of Big Data
Who's The World's Top Retailer? Walmart and Amazon Duke It Out

Chapter 4: Ethical and Social Issues in Information Systems
Content Pirates Sail the Web
Edward Snowden: Traitor or Protector of Privacy?
Big Data Gets Personal: Behavioral Targeting
Facebook Privacy: There Is No Privacy

Chapter 5: IT Infrastructure and Emerging Technologies
Portugal Telecom Offers IT Infrastructure for Sale
Wearable Computers Go to Work
Is It Time for Cloud Computing?
The Pleasures and Pitfalls of BYOD

Chapter 6: Foundations of Business Intelligence: Databases and Information Management
Better Data Management Helps the Toronto Globe and Mail Reach Its Customers
Driving ARI Fleet Management with Real-Time Analytics
American Water Keeps Data Flowing
Does Big Data Bring Big Rewards?

Chapter 7: Telecommunications, the Internet and Wireless Technology
Wireless Technology Makes Dundee Precious Metals Good as Gold
The Battle Over Net Neutrality
Monitoring Employees on Networks: Unethical or Good Business?
Google, Apple, and Facebook Struggle for Your Internet Experience
Chapter 8: Securing Information Systems
The 21st Century Bank Heist
Target Becomes the Target for Massive Data Theft
BYOD: It's Not So Safe
The Looming Threat of Cyberwarfare

Chapter 9: Achieving Operational Excellence and Customer Intimacy: Enterprise Applications
ACH Food Companies Transforms Its Business with Enterprise Systems
Scotts Miracle-Gro Cultivates Supply Chain Proficiency
Graybar Goes for Customer Analytics
Vodafone: A Giant Global ERP Implementation

Chapter 10: E-Commerce: Digital Markets, Digital Goods
Pinterest: How Much Is a Picture Worth?
Can Pandora Succeed with Freemium?
Will Mobile Technology Put Orbitz in the Lead?
Cultivating Customers the Social Way

Chapter 11: Managing Knowledge
Jaguar Land Rover Transforms with New Design and Manufacturing Technology
Is 3-D Printing a Game-Changer?
Facial Recognition Systems: Another Threat to Privacy?
What's Up with IBM's Watson?

Chapter 12: Enhancing Decision Making
Germany Wins the World Cup with Big Data at Its Side
Big Data Make Cities Smarter
America's Cup: The Tension between Technology and Human Decision Makers
How Much Does Data-Driven Planting Help Farmers?

Chapter 13: Building Information Systems
New Systems Help Work Flow More Smoothly at Moen
Datacard Group Redesigns the Way It Works
The Challenge of Mobile Application Development
SourceGas Goes for Better Workforce Scheduling Systems

Chapter 14: Managing Projects
Harrah's Cherokee Casino Wins with Sound Project Management
New York's CityTime: An IS Project Goes Awry
Britain's National Health Service Jettisons Choose and Book System
A Shaky Start for Healthcare.Gov

Chapter 15: Managing Global Systems
New Systems Help Fiat Become a Global Powerhouse
E-Commerce Russian-Style
South Korea's Restricted Internet
Unilever's Push Toward Unified Global Systems
Preface

We wrote this book for business school students who wanted an in-depth look at how today’s business firms use information technologies and systems to achieve corporate objectives. Information systems are one of the major tools available to business managers for achieving operational excellence, developing new products and services, improving decision making, and achieving competitive advantage. Students will find here the most up-to-date and comprehensive overview of information systems used by business firms today. After reading this book, we expect students will be able to participate in, and even lead, management discussions of information systems for their firms.

When interviewing potential employees, business firms often look for new hires who know how to use information systems and technologies for achieving bottom-line business results. Regardless of whether you are an accounting, finance, management, operations management, marketing, or information systems major, the knowledge and information you find in this book will be valuable throughout your business career.

What’s New in This Edition

Currency

The 14th edition features all new opening, closing and Interactive Session cases. The text, figures, tables, and cases have been updated through October 2014 with the latest sources from industry and MIS research.

New Features

- Assisted-graded Writing Questions at the end of each chapter with prebuilt grading rubrics and computerized essay scoring help instructors prepare, deliver, and grade writing assignments.
- New Video Cases collection: 39 video cases (2 or more per chapter) and 18 additional instructional videos covering key concepts and experiences in the MIS world.
- Learning Tracks: 47 Learning Tracks for additional coverage of selected topics.
- Video Cases and Chapter Cases are listed at the beginning of each chapter.

New Topics

- Social, Mobile, Local: New e-commerce content in Chapter 10 describing how social tools, mobile technology, and location-based services are transforming marketing and advertising.
What’s New in MIS?

Plenty. In fact, there’s a whole new world of doing business using new technologies for managing and organizing. What makes the MIS field the most exciting area of study in schools of business is the continuous change in technology, management, and business processes. (Chapter 1 describes these changes in more detail.)

**IT Innovations.** A continuing stream of information technology innovations is transforming the traditional business world. Examples include the emergence of cloud computing, the growth of a mobile digital business platform based on smartphones and tablet computers, and not least, the use of social networks by managers to achieve business objectives. Most of these changes have occurred in the last few years. These innovations enabling entrepreneurs and innovative
traditional firms to create new products and services, develop new business models, and transform the day-to-day conduct of business. In the process, some old businesses, even industries, are being destroyed while new businesses are springing up.

**New Business Models.** For instance, the emergence of online video stores like Netflix for streaming, and Apple iTunes for downloading, has forever changed how premium video is distributed, and even created. Netflix in 2013 attracted 30 million subscribers to its DVD rental and streaming movie business. Netflix now accounts for 90 percent of streaming premium movies and TV shows, and consumes an estimated 33 percent of Internet bandwidth in the United States. Netflix has moved into premium TV show production with House of Cards, and Arrested Development, challenging cable networks like HBO, and potentially disrupting the cable channels dominance of TV show production. Apple's iTunes now accounts for 67 percent of movie and TV show downloads and has struck deals with major Hollywood studios for recent movies and TV shows. A growing trickle of viewers are unplugging from cable and using only the Internet for entertainment.

**E-commerce Expanding.** E-commerce will generate an estimated $470 billion in revenues in 2014, and is estimated to grow to nearly $700 billion in 2018. Amazon's revenues grew 21 percent to $74 billion in 2013, despite a slowly expanding economy growing at 2 percent annually, while offline retail grew by only 5 percent. E-commerce is changing how firms design, produce and deliver their products and services. E-commerce has reinvented itself again, disrupting the traditional marketing and advertising industry and putting major media and content firms in jeopardy. Facebook and other social networking sites such as YouTube, Twitter, and Tumblr, exemplify the new face of e-commerce in the 21st Century. They sell services. When we think of e-commerce we tend to think of a selling physical products. While this iconic vision of e-commerce is still very powerful and the fastest growing form of retail in the U.S., growing up alongside is a whole new value stream based on selling services, not goods. It's a services model of e-commerce. Growth in social commerce is spurred by powerful growth of the mobile platform: 60 percent of Facebook's users access the service from mobile phones and tablets. Information systems and technologies are the foundation of this new services-based e-commerce.

**Management Changes.** Likewise, the management of business firms has changed: With new mobile smartphones, high-speed wireless Wi-Fi networks, and wireless laptop computers, remote salespeople on the road are only seconds away from their managers' questions and oversight. Managers on the move are in direct, continuous contact with their employees. The growth of enterprise-wide information systems with extraordinarily rich data means that managers no longer operate in a fog of confusion, but instead have online, nearly instant, access to the really important information they need for accurate and timely decisions. In addition to their public uses on the Web, wikis and blogs are becoming important corporate tools for communication, collaboration, and information sharing.

**Changes in Firms and Organizations:** Compared to industrial organizations of the previous century, new fast-growing 21st Century business firms put less emphasis on hierarchy and structure, and more emphasis on employees taking on multiple roles and tasks. They put greater emphasis on competency and skills rather than position in the hierarchy. They emphasize higher speed and more accurate decision making based on data and analysis. They are more aware of
changes in technology, consumer attitudes, and culture. They use social media to enter into conversations with consumers, and demonstrate a greater willingness to listen to consumers, in part because they have no choice. They show better understanding of the importance of information technology in creating and managing business firms and other organizations. To the extent organizations and business firms demonstrate these characteristics, they are 21st Century digital firms.

**The 14th Edition: The Comprehensive Solution for the MIS Curriculum**

Since its inception, this text has helped to define the MIS course around the globe. This edition continues to be authoritative, but is also more customizable, flexible, and geared to meeting the needs of different colleges, universities, and individual instructors. Many of its learning tools are now available in digital form. This book is now part of a complete learning package that includes the core text, Video Case Package, and Learning Tracks.

The core text consists of 15 chapters with hands-on projects covering the most essential topics in MIS. An important part of the core text is the Video Case Study and Instructional Video Package: 39 video case studies (2-3 per chapter) plus 18 instructional videos that illustrate business uses of information systems, explain new technologies, and explore concepts. Videos are keyed to the topics of each chapter.

In addition, for students and instructors who want to go deeper into selected topics, there are 47 online Learning Tracks that cover a variety of MIS topics in greater depth.

**The Core Text**

The core text provides an overview of fundamental MIS concepts using an integrated framework for describing and analyzing information systems. This framework shows information systems composed of people, organization, and technology elements and is reinforced in student projects and case studies.

**Chapter Organization**

Each chapter contains the following elements:

- A Chapter Outline based on Learning Objectives
- Lists of all the Case Studies and Video Cases for each chapter
- A chapter-opening case describing a real-world organization to establish the theme and importance of the chapter
- A diagram analyzing the opening case in terms of the management, organization, and technology model used throughout the text
- Two Interactive Sessions with Case Study Questions
- A Review Summary keyed to the Student Learning Objectives
- A list of Key Terms that students can use to review concepts
- Review questions for students to test their comprehension of chapter material
- Discussion questions raised by the broader themes of the chapter.
A series of Hands-on MIS Projects consisting of two Management Decision Problems, a hands-on application software project, and a project to develop Internet skills
- A Collaboration and Teamwork Project to develop teamwork and presentation skills, with options for using open source collaboration tools
- A chapter-ending case study for students to apply chapter concepts
- Two assisted-graded writing questions with prebuilt grading rubrics
- Chapter references

**KEY FEATURES**

We have enhanced the text to make it more interactive, leading-edge, and appealing to both students and instructors. The features and learning tools are described in the following sections:

**Business-Driven with Real-World Business Cases and Examples**

The text helps students see the direct connection between information systems and business performance. It describes the main business objectives driving the use of information systems and technologies in corporations all over the world: operational excellence; new products and services; customer and supplier intimacy; improved decision making; competitive advantage; and survival. In-text examples and case studies show students how specific companies use information systems to achieve these objectives.

We use only current (2014) examples from business and public organizations throughout the text to illustrate the important concepts in each chapter. All the case studies describe companies or organizations that are familiar to students, such as The San Francisco Giants, Facebook, Walmart, Google, Target, and Home Depot.
Interactivity

There's no better way to learn about MIS than by doing MIS! We provide different kinds of hands-on projects where students can work with real-world business scenarios and data, and learn firsthand what MIS is all about. These projects heighten student involvement in this exciting subject.

- **Online Video Case Package.** Students can watch short videos online, either in-class or at home or work, and then apply the concepts of the book to the analysis of the video. Every chapter contains at least two business video cases that explain how business firms and managers are using information systems, describe new management practices, and explore concepts discussed in the chapter. Each video case consists of a video about a real-world company, a background text case, and case study questions. These video cases enhance students' understanding of MIS topics and the relevance of MIS to the business world. In addition, there are 18 Instructional Videos that describe developments and concepts in MIS keyed to respective chapters.

- **Interactive Sessions.** Two short cases in each chapter have been redesigned as Interactive Sessions to be used in the classroom (or on Internet discussion boards) to stimulate student interest and active learning. Each case concludes with case study questions. The case study questions provide topics for class discussion, Internet discussion, or written assignments.

---

**Chapter 8 Securing Information Systems  315**

**INTERACTIVE SESSION: MANAGEMENT**

Target becomes the Target for Massive Data Theft

Target, the second-largest discount retail chain in the United States, is known for trendy styles at low prices. In late 2013, it also became known as the target for one of the largest data thefts in history. Sometime before Thanksgiving 2013, hackers installed malware in Target’s security and payment system designed to steal every credit card used at the company's 1,797 U.S. stores when customers were paying for their purchases. When customers’ credit and debit cards were being swiped at Target’s point-of-sale devices, the malware captured the shopper’s card number, and stored it on a Target server controlled by the hackers. From there the stolen credit card numbers were transmitted live to three staging points spread around the U.S. and then into computers in Russia. Experts believe that the hack at Target was part of a broader campaign aimed at least half a dozen major retailers, including Neiman Marcus, Michael's Arts and Crafts Stores, and Eastern-Bell Sports.

The malware used in these attacks includes a RAM scraper, which enables cybercriminals to capture encrypted data as the data travels through the computer’s live memory, where the data appear as plain text. Once injected into retailers’ computer malware detection platforms, FireEye software isolates incoming Web traffic and looks for suspicious activity. Target’s team of security specialists in Bangalore monitor its computers around the clock. If Bangalore notices anything suspicious, Target’s security operations center in Minneapolis is notified.

FireEye spotted the malware: it was at work and alerted Bangalore, which then notified the Target security team in Minneapolis. The security breach could have been stopped there without human intervention, but the data theft continued until early December.

The FireEye system has an option to automatically delete malware as it is detected. It's possible that Target's security team turned that function off so that it would have the final decision on what to do. Target's security team turned that function off so that it would have the final decision on what to do.

Target's security team claimed it knew about the hacker activity, but it was insufficient to warrant immediate follow-up. Target's security team sees numerous threats each week and is able to prioritize on only a limited number of them at its monthly steering committee meetings.

The intruders had initially gained access to Target’s systems by stealing the credentials of a Pennsylvania refrigeration and heating company called Fiallo Mechanical Services to get inside.

---

**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. List and describe the security and control weaknesses at Target that are discussed in this case.
2. What are the management, organizational, and technology factors contributing to these problems? How much was management responsible?
3. What was the business impact of Target’s data losses on Target and its customers?
4. What solutions would you suggest to prevent these problems?
• **Hands-on MIS Projects.** Every chapter concludes with a Hands-on MIS Projects section containing three types of projects: two Management Decision Problems, a hands-on application software exercise using Microsoft Excel, Access, or Web page and blog creation tools, and a project that develops Internet business skills. A Dirt Bikes USA running case provides additional hands-on projects for each chapter.

• **Collaboration and Teamwork Projects.** Each chapter features a collaborative project that encourages students working in teams to use Google Drive, Google Docs, or other open-source collaboration tools. The first team project in Chapter 1 asks students to build a collaborative Google site.

### Management Decision Problems

12-7 Dealerships for Subaru and other automobile manufacturers keep records of the mileage of cars they sell and service. Mileage data are used to remind customers of when they need to schedule service appointments, but they are used for other purposes as well. What kind of decisions does this piece of data support at the local level and at the corporate level? What would happen if this piece of data were erroneous, for example, showing mileage of 138,000 instead of 36,000? How would such decisions impact the corporation?

12-8 Applebees is the largest casual dining chain in the world, with over 1,600 locations throughout the U.S. and also in 20 other countries. The menu features beef, chicken, and pork items, as well as burgers, pasta, and seafood. Applebees’s CEO wants to make the restaurant more profitable by developing menus that are quicker and contain more items that customers want and are willing to pay for despite rising costs for gasoline and agricultural products. How might business intelligence help management implement this strategy? What pieces of data would Applebees need to collect? What kind of reports would be useful to help management make decisions on how to improve menus and profitability?

### Store & Region Sales Datasheet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Store ID</th>
<th>Store Name</th>
<th>Sales Region</th>
<th>Item ID</th>
<th>Item Description</th>
<th>Unit Price</th>
<th>Units Sold</th>
<th>Week Ending</th>
<th>Sold to Add</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>005-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$299.00</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>1/27/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>005-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$299.00</td>
<td>11/24/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>005-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$299.00</td>
<td>11/29/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>3006-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$199.95</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>11/24/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>3006-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$199.95</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>11/24/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>3006-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$199.95</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>11/29/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>6050-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$8.95</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>11/24/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>6050-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$8.95</td>
<td>1/27/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>6050-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$8.95</td>
<td>11/29/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>8500-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$849.95</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>11/24/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>8500-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$849.95</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>11/29/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>8500-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$849.95</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>11/24/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>205-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$299.00</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10/27/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>205-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$299.00</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>11/24/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>205-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$299.00</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11/29/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>1 South</td>
<td>3006-1st Monitor</td>
<td>$199.95</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11/27/2014</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Improving Decision Making: Using Web Tools to Configure and Price an Automoblie**

**Software skills:** Internet-based software

**Business skills:** Researching product information and pricing

3-11 In this exercise, you will use software at car Web sites to find product information about a car of your choice and use that information to make an important purchase decision. You will also evaluate two of these sites as selling tools.

You are interested in purchasing a new Ford Escape (or some other car of your choice). Go to the Web site of CarsDirect (www.carsdirect.com) and begin your investigation. Locate the Ford Escape. Research the various Escape models, choose one you prefer in terms of price, features, and safety ratings. Locate and read at least two reviews. Surf the Web site of the manufacturer, in this case Ford (www.ford.com). Compare the information available on Ford’s Web site with that of CarsDirect for the Ford Escape. Try to locate the lowest price for the car you want in a local dealer’s inventory. Suggest improvements for CarsDirect.com and Ford.com.

Two real-world business scenarios per chapter provide opportunities for students to apply chapter concepts and practice management decision making.

Students practice using software in real-world settings for achieving operational excellence and enhancing decision making.

Each chapter features a project to develop Internet skills for accessing information, conducting research, and performing online calculations and analysis.
Assessment and AACSBSB Assessment Guidelines
The Association to Advance Collegiate Schools of Business (AACSBSB) is a not-for-profit corporation of educational institutions, corporations and other organizations that seeks to improve business education primarily by accrediting university business programs. As a part of its accreditation activities, the AACSBSB has developed an Assurance of Learning Program designed to ensure that schools do in fact teach students what they promise. Schools are required to state a clear mission, develop a coherent business program, identify student learning objectives, and then prove that students do in fact achieve the objectives.

We have attempted in this book to support AACSBSB efforts to encourage assessment-based education. The back end papers of this edition identify student learning objectives and anticipated outcomes for our Hands-on MIS projects. The authors will provide custom advice on how to use this text in their colleges with different missions and assessment needs. Please e-mail the authors or contact your local Pearson representative for contact information.

For more information on the AACSBSB Assurance of Learning Program, and how this text supports assessment-based learning, please visit the Web site for this book.

Customization and Flexibility: New Learning Track Modules
Our Learning Tracks feature gives instructors the flexibility to provide in-depth coverage of the topics they choose. There are 47 Learning Tracks available to instructors and students. This supplementary content takes students deeper into MIS topics, concepts and debates; reviews basic technology concepts in hardware, software, database design, telecommunications, and other areas; and provide additional hands-on software instruction. The 14th Edition includes new Learning Tracks on Building an E-Commerce Web Site, E-commerce Payment Systems including Bitcoin, Fourth Generation Languages, and Occupational and Career Outlook for Information Systems Majors 2012–2018.

Author-certified test bank and supplements

• Author-Certified Test Bank. The authors have worked closely with skilled test item writers to ensure that higher level cognitive skills are tested. Test bank multiple choice questions include questions on content, but also include many questions that require analysis, synthesis, and evaluation skills.

• Annotated Slides. The authors have prepared a comprehensive collection of fifty PowerPoint slides to be used in your lectures. Many of these slides are the same as used by Ken Laudon in his MIS classes and executive education presentations. Each of the slides is annotated with teaching suggestions for asking students questions, developing in-class lists that illustrate key concepts, and recommending other firms as examples in addition to those provided in the text. The annotations are like an Instructor's Manual built into the slides and make it easier to teach the course effectively.

Student Learning-focused
Student Learning Objectives are organized around a set of study questions to focus student attention. Each chapter concludes with a Review Summary and Review Questions organized around these study questions, and each major chapter section is based on a Learning Objective.
Career Resources

The Instructor Resources for this text include extensive Career Resources, including job-hunting guides and instructions on how to build a Digital Portfolio demonstrating the business knowledge, application software proficiency, and Internet skills acquired from using the text. The portfolio can be included in a resume or job application or used as a learning assessment tool for instructors.

INSTRUCTOR RESOURCES

At the Instructor Resource Center, www.pearsonhighered.com/irc, instructors can easily register to gain access to a variety of instructor resources available with this text in downloadable format.

If assistance is needed, our dedicated technical support team is ready to help with the media supplements that accompany this text. Visit http://247.pearsoned.com for answers to frequently asked questions and toll-free user support phone numbers.

The following supplements are available with this text:

- Instructor's Resource Manual
- Test Bank
- TestGen® Computerized Test Bank
- PowerPoint Presentation
- Image Library
- Lecture Notes

Video Cases and Instructional Videos

Instructors can download step-by-step instructions for accessing the video cases from the Instructor Resources Center. All Video Cases and Instructional Videos are listed at the beginning of each chapter as well as in the Preface.

Learning Track Modules

At the Instructor Resource Center, www.pearsonhighered.com/irc, instructors can download 47 Learning Tracks providing additional coverage topics for students and instructors. See page xxx for a list of the Learning Tracks available for this edition.

Video Cases and Instructional Videos

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Video</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 1: Information Systems in Global Business Today</td>
<td>Case 1: UPS Global Operations with the DIAD&lt;br&gt;Case 2: Google Data Center Efficiency Best Practices&lt;br&gt;Instructional Video 1: Green Energy Efficiency in a Data Center Using Tivoli Architecture (IBM)&lt;br&gt;Instructional Video 2: Tour IBM's Raleigh Data Center</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Video Cases and Instructional Videos (Continued)

| Chapter 4: Ethical and Social Issues in Information Systems | Case 1: What Net Neutrality Means for You  
Case 2: Facebook Privacy: Social Network Data Mining  
Case 3: Data Mining for Terrorists and Innocents  
Instructional Video 1: Viktor Mayer Schönberger on The Right to Be Forgotten |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Chapter 5: IT Infrastructure and Emerging Technologies | Case 1: ESPN.com: Getting to extreme Scale On the Web  
Case 2: Salesforce.com: Managing by Smartphone  
Case 3: Case 3: Axiom’s Strategic Advantage: IBM's Virtual Blade Platform  
Instructional Video 1: Google and IBM Produce Cloud Computing  
Instructional Video 2: IBM Blue Cloud is Ready-to-Use Computing |
| Chapter 6: Foundations of Business Intelligence: Databases and Information Management | Case 1: Dubuque Uses Cloud Computing and Sensors to Build a Smarter City  
Case 2: Data Warehousing at REI: Understanding the Customer  
Case 3: Maruti Suzuki Business Intelligence and Enterprise Databases |
| Chapter 7: Telecommunications, the Internet, and Wireless Technology | Case 1: Telepresence Moves Out of the Boardroom and Into the Field  
Case 2: Virtual Collaboration With Lotus Sametime |
| Chapter 8: Securing Information Systems | Case 1: Stannet and Cyberwarfare  
Case 2: Cyberespionage: The Chinese Threat  
Case 3: IBM Zone Trusted Information Channel (ZTIC)  
Instructional Video 1: Sony PlayStation Hacked; Data Stolen from 77 Million Users  
Instructional Video 2: Zappos Working to Correct Online Security Breach  
Instructional Video 3: Meet the Hackers: Anonymous Statement on Hacking SONY |
| Chapter 9: Achieving Operational Excellence and Customer Intimacy: Enterprise Applications | Case 1: Workday: Enterprise Cloud Software-as-a-Service (SaaS)  
Case 2: Evolution Homecare Manages Patients with Microsoft Dynamics CRM  
Instructional Video: GSMS Protects Products and Patients By Serializing Every Bottle of Drugs |
Case 2: Ebay: A Marketplace and Community  
Case 3: Ford Manufacturing Supply Chain: B2B Marketplace |
| Chapter 11: Managing Knowledge | Case 1: How IBM’s Watson Became a Jeopardy Champion  
Case 2: Alfresco: Open Source Document Management and Collaboration  
Instructional Video 1: Analyzing Big Data: IBM’s Watson: After Jeopardy  
Instructional Video 2: Teamwork and Collaboration: John Chambers on Collaboration vs. Command and Control |
| Chapter 12: Enhancing Decision Making | Case 1: FreshDirect Uses Business Intelligence to Manage Its Online Grocery  
Case 2: Business Intelligence Helps the Cincinnati Zoo  
Instructional Video 1: FreshDirect’s Secret Sauce: Customer Data From the Website  
Instructional Video 2: A Demonstration of Oracle’s Mobile Business Intelligence App |
| Chapter 13: Building Information Systems | Case 1: IBM: BPM in a SaaS Environment  
Case 2: IBM Helps the City of Madrid With Real-Time BPM Software  
Instructional Video 1: BPM: Business Process Management Customer Story  
Instructional Video 2: Workflow Management Visualized |
| Chapter 14: Managing Projects | Case 1: Blue Cross Blue Shield: Smarter Computing Project  
Case 2: NASA Project Management Challenges  
Instructional Video 1: Software Project Management in 15 Minutes, Part 1  
Instructional Video 1: Software Project Management in 15 Minutes, Part 2 |
| Chapter 15: Managing Global Systems | Case 1: Daum Runs Oracle Apps on Linux  
Case 2: Lean Manufacturing and Global ERP: Humanetics and Global Shop  
Case 3: Monsanto Uses Cisco and Microsoft to Manage Globally |

### Learning Track Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Learning Tracks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Chapter 1: Information Systems in Global Business Today | How Much Does IT Matter?  
Information Systems and Your Career  
The Mobile Digital Platform |
| Chapter 2: Global E-business and Collaboration | Systems From a Functional Perspective  
IT Enables Collaboration and Teamwork  
Challenges of Using Business Information Systems  
Organizing the Information Systems Function  
Occupational and Career Outlook for Information Systems Majors 2012–2018 |
| Chapter 3: Information Systems, Organizations, and Strategy | The Changing Business Environment for IT |
The production of any book involves valued contributions from a number of persons. We would like to thank all of our editors for encouragement, insight, and strong support for many years. We thank our editor Nicole Sam, Program Manager Denise Vaughn, and Project Manager Karalyn Holland for their role in managing the project. We remain grateful to Bob Horan for all his years of editorial guidance.

Our special thanks go to our supplement authors for their work, including the following MyLab content contributors: John Hupp, Columbus State University; Robert J. Mills, Utah State University; John P. Russo, Wentworth Institute of Technology; and Michael L. Smith, SUNY Oswego. We are indebted to Robin Pickering for her assistance with writing and to William Anderson and...
Megan Miller for their help during production. We thank Diana R. Craig for her assistance with database and software topics.

Special thanks to colleagues at the Stern School of Business at New York University; to Professor Werner Schenk, Simon School of Business, University of Rochester; to Professor Mark Gillenson, Fogelman College of Business and Economics, University of Memphis; to Robert Kostrubanic, CIO and Director of Information Technology Services Indiana-Purdue University Fort Wayne; to Professor Lawrence Andrew of Western Illinois University; to Professor Detlef Schoder of the University of Cologne; to Professor Walter Brenner of the University of St. Gallen; to Professor Lutz Kolbe of the University of Gottingen; to Professor Donald Marchand of the International Institute for Management Development; and to Professor Daniel Botha of Stellenbosch University who provided additional suggestions for improvement. Thank you to Professor Ken Kraemer, University of California at Irvine, and Professor John King, University of Michigan, for more than a decade's long discussion of information systems and organizations. And a special remembrance and dedication to Professor Rob Kling, University of Indiana, for being my friend and colleague over so many years.

We also want to especially thank all our reviewers whose suggestions helped improve our texts. Reviewers for Managing the Digital Firm include the following:

- Brad Allen, Plymouth State University
- Dawit Demissie: University of Albany
- Anne Formalarie, Plymouth State University
- Bin Gu, University of Texas – Austin
- Essia Hamouda, University of California – Riverside
- Linda Lau: Longwood University
- Kimberly L. Merritt, Oklahoma Christian University
- James W. Miller, Dominican University
- Fiona Nah, University of Nebraska – Lincoln
- M.K. Raja: University of Texas Arlington
- Thomas Schambach, Illinois State University
- Shawn Weisfeld: Florida Institute of Technology

K.C.L.
J.P.L.
Part One introduces the major themes of this book, raising a series of important questions: What is an information system and what are its management, organization, and technology dimensions? Why are information systems so essential in businesses today? Why are systems for collaboration and social business so important? How can information systems help businesses become more competitive? What broader ethical and social issues are raised by widespread use of information systems?
LEARNING OBJECTIVES
After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. How are information systems transforming business, and why are they so essential for running and managing a business today?
2. What is an information system? How does it work? What are its management, organization, and technology components and why are complementary assets essential for ensuring that information systems provide genuine value for organizations?
3. What academic disciplines are used to study information systems and how does each contribute to an understanding of information systems?

MyMISLab™
Visit mymislab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.

CHAPTER CASES
The San Francisco Giants Win Big with Information Technology
Meet the New Mobile Workers
UPS Competes Globally with Information Technology
Home Depot Renovates Itself with New Systems and Ways of Working

VIDEO CASES
UPS Competes Globally with the DIAD
Google Data Center Efficiency Best Practices
Instructional Videos:
Green Energy Efficiency in a Data Center
Using Tivoli (IBM)
Tour IBM’s Raleigh Data Center
THE SAN FRANCISCO GIANTS WIN BIG WITH INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

The San Francisco Giants are one of the oldest U.S. baseball teams, and one of the most successful as well. They have won the most games of any team in the history of American baseball and any North American professional sports team. The Giants have captured 23 National League pennants and appeared in 20 World Series competitions—both records in the National League. Their most recent triumph was winning the 2014 World Series. The Giants have outstanding players (with the most Hall of Fame players in all of professional baseball) and coaches, but some of their success, both as a team and as a business, can be attributed to their use of information technology.

Baseball is very much a game of statistics, and all the major teams are constantly analyzing their data on player performance and optimal positioning on the field. But the Giants are doing more. They have started to use a video system from Sportsvision called FIELDf/x which digitally records the position of all players and hit balls in real time. The system generates defensive statistics such as the difficulty of a catch and the probability of a particular fielder making that catch. Information produced by the system on player speed and response time, such as how quickly an outfielder comes in for a ball or reacts to line drives, will enable the Giants to make player data analysis much more precise. In some cases, it will provide information that didn’t exist before on players’ defensive skills and other skills. FIELDf/x generates a million records per game. That amounts to 5 billion records in three years, the amount of time required to provide a high level of confidence in the data. In addition to player and team statistics, the Giants are starting to collect data about fans, including ticket purchases and social media activity.
Under the leadership of chief information officer (CIO) Bill Schlough, the San Francisco Giants have pioneered dynamic ticket pricing, based on software from Qcue, in which the price of a ticket fluctuates according to the level of demand for a particular ball game. It's similar to the dynamic ticket pricing used in the airline industry. If a game is part of a crucial series, the Giants are playing an in-division rival, or the game appears to be selling out especially fast, ticket prices will rise. If the game isn't a big draw, ticket prices fall. The Giants have sold out 100 percent of their home games since October 2010, and have increased season ticket sales from 21,000 in 2010 to 29,000 in 2012.

Season ticket-holders don't normally attend every game, and this can lose revenue for a team. Every time a fan with a season ticket decides to stay home from a game, the sports franchise loses an average of $20 in concession and merchandise sales. To make sure stadium seats are always filled, the Giants created a secondary online ticket market where season ticket holders can resell tickets they are not using over the Internet. The Giants's information technology specialists found a way to activate and deactivate the bar codes on tickets so that they can be resold. The system is also a way for the Giants to provide additional service to customers.

The Giants have also taken advantage of wireless technology to enhance their fans' experience. A network extends from the seats to the concession stands to areas outside the stadium, and is one of the largest public wireless networks in the world. The stadium, AT&T Park, has a giant high-speed wireless network, which fans can use to check scores and video highlights, update their social networks, and do e-mail.


The challenges facing the San Francisco Giants and other baseball teams show why information systems are so essential today. Major league baseball is a business as well as a sport, and teams such as the Giants need to take in revenue from games in order to stay in business. Major league baseball is also a business where what matters above all is winning, and any way of using information to improve player performance is a competitive edge.

The chapter-opening diagram calls attention to important points raised by this case and this chapter. To increase stadium revenue, the San Francisco Giants developed a dynamic ticket pricing system designed to adjust ticket prices to customer demand and to sell seats at the optimum price. The team developed another ticketing system that enables existing ticketholders to sell their tickets easily online to someone else. An additional way of cultivating customers is to deploy modern information technology at AT&T Park, including a massive Wi-Fi wireless network with interactive services. To improve player performance, the Giants implemented a system that captures video on players and then uses the data to analyze player defensive statistics, including speed and reaction times.

Here are some questions to think about: What role does technology play in the San Francisco Giants' success as a baseball team? Assess the contributions of the systems described in this case study.
1.1 HOW ARE INFORMATION SYSTEMS TRANSFORMING BUSINESS, AND WHY ARE THEY SO ESSENTIAL FOR RUNNING AND MANAGING A BUSINESS TODAY?

It’s not business as usual in America anymore, or the rest of the global economy. In 2014, American businesses will spend an estimated $817 billion on information systems hardware, software, and telecommunications equipment. In addition, they will spend another $230 billion on business and management consulting and services—much of which involves redesigning firms’ business operations to take advantage of these new technologies. Figure 1.1 shows that between 1999 and 2013, private business investment in information technology consisting of hardware, software, and communications equipment grew from 14 percent to 33 percent of all invested capital.

As managers, most of you will work for firms that are intensively using information systems and making large investments in information technology. You will certainly want to know how to invest this money wisely. If you make wise choices, your firm can outperform competitors. If you make poor choices, you will be wasting valuable capital. This book is dedicated to helping you make wise decisions about information technology and information systems.

HOW INFORMATION SYSTEMS ARE TRANSFORMING BUSINESS

You can see the results of this massive spending around you every day by observing how people conduct business. Changes in technology, and new innovative business models, have transformed social life and business practices. Over 247 million Americans have mobile phones (67% of the population), and 167 million of these people access the Internet using smartphones and tablets. 46% of the entire population now use tablet computers whose sales have soared. 172 million Americans use online social networks, 150 million
use Facebook, while 48 million use Twitter. Smartphones, social networking, texting, emailing, and Webinars have all become essential tools of business because that’s where your customers, suppliers, and colleagues can be found. (eMarketer, 2014).

By June 2014, more than 114 million businesses worldwide had dot-com Internet sites registered (Domain Tools, 2014). Today, 196 million Americans shop online, and 163 million will purchase online. Every day about 90 million Americans go online to research a product or service. (eMarketer, 2014).

In 2013, FedEx moved about 3.5 million packages daily to 220 countries and territories around the world, mostly overnight, and the United Parcel Service (UPS) moved over 16 million packages daily worldwide. Businesses are using information technology to sense and respond to rapidly changing customer demand, reduce inventories to the lowest possible levels, and achieve higher levels of operational efficiency. Supply chains have become more fast-paced, with companies of all sizes depending on just-in-time inventory to reduce their overhead costs and get to market faster.

As newspaper print readership continues to decline, more than 168 million people read a newspaper online, and millions more read other news sites. About 83 million people watch a video online every day, 66 million read a blog, and 25 million post to blogs, creating an explosion of new writers and new forms of customer feedback that did not exist five years ago (eMarketer, 2014). Social networking site Facebook attracted 152 million monthly visitors in 2014 in the United States, and over 1 billion worldwide. Google+ has attracted over 130 million users in the United States. Businesses are starting to use social networking tools to connect their employees, customers, and managers worldwide. Many Fortune 500 companies now have Facebook pages, Twitter accounts, and Tumblr sites.

E-commerce and Internet advertising continue to expand. Google’s online ad revenues surpassed $17 billion in 2013, and Internet advertising continues to

---

**FIGURE 1.1 INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY CAPITAL INVESTMENT**

Information technology capital investment, defined as hardware, software, and communications equipment, grew from 14 percent to 33 percent of all invested capital between 1999 and 2013. Source: Based on data in U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis, National Income and Product Accounts, 2014.
grow at more than 15 percent a year, reaching more than $43 billion in revenues in 2013 (eMarketer, 2014).

New federal security and accounting laws, requiring many businesses to keep e-mail messages for five years, coupled with existing occupational and health laws requiring firms to store employee chemical exposure data for up to 60 years, are spurring the annual growth of digital information at the estimated rate of 5 exabytes annually, equivalent to 37,000 new Libraries of Congress.

WHAT’S NEW IN MANAGEMENT INFORMATION SYSTEMS?

Lots! What makes management information systems the most exciting topic in business is the continual change in technology, management use of the technology, business models and the impact on business success. New businesses and industries appear, old ones decline, and successful firms are those that learn how to use the new technologies. Table 1.1 summarizes the major new themes in business uses of information systems. These themes will appear throughout the book in all the chapters, so it might be a good idea to take some time now and discuss these with your professor and other students.

There are three interrelated changes in the technology area: (1) the widespread adoption of the mobile computing platform, (2) the growing business use of “big data,” and (3) the growth in “cloud computing,” where more and more business software runs over the Internet.

IPhones, iPads, Android tablets, and smartphones are not just gadgets or entertainment outlets. They represent new emerging computing platforms based on an array of new hardware and software technologies. More and more business computing is moving from PCs and desktop machines to these mobile devices. Managers are increasingly using these devices to coordinate work, communicate with employees, and provide information for decision making. We call these developments the “mobile digital platform.”

Managers routinely use online collaboration and social technologies in order to make better, faster decisions. As management behavior changes, how work gets organized, coordinated, and measured also changes. By connecting employees working on teams and projects, the social network is where work gets done, where plans are executed, and where managers manage. Collaboration spaces are where employees meet one another—even when they are separated by continents and time zones.

The strength of cloud computing and the growth of the mobile digital platform allow organizations to rely more on telework, remote work, and distributed decision making. This same platform means firms can outsource more work, and rely on markets (rather than employees) to build value. It also means that firms can collaborate with suppliers and customers to create new products, or make existing products more efficiently.

You can see some of these trends at work in the Interactive Session on Management. Millions of managers rely heavily on the mobile digital platform to coordinate suppliers and shipments, satisfy customers, and manage their employees. A business day without these mobile devices or Internet access would be unthinkable. As you read this case, note how the mobile platform greatly enhances the accuracy, speed, and richness of decision making.
TABLE 1.1 WHAT’S NEW IN MIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHANGE</th>
<th>BUSINESS IMPACT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TECHNOLOGY</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud computing platform emerges as a major business area of innovation</td>
<td>A flexible collection of computers on the Internet begins to perform tasks traditionally performed on corporate computers. Major business applications are delivered online as an Internet service (Software as a Service, or SaaS).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Big data</td>
<td>Businesses look for insights from huge volumes of data from Web traffic, e-mail messages, social media content, and machines (sensors) that require new data management tools to capture, store, and analyze.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A mobile digital platform emerges to compete with the PC as a business system</td>
<td>The Apple iPhone and tablet computers and Android mobile devices are able to download hundreds of thousands of applications to support collaboration, location-based services, and communication with colleagues. Small tablet computers, including the iPad and Kindle Fire, challenge conventional laptops as platforms for consumer and corporate computing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MANAGEMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managers adopt online collaboration and social networking software to improve coordination, collaboration, and knowledge sharing</td>
<td>Google Apps, Google Sites, Microsoft Windows SharePoint Services, and IBM Lotus Connections are used by over 100 million business professionals worldwide to support blogs, project management, online meetings, personal profiles, social bookmarks, and online communities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business intelligence applications accelerate</td>
<td>More powerful data analytics and interactive dashboards provide real-time performance information to managers to enhance decision making.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual meetings proliferate</td>
<td>Managers adopt telepresence videoconferencing and Web conferencing technologies to reduce travel time, and cost, while improving collaboration and decision making.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ORGANIZATIONS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social business</td>
<td>Businesses use social networking platforms, including Facebook, Twitter, and internal corporate social tools, to deepen interactions with employees, customers, and suppliers. Employees use blogs, wikis, e-mail texting, and SMS messaging to interact in online communities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telework gains momentum in the workplace</td>
<td>The Internet, wireless laptops, smartphones, and tablet computers make it possible for growing numbers of people to work away from the traditional office. Fifty-five percent of U.S. businesses have some form of remote work program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co-creation of business value</td>
<td>Sources of business value shift from products to solutions and experiences, and from internal sources to networks of suppliers and collaboration with customers. Supply chains and product development become more global and collaborative; customer interactions help firms define new products and services.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GLOBALIZATION CHALLENGES AND OPPORTUNITIES: A FLATTENED WORLD

In 1492, Columbus reaffirmed what astronomers were long saying: the world was round and the seas could be safely sailed. As it turned out, the world was populated by peoples and languages living in isolation from one another, with
INTERACTIVE SESSION: MANAGEMENT

MEET THE NEW MOBILE WORKERS

How much of your job can you do from the palm of your hand? Probably more than you think. Today there are many job functions for both rank-and-file employees and their managers that can be performed using mobile phones and tablets, including the iPad, iPhone, and Android mobile devices.

Companies are enhancing their security systems so that mobile users can remotely access corporate systems with confidence. And they are developing more far-reaching applications to take advantage of the stunning mobile and graphic capabilities. Mobile technology is spreading to core work functions, such as marketing materials for pharmaceutical reps, customer account software for service technicians, and apps for farmers to test the quality of cow’s milk.

McClendon's Select, a Peoria-based organic family-run farm, relies on iPad for each stage of its operation: planting fields, picking crops, filling orders, loading trucks, delivering to restaurants, and selling products at farmers’ markets. Co-owner Sean McClendon uses a wireless camera on his tractor to ensure crop rows are as straight as possible. The mydlinkLite app on his iPad lets him watch the footage as he plows. The farm's planting manager no longer needs to leave the field to handle the careful record-keeping required to maintain an organic certification. Using her iPad connection to the 3G cellular network, she is able to access the Web-based COG Pro management system to update her records of seed types and where and when they're planted.

Before McClendon's went digital, orders were handwritten on a white board, a process that was too time-consuming, error-prone, and costly. Now each employee grabs an iPad when arriving for work in the morning and uses a proprietary app called Picker Entry to generate a list of products to collect in the field based on online orders placed by restaurants and consumers. Using AirPrint technology in the iPad, employees then wirelessly print their orders and head out to the field to pick product. After the employees return from the field, they add inventory that they picked using an iPad. They are able to see all of the restaurants on the screen, tap the restaurant name, and fill the orders right from the iPad.

When employees load those orders on trucks for deliveries, Picker Entry on the iPad replaces a manual process that used to take 30 to 45 minutes. A single tap to the iPad generates a report telling where each box goes on the truck for restaurant deliveries. One of the main reasons restaurants use McClendon's is because of its order accuracy.

Using handhelds to run the business is not limited to small companies. PepsiCo manufactures and sells brands including Pepsi, Gatorade, Mountain Dew, Tropicana, Quaker, and Frito-Lay worldwide and has nearly 280,000 employees. The company uses a complex web of interlocking distribution systems to move its products from its manufacturing and warehouse facilities onto trucks and then into stores in time to meet customer demand. PepsiCo runs about 17,000 distribution routes each day. The iPhone and iPad help employees of PepsiCo's North America Beverages division ensure that the right products arrive in the right locations as quickly and efficiently as possible.

In the past, PepsiCo drivers and merchandisers began each day by picking up printed schedules with order quantities and tasks to be performed at each outlet, from unloading cases of soda to setting up new product displays. It was difficult to accommodate last-minute changes in orders because communicating with the delivery drivers was difficult when they were on the road.

PepsiCo North America Beverages created a custom in-house app for the iPhone called Power4Merch, which immediately notifies merchandisers when a driver has arrived at a store. The merchandiser's iPhone has an electronic timecard, and he can see his schedule, the store details, the account profiles, and everything he needs to know to service the store.

PepsiCo managers use iPads with custom applications to monitor their teams' performance; pull up pricing, planograms and contracts; and help coordinate deliveries with merchandising. The Manager's Briefcase app provides territory sales managers with electronic versions of all the paperwork and resources they need to manage their teams, including store audits, employee coaching forms, and automated notifications to merchandisers. A manager can make manpower assignments directly on the iPad. The iPad automatically sends a notification to the merchandiser's iPhone informing him he has an additional stop to make, for example. In the past, managers had to spend much of their time on the phone, checking email in the office, and checking paperwork. With the iPad, the manager starts and ends his day with his team.
The second iPad app, called SPOTLight, gives managers instant access to their Web-based SharePoint content. They can pull out pricing, display planograms, customer development agreements, or new contracts.

PepsiCo's iPhone and iPad systems are integrated with its established corporate information systems. The company uses Mobile Device Management from AirWatch to securely deploy and manage its mobile applications and also takes advantage of the built-in security on iPhone and iPad to protect them from unauthorized access.

PepsiCo's main competitor, beverage-bottling company Coca-Cola Enterprises Inc. (CCE) is benefiting from mobile technology as well. CCE uses mobile field service software from ServiceMax Inc. to streamline the work activities of its technicians, who service restaurant soda fountains and fix vending machines. Previously, after a technician visited a customer on site, he would go back to his car, transfer information from paper notes into a database on his laptop, and transmit it to Coca-Cola's aging centralized software system. Many technicians spent an extra half hour at the end of each day polishing their paperwork.

In 2012, about 100 CCE employees started using ServiceMax apps on iPhones to dispatch technicians to a day's worth of service calls, provide detailed customer information, automatically update lists of service parts stored in their vans, and transfer information to the billing department. The new system cut administration time for service technicians by a third, and employees were freed up to service other companies' equipment in addition to CCE's own. ServiceMax charges about $1000 per person per year for a subscription.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. What kinds of applications are described here? What business functions do they support? How do they improve operational efficiency and decision making?
2. Identify the problems that businesses in this case study solved by using mobile digital devices.
3. What kinds of businesses are most likely to benefit from equipping their employees with mobile digital devices such as iPhones and iPads?
4. One company deploying iPhones has said, “The iPhone is not a game changer, it's an industry changer. It changes the way that you can interact with your customers” and “with your suppliers.” Discuss the implications of this statement.

iPhone and iPad Applications for Business
1. Salesforce1
2. Cisco WebEx
3. SAP Business ByDesign
4. iWork
5. Evernote
6. Adobe Reader
7. Oracle Business Intelligence
8. Dropbox

Whether it’s attending an online meeting, checking orders, working with files and documents, or obtaining business intelligence, Apple’s iPhone and iPad offer unlimited possibilities for business users. A stunning multitouch display, full Internet browsing, and capabilities for messaging, video and audio transmission, and document management, make each an all-purpose platform for mobile computing.
great disparities in economic and scientific development. The world trade that ensued after Columbus's voyages has brought these peoples and cultures closer. The “industrial revolution” was really a world-wide phenomenon energized by expansion of trade among nations and the emergence of the first global economy.

In 2005, journalist Thomas Friedman wrote an influential book declaring the world was now “flat,” by which he meant that the Internet and global communications had greatly reduced the economic and cultural advantages of developed countries. Friedman argued that the U.S. and European countries were in a fight for their economic lives, competing for jobs, markets, resources, and even ideas with highly educated, motivated populations in low-wage areas in the less developed world (Friedman, 2007). This “globalization” presents both challenges and opportunities for business firms.

A growing percentage of the economy of the United States and other advanced industrial countries in Europe and Asia depends on imports and exports. In 2013, more than 33 percent of the U.S. economy resulted from foreign trade, both imports and exports. In Europe and Asia, the number exceeded 50 percent. Many Fortune 500 U.S. firms derive half their revenues from foreign operations. For instance, 85 percent of Intel's revenues in 2013 came from overseas sales of its microprocessors. Eighty percent of the toys sold in the United States are manufactured in China, while about 90 percent of the PCs manufactured in China use American-made Intel or Advanced Micro Design (AMD) chips. The microprocessor chips are shipped from the United States to China for assembly into devices. In the severe recession of 2008-2011, all the world's economies were negatively impacted.

It’s not just goods that move across borders. So too do jobs, some of them high-level jobs that pay well and require a college degree. In the past decade, the United States lost several million manufacturing jobs to offshore, low-wage producers. But manufacturing is now a very small part of U.S. employment (less than 12 percent and declining). In a normal year, about 300,000 service jobs move offshore to lower wage countries. Many of the jobs are in less-skilled information system occupations, but some are “tradable service” jobs in architecture, financial services, customer call centers, consulting, engineering, and even radiology.

On the plus side, the U.S. economy creates over 3.5 million new jobs in a normal, non-recessionary year. However, only 1.1 million private sector jobs were created due to slow recovery in 2011, but by 2014 2.5 million jobs were added. Employment in information systems and the other service occupations is expanding, and wages are stable. Outsourcing has actually accelerated the development of new systems in the United States and worldwide.

The challenge for you as a business student is to develop high-level skills through education and on-the-job experience that cannot be outsourced. The challenge for your business is to avoid markets for goods and services that can be produced offshore much less expensively. The opportunities are equally immense. Throughout this book, you will find examples of companies and individuals who either failed or succeeded in using information systems to adapt to this new global environment.

What does globalization have to do with management information systems? That’s simple: everything. The emergence of the Internet into a full-blown international communications system has drastically reduced the costs of operating and transacting on a global scale. Communication between a factory floor in Shanghai and a distribution center in Rapid City, South Dakota, is now instant and virtually free. Customers can now shop in a worldwide marketplace, obtaining price and quality information reliably 24 hours a day.
Firms producing goods and services on a global scale achieve extraordinary cost reductions by finding low-cost suppliers and managing production facilities in other countries. Internet service firms, such as Google and eBay, are able to replicate their business models and services in multiple countries without having to redesign their expensive fixed-cost information systems infrastructure. Half of the revenue of eBay (as well as General Motors) originates outside the United States. Briefly, information systems enable globalization.

THE EMERGING DIGITAL FIRM

All of the changes we have just described, coupled with equally significant organizational redesign, have created the conditions for a fully digital firm. A digital firm can be defined along several dimensions. A digital firm is one in which nearly all of the organization’s significant business relationships with customers, suppliers, and employees are digitally enabled and mediated. Core business processes are accomplished through digital networks spanning the entire organization or linking multiple organizations.

Business processes refer to the set of logically related tasks and behaviors that organizations develop over time to produce specific business results and the unique manner in which these activities are organized and coordinated. Developing a new product, generating and fulfilling an order, creating a marketing plan, and hiring an employee are examples of business processes, and the ways organizations accomplish their business processes can be a source of competitive strength. (A detailed discussion of business processes can be found in Chapter 2.)

Key corporate assets—intellectual property, core competencies, and financial and human assets—are managed through digital means. In a digital firm, any piece of information required to support key business decisions is available at any time and anywhere in the firm.

Digital firms sense and respond to their environments far more rapidly than traditional firms, giving them more flexibility to survive in turbulent times. Digital firms offer extraordinary opportunities for more flexible global organization and management. In digital firms, both time shifting and space shifting are the norm. Time shifting refers to business being conducted continuously, 24/7, rather than in narrow “work day” time bands of 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. Space shifting means that work takes place in a global workshop, as well as within national boundaries. Work is accomplished physically wherever in the world it is best accomplished.

Many firms, such as Cisco Systems, 3M, and IBM, are close to becoming digital firms, using the Internet to drive every aspect of their business. Most other companies are not fully digital, but they are moving toward close digital integration with suppliers, customers, and employees.

STRATEGIC BUSINESS OBJECTIVES OF INFORMATION SYSTEMS

What makes information systems so essential today? Why are businesses investing so much in information systems and technologies? In the United States, more than 21 million managers and 154 million workers in the information and knowledge sectors in the labor force rely on information systems to conduct business. Information systems are essential for conducting day-to-day business in the United States and most other advanced countries, as well as achieving strategic business objectives.
Entire sectors of the economy are nearly inconceivable without substantial investments in information systems. E-commerce firms such as Amazon, eBay, Google, and E*Trade simply would not exist. Today’s service industries—finance, insurance, and real estate, as well as personal services such as travel, medicine, and education—could not operate without information systems. Similarly, retail firms such as Walmart and Sears and manufacturing firms such as General Motors and General Electric require information systems to survive and prosper. Just as offices, telephones, filing cabinets, and efficient tall buildings with elevators were once the foundations of business in the twentieth century, information technology is a foundation for business in the twenty-first century.

There is a growing interdependence between a firm’s ability to use information technology and its ability to implement corporate strategies and achieve corporate goals (see Figure 1.2). What a business would like to do in five years often depends on what its systems will be able to do. Increasing market share, becoming the high-quality or low-cost producer, developing new products, and increasing employee productivity depend more and more on the kinds and quality of information systems in the organization. The more you understand about this relationship, the more valuable you will be as a manager.

Specifically, business firms invest heavily in information systems to achieve six strategic business objectives: operational excellence; new products, services, and business models; customer and supplier intimacy; improved decision making; competitive advantage; and survival.

**Operational Excellence**

Businesses continuously seek to improve the efficiency of their operations in order to achieve higher profitability. Information systems and technologies are some of the most important tools available to managers for achieving higher

---

**Figure 1.2  THE INTERDEPENDENCE BETWEEN ORGANIZATIONS AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS**

In contemporary systems, there is a growing interdependence between a firm’s information systems and its business capabilities. Changes in strategy, rules, and business processes increasingly require changes in hardware, software, databases, and telecommunications. Often, what the organization would like to do depends on what its systems will permit it to do.
levels of efficiency and productivity in business operations, especially when
coupled with changes in business practices and management behavior.

Walmart, the largest retailer on earth, exemplifies the power of information
systems coupled with brilliant business practices and supportive
management to achieve world-class operational efficiency. In fiscal year 2014, Walmart
achieved $473 billion in sales—nearly one-tenth of retail sales in the United
States—in large part because of its Retail Link system, which digitally links its
suppliers to every one of Walmart’s stores. As soon as a customer purchases
an item, the supplier monitoring the item knows to ship a replacement to the
shelf. Walmart is the most efficient retail store in the industry, achieving sales
of more than $428 per square foot, compared to its closest competitor, Target,
at $295 a square foot. Other less efficient general merchandise stores generate
from $150 to $200 a square foot.

**New Products, Services, and Business Models**
Information systems and technologies are a major enabling tool for firms to
create new products and services, as well as entirely new business models.
A **business model** describes how a company produces, delivers, and sells a
product or service to create wealth.

Today’s music industry is vastly different from the industry a decade ago.
Apple Inc. transformed an old business model of music distribution based on
vinyl records, tapes, and CDs into an online, legal distribution model based
on its own iPod technology platform. Apple has prospered from a continuing
stream of iPod innovations, including the iTunes music service, the iPad, and
the iPhone.

**Customer and Supplier Intimacy**
When a business really knows its customers, and serves them well, the custom-
ers generally respond by returning and purchasing more. This raises revenues
and profits. Likewise with suppliers: the more a business engages its suppliers,
the better the suppliers can provide vital inputs. This lowers costs. How to
really know your customers, or suppliers, is a central problem for businesses
with millions of offline and online customers.

The Mandarin Oriental in Manhattan and other high-end hotels exemplify
the use of information systems and technologies to achieve customer intimacy.
These hotels use computers to keep track of guests’ preferences, such as
their preferred room temperature, check-in time, frequently dialed telephone
numbers, and television programs, and store these data in a large data
repository. Individual rooms in the hotels are networked to a central network
server computer so that they can be remotely monitored or controlled. When a
customer arrives at one of these hotels, the system automatically changes the
room conditions, such as dimming the lights, setting the room temperature, or
selecting appropriate music, based on the customer’s digital profile. The hotels
also analyze their customer data to identify their best customers and to develop
individualized marketing campaigns based on customers’ preferences.

JCPenney exemplifies the benefits of information systems-enabled supplier
intimacy. Every time a dress shirt is bought at a JCPenney store in the United
States, the record of the sale appears immediately on computers in Hong Kong
at the TAL Apparel Ltd. supplier, a contract manufacturer that produces one
in eight dress shirts sold in the United States. TAL runs the numbers through a
computer model it developed and then decides how many replacement shirts
to make, and in what styles, colors, and sizes. TAL then sends the shirts to
each JCPenney store, bypassing completely the retailer's warehouses. In other words, JCPenney's shirt inventory is near zero, as is the cost of storing it.

**Improved Decision Making**

Many business managers operate in an information fog bank, never really having the right information at the right time to make an informed decision. Instead, managers rely on forecasts, best guesses, and luck. The result is over- or underproduction of goods and services, misallocation of resources, and poor response times. These poor outcomes raise costs and lose customers. In the past decade, information systems and technologies have made it possible for managers to use real-time data from the marketplace when making decisions.

For instance, Verizon Corporation, one of the largest telecommunication companies in the United States, uses a Web-based digital dashboard to provide managers with precise real-time information on customer complaints, network performance for each locality served, and line outages or storm-damaged lines. Using this information, managers can immediately allocate repair resources to affected areas, inform consumers of repair efforts, and restore service fast.

**Competitive Advantage**

When firms achieve one or more of these business objectives—operational excellence; new products, services, and business models; customer/supplier intimacy; and improved decision making—chances are they have already achieved a competitive advantage. Doing things better than your competitors, charging less for superior products, and responding to customers and suppliers in real time all add up to higher sales and higher profits that your competitors cannot match. Apple Inc., Walmart, and UPS, described later in this chapter, are industry leaders because they know how to use information systems for this purpose.

**Survival**

Business firms also invest in information systems and technologies because they are necessities of doing business. Sometimes these “necessities” are driven by industry-level changes. For instance, after Citibank introduced the first automated teller machines (ATMs) in the New York region in 1977 to attract customers through higher service levels, its competitors rushed to provide ATMs to their customers to keep up with Citibank. Today, virtually all banks in the United States have regional ATMs and link to national and international ATM networks, such as CIRRUS. Providing ATM services to retail banking customers is simply a requirement of being in and surviving in the retail banking business.

There are many federal and state statutes and regulations that create a legal duty for companies and their employees to retain records, including digital records. For instance, the Toxic Substances Control Act (1976), which regulates the exposure of U.S. workers to more than 75,000 toxic chemicals, requires firms to retain records on employee exposure for 30 years. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act (2002), which was intended to improve the accountability of public firms and their auditors, requires certified public accounting firms that audit public companies to retain audit working papers and records, including all e-mails, for five years. The Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (2010) which was intended to strengthen regulation of the banking industry requires firms to retain all records for ten years. Many other pieces of federal
and state legislation in health care, financial services, education, and privacy protection impose significant information retention and reporting requirements on U.S. businesses. Firms turn to information systems and technologies to provide the capability to respond to these challenges.

1.2 What is an information system? How does it work? What are its management, organization, and technology components and why are complementary assets essential for ensuring that information systems provide genuine value for an organization?

So far we’ve used information systems and technologies informally without defining the terms. Information technology (IT) consists of all the hardware and software that a firm needs to use in order to achieve its business objectives. This includes not only computer machines, storage devices, and handheld mobile devices, but also software, such as the Windows or Linux operating systems, the Microsoft Office desktop productivity suite, and the many thousands of computer programs that can be found in a typical large firm. “Information systems” are more complex and can be best understood by looking at them from both a technology and a business perspective.

WHAT IS AN INFORMATION SYSTEM?

An information system can be defined technically as a set of interrelated components that collect (or retrieve), process, store, and distribute information to support decision making and control in an organization. In addition to supporting decision making, coordination, and control, information systems may also help managers and workers analyze problems, visualize complex subjects, and create new products.

Information systems contain information about significant people, places, and things within the organization or in the environment surrounding it. By information we mean data that have been shaped into a form that is meaningful and useful to human beings. Data, in contrast, are streams of raw facts representing events occurring in organizations or the physical environment before they have been organized and arranged into a form that people can understand and use.

A brief example contrasting information and data may prove useful. Supermarket checkout counters scan millions of pieces of data from bar codes, which describe each product. Such pieces of data can be totaled and analyzed to provide meaningful information, such as the total number of bottles of dish detergent sold at a particular store, which brands of dish detergent were selling the most rapidly at that store or sales territory, or the total amount spent on that brand of dish detergent at that store or sales region (see Figure 1.3).

Three activities in an information system produce the information that organizations need to make decisions, control operations, analyze problems, and create new products or services. These activities are input, processing, and output (see Figure 1.4). Input captures or collects raw data from within
An information system contains information about an organization and its surrounding environment. Three basic activities—input, processing, and output—produce the information organizations need. Feedback is output returned to appropriate people or activities in the organization to evaluate and refine the input. Environmental actors, such as customers, suppliers, competitors, stockholders, and regulatory agencies, interact with the organization and its information systems.
Information systems also require feedback, which is output that is returned to appropriate members of the organization to help them evaluate or correct the input stage.

In the San Francisco Giants system for selling tickets, the raw input consists of order data for tickets, such as the purchaser’s name, address, credit card number, number of tickets ordered, and the date of the game for which the ticket is being purchased. Another input would be the ticket price, which would fluctuate based on computer analysis of how much could optimally be charged for a ticket for a particular game. Computers store these data and process them to calculate order totals, to track ticket purchases, and to send requests for payment to credit card companies. The output consists of tickets to print out, receipts for orders, and reports on online ticket orders. The system provides meaningful information, such as the number of tickets sold for a particular game or at a particular price, the total number of tickets sold each year, and frequent customers.

Although computer-based information systems use computer technology to process raw data into meaningful information, there is a sharp distinction between a computer and a computer program on the one hand, and an information system on the other. Electronic computers and related software programs are the technical foundation, the tools and materials, of modern information systems. Computers provide the equipment for storing and processing information. Computer programs, or software, are sets of operating instructions that direct and control computer processing. Knowing how computers and computer programs work is important in designing solutions to organizational problems, but computers are only part of an information system.

A house is an appropriate analogy. Houses are built with hammers, nails, and wood, but these do not make a house. The architecture, design, setting, landscaping, and all of the decisions that lead to the creation of these features are part of the house and are crucial for solving the problem of putting a roof over one’s head. Computers and programs are the hammers, nails, and lumber of computer-based information systems, but alone they cannot produce the information a particular organization needs. To understand information systems, you must understand the broader organization, management, and information technology dimensions of systems (see Figure 1.5) and their power to provide solutions to challenges and problems in the business environment. We refer to this broader understanding of information systems, which encompasses an understanding of the management and organizational dimensions of systems as well as the technical dimensions of systems, as information systems literacy.

Computer literacy, in contrast, focuses primarily on knowledge of information technology. The field of management information systems (MIS) tries to achieve this broader information systems literacy. MIS deals with behavioral issues as well as technical issues surrounding the development, use, and impact of information systems used by managers and employees in the firm.

Let’s examine each of the dimensions of information systems—organizations, management, and information technology.
Organizations

Information systems are an integral part of organizations. Indeed, for some companies, such as credit reporting firms, there would be no business without an information system. The key elements of an organization are its people, structure, business processes, politics, and culture. We introduce these components of organizations here and describe them in greater detail in Chapters 2 and 3.

Organizations have a structure that is composed of different levels and specialties. Their structures reveal a clear-cut division of labor. Authority and responsibility in a business firm are organized as a hierarchy, or a pyramid structure. The upper levels of the hierarchy consist of managerial, professional, and technical employees, whereas the lower levels consist of operational personnel.

Senior management makes long-range strategic decisions about products and services as well as ensures financial performance of the firm. Middle management carries out the programs and plans of senior management, and operational management is responsible for monitoring the daily activities of the business. Knowledge workers, such as engineers, scientists, or architects, design products or services and create new knowledge for the firm, whereas data workers, such as secretaries or clerks, assist with scheduling and communications at all levels of the firm. Production or service workers actually produce the product and deliver the service (see Figure 1.6).

Experts are employed and trained for different business functions. The major business functions, or specialized tasks performed by business organizations, consist of sales and marketing, manufacturing and production, finance and accounting, and human resources (see Table 1.2). Chapter 2 provides more detail on these business functions and the ways in which they are supported by information systems.

An organization coordinates work through its hierarchy and through its business processes, which are logically related tasks and behaviors for accomplishing work. Developing a new product, fulfilling an order, and hiring a new employee are examples of business processes.
Most organizations' business processes include formal rules that have been developed over a long time for accomplishing tasks. These rules guide employees in a variety of procedures, from writing an invoice to responding to customer complaints. Some of these business processes have been written down, but others are informal work practices, such as a requirement to return telephone calls from coworkers or customers, that are not formally documented. Information systems automate many business processes. For instance, how a customer receives credit or how a customer is billed is often determined by an information system that incorporates a set of formal business processes.

Each organization has a unique culture, or fundamental set of assumptions, values, and ways of doing things, that has been accepted by most of its members. You can see organizational culture at work by looking around your university or college. Some bedrock assumptions of university life are that professors know more than students, the reasons students attend college is to learn, and that classes follow a regular schedule.

### TABLE 1.2 MAJOR BUSINESS FUNCTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUNCTION</th>
<th>PURPOSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sales and marketing</td>
<td>Selling the organization's products and services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturing and production</td>
<td>Producing and delivering products and services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finance and accounting</td>
<td>Managing the organization’s financial assets and maintaining the organization’s financial records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human resources</td>
<td>Attracting, developing, and maintaining the organization’s labor force; maintaining employee records</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Parts of an organization’s culture can always be found embedded in its information systems. For instance, UPS’s first priority is customer service, which is an aspect of its organizational culture that can be found in the company’s package tracking systems, which we describe later in this section.

Different levels and specialties in an organization create different interests and points of view. These views often conflict over how the company should be run and how resources and rewards should be distributed. Conflict is the basis for organizational politics. Information systems come out of this cauldron of differing perspectives, conflicts, compromises, and agreements that are a natural part of all organizations. In Chapter 3, we examine these features of organizations and their role in the development of information systems in greater detail.

**Management**

Management’s job is to make sense out of the many situations faced by organizations, make decisions, and formulate action plans to solve organizational problems. Managers perceive business challenges in the environment; they set the organizational strategy for responding to those challenges; and they allocate the human and financial resources to coordinate the work and achieve success. Throughout, they must exercise responsible leadership. The business information systems described in this book reflect the hopes, dreams, and realities of real-world managers.

But managers must do more than manage what already exists. They must also create new products and services and even re-create the organization from time to time. A substantial part of management responsibility is creative work driven by new knowledge and information. Information technology can play a powerful role in helping managers design and deliver new products and services and redirecting and redesigning their organizations. Chapter 12 treats management decision making in detail.

**Information Technology**

Information technology is one of many tools managers use to cope with change. **Computer hardware** is the physical equipment used for input, processing, and output activities in an information system. It consists of the following: computers of various sizes and shapes (including mobile handheld devices); various input, output, and storage devices; and telecommunications devices that link computers together.

**Computer software** consists of the detailed, preprogrammed instructions that control and coordinate the computer hardware components in an information system. Chapter 5 describes the contemporary software and hardware platforms used by firms today in greater detail.

**Data management technology** consists of the software governing the organization of data on physical storage media. More detail on data organization and access methods can be found in Chapter 6.

**Networking and telecommunications technology**, consisting of both physical devices and software, links the various pieces of hardware and transfers data from one physical location to another. Computers and communications equipment can be connected in networks for sharing voice, data, images, sound, and video. A network links two or more computers to share data or resources, such as a printer.

The world’s largest and most widely used network is the Internet. The Internet is a global “network of networks” that uses universal standards (described in Chapter 7) to connect millions of different networks with nearly 3 billion users in over 230 countries around the world.
The Internet has created a new “universal” technology platform on which to build new products, services, strategies, and business models. This same technology platform has internal uses, providing the connectivity to link different systems and networks within the firm. Internal corporate networks based on Internet technology are called intranets. Private intranets extended to authorized users outside the organization are called extranets, and firms use such networks to coordinate their activities with other firms for making purchases, collaborating on design, and other interorganizational work. For most business firms today, using Internet technology is both a business necessity and a competitive advantage.

The World Wide Web is a service provided by the Internet that uses universally accepted standards for storing, retrieving, formatting, and displaying information in a page format on the Internet. Web pages contain text, graphics, animations, sound, and video and are linked to other Web pages. By clicking on highlighted words or buttons on a Web page, you can link to related pages to find additional information and links to other locations on the Web. The Web can serve as the foundation for new kinds of information systems such as UPS's Web-based package tracking system described in the following Interactive Session.

All of these technologies, along with the people required to run and manage them, represent resources that can be shared throughout the organization and constitute the firm’s information technology (IT) infrastructure. The IT infrastructure provides the foundation, or platform, on which the firm can build its specific information systems. Each organization must carefully design and manage its IT infrastructure so that it has the set of technology services it needs for the work it wants to accomplish with information systems. Chapters 5 through 8 of this book examine each major technology component of information technology infrastructure and show how they all work together to create the technology platform for the organization.

The Interactive Session on Technology describes some of the typical technologies used in computer-based information systems today. UPS invests heavily in information systems technology to make its business more efficient and customer oriented. It uses an array of information technologies, including bar code scanning systems, wireless networks, large mainframe computers, handheld computers, the Internet, and many different pieces of software for tracking packages, calculating fees, maintaining customer accounts, and managing logistics.

Let’s identify the organization, management, and technology elements in the UPS package tracking system we have just described. The organization element anchors the package tracking system in UPS’s sales and production functions (the main product of UPS is a service—package delivery). It specifies the required procedures for identifying packages with both sender and recipient information, taking inventory, tracking the packages en route, and providing package status reports for UPS customers and customer service representatives.

The system must also provide information to satisfy the needs of managers and workers. UPS drivers need to be trained in both package pickup and delivery procedures and in how to use the package tracking system so that they can work efficiently and effectively. UPS customers may need some training to use UPS in-house package tracking software or the UPS Web site.

UPS’s management is responsible for monitoring service levels and costs and for promoting the company’s strategy of combining low cost and superior service. Management decided to use computer systems to increase the ease of sending a package using UPS and of checking its delivery status, thereby reducing delivery costs and increasing sales revenues.
United Parcel Service (UPS) started out in 1907 in a closet-sized basement office. Jim Casey and Claude Ryan—two teenagers from Seattle with two bicycles and one phone—promised the “best service and lowest rates.” UPS has used this formula successfully for more than a century to become the world’s largest ground and air package-delivery company. It’s a global enterprise with nearly 400,000 employees, 96,000 vehicles, and the world’s ninth largest airline.

Today UPS delivers 16.3 million packages and documents each day in the United States and more than 220 other countries and territories. The firm has been able to maintain leadership in small-package delivery services despite stiff competition from FedEx and Airborne Express by investing heavily in advanced information technology. UPS spends more than $1 billion each year to maintain a high level of customer service while keeping costs low and streamlining its overall operations.

It all starts with the scannable bar-coded label attached to a package, which contains detailed information about the sender, the destination, and when the package should arrive. Customers can download and print their own labels using special software provided by UPS or by accessing the UPS Web site. Before the package is even picked up, information from the “smart” label is transmitted to one of UPS’s computer centers in Mahwah, New Jersey, or Alpharetta, Georgia and sent to the distribution center nearest its final destination.

Dispatchers at this center download the label data and use special software to create the most efficient delivery route for each driver that considers traffic, weather conditions, and the location of each stop. In 2009, UPS began installing sensors in its delivery vehicles that can capture the truck’s speed and location, the number of times it’s placed in reverse and whether the driver’s seat belt is buckled. At the end of each day, these data are uploaded to a UPS central computer and analyzed. By combining GPS information and data from fuel-efficiency sensors installed on more than 46,000 vehicles in 2011, UPS reduced fuel consumption by 8.4 million gallons and cut 85 million miles off its routes. UPS estimates that saving only one daily mile driven per driver saves the company $30 million.

The first thing a UPS driver picks up each day is a handheld computer called a Delivery Information Acquisition Device (DIAD), which can access a wireless cell phone network. As soon as the driver logs on, his or her day’s route is downloaded onto the handheld. The DIAD also automatically captures customers’ signatures along with pickup and delivery information. Package tracking information is then transmitted to UPS’s computer network for storage and processing. From there, the information can be accessed worldwide to provide proof of delivery to customers or to respond to customer queries. It usually takes less than 60 seconds from the time a driver presses “complete” on a the DIAD for the new information to be available on the Web.

Through its automated package tracking system, UPS can monitor and even re-route packages throughout the delivery process. At various points along the route from sender to receiver, bar code devices scan shipping information on the package label and feed data about the progress of the package into the central computer. Customer service representatives are able to check the status of any package from desktop computers linked to the central computers and respond immediately to inquiries from customers. UPS customers can also access this information from the company’s Web site using their own computers or mobile phones. UPS now has mobile apps and a mobile Web site for iPhone, Blackberry, and Android smartphone users.

Anyone with a package to ship can access the UPS Web site to track packages, check delivery routes, calculate shipping rates, determine time in transit, print labels, and schedule a pickup. The data collected at the UPS Web site are transmitted to the UPS central computer and then back to the customer after processing. UPS also provides tools that enable customers, such as Cisco Systems, to embed UPS functions, such as tracking and cost calculations, into their own Web sites so that they can track shipments without visiting the UPS site.

A Web-based Post Sales Order Management System (OMS) manages global service orders and inventory for critical parts fulfillment. The system enables high-tech electronics, aerospace, medical equipment, and other companies anywhere in the world that ship critical parts to quickly assess their critical parts inventory, determine the most optimal routing strategy to meet customer needs, place orders online, and track parts from the warehouse to the end user.
An automated e-mail or fax feature keeps customers informed of each shipping milestone and can provide notification of any changes to flight schedules for commercial airlines carrying their parts.

UPS is now leveraging its decades of expertise managing its own global delivery network to manage logistics and supply chain activities for other companies. It created a UPS Supply Chain Solutions division that provides a complete bundle of specialized services to subscribing companies at a fraction of what it would cost to build their own systems and infrastructure. These services include supply-chain design and management, freight forwarding, customs brokerage, mail services, multimodal transportation, and financial services, in addition to logistics services.

For example, UPS handles logistics for Lighting Science Group, the world’s leading maker of advanced light products such as energy-efficient light-emitting diode (LED) lamps and custom design lighting systems. The company has manufacturing operations in Satellite Beach, Florida and China. UPS conducted a warehouse/distribution analysis to shape the manufacturer’s distribution strategy, in which finished goods from China are brought to a UPS warehouse in Fort Worth, Texas, for distribution. The UPS warehouse repackages finished goods, handles returns and conducts daily cycle counts as well as annual inventory. Lighting Science uses UPS Trade Management Services and UPS Customs Brokerage to help manage import and export compliance to ensure timely, reliable delivery and reduce customs delays. UPS also helps Lighting Science reduce customer inventory and improve order fulfillment.

UPS manages logistics and international shipping for Celaris, the world’s largest wireless accessory vendor, selling mobile phone cases, headphones, screen protectors, and chargers. Celaris has nearly 1,000 franchises in the United States, Canada and the United Kingdom. The company’s supply chain is complex, with products developed in Georgia, manufactured at more than 25 locations in Asia and 10 locations in the U.S., warehoused in a Georgia distribution center, and shipped to franchisees and customers worldwide. UPS redesigned Celaris’s inbound/outbound supply chain and introduced new services to create a more efficient shipping model. UPS Buyer Consolidation for International Air Freight reduces complexity in dealing with multiple international manufacturing sources. UPS Worldwide Express Freight guarantees on-time service for critical freight pallet shipments and UPS Customs Brokerage enables single-source clearance for multiple transportation modes. These changes have saved Celaris more than 5,000 hours and $500,000 annually, and the supply chain redesign alone has saved more than 15 percent on shipments.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. What are the inputs, processing, and outputs of UPS’s package tracking system?
2. What technologies are used by UPS? How are these technologies related to UPS’s business strategy?
3. What strategic business objectives do UPS’s information systems address?
4. What would happen if UPS’s information systems were not available?
Managers and business firms invest in information technology and systems because they provide real economic value to the business. The decision to build or maintain an information system assumes that the returns on this investment will be superior to other investments in buildings, machines, or other assets. These superior returns will be expressed as increases in productivity, as increases in revenues (which will increase the firm’s stock market value), or perhaps as superior long-term strategic positioning of the firm in certain markets (which produce superior revenues in the future).

We can see that from a business perspective, an information system is an important instrument for creating value for the firm. Information systems enable the firm to increase its revenue or decrease its costs by providing information that helps managers make better decisions or that improves the execution of business processes. For example, the information system for analyzing supermarket checkout data illustrated in Figure 1.3 can increase firm profitability by helping managers make better decisions as to which products to stock and promote in retail supermarkets.

Every business has an information value chain, illustrated in Figure 1.7, in which raw information is systematically acquired and then transformed through various stages that add value to that information. The value of an information system to a business, as well as the decision to invest in any new information system, is, in large part, determined by the extent to which the system will lead to better management decisions, more efficient business processes, and higher firm profitability. Although there are other reasons why systems are built, their primary purpose is to contribute to corporate value.

From a business perspective, information systems are part of a series of value-adding activities for acquiring, transforming, and distributing information that managers can use to improve decision making, enhance organizational performance, and, ultimately, increase firm profitability.

The business perspective calls attention to the organizational and managerial nature of information systems. An information system represents
an organizational and management solution, based on information technology, to a challenge or problem posed by the environment. Every chapter in this book begins with a short case study that illustrates this concept. A diagram at the beginning of each chapter illustrates the relationship between a business challenge and resulting management and organizational decisions to use IT as a solution to challenges generated by the business environment. You can use this diagram as a starting point for analyzing any information system or information system problem you encounter.

Review the diagram at the beginning of this chapter. The diagram shows how the San Francisco Giants' systems solved the business problem presented by the need to generate revenue in a highly competitive industry. These systems provide a solution that takes advantage of opportunities provided by new digital technology and the Internet. They opened up new channels for selling tickets and interacting with customers, optimized ticket pricing, and used new tools to analyze player performance. These systems were essential in improving the Giants's overall business performance. The diagram also illustrates how management, technology, and organizational elements work together to create the systems.

**COMPLEMENTARY ASSETS: ORGANIZATIONAL CAPITAL AND THE RIGHT BUSINESS MODEL**

Awareness of the organizational and managerial dimensions of information systems can help us understand why some firms achieve better results from
Although, on average, investments in information technology produce returns far above those returned by other investments, there is considerable variation across firms. Studies of returns from information technology investments show that there is considerable variation in the returns firms receive (see Figure 1.8). Some firms invest a great deal and receive a great deal (quadrant 2); others invest an equal amount and receive few returns (quadrant 4). Still other firms invest little and receive much (quadrant 1), whereas others invest little and receive little (quadrant 3). This suggests that investing in information technology does not by itself guarantee good returns. What accounts for this variation among firms?

The answer lies in the concept of complementary assets. Information technology investments alone cannot make organizations and managers more effective unless they are accompanied by supportive values, structures, and behavior patterns in the organization and other complementary assets. Business firms need to change how they do business before they can really reap the advantages of new information technologies.

Some firms fail to adopt the right business model that suits the new technology, or seek to preserve an old business model that is doomed by new technology. For instance, recording label companies refused to change their old business model, which was based on physical music stores for distribution rather than adopt a new online distribution model. As a result, online legal music sales are dominated not by record companies but by a technology company called Apple Computer.

Complementary assets are those assets required to derive value from a primary investment (Teece, 1988). For instance, to realize value from automobiles requires substantial complementary investments in highways, roads, gasoline stations, repair facilities, and a legal regulatory structure to set standards and control drivers.

Research indicates that firms that support their technology investments with investments in complementary assets, such as new business models, new business processes, management behavior, organizational culture, or
training, receive superior returns, whereas those firms failing to make these complementary investments receive less or no returns on their information technology investments (Brynjolfsson, 2003; Brynjolfsson and Hitt, 2000; Laudon, 1974). These investments in organization and management are also known as organizational and management capital.

Table 1.3 lists the major complementary investments that firms need to make to realize value from their information technology investments. Some of this investment involves tangible assets, such as buildings, machinery, and tools. However, the value of investments in information technology depends to a large extent on complementary investments in management and organization.

Key organizational complementary investments are a supportive business culture that values efficiency and effectiveness, an appropriate business model, efficient business processes, decentralization of authority, highly distributed decision rights, and a strong information system (IS) development team.

Important managerial complementary assets are strong senior management support for change, incentive systems that monitor and reward individual innovation, an emphasis on teamwork and collaboration, training programs, and a management culture that values flexibility and knowledge.

Important social investments (not made by the firm but by the society at large, other firms, governments, and other key market actors) are the Internet and the supporting Internet culture, educational systems, network and computing standards, regulations and laws, and the presence of technology and service firms.

Throughout the book we emphasize a framework of analysis that considers technology, management, and organizational assets and their interactions. Perhaps the single most important theme in the book, reflected in case studies and exercises, is that managers need to consider the broader organization and management context.

### Table 1.3 Complementary Social, Managerial, and Organizational Assets Required to Optimize Returns from Information Technology Investments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organizational assets</th>
<th>Supportive organizational culture that values efficiency and effectiveness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Appropriate business model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Efficient business processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decentralized authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Distributed decision-making rights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Strong IS development team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managerial assets</td>
<td>Strong senior management support for technology investment and change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incentives for management innovation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Teamwork and collaborative work environments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Training programs to enhance management decision skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Management culture that values flexibility and knowledge-based decision making</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social assets</td>
<td>The Internet and telecommunications infrastructure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IT-enriched educational programs raising labor force computer literacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Standards (both government and private sector)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laws and regulations creating fair, stable market environments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Technology and service firms in adjacent markets to assist implementation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
management dimensions of information systems to understand current problems as well as to derive substantial above-average returns from their information technology investments. As you will see throughout the text, firms that can address these related dimensions of the IT investment are, on average, richly rewarded.

1.3 WHAT ACADEMIC DISCIPLINES ARE USED TO STUDY INFORMATION SYSTEMS AND HOW DOES EACH CONTRIBUTE TO AN UNDERSTANDING OF INFORMATION SYSTEMS?

The study of information systems is a multidisciplinary field. No single theory or perspective dominates. Figure 1.9 illustrates the major disciplines that contribute problems, issues, and solutions in the study of information systems. In general, the field can be divided into technical and behavioral approaches. Information systems are sociotechnical systems. Though they are composed of machines, devices, and “hard” physical technology, they require substantial social, organizational, and intellectual investments to make them work properly.

TECHNICAL APPROACH

The technical approach to information systems emphasizes mathematically based models to study information systems, as well as the physical technology and formal capabilities of these systems. The disciplines that contribute to the technical approach are computer science, management science, and operations research.

FIGURE 1.9 CONTEMPORARY APPROACHES TO INFORMATION SYSTEMS

The study of information systems deals with issues and insights contributed from technical and behavioral disciplines.
Computer science is concerned with establishing theories of computability, methods of computation, and methods of efficient data storage and access. Management science emphasizes the development of models for decision-making and management practices. Operations research focuses on mathematical techniques for optimizing selected parameters of organizations, such as transportation, inventory control, and transaction costs.

**BEHAVIORAL APPROACH**

An important part of the information systems field is concerned with behavioral issues that arise in the development and long-term maintenance of information systems. Issues such as strategic business integration, design, implementation, utilization, and management cannot be explored usefully with the models used in the technical approach. Other behavioral disciplines contribute important concepts and methods.

For instance, sociologists study information systems with an eye toward how groups and organizations shape the development of systems and also how systems affect individuals, groups, and organizations. Psychologists study information systems with an interest in how human decision makers perceive and use formal information. Economists study information systems with an interest in understanding the production of digital goods, the dynamics of digital markets, and how new information systems change the control and cost structures within the firm.

The behavioral approach does not ignore technology. Indeed, information systems technology is often the stimulus for a behavioral problem or issue. But the focus of this approach is generally not on technical solutions. Instead, it concentrates on changes in attitudes, management and organizational policy, and behavior.

**APPROACH OF THIS TEXT: SOCIOTECHNICAL SYSTEMS**

Throughout this book you will find a rich story with four main actors: suppliers of hardware and software (the technologists); business firms making investments and seeking to obtain value from the technology; managers and employees seeking to achieve business value (and other goals); and the contemporary legal, social, and cultural context (the firm’s environment). Together these actors produce what we call management information systems.

The study of management information systems (MIS) arose to focus on the use of computer-based information systems in business firms and government agencies. MIS combines the work of computer science, management science, and operations research with a practical orientation toward developing system solutions to real-world problems and managing information technology resources. It is also concerned with behavioral issues surrounding the development, use, and impact of information systems, which are typically discussed in the fields of sociology, economics, and psychology.

Our experience as academics and practitioners leads us to believe that no single approach effectively captures the reality of information systems. The successes and failures of information are rarely all technical or all behavioral. Our best advice to students is to understand the perspectives of many disciplines. Indeed, the challenge and excitement of the information systems field is that it requires an appreciation and tolerance of many different approaches.
The view we adopt in this book is best characterized as the sociotechnical view of systems. In this view, optimal organizational performance is achieved by jointly optimizing both the social and technical systems used in production.

Adopting a sociotechnical systems perspective helps to avoid a purely technological approach to information systems. For instance, the fact that information technology is rapidly declining in cost and growing in power does not necessarily or easily translate into productivity enhancement or bottom-line profits. The fact that a firm has recently installed an enterprise-wide financial reporting system does not necessarily mean that it will be used, or used effectively. Likewise, the fact that a firm has recently introduced new business procedures and processes does not necessarily mean employees will be more productive in the absence of investments in new information systems to enable those processes.

In this book, we stress the need to optimize the firm's performance as a whole. Both the technical and behavioral components need attention. This means that technology must be changed and designed in such a way as to fit organizational and individual needs. Sometimes, the technology may have to be "de-optimized" to accomplish this fit. For instance, mobile phone users adapt this technology to their personal needs, and as a result manufacturers quickly seek to adjust the technology to conform with user expectations. Organizations and individuals must also be changed through training, learning, and planned organizational change to allow the technology to operate and prosper. Figure 1.10 illustrates this process of mutual adjustment in a sociotechnical system.

**FIGURE 1.10 A SOCIOTECHNICAL PERSPECTIVE ON INFORMATION SYSTEMS**

In a sociotechnical perspective, the performance of a system is optimized when both the technology and the organization mutually adjust to one another until a satisfactory fit is obtained.
Review Summary

1. **How are information systems transforming business, and why are they essential for running and managing a business today?**
   
   E-mail, online conferencing, smartphones, and tablet computers have become essential tools for conducting business. Information systems are the foundation of fast-paced supply chains. The Internet allows many businesses to buy, sell, advertise, and solicit customer feedback online. Organizations are trying to become more competitive and efficient by digitally enabling their core business processes and evolving into digital firms. The Internet has stimulated globalization by dramatically reducing the costs of producing, buying, and selling goods on a global scale. New information system trends include the emerging mobile digital platform, online software as a service, and cloud computing.

   Information systems are a foundation for conducting business today. In many industries, survival and the ability to achieve strategic business goals are difficult without extensive use of information technology. Businesses today use information systems to achieve six major objectives: operational excellence; new products, services, and business models; customer/supplier intimacy; improved decision making; competitive advantage; and day-to-day survival.

2. **What is an information system? How does it work? What are its management, organization, and technology components and why are complementary assets essential for ensuring that information systems provide genuine value for organizations?**
   
   From a technical perspective, an information system collects, stores, and disseminates information from an organization’s environment and internal operations to support organizational functions and decision making, communication, coordination, control, analysis, and visualization. Information systems transform raw data into useful information through three basic activities: input, processing, and output.

   From a business perspective, an information system provides a solution to a problem or challenge facing a firm and represents a combination of management, organization, and technology elements. The management dimension of information systems involves issues such as leadership, strategy, and management behavior. The technology dimension consists of computer hardware, software, data management technology, and networking/telecommunications technology (including the Internet). The organization dimension of information systems involves issues such as the organization’s hierarchy, functional specialties, business processes, culture, and political interest groups.

   In order to obtain meaningful value from information systems, organizations must support their technology investments with appropriate complementary investments in organizations and management. These complementary assets include new business models and business processes, supportive organizational culture and management behavior, appropriate technology standards, regulations, and laws. New information technology investments are unlikely to produce high returns unless businesses make the appropriate managerial and organizational changes to support the technology.

3. **What academic disciplines are used to study information systems and how does each contribute to an understanding of information systems?**
   
   The study of information systems deals with issues and insights contributed from technical and behavioral disciplines. The disciplines that contribute to the technical approach focusing on formal models and capabilities of systems are computer science, management science, and operations research. The disciplines contributing to the behavioral approach focusing on the design, implementation, management, and business impact of systems are psychology, sociology, and economics. A sociotechnical view of systems considers both technical and social features of systems and solutions that represent the best fit between them.
Key Terms

Business functions, 19
Business model, 14
Business processes, 19
Complementary assets, 27
Computer hardware, 21
Computer literacy, 18
Computer software, 21
Culture, 20
Data, 16
Data management technology, 21
Data workers, 19
Digital firm, 12
Extranets, 22
Feedback, 18
Information, 16
Information system, 16
Information systems literacy, 18
Information technology (IT), 16
Information technology (IT) infrastructure, 22
Input, 16
Internet, 21
Intranets, 22
Knowledge workers, 21
Management information systems (MIS), 18
Middle management, 19
Network, 21
Networking and telecommunications technology, 21
Operational management, 19
Organizational and management capital, 28
Output, 17
Processing, 17
Production or service workers, 21
Senior management, 21
Sociotechnical view, 31
World Wide Web, 22

MyMISLab

Go to mymislab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

Review Questions

1-1  How are information systems transforming business, and why are they so essential for running and managing a business today?

- Describe how information systems have changed the way businesses operate and their products and services.
- Identify three major new information system trends.
- Describe the characteristics of a digital firm.
- Describe the challenges and opportunities of globalization in a “flattened” world.
- List and describe six reasons why information systems are so important for business today.

1-2  What is an information system? How does it work? What are its management, organization, and technology components and why are complementary assets essential for ensuring that information systems provide genuine value for organizations?

- Define an information system and describe the activities it performs.
- List and describe the organizational, management, and technology dimensions of information systems.

- Distinguish between data and information and between information systems literacy and computer literacy.
- Explain how the Internet and the World Wide Web are related to the other technology components of information systems.
- Define complementary assets and describe their relationship to information technology.
- Describe the complementary social, managerial, and organizational assets required to optimize returns from information technology investments.

1-3  What academic disciplines are used to study information systems and how does each contribute to an understanding of information systems?

- List and describe each discipline that contributes to a technical approach to information systems.
- List and describe each discipline that contributes to a behavioral approach to information systems.
- Describe the sociotechnical perspective on information systems.
Discussion Questions

1-4 Information systems are too important to be left to computer specialists. Do you agree? Why or why not?

1-5 If you were setting up the Web site for another Major League Baseball team, what management, organization, and technology issues might you encounter?

1-6 What are some of the organizational, managerial, and social complementary assets that help make UPS's information systems so successful?

Hands-On MIS Projects

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience in analyzing financial reporting and inventory management problems, using data management software to improve management decision making about increasing sales, and using Internet software for researching job requirements.

Management Decision Problems

1-7 Snyders of Hanover, which sells about 80 million bags of pretzels, snack chips, and organic snack items each year, had its financial department use spreadsheets and manual processes for much of its data gathering and reporting. Hanover's financial analyst would spend the entire final week of every month collecting spreadsheets from the heads of more than 50 departments worldwide. She would then consolidate and re-enter all the data into another spreadsheet, which would serve as the company's monthly profit-and-loss statement. If a department needed to update its data after submitting the spreadsheet to the main office, the analyst had to return the original spreadsheet, then wait for the department to re-submit its data before finally submitting the updated data in the consolidated document. Assess the impact of this situation on business performance and management decision making.

1-8 Dollar General Corporation operates deep-discount stores offering housewares, cleaning supplies, clothing, health and beauty aids, and packaged food, with most items selling for $1. Its business model calls for keeping costs as low as possible. The company has no automated method for keeping track of inventory at each store. Managers know approximately how many cases of a particular product the store is supposed to receive when a delivery truck arrives, but the stores lack technology for scanning the cases or verifying the item count inside the cases. Merchandise losses from theft or other mishaps have been rising and now represent over 3 percent of total sales. What decisions have to be made before investing in an information system solution?

Improving Decision Making: Using Databases to Analyze Sales Trends

Software skills: Database querying and reporting
Business skills: Sales trend analysis

1-9 In this project, you will start out with raw transactional sales data and use Microsoft Access database software to develop queries and reports that help managers make better decisions about product pricing, sales promotions, and inventory replenishment. In MyMISLab, you can find a Store and Regional Sales Database developed in Microsoft Access. The database contains raw data on weekly store sales of computer equipment in various sales regions. The database includes fields for store identification number, sales region, item number, item description, unit price, units sold, and the weekly sales period when the sales were made. Use Access to develop some reports and queries to make this information more useful for running the business. Sales and production managers want answers to the following questions:

- Which products should be restocked?
- Which stores and sales regions would benefit from a promotional campaign and additional marketing?
- When (what time of year) should products be offered at full price, and when should discounts be used?
Collaboration and Teamwork Project

In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Docs, Google Sites, Google+, or other open-source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.

Home Depot Renovates Itself with New Systems and Ways of Working

CASE STUDY

When embarking on household improvement projects, you might very well start at The Home Depot. This company is the world’s largest home improvement specialty retailer, the fourth largest retailer in the U.S, and the fifth largest retailer in the world, operating 2,256 stores in the US, Canada, and Mexico, as well as an online business. It also has been the fastest-growing retailer in U.S. history. The Home Depot targets the do-it-yourself (DIY) and professional markets with its selection of some 40,000 items, including lumber, flooring, plumbing supplies, garden products, tools, paint, and appliances. Home Depot also offers installation services for carpeting, cabinetry, and other products.

The Home Depot was founded in 1978 by Bernie Marcus and Arthur Blank as a source of one-stop shopping for both do-it-yourself homeowners as well as contractors seeking hardware and home renovation materials. The first two Home Depot stores opened on June 22, 1979, in Atlanta, Georgia. At around 60,000 square feet each, these stores were cavernous warehouses stocking 25,000 different products, much more than the average hardware store at that time. Empty boxes piled high on the shelves gave the illusion of even more product. The Home Depot dwarfed the competition.

From the start, trained Home Depot store associates were able to offer the best customer service in the industry, guiding customers through projects such as laying tile, changing a fill valve or handling a power tool. The Home Depot revolutionized the home improvement industry by bringing the know-how and the tools to consumers while saving them money.

The Home Depot’s initial success was based on a decentralized business model, where stores were almost independently managed and filled with highly knowledgeable sales people who had backgrounds in various building trades. Regional and store-level managers made the decisions on what merchandise to carry in each store and how much of each item to keep in stock. Individual stores were large enough (around 100,000 square feet,
with annual revenues of $60-$80 million) to store huge inventories of building materials and supplies. Suppliers shipped merchandise directly to the Home Depot warehouse stores, which served as their own distribution centers.

During these early years, The Home Depot was very low-tech. Former Home Depot chief information officer (CIO) Bob DeRhodes observed that the company’s most important piece of information technology was the No. 2 pencil. Every Monday morning, Home Depot department managers would mark up orders in an inventory list, then hand the list to a data entry staff member who would key the data into the computer. Even by 2000, The Home Depot lacked the hardware infrastructure for its CEO to send a companywide e-mail. Items were often out of stock because the inventory system was so poor.

This business model and information systems strategy served The Home Depot well up to a point. For its first 25 years, The Home Depot’s management focused on growing the business, setting up as many stores as it could in prime locations. Eventually The Home Depot had saturated all the major metropolitan markets, and turned to secondary markets to continue its growth. The company began building smaller stores whose size was more appropriate for those markets. These smaller stores lacked the space to warehouse large inventories, which meant they didn’t have all items in stock when customers wanted to purchase them. Trucks carrying supplies to each store often arrived half-empty. Store employees spent 60% of their work day on stocking, and just 40% helping customers. The Home Depot also had dozens of distribution centers for lumber, warehouses for storing imports, and “carton distribution centers” designed to handle bulky items such as lawn tractors. This was a very large and expensive logistics infrastructure to maintain for a company where 75 percent of deliveries went directly to individual stores.

When Marcus and Blank retired in 2000, they were succeeded by Robert Nardelli from GE, who became the company’s chairman, president, and CEO. By the time Nardelli took over, The Home Depot had lost its competitive edge to Lowe’s. Its stores looked too much like lumberyards, whereas Lowe’s were more modern and inviting, carrying more upscale goods aimed at women. Nardelli spent hard to make the company more efficient, instituting many metrics and centralizing operations, while cutting jobs to meet quarterly earnings targets.

Although these measures initially doubled earnings and reduced expenses, they alienated many of the store managers, rank and file sales staff and customers. Nardelli believed home improvement store-by-store sales were less important due to market saturation from competition such as Lowe’s. He expected The Home Depot’s fastest-growing area of business to be in-home installation services, Web retailing, sales to commercial contractors, and international operations.

The company’s homegrown systems had become increasingly expensive to run and modify. Nardelli’s information technology plans called for a “Large IT” approach. In 2002, The Home Depot invested $1 billion in overhauling its IT infrastructure, including replacing point-of-sale (POS) systems, creating a huge data repository for accessing sales and labor management information, and implementing software from PeopleSoft and SAP to provide a standard enterprise software platform for all of the company’s basic operations, from financial reporting to inventory tracking. The enterprise software was expected to enable sales associates to access details on products for sale, their features, and availability, and also find information about customers they were serving, including their past transaction history with the company. This software promised to determine the right mix of products for retail outlets, set regional prices, and track inventory from manufacturers’ assembly lines to store cash registers. Nardelli believed self-checkout systems could replace all the store cashiers.

Nardelli started to centralize purchasing, merchandising, store planning, and marketing to achieve economies of scale and he invested $2 million in workload management software to make work activities more efficient. His primary goal was to lower the overall costs of operating the business and raise the returns to Home Depot shareholders. The self-service checkout aisles and these other measures produced some savings, but not enough. Under Nardelli’s leadership, The Home Depot continued to lose ground to Lowe’s, which paid much more attention to customers in its stores.

In January 2007, Nardelli was replaced by Frank Blake, who put more emphasis on serving and cultivating customers. Blake also began investing in information systems to help the company with competitive pricing. The Home Depot purchased BlackLocus, a provider of competitive price intelligence software, to help it find out how its prices compare with those of competitors and help it maintain its reputation for
having the lowest prices. BlackLocus provides automated and optimized pricing tools for mid-market and large online retailers, which are able to combine competitive pricing data from across the Web with customers' online store data.

Although Nardelli had made heavy investments in technology, Home Depot still had many outdated ways of working. In 2008, Home Depot hired CIO Matt Carey, who had been in charge of information systems at eBay and at Walmart before that. Carey said that when he arrived at Home Depot, the company's retail technology was comparable to what other chains possessed in 1990. To determine which products were out of stock, sales associates still had to physically inspect shelves. Mobile computing at Home Depots boiled down to a computer terminal atop a cart “powered by a boat battery,” with a scanner attached. When merchandise was determined to be running low, the store's manager re-ordered the items himself — inventory replenishment was still not fully automated.

Carey worked with Mark Holifield, Home Depot's Senior Vice President of Supply Chain to make the process of managing suppliers more streamlined and efficient. Holifield turned the company's supply chain design on its head by calling for 75 percent of Home Depot inventory to move through regional distribution centers called rapid deployment centers (RDCs) that would take over inventory replenishment decisions formerly made by individual stores.

This plan called for The Home Depot to construct 24 RDCs strategically located in the United States where each could serve about 100 stores. The RDCs are flow-through distribution centers designed for swift cross-docking of large volumes of merchandise. In flow-through distribution, inbound shipments are organized so that they are typically sent out to their delivery destination within the same day, thereby eliminating the need to store them. Most products leave for stores within 24 hours of their arrival at the RDCs. About 75 percent of Home Depot merchandise is now centrally ordered through these centers. About 20 percent of items, such as products from regional suppliers or trees and live plants requiring special handling will ship directly from suppliers to the stores.

Inventory management became more automated, so that Home Depot could replenish items by predicting depletion of stock, rather than waiting for items to run out. The new improved inventory management system took day-to-day general stock level decisions out of the hands of local managers and automated those orders, allowing the managers to concentrate more on purchases for special store displays or other areas that are specific to an individual location. One tool for helping Home Depot manage inventory is demand-planning software from Demand Foresight, which uses a state-of-the-art forecasting engine to help manufacturers and distributors reduce forecasting errors and increase profitability. The software targets specific, measurable improvements to customer service, inventory performance, working capital levels, and supply chain efficiency. The vendor actually hacks the product with a money-back guarantee that clients will achieve at least a 25% reduction in forecasting error and increase pre-tax profitability by 5 percent or more. Demand Foresight software is able to work within existing IT environments.

As a result of all these organizational and technological changes, inventory forecasting errors have dropped significantly. The percentage of out-of-stock items has been cut in half, and customers are finding products available 98.8 percent of the time. For example, in the unusually harsh winter of 2010, Lowe’s had run out inventory, but The Home Depot was able to respond immediately to an upsurge in demand for snow blowers, shovels, and other storm-related needs. Truck trips to make deliveries have been halved, and the job responsibilities of Home Depot store workers have shifted from the shipping docks to store aisles where they can help more customers. Savings on delivery, service, inventory, and transportation costs have increased Home Depot’s annual cash flow by $1 billion. By the autumn of 2012, Home Depot had recaptured its lead over Lowe’s.

The Home Depot spent $64 million to supply sales people with 30,000 Motorola handheld devices called First Phones. In addition to serving as phones and walkie-talkies, the handhelds allow sales associates to use scanners on the device to continuously update and review inventory levels. Associates have instant access to product information, making them more helpful to customers, who often need specific, technical information on tools and parts, and they are able to check on the spot to see if an item is in stock. The mobile devices also help speed checkout times, allowing employees to scan items for customers as they wait on line, instead of waiting until they reach the cashier. Management expected the mobile investment to pay for itself within a year by reducing labor costs, but its true value may be in enabling employees to serve customers better with real-time
information in store aisles. The helpful mobile technology could increase the amount customers spend on each trip to the store, as well as sales to new customers, an area of focus as the chain has slowed the opening of new stores.

The Home Depot has also redesigned its Web site to be more appealing, customer-friendly, and competitive. The company had initially operated the Web site as a separate business that sold items such as Xbox video games that were not carried in its retail stores. The Web site lacked capabilities for having customers order online and pick up merchandise in stores, as was possible at Lowe’s. The Web site now sells what its stores do, allows in-store pickups, and features do-it-yourself videos to help customers with their home projects. It also offers many more items than a typical store—more than 600,000 items—compared with 35,000 in a typical store. Home Depot expects most Web site sales to consist of fast-moving smaller products like light fixtures and extension cords, as well as large bulky items like vanities and appliances that people don’t want to maneuver out of the store themselves.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1-12 What problems and challenges did Home Depot experience?

1-13 Describe the relationship between management, organization, and technology at Home Depot. How did this relationship change over time?

1-14 How much was Home Depot’s management responsible for its problems? What about the role of technology and organizational factors?

1-15 Mark Holifield, Home Depot’s Vice President of Supply Chain, has noted that the company didn’t have the most leading-edge technology but it was still able to make a major change in its supply chain. Discuss the implications of this statement.

MyMISLab

Go to mymislab.com for Auto-graded writing questions as well as the following Assisted-graded writing questions.

1-16 What are the strategic objectives that firms try to achieve by investing in information systems and technologies? For each strategic objective, give an example of how a firm could use information systems to achieve the objective.

1-17 Describe the complementary assets that firms need in order to optimize returns from their information system investments. For each type of complementary asset, give an example of a specific asset a firm should have.
Chapter 1 References


LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. What are business processes? How are they related to information systems?
2. How do systems serve the different management groups in a business and how do systems that link the enterprise improve organizational performance?
3. Why are systems for collaboration and social business so important and what technologies do they use?
4. What is the role of the information systems function in a business?

MyMISLab™
Visit mymislab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.

CHAPTER CASES
Social Networking Takes Off at Kluwer
Vail Ski Resorts Goes High-Tech for High Touch
Is Social Business Working Out?
Should a Computer Grade Your Essays?

VIDEO CASES
Walmart’s Retail Link Supply Chain
Salesforce.com: The Emerging Social Enterprise
How FedEx Works: Inside the Memphis Hub
Instructional Video: US Foodservice Grows Market with Oracle CRM on Demand
Wolters Kluwer is a market-leading global information services and publishing company focused on professionals working in law, taxation, finance, and healthcare. Kluwer provides information, software, and services that deliver vital insights, intelligent tools, and guidance from subject-matter experts. Headquartered in Alphen aan den Rijn, the Netherlands, the company, in 2012, had 19,000 employees, revenue of 3.6 billion Euros (about US $4.8 billion), and operations in 40 different countries across Europe, North America, Asia-Pacific, and Latin America.

Although Kluwer has been able to provide professionals in the specialties it served with the up-to-date information they needed to do their jobs efficiently and effectively, it was unable to do so for its own employees. Management believed the company was not making the most of its own internal knowledge resources. So in early 2012, the company initiated a study of its communications channels. The study found that employees were not using Kluwer’s existing corporate intranet, and that they were not meeting management goals for collaboration and knowledge sharing. The existing intranet was “static.” In other words, it published information about the company for internal use, but the information was not updated quickly enough and the intranet lacked tools to help staff have dialogues, share ideas, and work with other members of the company, including people that they might not know. In addition, it was unclear which department or individual was responsible for maintaining this content, making it more difficult for people to add new information or updates.

What Kluwer needed was a central resource that would support dynamic knowledge-sharing. The entire staff would be able to easily locate information about the company as well as updates on the latest developments of current
initiatives and projects. Tools that would help employees work more closely together—including the ability to locate employees in other parts of the company who were experts in specific subjects—would help streamline operations and speed up key business functions.

Kluwer decided to base its solution on Microsoft Yammer, an enterprise social networking platform used by over 200,000 organizations worldwide. Yammer enables employees to create groups to collaborate on projects and share and edit documents. The service can be accessed through the Web, desktop, and mobile devices and can be integrated with other systems such as Microsoft SharePoint, to make other applications more “social.”

Management saw that early adopters of this software tool were indeed sharing information and ideas, and that Yammer could provide the foundation for a dynamic social network linking the entire company. Yammer quickly became Kluwer’s central resource for sharing company news and updates. Employees are using Yammer to collaborate on projects, share ideas, and discover people in other departments with useful expertise that could help them in their work. Yammer has even encouraged more employee interaction offline, as employees get to know their fellow workers better from their online experiences.

Management believes Yammer has been hugely successful. Over 80 percent of employees, including managers, regularly log onto Yammer to locate and share information. Staff are creating their own work spaces and groups on their own to further pool their experience and expertise. Kluwer today boasts over 21 active groups, including ones dealing with the legal field, customer experience, and innovation. The social network has been especially helpful as an incubator for new business ideas. And it is obvious that internal social networking has helped transform corporate culture into one that genuinely fosters openness and a strong sense of community. Many more employees feel closely involved with the business as a whole—something that could not have been achieved with the old system.


The experience of Kluwer illustrates how much organizations today rely on information systems to improve their performance and remain competitive. It also shows how much systems supporting collaboration and teamwork make a difference in an organization’s ability to innovate, execute, and grow profits.

The chapter-opening diagram calls attention to important points raised by this case and this chapter. Kluwer itself is very much a knowledge-intensive company, but it was hampered by outdated processes and tools for managing information that prevented employees and managers from working efficiently and effectively. This impacted the company’s ability to create and deliver leading-edge knowledge products and services.

Kluwer management decided that the best solution was to deploy new technology to move from a static corporate knowledge and work environment to one in which actively engaged employees and enabled them to obtain more knowledge from colleagues. The company implemented Microsoft Yammer as a company-wide platform for collaboration, knowledge acquisition, and knowledge transfer, and it took advantage of the software’s new “social” tools to increase employee collaboration and engagement. Kluwer now relies on its internal enterprise social network for much of employee learning and problem-solving, and Yammer integrates all of the ways employees share knowledge.
There is more effective sharing of institutional knowledge and the company has become more innovative and efficient.

New technology alone would not have solved Kluwer's problem. To make the solution effective, Kluwer had to change its organizational culture and business processes for knowledge dissemination and collaborative work, and the new technology made these changes possible.

Here are some questions to think about: How are collaboration and employee engagement keeping Kluwer competitive? How did using Yammer change the way work was performed at Kluwer?

### 2.1 What are business processes? How are they related to information systems?

In order to operate, businesses must deal with many different pieces of information about suppliers, customers, employees, invoices, and payments, and of course their products and services. They must organize work activities that use this information to operate efficiently and enhance the overall performance of the firm. Information systems make it possible for firms to manage all their information, make better decisions, and improve the execution of their business processes.

#### BUSINESS PROCESSES

Business processes, which we introduced in Chapter 1, refer to the manner in which work is organized, coordinated, and focused to produce a valuable product or service. Business processes are the collection of activities required to produce a product or service. These activities are supported by flows of material, information, and knowledge among the participants in business processes. Business processes also refer to the unique ways in which organizations coordinate work, information, and knowledge, and the ways in which management chooses to coordinate work.

To a large extent, the performance of a business firm depends on how well its business processes are designed and coordinated. A company's business processes can be a source of competitive strength if they enable the company to innovate or to execute better than its rivals. Business processes can also be liabilities if they
are based on outdated ways of working that impede organizational responsiveness and efficiency. The chapter-opening case describing Kluwer’s improvements in knowledge-sharing processes clearly illustrates these points, as do many of the other cases in this text.

Every business can be seen as a collection of business processes, some of which are part of larger encompassing processes. For instance, uses of mentoring, wikis, blogs, and videos are all part of the overall knowledge management process. Many business processes are tied to a specific functional area. For example, the sales and marketing function is responsible for identifying customers, and the human resources function is responsible for hiring employees. Table 2.1 describes some typical business processes for each of the functional areas of business.

Other business processes cross many different functional areas and require coordination across departments. For instance, consider the seemingly simple

![Figure 2.1 The Order Fulfillment Process](image)

Fulfilling a customer order involves a complex set of steps that requires the close coordination of the sales, accounting, and manufacturing functions.

**TABLE 2.1 EXAMPLES OF FUNCTIONAL BUSINESS PROCESSES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUNCTIONAL AREA</th>
<th>BUSINESS PROCESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturing and production</td>
<td>Assembling the product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Checking for quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Producing bills of materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales and marketing</td>
<td>Identifying customers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Making customers aware of the product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Selling the product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finance and accounting</td>
<td>Paying creditors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Creating financial statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Managing cash accounts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human resources</td>
<td>Hiring employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Evaluating employees’ job performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enrolling employees in benefits plans</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIGURE 2.1 THE ORDER FULFILLMENT PROCESS**
business process of fulfilling a customer order (see Figure 2.1). Initially, the sales department receives a sales order. The order passes first to accounting to ensure the customer can pay for the order either by a credit verification or request for immediate payment prior to shipping. Once the customer credit is established, the production department pulls the product from inventory or produces the product. Then the product is shipped (and this may require working with a logistics firm, such as UPS or FedEx). A bill or invoice is generated by the accounting department, and a notice is sent to the customer indicating that the product has shipped. The sales department is notified of the shipment and prepares to support the customer by answering calls or fulfilling warranty claims.

What at first appears to be a simple process, fulfilling an order, turns out to be a very complicated series of business processes that require the close coordination of major functional groups in a firm. Moreover, to efficiently perform all these steps in the order fulfillment process requires a great deal of information. The required information must flow rapidly both within the firm from one decision maker to another; with business partners, such as delivery firms; and with the customer. Computer-based information systems make this possible.

HOW INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY IMPROVES BUSINESS PROCESSES

Exactly how do information systems improve business processes? Information systems automate many steps in business processes that were formerly performed manually, such as checking a client's credit, or generating an invoice and shipping order. But today, information technology can do much more. New technology can actually change the flow of information, making it possible for many more people to access and share information, replacing sequential steps with tasks that can be performed simultaneously, and eliminating delays in decision making. New information technology frequently changes the way a business works and supports entirely new business models. Downloading a Kindle e-book from Amazon, buying a computer online at Best Buy, and downloading a music track from iTunes are entirely new business processes based on new business models that would be inconceivable without today's information technology.

That's why it's so important to pay close attention to business processes, both in your information systems course and in your future career. By analyzing business processes, you can achieve a very clear understanding of how a business actually works. Moreover, by conducting a business process analysis, you will also begin to understand how to change the business by improving its processes to make it more efficient or effective. Throughout this book, we examine business processes with a view to understanding how they might be improved by using information technology to achieve greater efficiency, innovation, and customer service.

2.2 HOW DO SYSTEMS SERVE THE DIFFERENT MANAGEMENT GROUPS IN A BUSINESS AND HOW DO SYSTEMS THAT LINK THE ENTERPRISE IMPROVE ORGANIZATIONAL PERFORMANCE?

Now that you understand business processes, it is time to look more closely at how information systems support the business processes of a firm. Because there are different interests, specialties, and levels in an organization, there are
different kinds of systems. No single system can provide all the information an organization needs.

A typical business organization has systems supporting processes for each of the major business functions—sales and marketing, manufacturing and production, finance and accounting, and human resources. You can find examples of systems for each of these business functions in the Learning Tracks for this chapter. Functional systems that operate independently of each other are becoming a thing of the past because they cannot easily share information to support cross-functional business processes. Many have been replaced with large-scale cross-functional systems that integrate the activities of related business processes and organizational units. We describe these integrated cross-functional applications later in this section.

A typical firm also has different systems supporting the decision-making needs of each of the main management groups we described in Chapter 1. Operational management, middle management, and senior management each use systems to support the decisions they must make to run the company. Let’s look at these systems and the types of decisions they support.

**SYSTEMS FOR DIFFERENT MANAGEMENT GROUPS**

A business firm has systems to support different groups or levels of management. These systems include transaction processing systems and systems for business intelligence.

**Transaction Processing Systems**

Operational managers need systems that keep track of the elementary activities and transactions of the organization, such as sales, receipts, cash deposits, payroll, credit decisions, and the flow of materials in a factory. **Transaction processing systems (TPS)** provide this kind of information. A transaction processing system is a computerized system that performs and records the daily routine transactions necessary to conduct business, such as sales order entry, hotel reservations, payroll, employee record keeping, and shipping.

The principal purpose of systems at this level is to answer routine questions and to track the flow of transactions through the organization. How many parts are in inventory? What happened to Mr. Smith’s payment? To answer these kinds of questions, information generally must be easily available, current, and accurate.

At the operational level, tasks, resources, and goals are predefined and highly structured. The decision to grant credit to a customer, for instance, is made by a lower-level supervisor according to predefined criteria. All that must be determined is whether the customer meets the criteria.

Figure 2.2 illustrates a TPS for payroll processing. A payroll system keeps track of money paid to employees. An employee time sheet with the employee’s name, social security number, and number of hours worked per week represents a single transaction for this system. Once this transaction is input into the system, it updates the system’s master file (or database—see Chapter 6) that permanently maintains employee information for the organization. The data in the system are combined in different ways to create reports of interest to management and government agencies and to send paychecks to employees.

Managers need TPS to monitor the status of internal operations and the firm’s relations with the external environment. TPS are also major producers of information for the other systems and business functions. For example, the payroll system illustrated in Figure 2.2, along with other accounting TPS, supplies data to
the company’s general ledger system, which is responsible for maintaining records of the firm’s income and expenses and for producing reports such as income statements and balance sheets. It also supplies employee payment history data for insurance, pension, and other benefits calculations to the firm’s human resources function, and employee payment data to government agencies such as the U.S. Internal Revenue Service and Social Security Administration.

Transaction processing systems are often so central to a business that TPS failure for a few hours can lead to a firm’s demise and perhaps that of other firms linked to it. Imagine what would happen to UPS if its package tracking system was not working! What would the airlines do without their computerized reservation systems?

**Systems for Business Intelligence**

Firms also have business intelligence systems that focus on delivering information to support management decision making. Business intelligence is a contemporary term for data and software tools for organizing, analyzing, and providing access to data to help managers and other enterprise users make more informed decisions. Business intelligence addresses the decision-making needs of all levels of management. This section provides a brief introduction to business intelligence. You’ll learn more about this topic in Chapters 6 and 12.

Business intelligence systems for middle management help with monitoring, controlling, decision-making, and administrative activities. In Chapter 1, we defined management information systems as the study of information systems in business and management. The term management information...
systems (MIS) also designates a specific category of information systems serving middle management. MIS provide middle managers with reports on the organization’s current performance. This information is used to monitor and control the business and predict future performance.

MIS summarize and report on the company’s basic operations using data supplied by transaction processing systems. The basic transaction data from TPS are compressed and usually presented in reports that are produced on a regular schedule. Today, many of these reports are delivered online. Figure 2.3 shows how a typical MIS transforms transaction-level data from inventory, production, and accounting into MIS files that are used to provide managers with reports. Figure 2.4 shows a sample report from this system.

MIS typically provide answers to routine questions that have been specified in advance and have a predefined procedure for answering them. For instance, MIS reports might list the total pounds of lettuce used this quarter by a fast-food chain or, as illustrated in Figure 2.4, compare total annual sales figures for specific products to planned targets. These systems generally are not flexible and have little analytical capability. Most MIS use simple routines, such as summaries and comparisons, as opposed to sophisticated mathematical models or statistical techniques.

Other types of business intelligence systems support more non-routine decision making. Decision-support systems (DSS) focus on problems that are unique and rapidly changing, for which the procedure for arriving at a solution may not be fully predefined in advance. They try to answer questions such as these: What would be the impact on production schedules if we were to double sales in the month of December? What would happen to our return on investment if a factory schedule were delayed for six months?

Although DSS use internal information from TPS and MIS, they often bring in information from external sources, such as current stock prices or product

**FIGURE 2.3 HOW MANAGEMENT INFORMATION SYSTEMS OBTAIN THEIR DATA FROM THE ORGANIZATION’S TPS**

In the system illustrated by this diagram, three TPS supply summarized transaction data to the MIS reporting system at the end of the time period. Managers gain access to the organizational data through the MIS, which provides them with the appropriate reports.
prices of competitors. These systems are employed by “super-user” managers and business analysts who want to use sophisticated analytics and models to analyze data.

An interesting, small, but powerful DSS is the voyage-estimating system of a large global shipping company that transports bulk cargoes of coal, oil, ores, and finished products. The firm owns some vessels, charters others, and bids for shipping contracts in the open market to carry general cargo. A voyage-estimating system calculates financial and technical voyage details. Financial calculations include ship/time costs (fuel, labor, capital), freight rates for various types of cargo, and port expenses. Technical details include a myriad of factors, such as ship cargo capacity, speed, port distances, fuel and water consumption, and loading patterns (location of cargo for different ports).

The system can answer questions such as the following: Given a customer delivery schedule and an offered freight rate, which vessel should be assigned at what rate to maximize profits? What is the optimal speed at which a particular vessel can optimize its profit and still meet its delivery schedule? What is the optimal loading pattern for a ship bound for the U.S. West Coast from Malaysia? Figure 2.5 illustrates the DSS built for this company. The system operates on a powerful desktop personal computer, providing a system of menus that makes it easy for users to enter data or obtain information.

The voyage-estimating DSS we have just described draws heavily on models. Other business intelligence systems are more data-driven, focusing instead on extracting useful information from massive quantities of data. For example, large ski resort companies such as Intrawest and Vail Resorts collect and store large amounts of customer data from call centers, lodging and dining reservations, ski schools, and ski equipment rental stores. They use special software to analyze these data to determine the value, revenue potential, and loyalty of each customer to help managers make better decisions about how to target their marketing programs.

The Interactive Session on Technology provides more detail on how Vail Resorts uses these data to cultivate customers and improve the customer experience. As
VAIL SKI RESORTS GOES HIGH-TECH FOR HIGH TOUCH

Vail Ski Resort is the largest single mountain ski resort in the United States, with 5,289 acres of the most diverse and expansive skiing in the world. To match its world-class skiing, Vail is also trying to offer world-class customer care—fine dining; spas and ski valets ready to haul, stow, and retrieve your equipment; heated boots; and hand-warming packets. Vail’s season pass is a top value industry-wide, and its free PEAKS Rewards membership program further inculcates customer loyalty. Members can purchase the most economical lift tickets online, link the PEAKS card to a credit card, and accumulate points that can be redeemed for free lift tickets, ski school lessons, and various discounts.

In 2012, Vail Ski Resort installed the fastest, highest capacity gondola in the United States. Seating ten people per cabin, and with an uphill speed of 1200 feet per minute, the state-of-the-art gondola carries 3600 skiers per hour while decreasing ride time from 9 to 7.5 minutes. Heated seats and Wi-Fi access make it one of the world’s most customer-friendly ski lifts as well.

Long lift lines have always created a big headache for skiers. In the past, the only way to gauge the flow of the crowd was to ask lift operators or check postings on bulletin boards at the bottom of the lifts. Now Vail skiers are able to obtain accurate up-to-the-minute lift line information by using social networking, streaming alerts, and the resort’s own Twitter account. Slope congestion can be alleviated by offering special pins or prizes to coax guests to move to a different slope. Guests can be directed to on-mountain dining locations at lunch time.

Vail now uses radio frequency identification (RFID) lift tickets and ski passes. Part of the EpicMix social media program, the tickets and passes are scanned at the base of each lift so that skiers and snowboarders can track how many lifts they ride and the vertical feet ascended each day. The scanned data are automatically transferred to an EpicMix application which can be accessed from either a smartphone or a computer. The basic program is free and confers various pins and virtual awards based on user statistics. For example, you earn the “Connoisseur” pin after 75 lifts and the “Over the Moon” pin when you surpass 350,000 vertical feet skied. After you create your EpicMix account, you can view and share stats by linking to your Facebook and Twitter accounts.

The EpicMix Racing program provides additional fun. At one of six race courses, you can compete against friends and family, all skiers, and even 2010 Olympic women’s downhill gold medalist Lindsey Vonn. At the beginning of each season, the four-time overall World Cup champion establishes a course time for race courses at Vail, Beaver Creek, Breckenridge, Keystone, Heavenly and Northstar. Race pros then ski the courses to establish their “seconds behind Lindsey.” To factor in changing course conditions, every day one of the race pros skis each course and uses his or her “seconds behind Lindsey” to determine a course time for Vonn on that particular day. When you ski a course, your actual time is automatically recorded and then adjusted for gender, age, and discipline. Snowboarders, telemark skiers, and adaptive skiers with disabilities and special needs can also participate. Scores are computed based on each skier’s “seconds behind Lindsey,” and gold, silver, and bronze medals are awarded to the top three daily. Race results and leaderboards are accessed on EpicMix.com or the EpicMix mobile app, available for Apple and Android smartphones. Your dashboard tallies your Lindsey Vonn Race Series points, EpicMix Racing medals, total number of resort check-ins, total days on a mountain, vertical feet, pins earned, and number of EpicMix photos taken.

The six race course mountains are staffed by 140 professional photographers. Photos are automatically identified and uploaded by scanning the intelligent chip embedded in the skier’s lift ticket. Photos can be captioned and shared for free on Facebook and Twitter, or you can purchase prints at a number of locations, including, of course, the Children’s Ski Schools. You can also purchase a $30.00 season package for unlimited downloads of all images taken at all locations and print them out later. All of these amenities turn a ski vacation into an “experience” that can be shared with family and friends, increasing emotional attachment and promoting customer retention.

Still, to ensure that it is fully leveraging the wealth of customer data it collects, Vail Ski Resorts’ parent company Vail Resorts implemented SAS Customer Intelligence software. Customer data were previously collected and stored in a number of unrelated systems. Now, the data are compiled in a single database that includes all customer points of contact, allowing a complete picture.
of customer habits and preferences to emerge. Rather than one or two versions of a marketing campaign, Vail Resorts now runs 30 to 50, targeted to specific groups. In the future, the company expects to expand to hundreds or even thousands of personalized, individual communications. SAS predictive analytics will help Vail Resorts to identify guest motivations and anticipate customer desires, while customer segmentation models identify profitable segments to which they might be steered. Vail Resorts plans to further personalize its engagement with its guests and enrich their mountain experiences before they have even begun.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. List and describe the types of systems described in this case study.
2. How do these systems improve the operation of the business?
3. How do these systems support decision-making? Identify 3 different decisions that can be supported by these systems.
4. Why is improving the guest experience so important at Vail Mountain Resort?

You read this case, try to identify the problems solved by Vail Resorts’ information systems and how the systems improve business operations and decision making.

Business intelligence systems also address the decision-making needs of senior management. Senior managers need systems that focus on strategic issues and long-term trends, both in the firm and in the external environment. They are concerned with questions such as: What will employment levels be in five years? What are the long-term industry cost trends? What products should we be making in five years?

**FIGURE 2.5 VOYAGE-ESTIMATING DECISION-SUPPORT SYSTEM**

This DSS operates on a powerful PC. It is used daily by managers who must develop bids on shipping contracts.
Executive support systems (ESS) help senior management make these decisions. They address non-routine decisions requiring judgment, evaluation, and insight because there is no agreed-on procedure for arriving at a solution. ESS present graphs and data from many sources through an interface that is easy for senior managers to use. Often the information is delivered to senior executives through a portal, which uses a Web interface to present integrated personalized business content.

ESS are designed to incorporate data about external events, such as new tax laws or competitors, but they also draw summarized information from internal MIS and DSS. They filter, compress, and track critical data, displaying the data of greatest importance to senior managers. Increasingly, such systems include business intelligence analytics for analyzing trends, forecasting, and “drilling down” to data at greater levels of detail.

For example, the CEO of Leiner Health Products, the largest manufacturer of private-label vitamins and supplements in the United States, has an ESS that provides on his desktop a minute-to-minute view of the firm’s financial performance as measured by working capital, accounts receivable, accounts payable, cash flow, and inventory. The information is presented in the form of a digital dashboard, which displays on a single screen graphs and charts of key performance indicators for managing a company. Digital dashboards are becoming an increasingly popular tool for management decision makers.

Contemporary business intelligence and analytics technology have promoted data-driven management, where decision makers rely heavily on analytical tools and data at their fingertips to guide their work. Data captured at the factory or sales floor level are immediately available for high-level or detailed views in executive dashboards and reports. It’s real-time management.
Reviewing all the different types of systems we have just described, you might wonder how a business can manage all the information in these different systems. You might also wonder how costly it is to maintain so many different systems. And you might wonder how all these different systems can share information and how managers and employees are able to coordinate their work. In fact, these are all important questions for businesses today.

Enterprise Applications

Getting all the different kinds of systems in a company to work together has proven a major challenge. Typically, corporations are put together both through normal “organic” growth and through acquisition of smaller firms. Over a period of time, corporations end up with a collection of systems, most of them older, and face the challenge of getting them all to “talk” with one another and work together as one corporate system. There are several solutions to this problem.

One solution is to implement enterprise applications, which are systems that span functional areas, focus on executing business processes across the business firm, and include all levels of management. Enterprise applications help businesses become more flexible and productive by coordinating their business processes more closely and integrating groups of processes so they focus on efficient management of resources and customer service.

There are four major enterprise applications: enterprise systems, supply chain management systems, customer relationship management systems, and knowledge management systems. Each of these enterprise applications integrates a related set of functions and business processes to enhance the performance of the organization as a whole. Figure 2.6 shows that the architecture for these enterprise applications encompasses processes spanning the entire organization and, in some cases, extending beyond the organization to customers, suppliers, and other key business partners.

Enterprise Systems

Firms use enterprise systems, also known as enterprise resource planning (ERP) systems, to integrate business processes in manufacturing and production, finance and accounting, sales and marketing, and human resources into a single software system. Information that was previously fragmented in many different systems is stored in a single comprehensive data repository where it can be used by many different parts of the business.

For example, when a customer places an order, the order data flow automatically to other parts of the company that are affected by them. The order transaction triggers the warehouse to pick the ordered products and schedule shipment. The warehouse informs the factory to replenish whatever has been depleted. The accounting department is notified to send the customer an invoice. Customer service representatives track the progress of the order through every step to inform customers about the status of their orders. Managers are able to use firmwide information to make more precise and timely decisions about daily operations and longer-term planning.

Supply Chain Management Systems

Firms use supply chain management (SCM) systems to help manage relationships with their suppliers. These systems help suppliers, purchasing firms, distributors, and logistics companies share information about orders, production, inventory levels, and delivery of products and services so they can source, produce, and deliver goods and services efficiently. The ultimate objective is to get the right amount of their...
products from their source to their point of consumption in the least amount of
time and at the lowest cost. These systems increase firm profitability by
lowering the costs of moving and making products and by enabling managers to
make better decisions about how to organize and schedule sourcing, produc-
tion, and distribution.

Supply chain management systems are one type of interorganizational
system because they automate the flow of information across organizational
boundaries. You will find examples of other types of interorganizational
information systems throughout this text because such systems make it possible
for firms to link electronically to customers and to outsource their work to other
companies.

Customer Relationship Management Systems Firms use customer
relationship management (CRM) systems to help manage their relationships
with their customers. CRM systems provide information to coordinate all
of the business processes that deal with customers in sales, marketing, and
service to optimize revenue, customer satisfaction, and customer retention.
This information helps firms identify, attract, and retain the most profitable
customers; provide better service to existing customers; and increase sales.

Knowledge Management Systems Some firms perform better than others
because they have better knowledge about how to create, produce, and deliver
products and services. This firm knowledge is unique, difficult to imitate, and
can be leveraged into long-term strategic benefits. Knowledge management
systems (KMS) enable organizations to better manage processes for capturing
and applying knowledge and expertise. These systems collect all relevant knowledge and experience in the firm, and make it available wherever and whenever it is needed to improve business processes and management decisions. They also link the firm to external sources of knowledge.

We examine enterprise systems and systems for supply chain management and customer relationship management in greater detail in Chapter 9. We discuss collaboration systems that support knowledge management in this chapter and cover other types of knowledge management applications in Chapter 11.

Intranets and Extranets

Enterprise applications create deep-seated changes in the way the firm conducts its business, offering many opportunities to integrate important business data into a single system. They are often costly and difficult to implement. Intranets and extranets deserve mention here as alternative tools for increasing integration and expediting the flow of information within the firm, and with customers and suppliers.

Intranets are simply internal company Web sites that are accessible only by employees. The term “intranet” refers to an internal network, in contrast to the Internet, which is a public network linking organizations and other external networks. Intranets use the same technologies and techniques as the larger Internet, and they often are simply a private access area in a larger company Web site. Likewise with extranets. Extranets are company Web sites that are accessible to authorized vendors and suppliers, and are often used to coordinate the movement of supplies to the firm’s production apparatus.

For example, Six Flags, which operates 19 theme parks throughout North America, maintains an intranet for its 2,500 full-time employees that provides company-related news and information on each park’s day-to-day operations, including weather forecasts, performance schedules, and details about groups and celebrities visiting the parks. The company also uses an extranet to broadcast information about schedule changes and park events to its 30,000 seasonal employees. We describe the technology for intranets and extranets in more detail in Chapter 7.

E-Business, E-Commerce, and E-Government

The systems and technologies we have just described are transforming firms’ relationships with customers, employees, suppliers, and logistic partners into digital relationships using networks and the Internet. So much business is now enabled by or based upon digital networks that we use the terms “electronic business” and “electronic commerce” frequently throughout this text.

Electronic business, or e-business, refers to the use of digital technology and the Internet to execute the major business processes in the enterprise. E-business includes activities for the internal management of the firm and for coordination with suppliers and other business partners. It also includes electronic commerce, or e-commerce.

E-commerce is the part of e-business that deals with the buying and selling of goods and services over the Internet. It also encompasses activities supporting those market transactions, such as advertising, marketing, customer support, security, delivery, and payment.

The technologies associated with e-business have also brought about similar changes in the public sector. Governments on all levels are using Internet technology to deliver information and services to citizens, employees, and businesses with which they work. E-government refers to the application of the Internet
and networking technologies to digitally enable government and public sector agencies’ relationships with citizens, businesses, and other arms of government.

In addition to improving delivery of government services, e-government makes government operations more efficient and also empowers citizens by giving them easier access to information and the ability to network electronically with other citizens. For example, citizens in some states can renew their driver’s licenses or apply for unemployment benefits online, and the Internet has become a powerful tool for instantly mobilizing interest groups for political action and fund-raising.

2.3 Why are systems for collaboration and social business so important and what technologies do they use?

With all these systems and information, you might wonder how is it possible to make sense of them? How do people working in firms pull it all together, work towards common goals, and coordinate plans and actions? Information systems can’t make decisions, hire or fire people, sign contracts, agree on deals, or adjust the price of goods to the marketplace. In addition to the types of systems we have just described, businesses need special systems to support collaboration and teamwork.

What is collaboration?

Collaboration is working with others to achieve shared and explicit goals. Collaboration focuses on task or mission accomplishment and usually takes place in a business, or other organization, and between businesses. You collaborate with a colleague in Tokyo having expertise on a topic about which you know nothing. You collaborate with many colleagues in publishing a company blog. If you’re in a law firm, you collaborate with accountants in an accounting firm in servicing the needs of a client with tax problems.

Collaboration can be short-lived, lasting a few minutes, or longer term, depending on the nature of the task and the relationship among participants. Collaboration can be one-to-one or many-to-many.

Employees may collaborate in informal groups that are not a formal part of the business firm’s organizational structure or they may be organized into formal teams. Teams have a specific mission that someone in the business assigned to them. Team members need to collaborate on the accomplishment of specific tasks and collectively achieve the team mission. The team mission might be to “win the game,” or “increase online sales by 10 percent.” Teams are often short-lived, depending on the problems they tackle and the length of time needed to find a solution and accomplish the mission.

Collaboration and teamwork are more important today than ever for a variety of reasons.

- Changing nature of work. The nature of work has changed from factory manufacturing and pre-computer office work where each stage in the production process occurred independently of one another, and was coordinated by supervisors. Work was organized into silos. Within a silo, work passed from one machine tool station to another, from one desktop to another, until the finished product was completed. Today, jobs require much
closer coordination and interaction among the parties involved in producing
the service or product. A recent report from the consulting firm McKinsey &
Company argued that 41 percent of the U.S. labor force is now composed of
jobs where interaction (talking, e-mailing, presenting, and persuading) is the
primary value-adding activity. Even in factories, workers today often work in
production groups, or pods.

• Growth of professional work. "Interaction" jobs tend to be professional
jobs in the service sector that require close coordination and collaboration.
Professional jobs require substantial education, and the sharing of
information and opinions to get work done. Each actor on the job brings
specialized expertise to the problem, and all the actors need to take one
another into account in order to accomplish the job.

• Changing organization of the firm. For most of the industrial age, managers
organized work in a hierarchical fashion. Orders came down the hierarchy,
and responses moved back up the hierarchy. Today, work is organized into
groups and teams, and the members are expected to develop their own
methods for accomplishing the task. Senior managers observe and measure
results, but are much less likely to issue detailed orders or operating
procedures. In part, this is because expertise and decision-making power
have been pushed down in organizations.

• Changing scope of the firm. The work of the firm has changed from a single
location to multiple locations—offices or factories throughout a region, a
nation, or even around the globe. For instance, Henry Ford developed the first
mass-production automobile plant at a single Dearborn, Michigan factory.
In 2014, Ford employed 180,000 people at around 965 plants and facilities
worldwide. With this kind of global presence, the need for close coordination
of design, production, marketing, distribution, and service obviously takes
on new importance and scale. Large global companies need to have teams
working on a global basis.

• Emphasis on innovation. Although we tend to attribute innovations in
business and science to great individuals, these great individuals are most
likely working with a team of brilliant colleagues. Think of Bill Gates and
Steve Jobs (founders of Microsoft and Apple), both of whom are highly
regarded innovators, and both of whom built strong collaborative teams
to nurture and support innovation in their firms. Their initial innovations
derived from close collaboration with colleagues and partners. Innovation, in
other words, is a group and social process, and most innovations derive from
collaboration among individuals in a lab, a business, or government agencies.
Strong collaborative practices and technologies are believed to increase the
rate and quality of innovation.

• Changing culture of work and business. Most research on collaboration
supports the notion that diverse teams produce better outputs, faster,
than individuals working on their own. Popular notions of the crowd
("crowdsourcing," and the "wisdom of crowds") also provide cultural support
for collaboration and teamwork.

WHAT IS SOCIAL BUSINESS?

Many firms today enhance collaboration by embracing social business—the
use of social networking platforms, including Facebook, Twitter, and internal
corporate social tools—to engage their employees, customers, and suppliers.
These tools enable workers to set up profiles, form groups, and "follow" each
other's status updates. The goal of social business is to deepen interactions
with groups inside and outside the firm to expedite and enhance information-
sharing, innovation, and decision making.
A key word in social business is "conversations." Customers, suppliers, employees, managers, and even oversight agencies continually have conversations about firms, often without the knowledge of the firm or its key actors (employees and managers).

Supporters of social business argue that, if firms could tune into these conversations, they would strengthen their bonds with consumers, suppliers, and employees, increasing their emotional involvement in the firm.

All of this requires a great deal of information transparency. People need to share opinions and facts with others quite directly, without intervention from executives or others. Employees get to know directly what customers and other employees think; suppliers will learn very directly the opinions of supply chain partners; and even managers presumably will learn more directly from their employees how well they are doing. Nearly everyone involved in the creation of value will know much more about everyone else.

If such an environment could be created, it is likely to drive operational efficiencies, spur innovation, and accelerate decision making. If product designers can learn directly about how their products are doing in the market in real time, based on consumer feedback, they can speed up the redesign process. If employees can use social connections inside and outside the company to capture new knowledge and insights, they will be able to work more efficiently and solve more business problems.

Table 2.2 describes important applications of social business inside and outside the firm. This chapter focuses on enterprise social business—its internal corporate uses. Chapters 7 and 10 describe social business applications relating to customers and suppliers outside the company.

**BUSINESS BENEFITS OF COLLABORATION AND SOCIAL BUSINESS**

Although many articles and books have been written about collaboration, nearly all of the research on this topic is anecdotal. Nevertheless, there is a general belief among both business and academic communities that the more a business firm is "collaborative," the more successful it will be, and that collaboration within and among firms is more essential than in the

**TABLE 2.2 APPLICATIONS OF SOCIAL BUSINESS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SOCIAL BUSINESS APPLICATION</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Social networks</td>
<td>Connect through personal and business profiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crowdsourcing</td>
<td>Harness collective knowledge to generate new ideas and solutions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shared workspaces</td>
<td>Coordinate projects and tasks; co-create content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blogs and wikis</td>
<td>Publish and rapidly access knowledge; discuss opinions and experiences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social commerce</td>
<td>Share opinions about purchasing or purchase on social platforms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File sharing</td>
<td>Upload, share, and comment on photos, videos, audio, text documents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social marketing</td>
<td>Use social media to interact with customers; derive customer insights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communities</td>
<td>Discuss topics in open forums; share expertise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
past. A recent global survey of business and information systems managers found that investments in collaboration technology produced organizational improvements that returned over four times the amount of the investment, with the greatest benefits for sales, marketing, and research and development functions (Frost and White, 2009). Another study of the value of collaboration also found that the overall economic benefit of collaboration was significant: for every word seen by an employee in e-mails from others, $70 of additional revenue was generated (Aral, Brynjolfsson, and Van Alstyne, 2007). McKinsey & Company consultants predict that social technologies used within and across enterprises could potentially raise the productivity of interaction workers by 20 to 25 percent (McKinsey, 2012).

Table 2.3 summarizes some of the benefits of collaboration and social business that have been identified. Figure 2.7 graphically illustrates how collaboration is believed to impact business performance.

**BUILDING A COLLABORATIVE CULTURE AND BUSINESS PROCESSES**

Collaboration won’t take place spontaneously in a business firm, especially if there is no supportive culture or business processes. Business firms, especially large firms, had a reputation in the past for being “command and control” organizations where the top leaders thought up all the really important matters, and then ordered lower-level employees to execute senior management plans. The job of middle management supposedly was to pass messages back and forth, up and down the hierarchy.

Command and control firms required lower-level employees to carry out orders without asking too many questions, with no responsibility to improve processes, and with no rewards for teamwork or team performance. If your work group needed help from another work group, that was something for the bosses to figure out. You never communicated horizontally, always vertically, so management could control the process. Together, the expectations of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 2.3 BUSINESS BENEFITS OF COLLABORATION AND SOCIAL BUSINESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>BENEFIT</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Innovation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financial performance (profitability, sales, and sales growth)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
management and employees formed a culture, a set of assumptions about common goals and how people should behave. Many business firms still operate this way.

A collaborative business culture and business processes are very different. Senior managers are responsible for achieving results, but rely on teams of employees to achieve and implement the results. Policies, products, designs, processes, and systems are much more dependent on teams at all levels of the organization to devise, to create, and to build. Teams are rewarded for their performance, and individuals are rewarded for their performance in a team. The function of middle managers is to build the teams, coordinate their work, and monitor their performance. The business culture and business processes are more “social.” In a collaborative culture, senior management establishes collaboration and teamwork as vital to the organization, and it actually implements collaboration for the senior ranks of the business as well.

**TOOLS AND TECHNOLOGIES FOR COLLABORATION AND SOCIAL BUSINESS**

A collaborative, team-oriented culture won’t produce benefits without information systems in place to enable collaboration and social business. Currently there are hundreds of tools designed to deal with the fact that, in order to succeed in our jobs, we are all much more dependent on one another, our fellow employees, customers, suppliers and managers. Some of these tools are expensive, but others are available online for free (or with premium versions for a modest fee). Let’s look more closely at some of these tools.
E-mail and Instant Messaging (IM)
E-mail and instant messaging (including text messaging) have been major communication and collaboration tools for interaction jobs. Their software operates on computers, cell phones, and other wireless devices and includes features for sharing files as well as transmitting messages. Many instant messaging systems allow users to engage in real-time conversations with multiple participants simultaneously. In recent years, e-mail use has declined, with messaging and social media becoming preferred channels of communication.

Wikis
Wikis are a type of Web site that makes it easy for users to contribute and edit text content and graphics without any knowledge of Web page development or programming techniques. The most well-known wiki is Wikipedia, the largest collaboratively edited reference project in the world. It relies on volunteers, makes no money and accepts no advertising.

Wikis are very useful tools for storing and sharing corporate knowledge and insights. Enterprise software vendor SAP AG has a wiki that acts as a base of information for people outside the company, such as customers and software developers who build programs that interact with SAP software. In the past, those people asked and sometimes answered questions in an informal way on SAP online forums, but that was an inefficient system, with people asking and answering the same questions over and over.

Virtual Worlds
Virtual worlds, such as Second Life, are online 3-D environments populated by “residents” who have built graphical representations of themselves known as avatars. Companies like IBM, Cisco, and Intel Corporations use the online world for meetings, interviews, guest speaker events, and employee training. Real-world people represented by avatars meet, interact, and exchange ideas at these virtual locations using gestures, chat box conversations, and voice communication.

Collaboration and Social Business Platforms
There are now suites of software products providing multi-function platforms for collaboration and social business among teams of employees who work together from many different locations. The most widely used are Internet-based audio conferencing and video conferencing systems, cloud collaboration services such as Google’s online tools and cyberlockers, corporate collaboration systems such as Microsoft SharePoint, and enterprise social networking tools such as Salesforce Chatter, Microsoft’s Yammer, Jive, and IBM Connections.

Virtual Meeting Systems
In an effort to reduce travel expenses, many companies, both large and small, are adopting videoconferencing and Web conferencing technologies. Companies such as Heinz, General Electric, and Pepsico are using virtual meeting systems for product briefings, training courses, strategy sessions, and even inspirational chats.

A videoconference allows individuals at two or more locations to communicate simultaneously through two-way video and audio transmissions. High-end videoconferencing systems feature telepresence technology, an integrated audio and visual environment which allows a person to give the appearance of being present at a location other than his or her true physical location. Free or low-cost Internet-based systems such as Skype group videoconferencing, Google+ Hangouts, Zoom, and ooVoo are of lower quality, but
still useful for smaller companies. Apple’s FaceTime is useful for one-to-one videoconferencing.

Companies of all sizes are finding Web-based online meeting tools such as Cisco WebEx, Microsoft Lync, and Adobe Connect especially helpful for training and sales presentations. These products enable participants to share documents and presentations in conjunction with audioconferencing and live video via Webcam.

**Cloud Collaboration Services: Google Tools and Cyberlockers**

Google offers many online tools and services, and some are suitable for collaboration. They include Google Drive, Google Docs, Google Apps, Google Sites, and Google +. Most are free of charge.

**Google Drive** is a file storage and synchronization service for cloud storage, file sharing and collaborative editing. Google Drive is an example of a cloud-based cyberlocker. Cyberlockers are online file-sharing services that allow users to upload files to secure online storage sites from which the files can be shared with others. Microsoft OneDrive and Dropbox are other leading cyberlocker services. They feature both free and paid services, depending on the amount of storage space and administration required. Users are able to synchronize their files stored online with their local PCs and other kinds of devices, with options for making the files private or public and for sharing them with designated contacts.

Google Drive and Microsoft OneDrive are integrated with tools for document creation and sharing. OneDrive provides online storage for Microsoft Office documents and other files and works with Microsoft Office apps, both installed and on the Web. It can share to Facebook as well. Google Drive is integrated with Google Docs, a suite of productivity applications that offer collaborative editing on documents, spreadsheets, and presentations. Google's cloud-based productivity suite for businesses (word processing, spreadsheets, presentations, calendars, and mail) called Google Apps for Business also works with Google Drive.

Google Sites allows users to quickly create online team-oriented sites where multiple people can collaborate and share files. Google + is Google's effort to make these tools and other products and services it offers more "social" for both consumer and business use. Google + users can create a profile as well as "circles," for organizing people into specific groups for sharing and collaborating. "Hangouts" enable people to engage in group video chat, with a maximum of 10 people participating at any point in time.

**Microsoft SharePoint** Microsoft SharePoint is a browser-based collaboration and document management platform, combined with a powerful search engine that is installed on corporate servers. SharePoint has a Web-based interface and close integration with everyday tools such as Microsoft Office desktop software products. SharePoint software makes it possible for employees to share their documents and collaborate on projects using Office documents as the foundation.

SharePoint can be used to host internal Web sites that organize and store information in one central workspace to enable teams to coordinate work activities, collaborate on and publish documents, maintain task lists, implement workflows, and share information via wikis and blogs. Users are able to control versions of documents and document security. Because SharePoint stores and organizes information in one place, users can find relevant information quickly and efficiently while working together closely on tasks, projects, and documents. Enterprise search tools help locate people, expertise, and content. SharePoint now features social tools.
The Fair Work Ombudsman (FWO) is an independent statutory office of the Australian federal government that provides advice and related services to employers and employees on workplace relations and entitlements. FWO has around 800 full time staff in offices in all Australian capital cities and 18 regional locations. FWO had been overwhelmed with the details of project management and compliance, with staff having to draw information from many different systems and piece it together manually. FWO implemented Microsoft Sharepoint Server to create a single organization-wide secure and reliable platform for managing and reporting on Projects, Programs, and Portfolios that would also facilitate collaboration. The Sharepoint system captures all project types undertaken by FWO; supports built-in user roles, views and security; provides storage and access to data, including project documentation; and automates workflows, including approvals, alerts and communication (Microsoft, 2014).

**IBM Notes** IBM Notes (formerly Lotus Notes) is a collaborative software system with capabilities for sharing calendars, e-mail, messaging, collective writing and editing, shared database access, and electronic meetings. Notes software installed on desktop or laptop computers obtains applications stored on an IBM Domino server. Notes is Web-enabled, and offers an application development environment so that users can build custom applications to suit their unique needs. Notes has also added capabilities for blogs, microblogs, wikis, RSS aggregators, help desk systems, voice and video conferencing, and online meetings. A related IBM product called Quickr provides more specialized tools for teamwork (team spaces, content libraries, discussion forums, wikis) and is able to access information from Notes.

IBM Notes promises high levels of security and reliability, and the ability to retain control over sensitive corporate information. Finncontainers, a Helsinki, Finland logistics company specializing in the sale, rental, and transportation of new and used shipping containers, selected Notes as a dependable collaboration platform on which to build a strong network of partners, suppliers and customers. The company did not want to miss sales opportunities if its e-mail system went down suddenly. (IBM, 2013).

**Enterprise Social Networking Tools** The tools we have just described include capabilities for supporting social business, but there are also more specialized social tools for this purpose, such as Salesforce Chatter, Microsoft’s Yammer, Jive, and IBM Connections. Enterprise social networking tools create business value by connecting the members of an organization through profiles, updates, and notifications, similar to Facebook features, but tailored to internal corporate uses. Table 2.4 provides more detail about these internal social capabilities.

Although companies have benefited from enterprise social networking, internal social networking has not caught on as quickly as consumer uses of Facebook, Twitter, and other public social networking products. The Interactive Session on Management addresses this topic.

**Checklist for Managers: Evaluating and Selecting Collaboration and Social Software Tools**

With so many collaboration and social business tools and services available, how do you choose the right collaboration technology for your firm? To answer this question, you need a framework for understanding just what problems these tools are designed to solve. One framework that has been helpful for us to talk about collaboration tools is the time/space collaboration and social tool matrix developed in the early 1990s by a number of collaborative work scholars (Figure 2.8).
The time/space matrix focuses on two dimensions of the collaboration problem: time and space. For instance, you need to collaborate with people in different time zones and you cannot all meet at the same time. Midnight in New York is noon in Bombay, so this makes it difficult to have a videoconference (the people in New York are too tired). Time is clearly an obstacle to collaboration on a global scale.

The time/space matrix can be classified in terms of whether they support interactions at the same or different time or place, and whether these interactions are remote or collocated.

**TABLE 2.4 ENTERPRISE SOCIAL NETWORKING SOFTWARE CAPABILITIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SOCIAL SOFTWARE CAPABILITY</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Profiles</td>
<td>Ability to set up member profiles describing who individuals are, educational background, interests. Includes work-related associations and expertise (skills, projects, teams).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content Sharing</td>
<td>Share, store, and manage content including documents, presentations, images, and videos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feeds and Notifications</td>
<td>Real-time information streams, status updates, and announcements from designated individuals and groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groups and Team Workspaces</td>
<td>Establish groups to share information, collaborate on documents, and work on projects, with the ability to set up private and public groups and to archive conversations to preserve team knowledge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tagging and Social Bookmarking</td>
<td>Indicate preferences for specific pieces of content, similar to the Facebook &quot;like&quot; button. Tagging lets people add keywords to identify content they like.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permissions and Privacy</td>
<td>Ability to make sure private information stays within the right circles, as determined by the nature of relationships. In enterprise social networks, there is a need to establish who in the company has permission to see what information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 2.8 THE TIME/SPACE COLLABORATION AND SOCIAL TOOL MATRIX**

Collaboration and social technologies can be classified in terms of whether they support interactions at the same or different time or place, and whether these interactions are remote or collocated.
Social networking has never been more popular, with social tools accounting for 20 percent of all online activity, according to ComScore. Many of today’s employees are already well versed in the basics of public social networking using tools such as Facebook, Twitter, and Instagram. Larry Ellison, head of the giant software firm Oracle, even went so far as to declare that social networking should be the backbone of business applications and that Facebook is a good model for how users should interact with software. But when it comes to actually using social tools for internal business purposes, the results have been mixed.

Information Week’s 2013 Social Networking in the Enterprise Survey found that only 18 percent of respondents believed their internal social networking programs were successful. The Information Week survey cited lackluster adoption as a major obstacle to success. As with many technology upgrades, companies that have tried to deploy internal social networks have found that employees are used to doing business in a certain way, and overcoming that organizational inertia can prove difficult. IT leaders hoping to switch to a more social, collaborative office culture usually find that most employees still prefer to use e-mail, for example. The employees may feel too time-pressed to learn a new software tool.

Employees who are used to collaborating and doing business in more traditional ways need an incentive to use social software. Most companies are not providing that incentive: only 22 percent of social software users believe the technology to be necessary to their jobs. You might join Facebook because all your friends are on it, but in the workplace, ease of use and increased job efficiency are more important than peer pressure in driving adoption.

IT organizations need to take charge to ensure that the internal and external social networking efforts of the company are providing genuine value to the business. Content on the networks needs to be relevant, up-to-date, and easy to access; users need to be able to connect to people that have the information they need and that would otherwise be out of reach or difficult to reach. Social business tools should be appropriate for the tasks on hand and the organization’s business processes, and users need to understand how and why to use them.

In the summer of 2009, the NASA’s Goddard Space Flight Center launched a custom-built enterprise social network called Spacebook to help small teams collaborate without e-mailing larger groups. Spacebook featured user profiles, group workspaces (wikis, file sharing, discussion forums, groups), and social bookmarks. Very few users adopted it, and Spacebook was decommissioned on June 1, 2012. According to Kevin Jones, a consulting social and organizational strategist at NASA's Marshall and Goddard Space Flight Centers, Spacebook failed because it didn’t focus enough on people. It had been designed and developed without taking into consideration the organization’s culture and politics. No one knew how Spacebook would help them do their jobs, as opposed to an existing method of collaboration such as e-mail.

Despite the pitfalls associated with launching an internal social network, there are companies using these networks successfully. For example, Red Robin, a chain of 355 restaurants with over 20,000 employees, uses social networking to give its front-line employees who interact with customers a greater voice in the company. Chris Laping, Red Robin’s CIO and senior vice-president of business transformation believed that engaging these workers would also increase employee loyalty.

Red Robin decided to try out Yammer, which is referred to as a “Facebook for business.” Yammer lets people create conversations, perform status updates, upload and share files, and set up workgroups for small project teams. The social collaboration software would allow Red Robin to get out a message and receive immediate feedback, so that the company could rapidly make modifications. For example, when Red Robin introduced its new Tavern Burger product line in April, 2012, it was able to refine the recipes and operational procedures in restaurants in about four weeks. The process would have taken 6 to 18 months in the past. Guests reported their feedback to servers in the restaurants, who relayed this information to their managers. Then all the managers got together right away on Yammer.

Red Robin used a viral approach to drive adoption. In the first month, 20 to 25 employees started using it and invited others. Membership spread quickly and Red Robin wound up with two Yammer networks:
“Yummversity” is a network for training employees, while “Yummer” is a network for restaurant managers, regional managers, and corporate office members to exchange information and respond to questions from the field staff. Yummer provides a voice for the company’s front-line workers. In the past they would pass information up the corporate management chain, but rarely received feedback about what was done with the information.

Yummer also provided the foundation for the company’s “Blueprint Project” designed to identify the best employee idea for cutting expenses without negatively impacting the customer experience. Thousands of people contributed ideas to compete for a $1000 prize. The winning entry was from a Seattle location manager who proposed replacing disposable child beverage cups with reusable ones. This seemingly small change produced a six-figure savings for the company.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. Identify the management, organization, and technology factors responsible for impeding adoption of internal corporate social networks.

2. Compare the experiences for implementing internal social networks of the two organizations. Why was one more successful than the other? What role did management play in this process?

3. Should all companies implement internal enterprise social networks? Why or why not?

Place (location) also inhibits collaboration in large global or even national and regional firms. Assembling people for a physical meeting is made difficult by the physical dispersion of distributed firms (firms with more than one location), the cost of travel, and the time limitations of managers.

The collaboration and social technologies we have just described are ways of overcoming the limitations of time and space. Using this time/space framework will help you to choose the most appropriate collaboration and teamwork tools for your firm. Note that some tools are applicable in more than one time/place scenario. For example, Internet collaboration suites such as Lotus Notes have capabilities for both synchronous (instant messaging, electronic meeting tools) and asynchronous (e-mail, wikis, document editing) interactions.

Here’s a “to-do” list to get started. If you follow these six steps, you should be led to investing in the correct collaboration software for your firm at a price you can afford, and within your risk tolerance.

1. What are the collaboration challenges facing the firm in terms of time and space? Locate your firm in the time/space matrix. Your firm can occupy more than one cell in the matrix. Different collaboration tools will be needed for each situation.

2. Within each cell of the matrix where your firm faces challenges, exactly what kinds of solutions are available? Make a list of vendor products.

3. Analyze each of the products in terms of their cost and benefits to your firm. Be sure to include the costs of training in your cost estimates, and the costs of involving the information systems department, if needed.
4. Identify the risks to security and vulnerability involved with each of the products. Is your firm willing to put proprietary information into the hands of external service providers over the Internet? Is your firm willing to risk its important operations to systems controlled by other firms? What are the financial risks facing your vendors? Will they be here in three to five years? What would be the cost of making a switch to another vendor in the event the vendor firm fails?

5. Seek the help of potential users to identify implementation and training issues. Some of these tools are easier to use than others.

6. Make your selection of candidate tools, and invite the vendors to make presentations.

2.4 What is the role of the information systems function in a business?

We’ve seen that businesses need information systems to operate today and that they use many different kinds of systems. But who is responsible for running these systems? Who is responsible for making sure the hardware, software, and other technologies used by these systems are running properly and are up to date? End users manage their systems from a business standpoint, but managing the technology requires a special information systems function.

In all but the smallest of firms, the information systems department is the formal organizational unit responsible for information technology services. The information systems department is responsible for maintaining the hardware, software, data storage, and networks that comprise the firm’s IT infrastructure. We describe IT infrastructure in detail in Chapter 5.

The information systems department consists of specialists, such as programmers, systems analysts, project leaders, and information systems managers. Programmers are highly trained technical specialists who write the software instructions for computers. Systems analysts constitute the principal liaisons between the information systems groups and the rest of the organization. It is the systems analyst's job to translate business problems and requirements into information requirements and systems. Information systems managers are leaders of teams of programmers and analysts, project managers, physical facility managers, telecommunications managers, or database specialists. They are also managers of computer operations and data entry staff. Also, external specialists, such as hardware vendors and manufacturers, software firms, and consultants, frequently participate in the day-to-day operations and long-term planning of information systems.

In many companies, the information systems department is headed by a chief information officer (CIO). The CIO is a senior manager who oversees the use of information technology in the firm. Today’s CIOs are expected to have a strong business background as well as information systems expertise and to play a leadership role in integrating technology into the firm’s business strategy. Large firms today also have positions for a chief security officer, chief knowledge officer, and chief privacy officer, all of whom work closely with the CIO.

The chief security officer (CSO) is in charge of information systems security for the firm and is responsible for enforcing the firm’s information
security policy (see Chapter 8). (Sometimes this position is called the chief information security officer [CISO] where information systems security is separated from physical security.) The CSO is responsible for educating and training users and information systems specialists about security, keeping management aware of security threats and breakdowns, and maintaining the tools and policies chosen to implement security.

Information systems security and the need to safeguard personal data have become so important that corporations collecting vast quantities of personal data have established positions for a chief privacy officer (CPO). The CPO is responsible for ensuring that the company complies with existing data privacy laws.

The chief knowledge officer (CKO) is responsible for the firm’s knowledge management program. The CKO helps design programs and systems to find new sources of knowledge or to make better use of existing knowledge in organizational and management processes.

The chief data officer (CDO) is responsible for enterprise-wide governance and utilization of information to maximize the value the organization can realize from its data. The CDO ensures that the firm is collecting the appropriate data to serve its needs, deploying appropriate technologies for analyzing the data and using the results to support business decisions. This position arose to deal with the massive amounts of data organizations are now generating and collecting (see Chapter 6).

End users are representatives of departments outside of the information systems group for whom applications are developed. These users are playing an increasingly large role in the design and development of information systems.

In the early years of computing, the information systems group was composed mostly of programmers who performed highly specialized but limited technical functions. Today, a growing proportion of staff members are systems analysts and network specialists, with the information systems department acting as a powerful change agent in the organization. The information systems department suggests new business strategies and new information-based products and services, and coordinates both the development of the technology and the planned changes in the organization.

In the next five years, employment growth in IS/MIS jobs will be about 50 percent greater than the average job growth in other fields. Out of 114 occupations, MIS is ranked 15th in terms of salaries. While all IS occupations show above-average growth, the fastest growing occupations are computer support specialists (30%), systems analysts (21%), software engineers and programmers (20%), and information systems managers (17%) (Bureau of Labor Statistics, 2012). With businesses and government agencies increasingly relying on the Internet for computing and communication resources, system and network security management positions are especially in demand. See the Learning Track for this chapter titled “Occupational and Career Outlook for Information Systems Majors 2012–2018” for more details on IS job opportunities.

**ORGANIZING THE INFORMATION SYSTEMS FUNCTION**

There are many types of business firms, and there are many ways in which the IT function is organized within the firm. A very small company will not have a formal information systems group. It might have one employee who is responsible for keeping its networks and applications running, or it might
use consultants for these services. Larger companies will have a separate information systems department, which may be organized along several different lines, depending on the nature and interests of the firm. Our Learning Track describes alternative ways of organizing the information systems function within the business.

The question of how the information systems department should be organized is part of the larger issue of IT governance. **IT governance** includes the strategy and policies for using information technology within an organization. It specifies the decision rights and framework for accountability to ensure that the use of information technology supports the organization’s strategies and objectives. How much should the information systems function be centralized? What decisions must be made to ensure effective management and use of information technology, including the return on IT investments? Who should make these decisions? How will these decisions be made and monitored? Firms with superior IT governance will have clearly thought out the answers (Weill and Ross, 2004).

### Review Summary

1. **What are business processes? How are they related to information systems?**

   A business process is a logically related set of activities that defines how specific business tasks are performed, and it represents a unique way in which an organization coordinates work, information, and knowledge. Managers need to pay attention to business processes because they determine how well the organization can execute its business, and they may be a source of strategic advantage. There are business processes specific to each of the major business functions, but many business processes are cross-functional. Information systems automate parts of business processes, and they can help organizations redesign and streamline these processes.

2. **How do systems serve the different management groups in a business and how do systems that link the enterprise improve organizational performance?**

   Systems serving operational management are transaction processing systems (TPS), such as payroll or order processing, that track the flow of the daily routine transactions necessary to conduct business. Management information systems (MIS) produce reports serving middle management by condensing information from TPS, and these are not highly analytical. Decision-support systems (DSS) support management decisions that are unique and rapidly changing using advanced analytical models. All of these types of systems provide business intelligence that helps managers and enterprise employees make more informed decisions. These systems for business intelligence serve multiple levels of management, and include executive support systems (ESS) for senior management that provide data in the form of graphs, charts, and dashboards delivered via portals using many sources of internal and external information.

   Enterprise applications are designed to coordinate multiple functions and business processes. Enterprise systems integrate the key internal business processes of a firm into a single software system to improve coordination and decision making. Supply chain management systems help the firm manage its relationship with suppliers to optimize the planning, sourcing, manufacturing, and delivery of products and services. Customer relationship management (CRM) systems coordinate the business processes surrounding the firm's customers. Knowledge management systems enable firms to optimize the creation, sharing, and distribution of knowledge. Intranets and extranets are private corporate networks based on Internet technology that assemble information from disparate systems. Extranets make portions of private corporate intranets available to outsiders.
3. **Why are systems for collaboration and social business so important and what technologies do they use?**
   Collaboration is working with others to achieve shared and explicit goals. Social business is the use of internal and external social networking platforms to engage employees, customers, and suppliers, and it can enhance collaborative work. Collaboration and social business have become increasingly important in business because of globalization, the decentralization of decision making, and growth in jobs where interaction is the primary value-adding activity. Collaboration and social business enhance innovation, productivity, quality, and customer service. Tools for collaboration and social business include e-mail and instant messaging, wikis, virtual meeting systems, virtual worlds, cloud-based cyberlockers and online services such as those of Google and Microsoft, corporate collaboration systems such as Microsoft Sharepoint, and enterprise social networking tools such as Chatter, Yammer, Jive, and IBM Connections.

4. **What is the role of the information systems function in a business?**
The information systems department is the formal organizational unit responsible for information technology services. It is responsible for maintaining the hardware, software, data storage, and networks that comprise the firm’s IT infrastructure. The department consists of specialists, such as programmers, systems analysts, project leaders, and information systems managers, and is often headed by a CIO.

### Key Terms

- **Business intelligence**, 47
- **Chief data officer (CDO)**, 68
- **Chief information officer (CIO)**, 67
- **Chief knowledge officer (CKO)**, 68
- **Chief privacy officer (CPO)**, 68
- **Chief security officer (CSO)**, 67
- **Collaboration**, 56
- **Customer relationship management (CRM) systems**, 54
- **Cyberlockers**, 62
- **Decision-support systems (DSS)**, 48
- **Digital dashboard**, 52
- **Electronic business (e-business)**, 55
- **Electronic commerce (e-commerce)**, 55
- **E-government**, 55
- **End users**, 68
- **Enterprise applications**, 53
- **Enterprise systems**, 53
- **Executive support systems (ESS)**, 52
- **Information systems department**, 67
- **Information systems managers**, 67
- **Interorganizational system**, 54
- **IT governance**, 69
- **Knowledge management systems (KMS)**, 54
- **Management information systems (MIS)**, 47
- **Portal**, 52
- **Programmers**, 67
- **Social business**, 57
- **Supply chain management (SCM) systems**, 53
- **Systems analysts**, 67
- **Teams**, 56
- **Telepresence**, 61
- **Transaction processing systems (TPS)**, 46

### Review Questions

**2-1** What are business processes? How are they related to information systems?
- Define business processes and describe the role they play in organizations.
- Describe the relationship between information systems and business processes.

**2-2** How do systems serve the different management groups and how do systems that link the enterprise improve organizational performance?
- Describe the characteristics of transaction processing systems (TPS) and the roles they play in a business and how do systems that
link the enterprise improve organizational performance?

- Describe the characteristics of management information systems (MIS) and explain how MIS differ from TPS and from DSS.
- Describe the characteristics of decision-support systems (DSS) and how they benefit businesses.
- Describe the characteristics of executive support systems (ESS) and explain how these systems differ from DSS.
- Explain how enterprise applications improve organizational performance.
- Define enterprise systems, supply chain management systems, customer relationship management systems, and knowledge management systems and describe their business benefits.
- Explain how intranets and extranets help firms integrate information and business processes.

**Discussion Questions**

2-5 How could information systems be used to support the order fulfillment process illustrated in Figure 2.1? What are the most important pieces of information these systems should capture? Explain your answer.

2-6 Identify the steps that are performed in the process of selecting and checking out a book from your college library and the information that flows among these activities. Diagram the process. Are there any ways this process could be changed to improve the performance of your library or your school? Diagram the improved process.

2-7 Use the Time/Space Collaboration and Social Tool Matrix to classify the collaboration and social technologies used by Kluwer.

**Hands-On MIS Projects**

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience analyzing opportunities to improve business processes with new information system applications, using a spreadsheet to improve decision making about suppliers, and using Internet software to plan efficient transportation routes.

**Management Decision Problems**

2-8 Don’s Lumber Company on the Hudson River features a large selection of materials for flooring, decks, moldings, windows, siding, and roofing. The prices of lumber and other building materials are constantly changing. When a customer inquires about the price on pre-finished wood flooring, sales representatives consult a manual price sheet and then call the supplier for the most recent price. The supplier in turn uses a manual price sheet, which has been updated each day. Often, the supplier must call back Don’s sales reps because the company does not have the newest pricing information immediately on hand. Assess the business impact of this situation, describe how this process could be improved with information technology, and identify the decisions that would have to be made to implement a solution.
Henry’s Hardware is a small family business in Sacramento, California. The owners, Henry and Kathleen, must use every square foot of store space as profitably as possible. They have never kept detailed inventory or sales records. As soon as a shipment of goods arrives, the items are immediately placed on store shelves. Invoices from suppliers are only kept for tax purposes. When an item is sold, the item number and price are rung up at the cash register. The owners use their own judgment in identifying items that need to be reordered. What is the business impact of this situation? How could information systems help Henry and Kathleen run their business? What data should these systems capture? What decisions could the systems improve?

**Improving Decision Making: Using a Spreadsheet to Select Suppliers**

Software skills: Spreadsheet date functions, data filtering, DAVERAGE function  
Business skills: Analyzing supplier performance and pricing

In this exercise, you will learn how to use spreadsheet software to improve management decisions about selecting suppliers. You will filter transactional data on suppliers based on several different criteria to select the best suppliers for your company.

You run a company that manufactures aircraft components. You have many competitors who are trying to offer lower prices and better service to customers, and you are trying to determine whether you can benefit from better supply chain management. In MyMISLab, you will find a spreadsheet file that contains a list of all of the items that your firm has ordered from its suppliers during the past three months. The fields in the spreadsheet file include vendor name, vendor identification number, purchaser's order number, item identification number and item description (for each item ordered from the vendor), cost per item, number of units of the item ordered (quantity), total cost of each order, vendor's accounts payable terms, order date, and actual arrival date for each order.

Prepare a recommendation of how you can use the data in this spreadsheet database to improve your decisions about selecting suppliers. Some criteria to consider for identifying preferred suppliers include the supplier's track record for on-time deliveries, suppliers offering the best accounts payable terms, and suppliers offering lower pricing when the same item can be provided by multiple suppliers. Use your spreadsheet software to prepare reports to support your recommendations.

**Achieving Operational Excellence: Using Internet Software to Plan Efficient Transportation Routes**

Software skills: Internet-based software  
Business skills: Transportation planning

In this exercise, you will use MapQuest software to map out transportation routes for a business and select the most efficient route.

You have just started working as a dispatcher for Cross-Country Transport, a new trucking and delivery service based in Cleveland, Ohio. Your first assignment is to plan a delivery of office equipment and furniture from Elkhart, Indiana (at the corner of E. Indiana Ave. and Prairie Street) to Hagerstown, Maryland (corner of Eastern Blvd. N. and Potomac Ave.). To guide your trucker, you need to know the most efficient route between the two cities. Use MapQuest to find the route that is the shortest distance between the two cities. Use MapQuest again to find the route that takes the least time. Compare the results. Which route should Cross-Country use?

**Collaboration and Teamwork Project**

In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Docs, Google Sites, Google+, or other open-source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.
Would you like your college essays graded by a computer? Well, you just might find that happening in your next course. In April 2013, EdX, a Harvard/MIT joint venture to develop massively open online courses (MOOCs), launched an essay scoring program. Using artificial intelligence technology, essays and short answers are immediately scored and feedback tendered, allowing students to revise, resubmit, and improve their grade as many times as necessary. The non-profit organization is offering the software free to any institution that wants to use it. From a pedagogical standpoint—if the guidance is sound—immediate feedback and the ability to directly act on it is an optimal learning environment. But while proponents trumpet automated essay grading’s superiority to students waiting days or weeks for returned papers—which they may or may not have the opportunity to revise—as well as the time-saving benefit for instructors, critics doubt that humans can be replaced.

In 2012, Les Perelman, the former director of writing at MIT, countered a paper touting the proficiency of automated essay scoring (AES) software. University of Akron College of Education dean, Mark Shermis, and co-author, data scientist Ben Hamner used AES programs from nine companies, including Pearson and McGraw-Hill, to rescoring over 16,000 middle and high school essays from six different state standardized tests. Their Hewlett Foundation sponsored study found that machine scoring closely tracked human grading, and in some cases, produced a more accurate grade. Perelman, however, found that no direct statistical comparison between the human graders and the programs was performed. While Shermis concedes that regression analysis was not performed—because the software companies imposed this condition in order to allow him and Hamner to test their products—he unsurprisingly accuses Perelman of evaluating their work without performing research of his own.

Perelman has in fact conducted studies on the Electronic Essay Rater (e-rater) developed by the Educational Testing Service (ETS)—the only organization that would allow him access. The e-rater uses syntactic variety, discourse structure (like PEG) and content analysis (like IEA) and is based on natural language processing technology. It applies statistical analysis to linguistic features like argument formation and syntactic variety to determine scores, but also gives weight to vocabulary and topical content. In the month granted him, Perelman analyzed the algorithms and toyed with the e-Rater, confirming his prior critiques. The major problem with AES programs (so far) is that they cannot distinguish fact from fiction. For example, in response to an essay prompt about the causes for the steep rise in the cost of higher education, Perelman wrote that the main driver was greedy teaching assistants whose salaries were six times that of college presidents with exorbitant benefits packages including South Seas vacations, private jets, and movie contracts. He supplemented the argument with a line from Allen Ginsberg’s “Howl,” and received the top score of 6. The metrics that merited this score included overall length, paragraph length, number of words per sentence, word length, and the use of conjunctive adverbs such as “however” and “moreover.” Since computer programs cannot divine meaning, essay length is a proxy for writing fluency, conjunctive adverb use for complex thinking, and big words for vocabulary aptitude.

Program vendors such as Pearson and Vantage Learning defend these parameters, asserting that they are highly correlated. Good writers have acquired skills that enable them to write more under time constraints; they use more complex vocabulary, and they understand how to introduce, interrupt, connect, and conclude complex ideas—the jobs of conjunctive adverbs. AES programs also recognize sentence fragments and dock students for sentences that begin with “and” or “or.” However, professional writers know how to employ both to great effect. Perelman and a newly formed group of educators, Professionals Against Machine Scoring of Student Essays in High-Stakes Assessment, warn that writing instruction will be dumbed down to meet the limited and rigid metrics machines are capable of measuring.

The productivity gains from using automated essay-grading software will undoubtedly take away some of the jobs of the graders hired by the standardized test companies. Pearson, for example, ostensibly pays its graders between $40 and $60 per hour. In that hour, a grader is expected to score between 20
and 30 essays—that's two to three minutes (and dollars) per essay. Clearly graders must use some type of shorthand metrics in order to score this quickly, but at least they can recognize as false the statement that on July 4, 2013, the United States observed its 2,013th birthday, even if it is contained in a well-constructed sentence. While the e-Rater can score 16,000 essays in 20 seconds, it cannot make this distinction. And presumably, a 716-word essay containing multiple nonsense sentences will not receive a 6 from a human grader while a 150-word shorter, factual, well-reasoned essay scores a 5, as Perelman was able to demonstrate.

ETS, developer of the SAT, GRE, Praxis, and K-12 standardized tests for multiple states, counters that the e-Rater is not replacing human graders in high-stakes tests; it is supplementing them. Essays are scored by both human and machine and when the scores do not match, a second human breaks the impasse. Furthermore, they posit that the test prep course Perelman developed to teach students how to beat AES software requires higher-order thinking skills—precisely those the tests seek to measure. Thus, if students can master Perelman’s techniques, they have likely earned their 6. Pearson adds that its Intelligent Essay Assessor is primarily a classroom tool, allowing students to revise their essays multiple times before turning them in to a teacher to be graded. But for many states looking to introduce writing sections to their battery of K-12 standardized tests, and for those that abandoned the effort due to the cost, eliminating graders altogether will make them affordable. And the stakes are not insubstantial for failure to achieve passing grades on state standardized tests, ranging from retesting, to remedial programs, to summer school, to non-promotion.

The free EdXtool appears to be more sophisticated than some vendor offerings in that it is “trainable” with at least some ability to develop grading standards and to adapt to grading preferences. First, instructors grade 100 essays or essay questions, and these are input to the program. Using these guidelines, the tool develops customized grading metrics and follows the scoring method preferred by the instructor, either a numerical system or letter grade. As noted by Shermis, in many lesser-ranked colleges than those of the critics, classes are now so large as to render comprehensive writing feedback infeasible. Moreover, at top universities, the instructional level is higher with fewer students in need of remediation. Down in the educational trenches, a tool that can adequately simulate human scoring, with no greater variation than that seen from instructor to instructor, and that provides immediate guidance, is a welcome addition to the instructional toolbox. But as demands on instructor’s time decrease, will university administrators push staff cutbacks to meet budgetary constraints? Will fewer and fewer instructors be teaching more and more students?

As MOOC and AES proliferate, the answer is: most likely. EdX is quickly becoming controversial in academic circles. Presently, its course offerings are free and students earn a certificate of completion, but not course credit. To become self-sustaining, however, the non-profit plans to offer its MOOC platform as a “self-service” system, which faculty members can use to develop courses specifically branded for their universities. EdX will then receive the first $50,000 in revenue generated from the course or $10,000 for a recurring course. Thereafter, revenue will be split 50–50 between the university and EdX. A second revenue-generating model offers universities “production help” with course development, charging them $250,000 for a new course and $50,000 each term the course is offered again. If a course is successful, the university receives 70% of the revenue, as long as EdX has been fully compensated for any self-service courses. However, in order to generate enough revenue to share with its 12 university partners, which now include University of California, Berkeley, Wellesley, Georgetown, and the University of Texas, a licensing model is likely. Tested at no charge at San Jose State University in 2012, an EdX MOOC served as the basis for a blended online engineering course. The enriched curriculum resulted in an increased passing rate from 60% to 91%. If course licensing becomes the key revenue stream, Anant Agarwal, the electrical engineer president of EdX, foresees this happening in closed classrooms with limited enrollment.

But some members of the San Jose State faculty are nonetheless alarmed. When a second EdX MOOC, JusticeX, was considered, the Philosophy department sent a sharply-worded letter addressed to Harvard course developer, Michael Sandel, but actually leveled at university administrators. Asserting that the department did not have an academic problem in need of remediation and was not lacking faculty to teach its equivalent course, it did not shy from attacking the economic motives behind public universities’ embrace of MOOCs. The authors further asserted that MOOCs represented a decline in educational quality and noted the irony involved when a social justice course was the vehicle for perpetrating a social injustice—a long-term effort to “dismantle departments and replace professors.”
Sandel’s conciliatory response expressed his desire to share free educational resources, his aversion to undercutting colleagues, and a call for a serious debate at both EdX and in the higher education community.

Other universities are similarly pushing back, against both EdX and other new MOOC ventures such as Coursera and Udacity, founded by Stanford faculty members. MOOCs and AES are inextricably linked. Massive online courses require automated assessment systems. And both Coursera and Udacity have expressed their commitment to using them due to the value of immediate feedback. Amherst College faculty voted against joining the EdX consortium. Duke University faculty members thwarted administration attempts to join nine other universities and educational technology company 2U in a venture to develop a collection of for-credit undergraduate courses.

But EdX was founded by two of the most prominent universities in the United States, has gathered prestigious partners, and is already shaping educational standards. Stanford, for one, has decided to get on board; it adopted the OpenEdX open-source platform and began offering a summer reading program for freshman and two public courses in the summer of 2013. Stanford will collaborate with EdX on the future development of OpenEdX and will offer both public and university classes on it.

So while Professor Perelman jokes that his former computer science major students could develop an Android app capable of spitting out formulaic essays that would get a 6 from e-Rater, cutting humans completely out of the equation, he knows that serious issues are in play. What educational outcomes will result from diminishing human interaction and input? Will AI develop to the point that truth, accuracy, effective organization, persuasiveness, argumentation and supporting evidence can be evaluated? And how many more jobs in education will disappear as a result?


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

2-13 Identify the kinds of systems described in this case.

2-14 What are the benefits of automated essay grading? What are the drawbacks?

2-15 Can automated essay grading replace a human grader? Why or why not?

2-16 What management, organization, and technology factor should be considered when deciding whether to use AES?

2-17 Would you be suspicious of a low grade you received on a paper graded by AES software? Why or why not? Would you request a review by a human grader?

MyMISLab

Go to mymislab.com for Auto-graded writing questions as well as the following Assisted-graded writing questions.

2-18 Identify and describe the capabilities of enterprise social networking software. Describe how a firm could use each of these capabilities.

2-19 Describe the systems used by various management groups within the firm in terms of the information they use, their outputs, and groups served.
Chapter 2 References


Forrester Consulting, "Total Economic Impact of IBM Social Collaboration Tools" (September 2010).


Violino, Bob. "What Is Driving the Need for Chief Data Officers?" Information Management (February 3, 2014).

This page intentionally left blank
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. Which features of organizations do managers need to know about to build and use information systems successfully?
2. What is the impact of information systems on organizations?
3. How do Porter’s competitive forces model, the value chain model, synergies, core competencies, and network economics help companies develop competitive strategies using information systems?
4. What are the challenges posed by strategic information systems and how should they be addressed?

MyMISLab™
Visit mymislab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.

CHAPTER CASES
Should T.J. Maxx Sell Online?
Nike Becomes a Technology Company
Identifying Market Niches in the Age of Big Data
Who’s The World’s Top Retailer? Walmart and Amazon Duke It Out

VIDEO CASES
National Basketball Association:
Competing on Global Delivery with Akamai OS Streaming
IT and Geo-Mapping Help a Small Business Succeed
Materials Handling Equipment Corp:
Enterprise Systems Drive Corporate Strategy for a Small Business
Instructional Video: SAP BusinessOne ERP:
From Orders to Payment
T.J. Maxx, the giant off-price clothing retailer with over 1,000 stores across the U.S., has been a relative latecomer to online selling. It didn’t launch its e-commerce platform until September 2013, many years after rivals such as Target and Kohl’s did so. (The company made a feeble effort to sell online in 2004, but quickly pulled back after a year of lower than expected sales and too much time and money spent on updating inventory.) So why did T.J. Maxx wait so long to try again?

There are several reasons. First, it is difficult for an off-price store like T.J. Maxx to provide a stable and predictable inventory for online purchases. T.J. Maxx buys excess inventory and off-season fashions from a vast network of department stores and manufacturers, 15 percent of which are merchandise left over from the year before. But it buys these items in much smaller lots than traditional retailers such as Nordstrom or Macy’s, with much of its inventory consisting of one-time items in small quantities. Macy’s might order 1,000 Under Armour blue zippered long-sleeve tops for all sizes small through extra-large, whereas T.J. Maxx might have 20 blue Under Armour zippered long-sleeve tops, 30 pairs of purple Nike basketball shoes in assorted sizes, and 3 pairs of Adidas soccer socks in extra-small size. Whereas traditional department stores tend to buy seasonally, T.J. Maxx has new brand name and designer fashions arriving every week. The inventory varies a great deal from one store to the next, and you never knew what you’ll find when you visit a T.J. Maxx store. Shoppers are lured into the stores in the hope that they might find a really hot bargain and that only might be available for a few days. High-end clothing brands such as Polo Ralph Lauren or Nicole Miller do not want to see their merchandise deeply
discounted online. Additionally, an online storefront can cannibalize in-store sales, and management was worried about that as well.

On the other hand, ignoring e-commerce can mean losing market share to competitors. And e-commerce has opened the doors to many more competitors for T.J. Maxx. Today's budget shopper is bombarded with bargains and discount shopping opportunities from many more sources. These include Web-only off-price stores such as Overstock.com and sites such as Rue LaLa and Gilt Groupe with short-term deals known as “flash sales.” Brick-and-mortar outlet stores have also expanded, occupying 68 million square feet of retail space, compared to 56 million in 2006, according to Value Retail News. Even high-end retailers such as Neiman Marcus and Bloomingdales have set up discount outlets. T.J. Maxx management felt it had to take the online leap.

In 2012, T.J. Maxx's parent company TJX purchased off-price Internet retailer Sierra Trading Post to learn about selling online. The new T.J. Maxx site tries to preserve the feel of its stores. You can't just search “Nanette Lepore”—you must comb through all women's dresses or shoes. Online shoppers may or may not like that. The retailer is also experimenting with its own flash sale site called Maxx Flash. Unlike other flash sites, this one can accept returns at stores and resell items there.

T.J. Maxx has not yet furnished performance metrics for the site, so analysts still don't have a precise idea of how much value is being created. But it is possible to roughly estimate the platform's potential contribution to profit once it ramps up after three or four years. Profit margins from online sales tend to be higher by 7 percentage points on average than those from brick-and-mortar stores. If T.J. Maxx's operating margin was 12% (as occurred in fiscal 2012) and it obtained 10% of its revenue from e-commerce, an operating margin of 18% would add about 45 cents, or 13.6%, to fiscal 2014 earnings per share, according to financial services firm Sterne Agee estimates. A more conservative estimate, with e-commerce making up only 6% of sales and margins coming in at 16%, would still add 24 cents to earnings per share. At this point, company management feels the plunge into e-commerce is worth the risk.


T.J. Maxx's story illustrates some of the ways that information systems help businesses compete, as well as the challenges of finding the right business strategy and how to use technology in that strategy. Retailing today is an extremely crowded playing field, both online and in physical brick-and-mortar stores. Even though T.J. Maxx is a leading off-price retailer, it has many competitors, and it is searching for a way to use the Internet that will work with its particular business model.

The chapter-opening diagram calls attention to important points raised by this case and this chapter. T.J. Maxx, part of the TJX group of retail stores, including Marshall's and Home Goods, has been a highly successful off-price retailer, with over 1,000 stores in the US alone. Its business model depends on picking up department store and designer excess inventory or last year's fashions and selling at low prices to appeal to opportunistic shoppers. That business model is being challenged by more off-price competitors, both physical stores, and off-price and “flash sale” sites on the Internet. T.J. Maxx would like to do more selling online because profit margins are higher, but its inability to provide a reliable and stable inventory has impeded this effort.
The company is making one more big push into online retailing, learning from the experience of Sierra Trading Post, but it is still unclear if an online business strategy will work.

Here are some questions to think about: How do the competitive forces and value chain models apply to T.J. Maxx? Visit the T.J. Maxx Web site and examine its offerings and ease of use. Do you thing selling on the Internet will work for T.J. Maxx? Why or why not?

### 3.1 Which features of organizations do managers need to know about to build and use information systems successfully?

Information systems and organizations influence one another. Information systems are built by managers to serve the interests of the business firm. At the same time, the organization must be aware of and open to the influences of information systems to benefit from new technologies.

The interaction between information technology and organizations is complex and is influenced by many mediating factors, including the organization’s structure, business processes, politics, culture, surrounding environment, and management decisions (see Figure 3.1). You will need to understand how information systems can change social and work life in your firm. You will not be able to design new systems successfully or understand existing systems without understanding your own business organization.

As a manager, you will be the one to decide which systems will be built, what they will do, and how they will be implemented. You may not be able to anticipate all of the consequences of these decisions. Some of the changes that occur in business firms because of new information technology (IT) investments cannot be foreseen and have results that may or may not meet your expectations. Who would have imagined fifteen years ago, for instance, that e-mail and instant messaging would become a dominant form of business
communication and that many managers would be inundated with more than 200 e-mail messages each day?

WHAT IS AN ORGANIZATION?

An organization is a stable, formal social structure that takes resources from the environment and processes them to produce outputs. This technical definition focuses on three elements of an organization. Capital and labor are primary production factors provided by the environment. The organization (the firm) transforms these inputs into products and services in a production function. The products and services are consumed by environments in return for supply inputs (see Figure 3.2).

FIGURE 3.2  THE TECHNICAL MICROECONOMIC DEFINITION OF THE ORGANIZATION

In the microeconomic definition of organizations, capital and labor (the primary production factors provided by the environment) are transformed by the firm through the production process into products and services (outputs to the environment). The products and services are consumed by the environment, which supplies additional capital and labor as inputs in the feedback loop.
An organization is more stable than an informal group (such as a group of friends that meets every Friday for lunch) in terms of longevity and routine-ness. Organizations are formal legal entities with internal rules and procedures that must abide by laws. Organizations are also social structures because they are a collection of social elements, much as a machine has a structure—a particular arrangement of valves, cams, shafts, and other parts.

This definition of organizations is powerful and simple, but it is not very descriptive or even predictive of real-world organizations. A more realistic behavioral definition of an organization is a collection of rights, privileges, obligations, and responsibilities delicately balanced over a period of time through conflict and conflict resolution (see Figure 3.3).

In this behavioral view of the firm, people who work in organizations develop customary ways of working; they gain attachments to existing relationships; and they make arrangements with subordinates and superiors about how work will be done, the amount of work that will be done, and under what conditions work will be done. Most of these arrangements and feelings are not discussed in any formal rulebook.

How do these definitions of organizations relate to information systems technology? A technical view of organizations encourages us to focus on how inputs are combined to create outputs when technology changes are introduced into the company. The firm is seen as infinitely malleable, with capital and labor substituting for each other quite easily. But the more realistic behavioral definition of an organization suggests that building new information systems, or rebuilding old ones, involves much more than a technical rearrangement of machines or workers—that some information systems change the organizational balance of rights, privileges, obligations, responsibilities, and feelings that have been established over a long period of time.

Changing these elements can take a long time, be very disruptive, and requires more resources to support training and learning. For instance, the length of time required to implement a new information system effectively is much longer than usually anticipated simply because there is a lag between implementing a technical system and teaching employees and managers how to use the system.

**FIGURE 3.3 THE BEHAVIORAL VIEW OF ORGANIZATIONS**

![Diagram of formal organization](image)

The behavioral view of organizations emphasizes group relationships, values, and structures.
Technological change requires changes in who owns and controls information, who has the right to access and update that information, and who makes decisions about whom, when, and how. This more complex view forces us to look at the way work is designed and the procedures used to achieve outputs.

The technical and behavioral definitions of organizations are not contradictory. Indeed, they complement each other: The technical definition tells us how thousands of firms in competitive markets combine capital, labor, and information technology, whereas the behavioral model takes us inside the individual firm to see how that technology affects the organization’s inner workings. Section 3.2 describes how each of these definitions of organizations can help explain the relationships between information systems and organizations.

**FEATURES OF ORGANIZATIONS**

All modern organizations share certain characteristics. They are bureaucracies with clear-cut divisions of labor and specialization. Organizations arrange specialists in a hierarchy of authority in which everyone is accountable to someone and authority is limited to specific actions governed by abstract rules or procedures. These rules create a system of impartial and universal decision making. Organizations try to hire and promote employees on the basis of technical qualifications and professionalism (not personal connections). The organization is devoted to the principle of efficiency: maximizing output using limited inputs. Other features of organizations include their business processes, organizational culture, organizational politics, surrounding environments, structure, goals, constituencies, and leadership styles. All of these features affect the kinds of information systems used by organizations.

**Routines and Business Processes**

All organizations, including business firms, become very efficient over time because individuals in the firm develop routines for producing goods and services. Routines—sometimes called standard operating procedures—are precise rules, procedures, and practices that have been developed to cope with virtually all expected situations. As employees learn these routines, they become highly productive and efficient, and the firm is able to reduce its costs over time as efficiency increases. For instance, when you visit a doctor’s office, receptionists have a well-developed set of routines for gathering basic information from you; nurses have a different set of routines for preparing you for an interview with a doctor; and the doctor has a well-developed set of routines for diagnosing you. Business processes, which we introduced in Chapters 1 and 2, are collections of such routines. A business firm, in turn, is a collection of business processes (Figure 3.4).

**Organizational Politics**

People in organizations occupy different positions with different specialties, concerns, and perspectives. As a result, they naturally have divergent viewpoints about how resources, rewards, and punishments should be distributed. These differences matter to both managers and employees, and they result in political struggle for resources, competition, and conflict within every organization. Political resistance is one of the great difficulties of bringing about organizational change—especially the development of new information systems. Virtually all large information systems investments by a firm that bring about significant
changes in strategy, business objectives, business processes, and procedures become politically charged events. Managers who know how to work with the politics of an organization will be more successful than less-skilled managers in implementing new information systems. Throughout this book, you will find many examples where internal politics defeated the best-laid plans for an information system.

**Organizational Culture**

All organizations have bedrock, unassailable, unquestioned (by the members) assumptions that define their goals and products. Organizational culture encompasses this set of assumptions about what products the organization should produce, how it should produce them, where, and for whom. Generally, these cultural assumptions are taken totally for granted and are rarely publicly announced or discussed. Business processes—the actual way business firms produce value—are usually enshrouded in the organization's culture.

You can see organizational culture at work by looking around your university or college. Some bedrock assumptions of university life are that professors know more than students, the reason students attend college is to learn, and classes follow a regular schedule. Organizational culture is a powerful
unifying force that restrains political conflict and promotes common understanding, agreement on procedures, and common practices. If we all share the same basic cultural assumptions, agreement on other matters is more likely.

At the same time, organizational culture is a powerful restraint on change, especially technological change. Most organizations will do almost anything to avoid making changes in basic assumptions. Any technological change that threatens commonly held cultural assumptions usually meets a great deal of resistance. However, there are times when the only sensible way for a firm to move forward is to employ a new technology that directly opposes an existing organizational culture. When this occurs, the technology is often stalled while the culture slowly adjusts.

Organizational Environments

Organizations reside in environments from which they draw resources and to which they supply goods and services. Organizations and environments have a reciprocal relationship. On the one hand, organizations are open to, and dependent on, the social and physical environment that surrounds them. Without financial and human resources—people willing to work reliably and consistently for a set wage or revenue from customers—organizations could not exist. Organizations must respond to legislative and other requirements imposed by government, as well as the actions of customers and competitors. On the other hand, organizations can influence their environments. For example, business firms form alliances with other businesses to influence the political process; they advertise to influence customer acceptance of their products.

Figure 3.5 illustrates the role of information systems in helping organizations perceive changes in their environments and also in helping organizations act on their environments. Information systems are key instruments for

**FIGURE 3.5 ENVIRONMENTS AND ORGANIZATIONS HAVE A RECIPROCAL RELATIONSHIP**

Environments shape what organizations can do, but organizations can influence their environments and decide to change environments altogether. Information technology plays a critical role in helping organizations perceive environmental change and in helping organizations act on their environment.
**environmental scanning**, helping managers identify external changes that might require an organizational response.

Environments generally change much faster than organizations. New technologies, new products, and changing public tastes and values (many of which result in new government regulations) put strains on any organization’s culture, politics, and people. Most organizations are unable to adapt to a rapidly changing environment. Inertia built into an organization's standard operating procedures, the political conflict raised by changes to the existing order, and the threat to closely held cultural values inhibit organizations from making significant changes. Young firms typically lack resources to sustain even short periods of troubled times. It is not surprising that only 10 percent of the Fortune 500 companies in 1919 still exist today.

**Disruptive Technologies: Riding the Wave.** Sometimes a technology and resulting business innovation comes along to radically change the business landscape and environment. These innovations are loosely called “disruptive.” (Christensen, 2003). What makes a technology disruptive? In some cases, **disruptive technologies** are substitute products that perform as well as or better (often much better) than anything currently produced. The car substituted for the horse-drawn carriage; the word processor for typewriters; the Apple iPod for portable CD players; digital photography for process film photography.

In these cases, entire industries were put out of business. In other cases, disruptive technologies simply extend the market, usually with less functionality and much less cost, than existing products. Eventually they turn into low-cost competitors for whatever was sold before. Disk drives are an example: Small hard disk drives used in PCs extended the market for disk drives by offering cheap digital storage for small files. Eventually, small PC hard disk drives became the largest segment of the disk drive marketplace.

Some firms are able to create these technologies and ride the wave to profits; others learn quickly and adapt their business; still others are obliterated because their products, services, and business models become obsolete. They may be very efficient at doing what no longer needs to be done! There are also cases where no firms benefit, and all the gains go to consumers (firms fail to capture any profits). Table 3.1 describes just a few disruptive technologies from the past.

Disruptive technologies are tricky. Firms that invent disruptive technologies as “first movers” do not always benefit if they lack the resources to exploit the technology or fail to see the opportunity. The MITS Altair 8800 is widely regarded as the first PC, but its inventors did not take advantage of their first mover status. Second movers, so-called “fast followers” such as IBM and Microsoft, reaped the rewards. Citibank's ATMs revolutionized retail banking, but they were copied by other banks. Now all banks use ATMs, with the benefits going mostly to the consumers.

**Organizational Structure**

All organizations have a structure or shape. Mintzberg's classification, described in Table 3.2, identifies five basic kinds of organizational structure (Mintzberg, 1979).

The kind of information systems you find in a business firm—and the nature of problems with these systems—often reflects the type of organizational structure. For instance, in a professional bureaucracy such as a hospital, it is not unusual to find parallel patient record systems operated by the administration, another by doctors, and another by other professional staff such as nurses and social workers. In small entrepreneurial firms, you will often find poorly
designed systems developed in a rush that often quickly outgrow their usefulness. In huge multidivisional firms operating in hundreds of locations, you will often find there is not a single integrating information system, but instead each locale or each division has its set of information systems.

**TABLE 3.1 DISRUPTIVE TECHNOLOGIES: WINNERS AND LOSERS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TECHNOLOGY</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>WINNERS AND LOSERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Microprocessor chips (1971)</td>
<td>Thousands and eventually millions of transistors on a silicon chip</td>
<td>Microprocessor firms win (Intel, Texas Instruments) while transistor firms (GE) decline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal computers (1975)</td>
<td>Small, inexpensive, but fully functional desktop computers</td>
<td>PC manufacturers (HP, Apple, IBM), and chip manufacturers prosper (Intel), while mainframe (IBM) and minicomputer (DEC) firms lose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital photography (1975)</td>
<td>Using CCD (charge-coupled device) image sensor chips to record images</td>
<td>CCD manufacturers and traditional camera companies win, manufacturers of film products lose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World Wide Web (1989)</td>
<td>A global database of digital files and &quot;pages&quot; instantly available</td>
<td>Owners of online content, news benefit while traditional publishers (newspapers, magazines, and broadcast television) lose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internet music, video, TV services (1998)</td>
<td>Repositories of downloadable music, video, TV broadcasts on the Web</td>
<td>Owners of internet platforms, telecommunications providers owning Internet backbone (ATT, Verizon), local Internet service providers win, while content owners and physical retailers lose (Tower Records, Blockbuster).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PageRank algorithm</td>
<td>A method for ranking Web pages in terms of their popularity to supplement Web search by key terms</td>
<td>Google is the winner (they own the patent), while traditional key word search engines (Alta Vista) lose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software as Web service</td>
<td>Using the Internet to provide remote access to online software</td>
<td>Online software services companies (Salesforce.com) win, while traditional &quot;boxed&quot; software companies (Microsoft, SAP, Oracle) lose.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 3.2 ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ORGANIZATIONAL TYPE</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Entrepreneurial structure</td>
<td>Young, small firm in a fast-changing environment. It has a simple structure and is managed by an entrepreneur serving as its single chief executive officer.</td>
<td>Small start-up business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machine bureaucracy</td>
<td>Large bureaucracy existing in a slowly changing environment, producing standard products. It is dominated by a centralized management team and centralized decision making.</td>
<td>Midsize manufacturing firm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Divisionalized bureaucracy</td>
<td>Combination of multiple machine bureaucracies, each producing a different product or service, all topped by one central headquarters.</td>
<td>Fortune 500 firms, such as General Motors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Professional bureaucracy</td>
<td>Knowledge-based organization where goods and services depend on the expertise and knowledge of professionals. Dominated by department heads with weak centralized authority.</td>
<td>Law firms, school systems, hospitals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhocracy</td>
<td>Task force organization that must respond to rapidly changing environments. Consists of large groups of specialists organized into short-lived multidisciplinary teams and has weak central management.</td>
<td>Consulting firms, such as the Rand Corporation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Other Organizational Features
Organizations have goals and use different means to achieve them. Some organizations have coercive goals (e.g., prisons); others have utilitarian goals (e.g., businesses). Still others have normative goals (universities, religious groups). Organizations also serve different groups or have different constituencies, some primarily benefiting their members, others benefiting clients, stockholders, or the public. The nature of leadership differs greatly from one organization to another—some organizations may be more democratic or authoritarian than others. Another way organizations differ is by the tasks they perform and the technology they use. Some organizations perform primarily routine tasks that can be reduced to formal rules that require little judgment (such as manufacturing auto parts), whereas others (such as consulting firms) work primarily with nonroutine tasks.

3.2 What is the Impact of Information Systems on Organizations?
Information systems have become integral, online, interactive tools deeply involved in the minute-to-minute operations and decision making of large organizations. Over the last decade, information systems have fundamentally altered the economics of organizations and greatly increased the possibilities for organizing work. Theories and concepts from economics and sociology help us understand the changes brought about by IT.

ECONOMIC IMPACTS
From the point of view of economics, IT changes both the relative costs of capital and the costs of information. Information systems technology can be viewed as a factor of production that can be substituted for traditional capital and labor. As the cost of information technology decreases, it is substituted for labor, which historically has been a rising cost. Hence, information technology should result in a decline in the number of middle managers and clerical workers as information technology substitutes for their labor.

As the cost of information technology decreases, it also substitutes for other forms of capital such as buildings and machinery, which remain relatively expensive. Hence, over time we should expect managers to increase their investments in IT because of its declining cost relative to other capital investments.

IT also affects the cost and quality of information and changes the economics of information. Information technology helps firms contract in size because it can reduce transaction costs—the costs incurred when a firm buys on the marketplace what it cannot make itself. According to transaction cost theory, firms and individuals seek to economize on transaction costs, much as they do on production costs. Using markets is expensive because of costs such as locating and communicating with distant suppliers, monitoring contract compliance, buying insurance, obtaining information on products, and so forth (Coase, 1937; Williamson, 1985). Traditionally, firms have tried to reduce transaction costs through vertical integration, by getting bigger, hiring more employees, and buying their own suppliers and distributors, as both General Motors and Ford used to do.

Information technology, especially the use of networks, can help firms lower the cost of market participation (transaction costs), making it worthwhile for
firms to contract with external suppliers instead of using internal sources. As a result, firms can shrink in size (numbers of employees) because it is far less expensive to outsource work to a competitive marketplace rather than hire employees.

For instance, by using computer links to external suppliers, auto makers such as Chrysler, Toyota, and Honda can achieve economies by obtaining more than 70 percent of their parts from the outside. Information systems make it possible for companies such as Cisco Systems and Dell Inc. to outsource their production to contract manufacturers such as Flextronics instead of making their products themselves.

As transaction costs decrease, firm size (the number of employees) should shrink because it becomes easier and cheaper for the firm to contract for the purchase of goods and services in the marketplace rather than to make the product or offer the service itself. Firm size can stay constant or contract even as the company increases its revenues. For example, when Eastman Chemical Company split off from Kodak in 1994, it had $3.3 billion in revenue and 24,000 full-time employees. In 2013, it generated over $9.3 billion in revenue with only 14,000 employees.

Information technology also can reduce internal management costs. According to agency theory, the firm is viewed as a “nexus of contracts” among self-interested individuals rather than as a unified, profit-maximizing entity (Jensen and Meckling, 1976). A principal (owner) employs “agents” (employees) to perform work on his or her behalf. However, agents need constant supervision and management; otherwise, they will tend to pursue their own interests rather than those of the owners. As firms grow in size and scope, agency costs or coordination costs rise because owners must expend more and more effort supervising and managing employees.

Information technology, by reducing the costs of acquiring and analyzing information, permits organizations to reduce agency costs because it becomes easier for managers to oversee a greater number of employees. By reducing overall management costs, information technology enables firms to increase revenues while shrinking the number of middle managers and clerical workers. We have seen examples in earlier chapters where information technology expanded the power and scope of small organizations by enabling them to perform coordinating activities such as processing orders or keeping track of inventory with very few clerks and managers.

Because IT reduces both agency and transaction costs for firms, we should expect firm size to shrink over time as more capital is invested in IT. Firms should have fewer managers, and we expect to see revenue per employee increase over time.

**ORGANIZATIONAL AND BEHAVIORAL IMPACTS**

Theories based in the sociology of complex organizations also provide some understanding about how and why firms change with the implementation of new IT applications.

**IT Flattens Organizations**

Large, bureaucratic organizations, which primarily developed before the computer age, are often inefficient, slow to change, and less competitive than newly created organizations. Some of these large organizations have downsized, reducing the number of employees and the number of levels in their organizational hierarchies.
Behavioral researchers have theorized that information technology facilitates flattening of hierarchies by broadening the distribution of information to empower lower-level employees and increase management efficiency (see Figure 3.6). IT pushes decision-making rights lower in the organization because lower-level employees receive the information they need to make decisions without supervision. (This empowerment is also possible because of higher educational levels among the workforce, which give employees the capabilities to make intelligent decisions.) Because managers now receive so much more accurate information on time, they become much faster at making decisions, so fewer managers are required. Management costs decline as a percentage of revenues, and the hierarchy becomes much more efficient.

These changes mean that the management span of control has also been broadened, enabling high-level managers to manage and control more workers spread over greater distances. Many companies have eliminated thousands of middle managers as a result of these changes.

**Postindustrial Organizations**
Postindustrial theories based more on history and sociology than economics also support the notion that IT should flatten hierarchies. In postindustrial societies, authority increasingly relies on knowledge and competence, and not merely on formal positions. Hence, the shape of organizations flattens because professional workers tend to be self-managing, and decision making should become more decentralized as knowledge and information become more widespread throughout the firm (Drucker, 1988).

---

**FIGURE 3.6 FLATTENING ORGANIZATIONS**

A traditional hierarchical organization with many levels of management

An organization that has been "flattened" by removing layers of management

Information systems can reduce the number of levels in an organization by providing managers with information to supervise larger numbers of workers and by giving lower-level employees more decision-making authority.
Information technology may encourage task force-networked organizations in which groups of professionals come together—face to face or electronically—for short periods of time to accomplish a specific task (e.g., designing a new automobile); once the task is accomplished, the individuals join other task forces. The global consulting service Accenture is an example. Many of its 293,000 employees move from location to location to work on projects at client locations in more than 56 different countries.

Who makes sure that self-managed teams do not head off in the wrong direction? Who decides which person works on which team and for how long? How can managers evaluate the performance of someone who is constantly rotating from team to team? How do people know where their careers are headed? New approaches for evaluating, organizing, and informing workers are required, and not all companies can make virtual work effective.

**Understanding Organizational Resistance to Change**

Information systems inevitably become bound up in organizational politics because they influence access to a key resource—namely, information. Information systems can affect who does what to whom, when, where, and how in an organization. Many new information systems require changes in personal, individual routines that can be painful for those involved and require retraining and additional effort that may or may not be compensated. Because information systems potentially change an organization’s structure, culture, business processes, and strategy, there is often considerable resistance to them when they are introduced.

There are several ways to visualize organizational resistance. Research on organizational resistance to innovation suggests that four factors are paramount: the nature of the IT innovation, the organization’s structure, the culture of people in the organization, and the tasks impacted by the innovation (see Figure 3.7). Here, changes in technology are absorbed, interpreted, deflected, and defeated by organizational task arrangements, structures, and people. In this model, the only way to bring about change is to change the technology, tasks, structure, and people simultaneously. Other authors have spoken about the need to “unfreeze” organizations before introducing an innovation, quickly implementing it, and “refreezing” or institutionalizing the change (Kolb, 1970).

Because organizational resistance to change is so powerful, many information technology investments flounder and do not increase productivity. Indeed, research on project implementation failures demonstrates that the most common reason for failure of large projects to reach their objectives is not the failure of the technology, but organizational and political resistance to change. Chapter 14 treats this issue in detail. Therefore, as a manager involved in future IT investments, your ability to work with people and organizations is just as important as your technical awareness and knowledge.

**The Internet and Organizations**

The Internet, especially the World Wide Web, has an important impact on the relationships between many firms and external entities, and even on the organization of business processes inside a firm. The Internet increases the accessibility, storage, and distribution of information and knowledge for organizations. In essence, the Internet is capable of dramatically lowering the transaction and agency costs facing most organizations. For instance, brokerage firms and banks
in New York can now deliver their internal operating procedures manuals to their employees at distant locations by posting them on the corporate Web site, saving millions of dollars in distribution costs. A global sales force can receive nearly instant product price information updates using the Web or instructions from management sent by e-mail or text messaging on smartphones or mobile laptops. Vendors of some large retailers can access retailers’ internal Web sites directly to find up-to-the-minute sales information and to initiate replenishment orders instantly.

Businesses are rapidly rebuilding some of their key business processes based on Internet technology and making this technology a key component of their IT infrastructures. If prior networking is any guide, one result will be simpler business processes, fewer employees, and much flatter organizations than in the past.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR THE DESIGN AND UNDERSTANDING OF INFORMATION SYSTEMS**

To deliver genuine benefits, information systems must be built with a clear understanding of the organization in which they will be used. In our experience, the central organizational factors to consider when planning a new system are the following:

- The environment in which the organization must function
- The structure of the organization: hierarchy, specialization, routines, and business processes
- The organization’s culture and politics
- The type of organization and its style of leadership
• The principal interest groups affected by the system and the attitudes of workers who will be using the system
• The kinds of tasks, decisions, and business processes that the information system is designed to assist

3.3 **HOW DO PORTER’S COMPETITIVE FORCES MODEL, THE VALUE CHAIN MODEL, SYNERGIES, CORE COMPETENCIES, AND NETWORK ECONOMICS HELP COMPANIES DEVELOP COMPETITIVE STRATEGIES USING INFORMATION SYSTEMS?**

In almost every industry you examine, you will find some firms do better than most others. There’s almost always a stand-out firm. In the automotive industry, Toyota is considered a superior performer. In pure online retail, Amazon is the leader; in off-line retail, Walmart, the largest retailer on earth, is the leader. In online music, Apple’s iTunes is considered the leader with more than 60 percent of the downloaded music market and in the related industry of digital music players, the iPod is the leader. In Web search, Google is considered the leader.

Firms that “do better” than others are said to have a competitive advantage over others: They either have access to special resources that others do not, or they are able to use commonly available resources more efficiently—usually because of superior knowledge and information assets. In any event, they do better in terms of revenue growth, profitability, or productivity growth (efficiency), all of which ultimately in the long run translate into higher stock market valuations than their competitors.

But why do some firms do better than others and how do they achieve competitive advantage? How can you analyze a business and identify its strategic advantages? How can you develop a strategic advantage for your own business? And how do information systems contribute to strategic advantages? One answer to that question is Michael Porter’s competitive forces model.

**PORTER’S COMPETITIVE FORCES MODEL**

Arguably, the most widely used model for understanding competitive advantage is Michael Porter’s *competitive forces model* (see Figure 3.8). This model provides a general view of the firm, its competitors, and the firm’s environment. Earlier in this chapter, we described the importance of a firm’s environment and the dependence of firms on environments. Porter’s model is all about the firm’s general business environment. In this model, five competitive forces shape the fate of the firm.

**Traditional Competitors**

All firms share market space with other competitors who are continuously devising new, more efficient ways to produce by introducing new products and services, and attempting to attract customers by developing their brands and imposing switching costs on their customers.
New Market Entrants
In a free economy with mobile labor and financial resources, new companies are always entering the marketplace. In some industries, there are very low barriers to entry, whereas in other industries, entry is very difficult. For instance, it is fairly easy to start a pizza business or just about any small retail business, but it is much more expensive and difficult to enter the computer chip business, which has very high capital costs and requires significant expertise and knowledge that is hard to obtain. New companies have several possible advantages: They are not locked into old plants and equipment, they often hire younger workers who are less expensive and perhaps more innovative, they are not encumbered by old worn-out brand names, and they are “more hungry” (more highly motivated) than traditional occupants of an industry. These advantages are also their weakness: They depend on outside financing for new plants and equipment, which can be expensive; they have a less-experienced workforce; and they have little brand recognition.

Substitute Products and Services
In just about every industry, there are substitutes that your customers might use if your prices become too high. New technologies create new substitutes all the time. Ethanol can substitute for gasoline in cars; vegetable oil for diesel fuel in trucks; and wind, solar, coal, and hydro power for industrial electricity generation. Likewise, Internet and wireless telephone service can substitute for traditional telephone service. And, of course, an Internet music service that allows you to download music tracks to an iPod or smartphone has become a substitute for CD-based music stores. The more substitute products and services in your industry, the less you can control pricing and the lower your profit margins.

Customers
A profitable company depends in large measure on its ability to attract and retain customers (while denying them to competitors), and charge high prices. The power of customers grows if they can easily switch to a competitor's products and services, or if they can force a business and its competitors to compete on price alone in a transparent marketplace where there is little product differentiation,
and all prices are known instantly (such as on the Internet). For instance, in the used college textbook market on the Internet, students (customers) can find multiple suppliers of just about any current college textbook. In this case, online customers have extraordinary power over used-book firms.

**Suppliers**
The market power of suppliers can have a significant impact on firm profits, especially when the firm cannot raise prices as fast as can suppliers. The more different suppliers a firm has, the greater control it can exercise over suppliers in terms of price, quality, and delivery schedules. For instance, manufacturers of laptop PCs almost always have multiple competing suppliers of key components, such as keyboards, hard drives, and display screens.

**INFORMATION SYSTEM STRATEGIES FOR DEALING WITH COMPETITIVE FORCES**
What is a firm to do when it is faced with all these competitive forces? And how can the firm use information systems to counteract some of these forces? How do you prevent substitutes and inhibit new market entrants? There are four generic strategies, each of which often is enabled by using information technology and systems: low-cost leadership, product differentiation, focus on market niche, and strengthening customer and supplier intimacy.

**Low-Cost Leadership**
Use information systems to achieve the lowest operational costs and the lowest prices. The classic example is Walmart. By keeping prices low and shelves well stocked using a legendary inventory replenishment system, Walmart became the leading retail business in the United States. Walmart’s continuous replenishment system sends orders for new merchandise directly to suppliers as soon as consumers pay for their purchases at the cash register. Point-of-sale terminals
record the bar code of each item passing the checkout counter and send a purchase transaction directly to a central computer at Walmart headquarters. The computer collects the orders from all Walmart stores and transmits them to suppliers. Suppliers can also access Walmart's sales and inventory data using Web technology.

Because the system replenishes inventory with lightning speed, Walmart does not need to spend much money on maintaining large inventories of goods in its own warehouses. The system also enables Walmart to adjust purchases of store items to meet customer demands. Competitors, such as Sears, have been spending 24.9 percent of sales on overhead. But by using systems to keep operating costs low, Walmart pays only 16.6 percent of sales revenue for overhead. (Operating costs average 20.7 percent of sales in the retail industry.)

Walmart's continuous replenishment system is also an example of an efficient customer response system. An efficient customer response system directly links consumer behavior to distribution and production and supply chains. Walmart's continuous replenishment system provides such an efficient customer response.

**Product Differentiation**

Use information systems to enable new products and services, or greatly change the customer convenience in using your existing products and services. For instance, Google continuously introduces new and unique search services on its Web site, such as Google Maps. By purchasing PayPal, an electronic payment system, in 2003, eBay made it much easier for customers to pay sellers and expanded use of its auction marketplace. Apple created the iPod, a unique portable digital music player, plus a unique online Web music service where songs can be purchased for $.69 to $1.29 each. Apple has continued to innovate with its multimedia iPhone, iPad tablet computer, and iPod video player.

Manufacturers and retailers are using information systems to create products and services that are customized and personalized to fit the precise specifications of individual customers. For example, Nike sells customized sneakers through its NIKEiD program on its Web site. Customers are able to select the type of shoe, colors, material, outsoles, and even a logo of up to eight characters. Nike transmits the orders via computers to specially equipped plants in China and Korea. The sneakers take about three weeks to reach the customer. This ability to offer individually tailored products or services using the same production resources as mass production is called mass customization.

In addition to customized shoes, Nike is using technology in other ways to distinguish its products. The Interactive Session on Technology describes some of Nike's new technology-based products and services.

Table 3.3 lists a number of companies that have developed IT-based products and services that other firms have found difficult to copy, or at least a long time to copy.

**Focus on Market Niche**

Use information systems to enable a specific market focus, and serve this narrow target market better than competitors. Information systems support this strategy by producing and analyzing data for finely tuned sales and marketing techniques. Information systems enable companies to analyze customer buying patterns, tastes, and preferences closely so that they efficiently pitch advertising and marketing campaigns to smaller and smaller target markets.
NIKE BECOMES A TECHNOLOGY COMPANY

Named for the Greek goddess of victory, Nike is the biggest sports footwear and apparel company in the world. Nike designs, develops, and sells a variety of products and services to help in playing basketball and soccer, as well as in running, men's and women's training, and other action sports. Nike also markets sports-inspired products for children and various competitive and recreational activities, such as baseball, golf, tennis, volleyball, and walking.

Nike is known for its leading-edge technologies to make its products more appealing and enhance user performance, including the advanced technology used to support the sports superstars associated with Nike as well as the technology used in the running shoes you can buy online. For example, Nike Air technology uses “supergases” encased in urethane plastic to provide superior cushioning for running shoes that minimizes stress on runners’ joints each time their feet hit the ground. The make-up of the gas, the strength of the plastic, and their placement within the shoe give great cushioning without losing performance. Nike Air was the first major piece of shoe technology to come out of Nike and it has influenced every other running shoe since.

Of course, Nike has been using information technology in the design and manufacture of these leading-edge products, and now it is embracing information technology in new, more far-reaching ways. Some of Nike’s most recent offerings are actually information technology products.

Take the Nike+ FuelBand, for example. The FuelBand is an activity tracker that is worn on the wrist and is used with an Apple iPhone or iPad device. The FuelBand enables its wearers to track their physical activity, steps taken daily, and amount of calories burned. The information from the wristband is integrated into the Nike+ online community and phone application, allowing wearers to set their own fitness goals, monitor their progress on the LED display, and compare themselves to others part of the community. And with Bluetooth 4.0 wireless technology, the FuelBand stays constantly connected, syncing the data it collects with the user’s Nike+ account and giving feedback and motivation when needed.

The Nike FuelBand has competitors, including trackers from Fitbit and Jawbone. Nike has made some improvements to its FuelBand SE to keep up with these competing devices, such as the ability to remind users to get up and walk around periodically, to measure specific workouts, and to measure activities such as yoga or bicycling. As Fitbit trackers have been able to do, the new FuelBand also measures sleep. However, the key differentiator of the FuelBand is not hardware or a feature; it’s the point system created in conjunction with the gadget called NikeFuel.

Nike’s proprietary software turns all tracked movement into NikeFuel points, which can show achievements, can be shared with friends, or can be used to engage others in competition. According to Nike, NikeFuel is its universal way for measuring movement for all kinds of activities. NikeFuel provides users with a metric that would enable comparisons—no matter what height, weight, gender or activity—to past performance, another person, or a daily average, which Nike defines as 2,000 Fuel points. Nike won’t divulge exactly how the metric is calculated.

Nike increasingly wants other fitness technology products to integrate with Nike+, and is provided funding and assistance to small companies that were building applications for this purpose. The more people measure their activity with NikeFuel, the more they are locked in to the Nike+ ecosystem of movement-tracking devices—and the harder it will be to switch to other wearable computing devices. There’s no way to get credit for the Fuel points you’ve accumulated if you decide to switch to a Fitbit wristband. Nike’s integration of information and information technology into its products keeps people coming back to Nike’s own Website and apps.

In October 2013, Apple Computer stated that its new iPhone would have sensors allowing people to use their phones to keep track of their NikeFuel points. Although Apple may be developing a competing smartwatch, Nike feels comfortable working with Apple.

Other Nike+ devices include the Nike+ SportWatch GPS and the Nike+ Running App, available for both Apple and Android mobile devices. The Nike+ SportWatch GPS keeps track of your location, pace, distance, laps, calories burned, and (with the Polar Wearlink+) heart rate. After recording a run on the Nike+ SportWatch GPS, you can upload workout information to nikeplus.com by plugging the SportWatch into your computer’s USB port. Once your data have been uploaded, nikeplus.com enables you to track your progress, set goals, see where you ran and find great routes.
The Nike+ Running App maps your runs using GPS, tracks your progress, and provides the motivation you need to keep going. The Nike+ Running app tracks distance, pace, time and calories burned, giving you audio feedback as you run. Users can automatically upload to nikeplus.com to see their runs, including the route, elevation and NikeFuel points. They can even post the start of their run to Facebook and hear real-time cheers for each “Like” or comment they receive. The latest version of this software includes training programs, coaching tips, and daily workouts. A new “Next Moves” feature on the home screen allows runners to easily flip through suggested challenges: for example, to run their fastest 5 kilometers or go their farthest distance. Users of multiple Nike+ devices can visit the nikeplus.com site to access all their data—including lifetime NikeFuel points accumulated from all their Nike+ devices.

The Nike+ ecosystem is part of a larger phenomenon called the “Internet of Things” (see Chapter 7), in which individual devices such as sensors, meters, and electrical appliances are connected to the Internet so that their performance can be monitored and analyzed. Other consumer product companies besides Nike are embracing this technology, with gadgets such as Internet-connected water bottles to gather water consumption data or Procter & Gamble’s Web-enabled toothbrush, which links to a smartphone and records brushing habits.

Nike has no interest in making money by selling the detailed information it gathers about users’ workout routines to help companies and advertisers target their ads. That information may be valuable to other companies, but what Nike really wants to do is build cool-looking devices that closely connect to its own software. It’s all about serving one particular kind of customer: the athlete.


---

**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. Evaluate Nike using the competitive forces and value chain models.
2. What competitive strategies are Nike pursuing? How is information technology related to these strategies?
3. In what sense is Nike a “technology company”? Explain your answer.
4. How much of an edge does Nike have over its competitors? Explain your answer.

---

The data come from a range of sources—credit card transactions, demographic data, purchase data from checkout counter scanners at supermarkets and retail stores, and data collected when people access and interact with Web sites. Sophisticated software tools find patterns in these large pools of data and

---

**TABLE 3.3 IT-ENABLED NEW PRODUCTS AND SERVICES PROVIDING COMPETITIVE ADVANTAGE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amazon: One-click shopping</th>
<th>Amazon holds a patent on one-click shopping that it licenses to other online retailers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Online music: Apple iPod and iTunes</td>
<td>The iPod is an integrated handheld player backed up with an online library of over 13 million songs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Golf club customization: Ping</td>
<td>Customers can select from more than 1 million different golf club options; a build-to-order system ships their customized clubs within 48 hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Online person-to-person payment: PayPal</td>
<td>PayPal enables the transfer of money between individual bank accounts and between bank accounts and credit card accounts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
infer rules from them to guide decision making. Analysis of such data drives one-to-one marketing that creates personal messages based on individualized preferences. For example, Hilton Hotels’ OnQ system analyzes detailed data collected on active guests in all of its properties to determine the preferences of each guest and each guest’s profitability. Hilton uses this information to give its most profitable customers additional privileges, such as late checkouts. Contemporary customer relationship management (CRM) systems feature analytical capabilities for this type of intensive data analysis (see Chapters 2 and 9). The Interactive Session on Organizations provides more examples of how companies are benefiting from this fine-grained data analysis.

Credit card companies are able to use this strategy to predict their most profitable cardholders. The companies gather vast quantities of data about consumer purchases and other behaviors and mine these data to construct detailed profiles that identify cardholders who might be good or bad credit risks. We discuss the tools and technologies for data analysis in Chapters 6 and 12.

**Strengthen Customer and Supplier Intimacy**

Use information systems to tighten linkages with suppliers and develop intimacy with customers. Chrysler Corporation uses information systems to facilitate direct access by suppliers to production schedules, and even permits suppliers to decide how and when to ship supplies to Chrysler factories. This allows suppliers more lead time in producing goods. On the customer side, Amazon keeps track of user preferences for book and CD purchases, and can recommend titles purchased by others to its customers. Strong linkages to customers and suppliers increase switching costs (the cost of switching from one product to a competing product), and loyalty to your firm.

Table 3.4 summarizes the competitive strategies we have just described. Some companies focus on one of these strategies, but you will often see companies pursuing several of them simultaneously. For example, Starbucks, the world’s largest specialty coffee retailer, offers unique high-end specialty coffees and beverages, but is also trying to compete by lowering costs.

**THE INTERNET’S IMPACT ON COMPETITIVE ADVANTAGE**

Because of the Internet, the traditional competitive forces are still at work, but competitive rivalry has become much more intense (Porter, 2001). Internet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRATEGY</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low-cost leadership</td>
<td>Use information systems to produce products and services at a lower price than competitors while enhancing quality and level of service</td>
<td>Walmart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product differentiation</td>
<td>Use information systems to differentiate products, and enable new services and products</td>
<td>Google, eBay, Apple, Lands’ End</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus on market niche</td>
<td>Use information systems to enable a focused strategy on a single market niche; specialize</td>
<td>Hilton Hotels, Harrah’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer and supplier intimacy</td>
<td>Use information systems to develop strong ties and loyalty with customers and suppliers</td>
<td>Chrysler Corporation, Amazon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTERACTIVE SESSION: ORGANIZATIONS

IDENTIFYING MARKET NICHES IN THE AGE OF BIG DATA

With the amount of data available to companies doubling every year, new sources of data, and innovations in data collection, possibilities for marketers to identify market niches and finely tune campaigns are boundless. In the e-book market, for example, three reading subscription service startups—Scribd, Oyster, and Entitle—aim to turn a profit by discovering exactly what makes readers tick.

A flat monthly fee gives users unlimited access to a broad selection of titles from these companies’ digital libraries. Like Barnes and Noble and Amazon, the newcomers will collect an assortment of data from their customers’ digital reading devices (e-readers, tablets, smartphones), including whether a book is completed, if pages are skimmed or skipped, and which genres are most often finished. These subscription services intend to disseminate what they have learned. The idea is that writers can use it to better tailor their work to their readership, and book editors can use it to choose which manuscripts to publish.

When customers sign up with these services, they are informed that some of their data will be collected and used but assured that their identities will be protected. Large independent publisher Smashwords is enthusiastic about the value of such data to the authors who use its platform to self-publish and distribute their work. Many contemporary authors have already explored the feedback opportunities available through their own Web sites, social networking sites, and Goodreads, a user-populated database of books, annotations, and reviews now owned by Amazon. The subscription services will take this type of market research to a more quantifiable level.

Preliminary data analysis has already revealed that as the length of a mystery novel increases so does the likelihood that a reader will skip to the end to discover the resolution. Business books are less likely to be finished than biographies, most readers complete just a single chapter of a yoga book, and some of the quickest reading is recorded for romance novels, with erotica leading the pack. Shorter chapters entice readers on e-readers, tablets, and smartphones to finish a book 25 percent more often than books with long chapters.

But does book completion translate to book sales? And how will this knowledge impact the creative process? Will quality be negatively impacted to satisfy reader preferences? Before any of these questions can be answered, authors will need access to comprehensive data. And that depends on the large publishing houses signing deals with the subscription services. After nearly two decades of market disruptions spearheaded by Amazon, publishers are not flocking to supply titles. So far, only Harper Collins has signed with Oyster and Scribd, while Random House, Penguin, and Simon & Schuster remain on the sidelines.

In the airline industry, nearly all carriers collect passenger data, but some are aggressively pursuing data mining to personalize the flying experience. Previously unlinked data sets can now be consolidated to build comprehensive customer profiles. Cabin crews equipped with tablets or smartphones can identify the top five customers on the plane, passengers with special diets or allergies, seat preferences, newlyweds embarking on their honeymoon, and customers whose luggage was misplaced or who experienced flight delays on their previous flights. In-flight browsing history and Facebook likes are even used to fashion relevant marketing pitches.

This “captive audience” aspect of air travel in conjunction with the sheer volume of information airlines collect presents a unique opportunity to marketers. Allegiant Travel company has already been able to sell show tickets, car rentals, and helicopter tours to Las Vegas travelers. United Airlines’ revamp of its Web site, kiosks, and mobile app, along with its data integration initiative, have enabled it to target flyers predisposed to upgrading to an economy plus seat.

Not all customers are pleased. A user on Delta’s FlyerTalk forum complained that a link from the new DL.com Web site led to a personal profile that included a lot more than her miles accumulated and home airport. Annual income, home value, and the age ranges of her children were included along with expected data such as amount spent on airfare, hotel preference, and type of credit card. The resulting negative publicity prompted Delta to apologize, but it defended its use of demographic data and data not covered under its privacy policy. Credit-card partner American Express had supplied some data, as allowed under the policy. Global information services group Experian supplied the rest, unbeknownst to consumers.

These data-driven marketing approaches are not flawless. Even customers who accept the inevitability
of profiling are miffed when they receive unsuitable offers based on faulty personal information. A Qantas survey of frequent fliers found that most customers want a line drawn between data collection to facilitate useful offers and data collection that is too intrusive. British Airways crossed the line with its "Know Me" program. Google Image searches were used to identify VIP customers as they entered the airport and first class lounge. The practice has since been discontinued. Customers can opt out of British Airways personalization services—but not its data collection. Upon request, a note is added to the customer profile, which nonetheless continues to grow. None of the carriers currently allow customers to opt out of their data programs.

As car companies explore their Big Data opportunities, customer privacy will become an issue for them as well. Ford Motor Company began exploring how integrating databases and using complex algorithms could lead to increased sales three years ago when it developed a program for its dealerships to more closely match car lot inventory to buyer demand. Using buying trends, local and national vehicle supply, and current car lot inventory, Ford devised a program to make purchasing recommendations to dealers. Not only did vehicle turnover rate improve, but net price—the price a consumer pays minus the manufacturer subsidy—rose, fueling an upturn in Ford’s profits.

But Ford is thinking even bigger. Performance monitoring using vehicle Internet connections to collect fuel economy, mechanical failure, and other safety and performance metrics could soon be used to improve product engineering. What’s more, onboard connections can be used to message drivers about potential breakdown issues, perhaps heading off an expensive recall. Since Ford estimates that by 2016, up to a third of all its consumer communication will occur inside vehicles, possibilities abound. Leased vehicle usage data could inform end-of-lease marketing pitches; driving pattern, schedule, and driving maneuver data could suggest routes most compatible to a driver’s habits; car location data could be sent to traffic management systems to control stop lights; data from networked cars could alert other drivers to hazardous conditions and traffic jams, and current car value and payment data can advise drivers of their optimal trade-in date.

It’s not hard to foresee the privacy issues that could come into play as drivers realize that not only their location, but their every movement inside their vehicle is being tracked. There are implications for law enforcement—traffic tickets and accident blame attribution. Balancing privacy dilemmas with convenience, security, and expediency of transactions will be the challenge going forward for all companies as they explore emerging big data analysis capabilities.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Describe the kinds of data being analyzed by the companies in this case.
2. How is this fine-grained data analysis improving operations and decision making in the companies described in this case? What business strategies are being supported?
3. Are there any disadvantages to mining customer data? Explain your answer.
4. How do you feel about airlines mining your in-flight data? Is this any different from companies mining your credit card purchases or Web surfing?

Technology is based on universal standards that any company can use, making it easy for rivals to compete on price alone and for new competitors to enter the market. Because information is available to everyone, the Internet raises the bargaining power of customers, who can quickly find the lowest-cost provider on the Web. Profits have been dampened. Table 3.5 summarizes some of the potentially negative impacts of the Internet on business firms identified by Porter.
The Internet has nearly destroyed some industries and has severely threatened more. For instance, the printed encyclopedia industry and the travel agency industry have been nearly decimated by the availability of substitutes over the Internet. Likewise, the Internet has had a significant impact on the retail, music, book, retail brokerage, software, telecommunications, and newspaper industries.

However, the Internet has also created entirely new markets, formed the basis for thousands of new products, services, and business models, and provided new opportunities for building brands with very large and loyal customer bases. Amazon, eBay, iTunes, YouTube, Facebook, Travelocity, and Google are examples. In this sense, the Internet is “transforming” entire industries, forcing firms to change how they do business.

For most forms of media, the Internet has posed a threat to business models and profitability. Growth in book sales other than textbooks and professional publications has been sluggish, as new forms of entertainment continue to compete for consumers’ time. Newspapers and magazines have been hit even harder, as their readerships diminish, their advertisers shrink, and more people get their news for free online. The television and film industries have been forced to deal with pirates who are robbing them of some of their profits, as well as with online services streaming videos and TV shows.

**THE BUSINESS VALUE CHAIN MODEL**

Although the Porter model is very helpful for identifying competitive forces and suggesting generic strategies, it is not very specific about what exactly to do, and it does not provide a methodology to follow for achieving competitive advantages. If your goal is to achieve operational excellence, where do you start? Here’s where the business value chain model is helpful.

The *value chain model* highlights specific activities in the business where competitive strategies can best be applied (Porter, 1985) and where information systems are most likely to have a strategic impact. This model identifies specific, critical leverage points where a firm can use information technology most effectively to enhance its competitive position. The value chain model views the firm as a series or chain of basic activities that add a margin of
value to a firm's products or services. These activities can be categorized as either primary activities or support activities (see Figure 3.9).

Primary activities are most directly related to the production and distribution of the firm's products and services, which create value for the customer. Primary activities include inbound logistics, operations, outbound logistics, sales and marketing, and service. Inbound logistics includes receiving and storing materials for distribution to production. Operations transforms inputs into finished products. Outbound logistics entails storing and distributing finished products. Sales and marketing includes promoting and selling the firm's products. The service activity includes maintenance and repair of the firm's goods and services.

Support activities make the delivery of the primary activities possible and consist of organization infrastructure (administration and management), human resources (employee recruiting, hiring, and training), technology (improving products and the production process), and procurement (purchasing input).

Now you can ask at each stage of the value chain, "How can we use information systems to improve operational efficiency, and improve customer and supplier intimacy?" This will force you to critically examine how you perform value-adding activities at each stage and how the business processes might be improved. You can also begin to ask how information systems can be used to improve the relationship with customers and with suppliers who lie outside the

**FIGURE 3.9 THE VALUE CHAIN MODEL**

This figure provides examples of systems for both primary and support activities of a firm and of its value partners that can add a margin of value to a firm's products or services.
firm's value chain but belong to the firm's extended value chain where they are absolutely critical to your success. Here, supply chain management systems that coordinate the flow of resources into your firm, and customer relationship management systems that coordinate your sales and support employees with customers, are two of the most common system applications that result from a business value chain analysis. We discuss these enterprise applications in detail later in Chapter 9.

Using the business value chain model will also cause you to consider benchmarking your business processes against your competitors or others in related industries, and identifying industry best practices. Benchmarking involves comparing the efficiency and effectiveness of your business processes against strict standards and then measuring performance against those standards. Industry best practices are usually identified by consulting companies, research organizations, government agencies, and industry associations as the most successful solutions or problem-solving methods for consistently and effectively achieving a business objective.

Once you have analyzed the various stages in the value chain at your business, you can come up with candidate applications of information systems. Then, once you have a list of candidate applications, you can decide which to develop first. By making improvements in your own business value chain that your competitors might miss, you can achieve competitive advantage by attaining operational excellence, lowering costs, improving profit margins, and forging a closer relationship with customers and suppliers. If your competitors are making similar improvements, then at least you will not be at a competitive disadvantage—the worst of all cases!

**Extending the Value Chain: The Value Web**

Figure 3.9 shows that a firm's value chain is linked to the value chains of its suppliers, distributors, and customers. After all, the performance of most firms depends not only on what goes on inside a firm but also on how well the firm coordinates with direct and indirect suppliers, delivery firms (logistics partners, such as FedEx or UPS), and, of course, customers.

How can information systems be used to achieve strategic advantage at the industry level? By working with other firms, industry participants can use information technology to develop industry-wide standards for exchanging information or business transactions electronically, which force all market participants to subscribe to similar standards. Such efforts increase efficiency, making product substitution less likely and perhaps raising entry costs—thus discouraging new entrants. Also, industry members can build industry-wide, IT-supported consortia, symposia, and communications networks to coordinate activities concerning government agencies, foreign competition, and competing industries.

Looking at the industry value chain encourages you to think about how to use information systems to link up more efficiently with your suppliers, strategic partners, and customers. Strategic advantage derives from your ability to relate your value chain to the value chains of other partners in the process. For instance, if you are Amazon.com, you want to build systems that:

- Make it easy for suppliers to display goods and open stores on the Amazon site
- Make it easy for customers to pay for goods
- Develop systems that coordinate the shipment of goods to customers
- Develop shipment tracking systems for customers
Internet technology has made it possible to create highly synchronized industry value chains called value webs. A value web is a collection of independent firms that use information technology to coordinate their value chains to produce a product or service for a market collectively. It is more customer driven and operates in a less linear fashion than the traditional value chain.

Figure 3.10 shows that this value web synchronizes the business processes of customers, suppliers, and trading partners among different companies in an industry or in related industries. These value webs are flexible and adaptive to changes in supply and demand. Relationships can be bundled or unbundled in response to changing market conditions. Firms will accelerate time to market and to customers by optimizing their value web relationships to make quick decisions on who can deliver the required products or services at the right price and location.

SYNERGIES, CORE COMPETENCIES, AND NETWORK-BASED STRATEGIES

A large corporation is typically a collection of businesses. Often, the firm is organized financially as a collection of strategic business units and the returns to the firm are directly tied to the performance of all the strategic business units. Information systems can improve the overall performance of these business units by promoting synergies and core competencies.
Synergies
The idea of synergies is that when the output of some units can be used as inputs to other units, or two organizations pool markets and expertise, these relationships lower costs and generate profits. Recent bank and financial firm mergers, such as the merger of JPMorgan Chase and Bank of New York as well as Bank of America and Countrywide Financial Corporation occurred precisely for this purpose.

One use of information technology in these synergy situations is to tie together the operations of disparate business units so that they can act as a whole. For example, acquiring Countrywide Financial enabled Bank of America to extend its mortgage lending business and to tap into a large pool of new customers who might be interested in its credit card, consumer banking, and other financial products. Information systems would help the merged companies consolidate operations, lower retailing costs, and increase cross-marketing of financial products.

Enhancing Core Competencies
Yet another way to use information systems for competitive advantage is to think about ways that systems can enhance core competencies. The argument is that the performance of all business units will increase insofar as these business units develop, or create, a central core of competencies. A core competency is an activity for which a firm is a world-class leader. Core competencies may involve being the world’s best miniature parts designer, the best package delivery service, or the best thin-film manufacturer. In general, a core competency relies on knowledge that is gained over many years of practical field experience with a technology. This practical knowledge is typically supplemented with a long-term research effort and committed employees.

Any information system that encourages the sharing of knowledge across business units enhances competency. Such systems might encourage or enhance existing competencies and help employees become aware of new external knowledge; such systems might also help a business leverage existing competencies to related markets.

For example, Procter & Gamble, a world leader in brand management and consumer product innovation, uses a series of systems to enhance its core competencies. An intranet called InnovationNet helps people working on similar problems share ideas and expertise. InnovationNet connects those working in research and development (R&D), engineering, purchasing, marketing, legal affairs, and business information systems around the world, using a portal to provide browser-based access to documents, reports, charts, videos, and other data from various sources. It includes a directory of subject matter experts who can be tapped to give advice or collaborate on problem solving and product development, and links to outside research scientists and entrepreneurs who are searching for new, innovative products worldwide.

Network-Based Strategies
The availability of Internet and networking technology have inspired strategies that take advantage of firms’ abilities to create networks or network with each other. Network-based strategies include the use of network economics, a virtual company model, and business ecosystems.

Network Economics. Business models based on a network may help firms strategically by taking advantage of network economics. In traditional
In some situations, the law of diminishing returns does not work. For instance, in a network, the marginal costs of adding another participant are about zero, whereas the marginal gain is much larger. The larger the number of subscribers in a telephone system or the Internet, the greater the value to all participants because each user can interact with more people. It is not much more expensive to operate a television station with 1,000 subscribers than with 10 million subscribers. The value of a community of people grows with size, whereas the cost of adding new members is inconsequential.

From this network economics perspective, information technology can be strategically useful. Internet sites can be used by firms to build communities of users—like-minded customers who want to share their experiences. This builds customer loyalty and enjoyment, and builds unique ties to customers. eBay, the giant online auction site, and iVillage, an online community for women, are examples. Both businesses are based on networks of millions of users, and both companies have used the Web and Internet communication tools to build communities. The more people offering products on eBay, the more valuable the eBay site is to everyone because more products are listed, and more competition among suppliers lowers prices. Network economics also provides strategic benefits to commercial software vendors. The value of their software and complementary software products increases as more people use them, and there is a larger installed base to justify continued use of the product and vendor support.

**Virtual Company Model.** Another network-based strategy uses the model of a virtual company to create a competitive business. A virtual company, also known as a virtual organization, uses networks to link people, assets, and ideas, enabling it to ally with other companies to create and distribute products and services without being limited by traditional organizational boundaries or physical locations. One company can use the capabilities of another company without being physically tied to that company. The virtual company model is useful when a company finds it cheaper to acquire products, services, or capabilities from an external vendor or when it needs to move quickly to exploit new market opportunities and lacks the time and resources to respond on its own.

Fashion companies, such as GUESS, Ann Taylor, Levi Strauss, and Reebok, enlist Hong Kong-based Li & Fung to manage production and shipment of their garments. Li & Fung handles product development, raw material sourcing, production planning, quality assurance, and shipping. Li & Fung does not own any fabric, factories, or machines, outsourcing all of its work to a network of more than 15,000 suppliers in 40 countries all over the world. Customers place orders to Li & Fung over its private extranet. Li & Fung then sends instructions to appropriate raw material suppliers and factories where the clothing is produced. The Li & Fung extranet tracks the entire production process for each order. Working as a virtual company keeps Li & Fung flexible and adaptable so that it can design and produce the products ordered by its clients in short order to keep pace with rapidly changing fashion trends.

**Business Ecosystems: Keystone and Niche Firms.** The Internet and the emergence of digital firms call for some modification of the industry competitive forces model. The traditional Porter model assumes a relatively static
industry environment; relatively clear-cut industry boundaries; and a relatively stable set of suppliers, substitutes, and customers, with the focus on industry players in a market environment. Instead of participating in a single industry, some of today’s firms are much more aware that they participate in industry sets—collections of industries that provide related services and products (see Figure 3.11). **Business ecosystem** is another term for these loosely coupled but interdependent networks of suppliers, distributors, outsourcing firms, transportation service firms, and technology manufacturers (Iansiti and Levien, 2004).

The concept of a business ecosystem builds on the idea of the value web described earlier, the main difference being that cooperation takes place across many industries rather than many firms. For instance, both Microsoft and Walmart provide platforms composed of information systems, technologies, and services that thousands of other firms in different industries use to enhance their own capabilities. Microsoft has estimated that more than 40,000 firms use its Windows platform to deliver their own products, support Microsoft products, and extend the value of Microsoft's own firm. Walmart's order entry and inventory management system is a platform used by thousands of suppliers to obtain real-time access to customer demand, track shipments, and control inventories.

Business ecosystems can be characterized as having one or a few keystone firms that dominate the ecosystem and create the platforms used by other niche firms. Keystone firms in the Microsoft ecosystem include Microsoft and technology producers such as Intel and IBM. Niche firms include thousands of software application firms, software developers, service firms, networking firms, and consulting firms that both support and rely on the Microsoft products.

Information technology plays a powerful role in establishing business ecosystems. Obviously, many firms use information systems to develop into keystone firms by building IT-based platforms that other firms can use. In the digital firm era, we can expect greater emphasis on the use of IT to build

![Figure 3.11 An Ecosystem Strategic Model](image)

The digital firm era requires a more dynamic view of the boundaries among industries, firms, customers, and suppliers, with competition occurring among industry sets in a business ecosystem. In the ecosystem model, multiple industries work together to deliver value to the customer. IT plays an important role in enabling a dense network of interactions among the participating firms.
industry ecosystems because the costs of participating in such ecosystems will
fall and the benefits to all firms will increase rapidly as the platform grows.

Individual firms should consider how their information systems will enable
them to become profitable niche players in larger ecosystems created by
keystone firms. For instance, in making decisions about which products to build
or which services to offer, a firm should consider the existing business ecossys-
tems related to these products and how it might use IT to enable participation
in these larger ecosystems.

A powerful, current example of a rapidly expanding ecosystem is the mobile
Internet platform. In this ecosystem there are four industries: device makers
(Apple iPhone, Samsung Galaxy, Motorola, LG, and others), wireless telecom-
munication firms (AT&T, Verizon, T-Mobile, Sprint, and others), independent
software applications providers (generally small firms selling games, applications,
and ring tones), and Internet service providers (who participate as
providers of Internet service to the mobile platform).

Each of these industries has its own history, interests, and driving forces. But
these elements come together in a sometimes cooperative, and sometimes
competitive, new industry we refer to as the mobile digital platform ecosystem.
More than other firms, Apple has managed to combine these industries into a
system. It is Apple’s mission to sell physical devices (iPhones) that are nearly
as powerful as today’s personal computers. These devices work only with a
high-speed broadband network supplied by the wireless phone carriers. In
order to attract a large customer base, the iPhone had to be more than just a cell
phone. Apple differentiated this product by making it a “smart phone,” one
capable of running over one million different, useful applications. Apple could
not develop all these applications itself. Instead it relies on generally small,
independent software developers to provide these applications, which can be
purchased at the iTunes store. In the background is the Internet service pro-
vider industry, which makes money whenever iPhone users connect to the
Internet.

3.4 What are the challenges posed by strategic information systems and how
should they be addressed?

Strategic information systems often change the organization as well as its
products, services, and operating procedures, driving the organization into
new behavioral patterns. Successfully using information systems to achieve
a competitive advantage is challenging and requires precise coordination of
technology, organizations, and management.

Sustaining competitive advantage

The competitive advantages that strategic systems confer do not necessarily last
long enough to ensure long-term profitability. Because competitors can retaliate
and copy strategic systems, competitive advantage is not always sustainable.
Markets, customer expectations, and technology change; globalization has
made these changes even more rapid and unpredictable. The Internet can make
competitive advantage disappear very quickly because virtually all companies
can use this technology. Classic strategic systems, such as American Airlines’s
SABRE computerized reservation system, Citibank's ATM system, and FedEx's package tracking system, benefited by being the first in their industries. Then rival systems emerged. Amazon was an e-commerce leader but now faces competition from eBay, Yahoo, and Google. Information systems alone cannot provide an enduring business advantage. Systems originally intended to be strategic frequently become tools for survival, required by every firm to stay in business, or they may inhibit organizations from making the strategic changes essential for future success.

**ALIGNING IT WITH BUSINESS OBJECTIVES**

The research on IT and business performance has found that (a) the more successfully a firm can align information technology with its business goals, the more profitable it will be, and (b) only one-quarter of firms achieve alignment of IT with the business. About half of a business firm's profits can be explained by alignment of IT with business (Luftman, 2003).

Most businesses get it wrong: Information technology takes on a life of its own and does not serve management and shareholder interests very well. Instead of business people taking an active role in shaping IT to the enterprise, they ignore it, claim not to understand IT, and tolerate failure in the IT area as just a nuisance to work around. Such firms pay a hefty price in poor performance. Successful firms and managers understand what IT can do and how it works, take an active role in shaping its use, and measure its impact on revenues and profits.

**Management Checklist: Performing a Strategic Systems Analysis**

To align IT with the business and use information systems effectively for competitive advantage, managers need to perform a strategic systems analysis. To identify the types of systems that provide a strategic advantage to their firms, managers should ask the following questions:

1. What is the structure of the industry in which the firm is located?
   - What are some of the competitive forces at work in the industry? Are there new entrants to the industry? What is the relative power of suppliers, customers, and substitute products and services over prices?
   - Is the basis of competition quality, price, or brand?
   - What are the direction and nature of change within the industry? From where are the momentum and change coming?
   - How is the industry currently using information technology? Is the organization behind or ahead of the industry in its application of information systems?

2. What are the business, firm, and industry value chains for this particular firm?
   - How is the company creating value for the customer—through lower prices and transaction costs or higher quality? Are there any places in the value chain where the business could create more value for the customer and additional profit for the company?
   - Does the firm understand and manage its business processes using the best practices available? Is it taking maximum advantage of supply chain management, customer relationship management, and enterprise systems?
   - Does the firm leverage its core competencies?
   - Is the industry supply chain and customer base changing in ways that benefit or harm the firm?
• Can the firm benefit from strategic partnerships and value webs?
• Where in the value chain will information systems provide the greatest value to the firm?

3. Have we aligned IT with our business strategy and goals?
• Have we correctly articulated our business strategy and goals?
• Is IT improving the right business processes and activities to promote this strategy?
• Are we using the right metrics to measure progress toward those goals?

MANAGING STRATEGIC TRANSITIONS

Adopting the kinds of strategic systems described in this chapter generally requires changes in business goals, relationships with customers and suppliers, and business processes. These sociotechnical changes, affecting both social and technical elements of the organization, can be considered strategic transitions—a movement between levels of sociotechnical systems.

Such changes often entail blurring of organizational boundaries, both external and internal. Suppliers and customers must become intimately linked and may share each other’s responsibilities. Managers will need to devise new business processes for coordinating their firms’ activities with those of customers, suppliers, and other organizations. The organizational change requirements surrounding new information systems are so important that they merit attention throughout this text. Chapter 14 examines organizational change issues in more detail.

Review Summary

1. Which features of organizations do managers need to know about to build and use information systems successfully?

All modern organizations are hierarchical, specialized, and impartial, using explicit routines to maximize efficiency. All organizations have their own cultures and politics arising from differences in interest groups, and they are affected by their surrounding environment. Organizations differ in goals, groups served, social roles, leadership styles, incentives, types of tasks performed, and type of structure. These features help explain differences in organizations’ use of information systems. Information systems and the organizations in which they are used interact with and influence each other.

2. What is the impact of information systems on organizations?

The introduction of a new information system will affect organizational structure, goals, work design, values, competition between interest groups, decision making, and day-to-day behavior. At the same time, information systems must be designed to serve the needs of important organizational groups and will be shaped by the organization’s structure, business processes, goals, culture, politics, and management. Information technology can reduce transaction and agency costs, and such changes have been accentuated in organizations using the Internet. New systems disrupt established patterns of work and power relationships, so there is often considerable resistance to them when they are introduced.

3. How do Porter’s competitive forces model, the value chain model, synergies, core competencies, and network economics help companies develop competitive strategies using information systems?

In Porter’s competitive forces model, the strategic position of the firm, and its strategies, are determined by competition with its traditional direct competitors, but they are also greatly affected by new market entrants, substitute products and services, suppliers, and customers. Information systems help companies compete by maintaining low costs, differentiating products or services, focusing on
market niche, strengthening ties with customers and suppliers, and increasing barriers to market entry with high levels of operational excellence.

The value chain model highlights specific activities in the business where competitive strategies and information systems will have the greatest impact. The model views the firm as a series of primary and support activities that add value to a firm's products or services. Primary activities are directly related to production and distribution, whereas support activities make the delivery of primary activities possible. A firm's value chain can be linked to the value chains of its suppliers, distributors, and customers. A value web consists of information systems that enhance competitiveness at the industry level by promoting the use of standards and industry-wide consortia, and by enabling businesses to work more efficiently with their value partners.

Because firms consist of multiple business units, information systems achieve additional efficiencies or enhance services by tying together the operations of disparate business units. Information systems help businesses leverage their core competencies by promoting the sharing of knowledge across business units. Information systems facilitate business models based on large networks of users or subscribers that take advantage of network economics. A virtual company strategy uses networks to link to other firms so that a company can use the capabilities of other companies to build, market, and distribute products and services. In business ecosystems, multiple industries work together to deliver value to the customer. Information systems support a dense network of interactions among the participating firms.

4. **What are the challenges posed by strategic information systems and how should they be addressed?**

Implementing strategic systems often requires extensive organizational change and a transition from one sociotechnical level to another. Such changes are called strategic transitions and are often difficult and painful to achieve. Moreover, not all strategic systems are profitable, and they can be expensive to build. Many strategic information systems are easily copied by other firms so that strategic advantage is not always sustainable.

**Key Terms**

- Agency theory, 90
- Benchmarking, 105
- Best practices, 105
- Business ecosystem, 109
- Competitive forces model, 94
- Core competency, 107
- Disruptive technologies, 87
- Efficient customer response system, 97
- Mass customization, 97
- Network economics, 107
- Organization, 82
- Primary activities, 104
- Product differentiation, 95
- Routines, 84
- Strategic transitions, 112
- Support activities, 104
- Switching costs, 100
- Transaction cost theory, 89
- Value chain model, 103
- Value web, 106
- Virtual company, 108

**MyMISLab**

Go to mymislab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon  

**Review Questions**

3-1 Which features of organizations do managers need to know about to build and use information systems successfully?
- Define an organization and compare the technical definition of organizations with the behavioral definition.

3-2 What is the impact of information systems on organizations?
- Identify and describe the features of organizations that help explain differences in organizations' use of information systems.
Describe the major economic theories that help explain how information systems affect organizations.

Describe the major behavioral theories that help explain how information systems affect organizations.

Explain why there is considerable organizational resistance to the introduction of information systems.

Describe the impact of the Internet and disruptive technologies on organizations.

How do Porter's competitive forces model, the value chain model, synergies, core competencies, and network economics help companies develop competitive strategies using information systems?

Define Porter's competitive forces model and explain how it works.

Describe what the competitive forces model explains about competitive advantage.

List and describe four competitive strategies enabled by information systems that firms can pursue.

Describe how information systems can support each of these competitive strategies and give examples.

Explain why aligning IT with business objectives is essential for strategic use of systems.

Define and describe the value chain model.

Explain how the value chain model can be used to identify opportunities for information systems.

Define the value web and show how it is related to the value chain.

Explain how the value web helps businesses identify opportunities for strategic information systems.

Describe how the Internet has changed competitive forces and competitive advantage.

Explain how information systems promote synergies and core competencies.

Describe how promoting synergies and core competencies enhances competitive advantage.

Explain how businesses benefit by using network economics.

Define and describe a virtual company and the benefits of pursuing a virtual company strategy.

What are the challenges posed by strategic information systems and how should they be addressed?

List and describe the management challenges posed by strategic information systems.

Explain how to perform a strategic systems analysis.

Discussion Questions

3-5 It has been said that there is no such thing as a sustainable strategic advantage. Do you agree? Why or why not?

3-6 It has been said that the advantage that leading-edge retailers such as Dell and Walmart have over their competition isn't technology; it's their management. Do you agree? Why or why not?

3-7 What are some of the issues to consider in determining whether the Internet would provide your business with a competitive advantage?

Hands-On MIS Projects

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience identifying information systems to support a business strategy and to solve a customer retention problem, using a database to improve decision making about business strategy, and using Web tools to configure and price an automobile.

Management Decision Problems

3-8 Macy's, Inc., through its subsidiaries, operates approximately 840 department stores in the United States. Its retail stores sell a range of merchandise, including apparel, home furnishings, and housewares. Senior management has decided that Macy's needs to tailor merchandise more to local tastes, and that the
colors, sizes, brands, and styles of clothing and other merchandise should be based on the sales patterns in each individual Macy's store. How could information systems help Macy's management implement this new strategy? What pieces of data should these systems collect to help management make merchandising decisions that support this strategy?

Despite aggressive campaigns to attract customers with lower mobile phone prices, T-Mobile has been losing large numbers of its most lucrative two-year contract subscribers. Management wants to know why so many customers are leaving T-Mobile and what can be done to entice them back. Are customers deserting because of poor customer service, uneven network coverage, wireless service charges, or competition from carriers with Apple iPhone service? How can the company use information systems to help find the answer? What management decisions could be made using information from these systems?

**Improving Decision Making: Using a Database to Clarify Business Strategy**

Software skills: Database querying and reporting; database design
Business skills: Reservation systems; customer analysis

3-9 In this exercise, you will use database software to analyze the reservation transactions for a hotel and use that information to fine-tune the hotel's business strategy and marketing activities.

In MyMISLab, you will find a database for hotel reservation transactions developed in Microsoft Access with information about The President's Inn in Cape May, New Jersey. At the Inn, 10 rooms overlook side streets, 10 rooms have bay windows that offer limited views of the ocean, and the remaining 10 rooms in the front of the hotel face the ocean. Room rates are based on room choice, length of stay, and number of guests per room. Room rates are the same for one to four guests. Fifth and sixth guests must pay an additional $20 charge each per person per day. Guests staying for seven days or more receive a 10 percent discount on their daily room rates.

The owners currently use a manual reservation and bookkeeping system, which has caused many problems. Use the database to develop reports on average length of stay, average visitors per room, base revenue per room (i.e., length of visit multiplied by the daily rate), and strongest customer base. After answering these questions write a brief report about the Inn's current business situation and suggest future strategies.

**Improving Decision Making: Using Web Tools to Configure and Price an Automobile**

Software skills: Internet-based software
Business skills: Researching product information and pricing

3-11 In this exercise, you will use software at car Web sites to find product information about a car of your choice and use that information to make an important purchase decision. You will also evaluate two of these sites as selling tools.

You are interested in purchasing a new Ford Escape (or some other car of your choice). Go to the Web site of CarsDirect (www.carsdirect.com) and begin your investigation. Locate the Ford Escape. Research the various Escape models, choose one you prefer in terms of price, features, and safety ratings. Locate and read at least two reviews. Surf the Web site of the manufacturer, in this case Ford (www.ford.com). Compare the information available on Ford's Web site with that of CarsDirect for the Ford Escape. Try to locate the lowest price for the car you want in a local dealer's inventory. Suggest improvements for CarsDirect.com and Ford.com.

**Collaboration and Teamwork Project**

3-12 In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Docs, Google Sites, Google +, or other open-source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.
Who’s The World’s Top Retailer? Walmart and Amazon Duke It Out

CASE STUDY

Walmart is the world’s largest and most successful retailer, with $476 billion in fiscal 2014 sales and nearly 11,000 stores worldwide, including over 4,000 in the United States. Walmart has 2 million employees, and ranks Number 1 on the Fortune 500 list of companies. Walmart had such a large and powerful selling machine that it really didn’t have any serious competitors. No other retailer came close—until now. Today Walmart’s greatest threat is no other than Amazon.com, often called the “Walmart of the Web.” Amazon sells not only books but just about everything else people want to buy—DVDs, video and music streaming, downloads, software, video games, electronics, apparel, furniture, food, toys, and jewelry. The company also produces consumer electronics—notably the Amazon Kindle e-book reader. No other online retailer can match Amazon’s breadth of selection, low prices, and fast, reliable shipping.

For many years, Amazon has been the leader in online retail and is now the world’s largest e-commerce retailer. It, too, has a very large and powerful selling machine, although it has primarily focused on selling through the Internet. But if Amazon has its way, that’s about to change, because it dearly wants to move in on Walmart’s turf.

Walmart was founded as a traditional, off-line, physical store in 1962, and that’s still what it does best. But it is being forced to compete in e-commerce, whether it likes it or not. Six or seven years ago, only one-fourth of all Walmart customers shopped at Amazon.com, according to data from researcher Kantar Retail. Today, however, half of Walmart customers say they’ve shopped at both retailers. Online competition from Amazon has become too tough to ignore.

Why is this happening to Walmart? There are two trends that threaten its dominance. First, Walmart’s traditional customers—who are primarily bargain hunters making less than $50,000 per year—are becoming more comfortable using technology. More affluent customers who started shopping at Walmart during the recession are returning to Amazon as their finances improve. Amazon has started stocking merchandise categories that Walmart traditionally sold, such as vacuum bags, diapers, and apparel, and its revenue is growing much faster than Walmart’s.

In 2013, Amazon had sales of nearly $67 billion, compared to online sales of about $9 billion for Walmart.

If more people want to do even some of their shopping online, Amazon has some clear cut advantages. Amazon has created a recognizable and highly successful brand in online retailing. The company has developed extensive warehousing facilities and an extremely efficient distribution network specifically designed for Web shopping. Its premium shipping service, Amazon Prime, provides fast “free” two-day shipping at an affordable fixed annual subscription price ($99 per year), often considered to be a weak point for online retailers. According to the Wall Street Journal, Amazon’s shipping costs are lower than Walmart’s, ranging from $3 to $4 per package, while Walmart’s online shipping can run $5–$7 per parcel. Walmart’s massive supply chain needs to support more than 4,000 physical stores worldwide, which Amazon doesn’t have to worry about. Shipping costs can make a big difference for a store like Walmart where popular purchases tend to be low-cost items like $10 packs of underwear. It makes no sense for Walmart to create a duplicate supply chain for e-commerce.

However, Walmart is no pushover. It is an even larger and more recognizable brand than Amazon. Consumers associate Walmart with the lowest price, which Walmart has the flexibility to offer on any given item because of its size. The company can lose money selling a hot product at extremely low margins and expect to make money on the strength of the large quantities of other items it sells. Walmart also has a significant physical presence, with stores all across the United States, and its stores provide the instant gratification of shopping, buying an item, and taking it home immediately, as opposed to waiting when ordering from Amazon. Two-thirds of the U.S. population is within five miles of a Walmart store, according to company management.

Walmart has steadily increased its investment in its online business, spending more than $300 million to acquire five tech firms, including Small Society, One Riot, Kosmix, and Grabble, while hiring more than 300 engineers and code writers. Other recent acquisitions include Torbit, OneOps, Tasty Labs, and Inkiru, that will help give Walmart more expertise in things like improving the product recommendations for Web visitors to Walmart.com, using smartphones.
as a marketing channel, and personalizing the shopping experience. Walmart has been steadily adding new applications to its mobile and online shopping channels, and is expanding its integration with social networks such as Pinterest.

The company’s technology team is working on an application called Endless Aisle, which would allow shoppers to immediately order from Walmart.com using their smartphones if an item is out of stock. A Pay With Cash program enables the 25 percent of Walmart customers who don’t have credit cards or bank accounts to order their products online and then pay for them in cash at their nearest Walmart store. Walmart’s online and digital development division @WalmartLabs acquired the recipe technology startup Yumprint in order to expand its online grocery delivery services. Management hopes that Yumprint will help Walmart customers more easily make shopping lists from recipes they find in Yumprint before they shop. The company also hired former eBay executive Jamie Iannone to manage the integration of Sam’s Club’s Website with Walmart’s global e-commerce unit.

Walmart’s Sam’s Club has been testing a new subscription service called My Subscriptions that allows its 47 million members to order over 700 items, including baby, beauty, and office supplies in order to compete with Amazon’s Subscribe & Save program. Online customers will not need to pay shipping fees for these subscription items. Sam’s Club used to be unaffected by competitors like Amazon among shoppers of fresh food, groceries, and basic products that were either not sold on Amazon, or were more expensive online. Now 35-40 million households enrolled in Amazon Prime, and many Sam’s Club members tend to belong to Amazon Prime as well. Sam’s Club is starting to feel the pressure. Amazon is looking into starting a new business called “Pantry,” which would allow customers to purchase goods like toilet paper and cleaning supplies in bigger bundles for cheaper shipping costs.

Walmart is also trying to improve links between its store inventory, Web site, and mobile phone apps so that more customers can order online and pick up their purchases at stores. Shoppers can order items online and pick them up from lockers in local stores without waiting in line. (Walmart already offers in-store pick up of online orders.) Walmart’s lockers are similar to Amazon’s recent deal with Staples and 7-Eleven to do the same. The idea is to be able to offer Walmart products anywhere a consumer prefers to shop, whether that’s online, in stores, or on the phone.

The company is re-thinking its in-store experience to draw more people into its stores. More than half of Walmart customers own smartphones. Walmart has designed its mobile app to maximize Walmart’s advantage over Amazon: its physical locations. About 140 million people visit a Walmart store each week. The company started testing the app’s in-store mode, which detects when a customer is in a physical store. When the mode is activated, customers can check their wish lists, locate items of interest in the store, and see local promotions. The app’s “Scan & Go” feature lets customers scan items as they shop so they can move quickly through self-checkout. Shoppers can add items to their lists using voice or by scanning bar codes.

The Walmart Web site uses software to monitor prices at competing retailers in real time and lower its online prices if necessary. The company is also doubling inventory sold from third-party retailers in its online marketplace and tracking patterns in search and social media data to help it select more trendy products. This strikes directly at Amazon’s third party marketplace which accounts for a significant revenue stream for Amazon. Additionally, Walmart is expanding its online offerings to include upscale items like $146 Nike sunglasses and wine refrigerators costing more than $2,500 to attract customers who never set foot in a Walmart store.

Amazon is working on expanding its selection of goods to be as exhaustive as Walmart’s. Amazon has allowed third-party sellers to sell goods through its Web site for a number of years, and it has dramatically expanded product selection via acquisitions such as its 2009 purchase of online shoe shopping site Zappos.com to give Amazon an edge in footwear.

On June 18, 2014, Amazon announced its own Fire Phone to provide a better mobile platform for selling its products and services online. Amazon’s smartphone has four cameras that can track faces to show images that appear to have depth similar to a hologram. Users are able to scroll through Web or book pages just by tilting the device or to quickly navigate menus, access shortcuts, and view notifications. Mayday is a 24-hour customer support service for users of Amazon’s devices, offering one-tap access to Amazon customer service agents who can talk to phone users via video chat, and take over the screen on their devices to show them exactly how to do something. Firefly is a tool that automatically recognizes through the camera over 100 million items, including merchandise, music, or television shows, then offers a way to buy them through Amazon’s online store. For example, a user could...
point the phone at a pair of running shoes and then order them immediately from Amazon.com.

Amazon continues to build more fulfillment centers closer to urban centers and expand its same-day delivery services, and it has a supply chain optimized for online commerce that Walmart just can't match. But Walmart has thousands of stores, in almost every neighborhood that Amazon won't ever be able to match. The winner of this epic struggle will be which company leverages its advantage better. Walmart's technology initiative looks promising, but it still hasn't succeeded in getting its local stores to be anything more than local stores. Still up in the air is the question of the relationship of online selling to Walmart's overall business model. Should Walmart try to best Amazon as the world's dominant e-commerce site? Or would it be better off using online selling to boost revenue for all of Walmart. Would more companywide profits be generated by having a modest online site and using technology to boost store profits?


### CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

3-13 Analyze Walmart and Amazon.com using the competitive forces and value chain models.

3-14 Compare Walmart and Amazon's business models and business strategies.

3-15 What role does information technology play in each of these businesses? How is it helping them refine their business strategies?

3-16 Will Walmart be successful against Amazon.com? Explain your answer.

---

**MyMISLab**

Go to [mymislab.com](http://mymislab.com) for Auto-graded writing questions as well as the following Assisted-graded writing questions.

3-17 Describe the impact of the Internet on each of the five competitive forces.

3-18 What are the main factors that mediate the relationship between information technology and organizations, and that managers need to take into account when developing new information systems? Give a business example of how each factor would influence the development of new information systems.
Chapter 3 References


Markus, M. L. “Power, Politics, and MIS Implementation.” *Communications of the ACM* 26, No. 6 (June 1983).


This page intentionally left blank
LEARNING OBJECTIVES
After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. What ethical, social, and political issues are raised by information systems?
2. What specific principles for conduct can be used to guide ethical decisions?
3. Why do contemporary information systems technology and the Internet pose challenges to the protection of individual privacy and intellectual property?
4. How have information systems affected laws for establishing accountability, liability, and the quality of everyday life?

MyMISLab™
Visit mymislabs.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.
More than 11 million HBO subscribers watched each episode of \emph{Game of Thrones} in 2012, but another 3.7 to 4.2 million were able to watch the same shows without paying a cent. They were watching pirated versions of each episode that were made available by companies specializing in distributing digital content for free without paying the owners and creators of that content for using it. Television shows, music, movies, and videogames have all been plundered this way.

Such “content pirates” have sailed the World Wide Web since its earliest days, but today they are bolder, faster and better equipped than ever. The antipiracy and security firm Irdeto detected 14 billion instances of pirated online content in 2012, up from 5.4 billion instances in 2009.

Pirated content threatens television industry profits, much of which comes from subscription fees on cable channels like HBO and USA. Viewers watching pirated versions of shows are less likely to pay for cable subscriptions or to buy movies or rent them from services such as Netflix. According to one estimate, pirated content costs the U.S. economy $58 billion a year, including theft of content, lost entertainment jobs and taxes lost to federal and state governments.

The explosion in pirated TV shows and movies has been made possible by faster Internet speeds. Longer videos can be downloaded within minutes from peer-to-peer networks and online cyberlockers. A great deal of illegal content, including live sports, is also available through instant streaming. Online ad networks also help finance piracy by placing ads on sites that traffic in unauthorized content. A summer 2012 study commissioned in part by Google found that 86 percent of peer-to-peer sharing sites depend on advertising for income.
One of the biggest content pirate sites is The Pirate Bay, based in Sweden, which offers free access to millions of copyrighted songs and thousands of copyrighted movies. The Pirate Bay uses BitTorrent file-sharing technology, which breaks up large computer files into small pieces so they can zip across the Web. In April 2014, The Pirate Bay had over 6.5 million registered users and was the 87th most trafficked site in the world. There have been many legal efforts to shut it down, but The Pirate Bay finds ways to keep going.

What can be done to stop this pirating? Google adjusted its search algorithm to obscure search results for sites with pirated content. NBCUniversal uses armies of automated “crawlers” to scour the Web for unauthorized videos and also applies “content recognition” technology to its programming, which it then passes on to video sites like YouTube to help block illegal uploads. NBC sends out digital snapshots of its shows to YouTube and other video sites to prevent users from putting up copyrighted shows. The five major Internet service providers, including NBC’s parent company, Comcast, initiated an alert system which notifies users suspected of piracy and results in progressive penalties, including slowed Web access in some cases. Digital content owners are taking much harder stance with advertising networks and payment platforms supporting piracy to encourage them to close down ad-funded pirate sites.

New products and services have made pirated content less attractive. High-quality content now can be streamed for a small fee to both tethered and mobile devices. Apple’s iTunes made buying individual songs inexpensive and easy, while new subscription-based services such as Spotify and Rhapsody have attracted 20 million paying subscribers. Netflix and other video services offer access to movies and television shows at low prices. Right now content pirates are still sailing, but new and better ways to listen to music and view videos may eventually put them out of business.


The prevalence and brazen activities of “content pirates” described in this case and this chapter show that technology can be a double-edged sword. It can be the source of many benefits, including the ability to share and transmit legitimate photos, music, videos, and information over the Internet at high speeds. But, at the same time, digital technology creates new opportunities for breaking the law or taking benefits away from others, including owners of valuable intellectual property, such as music, videos, and television shows that are protected by copyright law.

The chapter-opening diagram calls attention to important points raised by this case and this chapter. Content pirating has become rampant because of opportunities created by broadband communications technology and the global nature of the Internet. Various policies and technology solutions have been put in place to put a stop to content piracy, but the practice still prevails. New technology-based products and services that make online content purchase and downloads very quick and inexpensive may eventually provide a solution.

This case illustrates an ethical dilemma because it shows two sets of interests at work—the interests of people and organizations that have worked to develop intellectual property and need to be rewarded versus those of groups who fervently believe the Internet should foster the free exchange of content.
and ideas. As a manager, you will need to be sensitive to both the positive and negative impacts of information systems for your firm, employees and customers. You will need to learn how to resolve ethical dilemmas involving information systems.

4.1 What ethical, social, and political issues are raised by information systems?

In the past 10 years, we have witnessed, arguably, one of the most ethically challenging periods for U.S. and global business. Table 4.1 provides a small sample of recent cases demonstrating failed ethical judgment by senior and middle managers. These lapses in ethical and business judgment occurred across a broad spectrum of industries.

In today’s new legal environment, managers who violate the law and are convicted will most likely spend time in prison. U.S. federal sentencing guidelines adopted in 1987 mandate that federal judges impose stiff sentences on business executives based on the monetary value of the crime, the presence of a conspiracy to prevent discovery of the crime, the use of structured financial transactions to hide the crime, and failure to cooperate with prosecutors (U.S. Sentencing Commission, 2004).

Although business firms would, in the past, often pay for the legal defense of their employees enmeshed in civil charges and criminal investigations, firms are now encouraged to cooperate with prosecutors to reduce charges against the entire firm for obstructing investigations. These developments mean that, more than ever, as a manager or an employee, you will have to decide for yourself what constitutes proper legal and ethical conduct.

Although these major instances of failed ethical and legal judgment were not masterminded by information systems departments, information systems were instrumental in many of these frauds. In many cases, the perpetrators of these crimes artfully used financial reporting information systems to bury their decisions from public scrutiny in the vain hope they would never be caught.
We deal with the issue of control in information systems in Chapter 8. In this chapter, we will talk about the ethical dimensions of these and other actions based on the use of information systems.

**Ethics** refers to the principles of right and wrong that individuals, acting as free moral agents, use to make choices to guide their behaviors. Information systems raise new ethical questions for both individuals and societies because they create opportunities for intense social change, and thus threaten existing distributions of power, money, rights, and obligations. Like other technologies, such as steam engines, electricity, the telephone, and the radio, information technology can be used to achieve social progress, but it can also be used to commit crimes and threaten cherished social values. The development of information technology will produce benefits for many and costs for others.

Ethical issues in information systems have been given new urgency by the rise of the Internet and electronic commerce. Internet and digital firm technologies make it easier than ever to assemble, integrate, and distribute information, unleashing new concerns about the appropriate use of customer information, the protection of personal privacy, and the protection of intellectual property.
Other pressing ethical issues raised by information systems include establishing accountability for the consequences of information systems, setting standards to safeguard system quality that protects the safety of the individual and society, and preserving values and institutions considered essential to the quality of life in an information society. When using information systems, it is essential to ask, “What is the ethical and socially responsible course of action?”

**A MODEL FOR THINKING ABOUT ETHICAL, SOCIAL, AND POLITICAL ISSUES**

Ethical, social, and political issues are closely linked. The ethical dilemma you may face as a manager of information systems typically is reflected in social and political debate. One way to think about these relationships is shown in Figure 4.1. Imagine society as a more or less calm pond on a summer day, a delicate ecosystem in partial equilibrium with individuals and with social and political institutions. Individuals know how to act in this pond because social institutions (family, education, organizations) have developed well-honed rules of behavior, and these are supported by laws developed in the political sector that prescribe behavior and promise sanctions for violations. Now toss a rock into the center of the pond. What happens? Ripples, of course.

![Figure 4.1: The Relationship Between Ethical, Social, and Political Issues in an Information Society](image)

The introduction of new information technology has a ripple effect, raising new ethical, social, and political issues that must be dealt with on the individual, social, and political levels. These issues have five moral dimensions: information rights and obligations, property rights and obligations, system quality, quality of life, and accountability and control.
Imagine instead that the disturbing force is a powerful shock of new information technology and systems hitting a society more or less at rest. Suddenly, individual actors are confronted with new situations often not covered by the old rules. Social institutions cannot respond overnight to these ripples—it may take years to develop etiquette, expectations, social responsibility, politically correct attitudes, or approved rules. Political institutions also require time before developing new laws and often require the demonstration of real harm before they act. In the meantime, you may have to act. You may be forced to act in a legal gray area.

We can use this model to illustrate the dynamics that connect ethical, social, and political issues. This model is also useful for identifying the main moral dimensions of the information society, which cut across various levels of action—individual, social, and political.

**FIVE MORAL DIMENSIONS OF THE INFORMATION AGE**

The major ethical, social, and political issues raised by information systems include the following moral dimensions:

- **Information rights and obligations.** What information rights do individuals and organizations possess with respect to themselves? What can they protect?

- **Property rights and obligations.** How will traditional intellectual property rights be protected in a digital society in which tracing and accounting for ownership are difficult and ignoring such property rights is so easy?

- **Accountability and control.** Who can and will be held accountable and liable for the harm done to individual and collective information and property rights?

- **System quality.** What standards of data and system quality should we demand to protect individual rights and the safety of society?

- **Quality of life.** What values should be preserved in an information- and knowledge-based society? Which institutions should we protect from violation? Which cultural values and practices are supported by the new information technology?

We explore these moral dimensions in detail in Section 4.3.

**KEY TECHNOLOGY TRENDS THAT RAISE ETHICAL ISSUES**

Ethical issues long preceded information technology. Nevertheless, information technology has heightened ethical concerns, taxed existing social arrangements, and made some laws obsolete or severely crippled. There are five key technological trends responsible for these ethical stresses and they are summarized in Table 4.2.

The doubling of computing power every 18 months has made it possible for most organizations to use information systems for their core production processes. As a result, our dependence on systems and our vulnerability to system errors and poor data quality have increased. Social rules and laws have not yet adjusted to this dependence. Standards for ensuring the accuracy and reliability of information systems (see Chapter 8) are not universally accepted or enforced.

Advances in data storage techniques and rapidly declining storage costs have been responsible for the multiplying databases on individuals—employees, customers, and potential customers—maintained by private and public organizations. These advances in data storage have made the routine violation
of individual privacy both cheap and effective. Enormous data storage systems for terabytes and petabytes of data are now available on-site or as online services for firms of all sizes to use in identifying customers.

Advances in data analysis techniques for large pools of data are another technological trend that heightens ethical concerns because companies and government agencies are able to find out highly detailed personal information about individuals. With contemporary data management tools (see Chapter 6), companies can assemble and combine the myriad pieces of information about you stored on computers much more easily than in the past.

Think of all the ways you generate computer information about yourself—credit card purchases, telephone calls, magazine subscriptions, video rentals, mail-order purchases, banking records, local, state, and federal government records (including court and police records), and visits to Web sites. Put together and mined properly, this information could reveal not only your credit information but also your driving habits, your tastes, your associations, what you read and watch, and your political interests.

Companies with products to sell purchase relevant information from these sources to help them more finely target their marketing campaigns. Chapters 6 and 11 describe how companies can analyze large pools of data from multiple sources to rapidly identify buying patterns of customers and suggest individual responses. The use of computers to combine data from multiple sources and create electronic dossiers of detailed information on individuals is called profiling.

For example, several thousand of the most popular Web sites allow DoubleClick (owned by Google), an Internet advertising broker, to track the activities of their visitors in exchange for revenue from advertisements based on visitor information DoubleClick gathers. DoubleClick uses this information to create a profile of each online visitor, adding more detail to the profile as the visitor accesses an associated DoubleClick site. Over time, DoubleClick can create a detailed dossier of a person’s spending and computing habits on the Web that is sold to companies to help them target their Web ads more precisely. The top 50 Web sites in the United States contain on average over 100 tracking programs installed by advertising firms to track your online behavior.

ChoicePoint gathers data from police, criminal, and motor vehicle records, credit and employment histories, current and previous addresses, professional licenses, and insurance claims to assemble and maintain electronic dossiers on almost every adult in the United States. The company sells this personal information to businesses and government agencies. Demand for personal

| TABLE 4.2 TECHNOLOGY TRENDS THAT RAISE ETHICAL ISSUES |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| TRENDS          | IMPACT                                        |
| Computing power doubles every 18 months | More organizations depend on computer systems for critical operations. |
| Data storage costs rapidly decline     | Organizations can easily maintain detailed databases on individuals. |
| Data analysis advances                   | Companies can analyze vast quantities of data gathered on individuals to develop detailed profiles of individual behavior. |
| Networking advances                      | The cost of moving data and making it accessible from anywhere falls exponentially. |
| Mobile device growth Impact               | Individual cell phones may be tracked without user consent or knowledge. |

Chapter 4 Ethical and Social Issues in Information Systems 129
data is so enormous that data broker businesses such as ChoicePoint are flourishing. The two largest credit card networks, Visa Inc. and MasterCard Inc., have agreed to link credit card purchase information with consumer social network and other information to create customer profiles that could be sold to advertising firms. In 2013, Visa processed more than 45 billion transactions a year and MasterCard processed more than 23 billion transactions. Currently, this transactional information is not linked with consumer Internet activities.

A new data analysis technology called nonobvious relationship awareness (NORA) has given both the government and the private sector even more powerful profiling capabilities. NORA can take information about people from many disparate sources, such as employment applications, telephone records, customer listings, and “wanted” lists, and correlate relationships to find obscure hidden connections that might help identify criminals or terrorists (see Figure 4.2).

NORA technology scans data and extracts information as the data are being generated so that it could, for example, instantly discover a man at an airline ticket counter who shares a phone number with a known terrorist before that person boards an airplane. The technology is considered a valuable tool for homeland security but does have privacy implications because it can provide such a detailed picture of the activities and associations of a single individual.

An example of how government and private industry not only use the same data mining techniques to identify and track individuals, but in cases of national security, closely cooperate with one another in gathering data, was provided by the unauthorized release of documents describing the electronic surveillance activities of the U.S. National Security Agency (NSA). The Interactive Session on Management describes this program and the controversy it has generated.

Finally, advances in networking, including the Internet, promise to greatly reduce the costs of moving and accessing large quantities of data and open...
the possibility of mining large pools of data remotely using small desktop machines, permitting an invasion of privacy on a scale and with a precision heretofore unimaginable.

4.2 What specific principles for conduct can be used to guide ethical decisions?

Ethics is a concern of humans who have freedom of choice. Ethics is about individual choice: When faced with alternative courses of action, what is the correct moral choice? What are the main features of ethical choice?

**BASIC CONCEPTS: RESPONSIBILITY, ACCOUNTABILITY, AND LIABILITY**

Ethical choices are decisions made by individuals who are responsible for the consequences of their actions. **Responsibility** is a key element of ethical action. Responsibility means that you accept the potential costs, duties, and obligations for the decisions you make. **Accountability** is a feature of systems and social
EDWARD SNOWDEN: TRAITOR OR PROTECTOR OF PRIVACY?

In June 2013, Edward Snowden, a technology contract worker for the NSA, provided details of the NSA surveillance program called PRISM to the British newspaper The Guardian. Mr. Snowden had broad access to NSA files because he was working for the agency in Hawaii, helping to manage the NSA's computer systems in an outpost that focuses on China and North Korea. He was one of 1.2 million people in the United States who have top security clearance.

Snowden used inexpensive and widely available “web crawler” software to scrape data out of NSA systems and kept at it even after he was briefly challenged by agency officials. A web crawler automatically moves from Web site to Web site, following links embedded in each document, and can be programmed to copy everything in its path. U.S. intelligence officials believe Snowden accessed roughly 1.7 million files this way. Because Snowden worked at a NSA outpost that had not yet been upgraded with modern security measures, his copying of huge volumes of data raised few alarms.

Snowden told The Guardian that he had grown concerned about how massive and invasive the NSA system had become. He described how NSA collects information on telephone calls, e-mails, social network postings, search queries, and other Web communications of Internet users in the United States. The data are provided to the government by the data-gathering giants of Silicon Valley—Google, Facebook, Twitter, Microsoft, Yahoo, and other large Internet firms—as well as telecommunications service providers such as Verizon. The availability and relatively low cost of contemporary data management and analytics technologies described earlier in this chapter make it possible for the NSA to store and conduct very sophisticated analysis of massive quantities of data.

The purpose of PRISM is to identify terrorists and their plans before the plans can be executed. PRISM does not collect the contents of Internet communications, but only the meta-data (essentially who is communicating with whom). Using this data, PRISM constructs a social graph of some Americans’ social connections, identifying their associates, their locations at certain times, their traveling companions and other personal information. Once PRISM identifies suspicious patterns, it then requests more detailed information from these firms that can include the contents of the communication.

NSA and government officials claim the program is legal under existing statutes, has been in operation for many years with Congressional oversight, and provides for judicial review of active surveillance of specific people. The phone-records program was built upon a provision in the USA Patriot Act, passed a month after the 9/11 terrorist attacks. While aimed at communications with and among foreign nationals, it is apparent that the entire U.S. population, citizens and non-citizens, is included in the NSA data gathering effort. The NSA programs are approved and overseen by the secret Foreign Intelligence Surveillance Court.

The documents leaked by Snowden included details about the NSA data analysis and data visualization tool Boundless Informant, a secret court order requiring Verizon to hand the NSA millions of Americans’ phone records daily, and the surveillance of French citizens’ phone and Internet records, along with those of high-profile individuals from the world of business or politics. The documents also described XKeyscore, which allows for the collection of almost anything done on the Internet, including the content of personal email, Web search history, and browsing patterns.

The documents revealed that the NSA was harvesting millions of email and instant messaging contact lists, searching email content, tracking and mapping the location of cell phones, and undermining attempts at encryption to pinpoint targets for government hacking and to bolster surveillance. The NSA was shown to be secretly tapping into Yahoo and Google data centers to collect information from hundreds of millions of account holders worldwide by tapping undersea cables using the MUSCULAR program.

Additionally, the NSA, the U.S. Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) and British intelligence agency GCHQ spied on users of Second Life and World of Warcraft by creating make-believe characters to hide in plain sight. NSA intelligence-gathering operations had targeted Brazil’s largest oil company, Petrobras. Tensions flared between the U.S. and some of its close allies after it was revealed that the U.S. had spied on Brazil, France, Mexico, Britain, China, Germany and Spain, as well as 35 world leaders, including German Chancellor Angela Merkel.

Snowden’s revelations reignited the public debate about how to strike a balance between security and
liberty in the age of global terrorism and powerful technology. U.S. officials have stated that PRISM, in concert with other techniques, has helped thwart dozens of terrorist plots in the U.S. and overseas. President Obama argued that modest encroachments on privacy, including keeping records of phone numbers called and the length of calls that can be used to track terrorists, though not listening in to calls, were worthwhile to protect the country. These programs were authorized by Congress and regularly reviewed by federal courts.

Critics charge that PRISM represents a massive invasion of privacy. They believe that routinely giving phone records and e-mail contents to the federal government is a violation of the Fourth Amendment's prohibition against search and seizure without a warrant and probable cause, even though this Amendment applies only to personal papers in the home. More than half of Americans surveyed by a Washington Post-ABC News Poll in November 2013 said that the NSA surveillance has intruded on their personal privacy rights. However, U.S. courts have ruled that modern communication tools effectively bypass the Fourth Amendment. Under these rulings, our telephone data—whom we call and how long we are connected—are not considered to be under traditional Fourth Amendment protection (through something called the Third Party Doctrine, which holds that knowingly disclosing information to a third party—in this case, an Internet service provider—abrogates that protection). By the same reasoning, our e-mails are generally considered unprotected as well (though there is some legal ambiguity here).

A panel appointed by President Obama has called for a major overhaul of NSA operations. In the meantime, Snowden has been charged with espionage and theft and has been living in Russia. Among those worried about NSA encroachment on individual privacy, Snowden has been praised as a hero. Among those more concerned with national security and the need to protect the nation and its citizens from terrorist and other attacks, Snowden is vilified as a traitor. The debate—and it is a very heated one—continues.


Institutions: It means that mechanisms are in place to determine who took responsible action, and who is responsible. Systems and institutions in which it is impossible to find out who took what action are inherently incapable of ethical analysis or ethical action. Liability extends the concept of responsibility further to the area of laws. Liability is a feature of political systems in which a body of laws is in place that permits individuals to recover the damages done to them by other actors, systems, or organizations. Due process is a related feature of law-governed societies and is a process in which laws are known and understood, and there is an ability to appeal to higher authorities to ensure that the laws are applied correctly.

These basic concepts form the underpinning of an ethical analysis of information systems and those who manage them. First, information technologies are filtered through social institutions, organizations, and individuals.

CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Perform an ethical analysis of the PRISM program and NSA surveillance activities. What is the ethical dilemma presented by this case?

2. Describe the role of information technology in creating this ethical dilemma.

3. Do you think the NSA should be allowed to continue its electronic surveillance programs? Why or why not?
Systems do not have impacts by themselves. Whatever information system impacts exist are products of institutional, organizational, and individual actions and behaviors. Second, responsibility for the consequences of technology falls clearly on the institutions, organizations, and individual managers who choose to use the technology. Using information technology in a socially responsible manner means that you can and will be held accountable for the consequences of your actions. Third, in an ethical, political society, individuals and others can recover damages done to them through a set of laws characterized by due process.

**ETHICAL ANALYSIS**

When confronted with a situation that seems to present ethical issues, how should you analyze it? The following five-step process should help:

1. **Identify and describe the facts clearly.** Find out who did what to whom, and where, when, and how. In many instances, you will be surprised at the errors in the initially reported facts, and often you will find that simply getting the facts straight helps define the solution. It also helps to get the opposing parties involved in an ethical dilemma to agree on the facts.

2. **Define the conflict or dilemma and identify the higher-order values involved.** Ethical, social, and political issues always reference higher values. The parties to a dispute all claim to be pursuing higher values (e.g., freedom, privacy, protection of property, and the free enterprise system). Typically, an ethical issue involves a dilemma: two diametrically opposed courses of action that support worthwhile values. For example, the chapter-opening case study illustrates two competing values: the need to improve access to digital content and the need to respect the property rights of the owners of that content.

3. **Identify the stakeholders.** Every ethical, social, and political issue has stakeholders: players in the game who have an interest in the outcome, who have invested in the situation, and usually who have vocal opinions. Find out the identity of these groups and what they want. This will be useful later when designing a solution.

4. **Identify the options that you can reasonably take.** You may find that none of the options satisfy all the interests involved, but that some options do a better job than others. Sometimes arriving at a good or ethical solution may not always be a balancing of consequences to stakeholders.

5. **Identify the potential consequences of your options.** Some options may be ethically correct but disastrous from other points of view. Other options may work in one instance but not in other similar instances. Always ask yourself, “What if I choose this option consistently over time?”

**CANDIDATE ETHICAL PRINCIPLES**

Once your analysis is complete, what ethical principles or rules should you use to make a decision? What higher-order values should inform your judgment? Although you are the only one who can decide which among many ethical principles you will follow, and how you will prioritize them, it is helpful to consider some ethical principles with deep roots in many cultures that have survived throughout recorded history:

1. Do unto others as you would have them do unto you (the Golden Rule). Putting yourself into the place of others, and thinking of yourself as the object of the decision, can help you think about fairness in decision making.

2. If an action is not right for everyone to take, it is not right for anyone (Immanuel Kant's Categorical Imperative). Ask yourself, “If everyone did this, could the organization, or society, survive?”
3. If an action cannot be taken repeatedly, it is not right to take at all. This is the slippery-slope rule: An action may bring about a small change now that is acceptable, but if it is repeated, it would bring unacceptable changes in the long run. In the vernacular, it might be stated as “once started down a slippery path, you may not be able to stop.”

4. Take the action that achieves the higher or greater value (Utilitarian Principle). This rule assumes you can prioritize values in a rank order and understand the consequences of various courses of action.

5. Take the action that produces the least harm or the least potential cost (Risk Aversion Principle). Some actions have extremely high failure costs of very low probability (e.g., building a nuclear generating facility in an urban area) or extremely high failure costs of moderate probability (speeding and automobile accidents). Avoid these high-failure-cost actions, paying greater attention to high-failure-cost potential of moderate to high probability.

6. Assume that virtually all tangible and intangible objects are owned by someone else unless there is a specific declaration otherwise. (This is the ethical “no free lunch” rule.) If something someone else has created is useful to you, it has value, and you should assume the creator wants compensation for this work.

Actions that do not easily pass these rules deserve close attention and a great deal of caution. The appearance of unethical behavior may do as much harm to you and your company as actual unethical behavior.

**PROFESSIONAL CODES OF CONDUCT**

When groups of people claim to be professionals, they take on special rights and obligations because of their special claims to knowledge, wisdom, and respect. Professional codes of conduct are promulgated by associations of professionals, such as the American Medical Association (AMA), the American Bar Association (ABA), the Association of Information Technology Professionals (AITP), and the Association for Computing Machinery (ACM). These professional groups take responsibility for the partial regulation of their professions by determining entrance qualifications and competence. Codes of ethics are promises by professions to regulate themselves in the general interest of society. For example, avoiding harm to others, honoring property rights (including intellectual property), and respecting privacy are among the General Moral Imperatives of the ACM’s Code of Ethics and Professional Conduct.

**SOME REAL-WORLD ETHICAL DILEMMAS**

Information systems have created new ethical dilemmas in which one set of interests is pitted against another. For example, many of the large telephone companies in the United States are using information technology to reduce the size of their workforces. Voice recognition software reduces the need for human operators by enabling computers to recognize a customer’s responses to a series of computerized questions. Many companies monitor what their employees are doing on the Internet to prevent them from wasting company resources on non-business activities. Facebook monitors its subscribers and then sells the information to advertisers and app developers (see the chapter-ending case study).

In each instance, you can find competing values at work, with groups lined up on either side of a debate. A company may argue, for example, that it has a right to use information systems to increase productivity and reduce the size
of its workforce to lower costs and stay in business. Employees displaced by information systems may argue that employers have some responsibility for their welfare. Business owners might feel obligated to monitor employee e-mail and Internet use to minimize drains on productivity. Employees might believe they should be able to use the Internet for short personal tasks in place of the telephone. A close analysis of the facts can sometimes produce compromised solutions that give each side “half a loaf.” Try to apply some of the principles of ethical analysis described to each of these cases. What is the right thing to do?

### 4.3 Why do contemporary information systems technology and the Internet pose challenges to the protection of individual privacy and intellectual property?

In this section, we take a closer look at the five moral dimensions of information systems first described in Figure 4.1. In each dimension, we identify the ethical, social, and political levels of analysis and use real-world examples to illustrate the values involved, the stakeholders, and the options chosen.

#### INFORMATION RIGHTS: PRIVACY AND FREEDOM IN THE INTERNET AGE

**Privacy** is the claim of individuals to be left alone, free from surveillance or interference from other individuals or organizations, including the state. Claims to privacy are also involved at the workplace: Millions of employees are subject to electronic and other forms of high-tech surveillance. Information technology and systems threaten individual claims to privacy by making the invasion of privacy cheap, profitable, and effective.

The claim to privacy is protected in the U.S., Canadian, and German constitutions in a variety of different ways and in other countries through various statutes. In the United States, the claim to privacy is protected primarily by the First Amendment guarantees of freedom of speech and association, the Fourth Amendment protections against unreasonable search and seizure of one’s personal documents or home, and the guarantee of due process.

Table 4.3 describes the major U.S. federal statutes that set forth the conditions for handling information about individuals in such areas as credit reporting, education, financial records, newspaper records, and electronic communications. The Privacy Act of 1974 has been the most important of these laws, regulating the federal government’s collection, use, and disclosure of information. At present, most U.S. federal privacy laws apply only to the federal government and regulate very few areas of the private sector.

Most American and European privacy law is based on a regime called **Fair Information Practices (FIP)** first set forth in a report written in 1973 by a federal government advisory committee and updated most recently in 2010 to take into account new privacy-invading technology (FTC, 2010; U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, 1973). FIP is a set of principles governing the collection and use of information about individuals. FIP principles are based on the notion of a mutuality of interest between the record holder and the individual. The individual has an interest in engaging in a transaction, and the record keeper—usually a business or government agency—requires
information about the individual to support the transaction. Once information is gathered, the individual maintains an interest in the record, and the record may not be used to support other activities without the individual's consent. In 1998, the FTC restated and extended the original FIP to provide guidelines for protecting online privacy. Table 4.4 describes the FTC's Fair Information Practice principles.

The FTC's FIP principles are being used as guidelines to drive changes in privacy legislation. In July 1998, the U.S. Congress passed the Children's Online Privacy Protection Act (COPPA), requiring Web sites to obtain parental permission before collecting information on children under the age of 13. The FTC has recommended additional legislation to protect online consumer privacy in advertising networks that collect records of consumer Web activity to develop detailed profiles, which are then used by other companies to target online ads. In 2010, the FTC added three practices to its framework for privacy. Firms should adopt “privacy by design,” building products and services that protect privacy. Firms should increase the transparency of their data practices. And firms should require consumer consent and provide clear options to opt out of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 4.3 FEDERAL PRIVACY LAWS IN THE UNITED STATES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>GENERAL FEDERAL PRIVACY LAWS</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freedom of Information Act of 1966 as Amended (5 USC 552)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privacy Act of 1974 as Amended (5 USC 552a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer Security Act of 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver’s Privacy Protection Act of 1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 4.4 FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION FAIR INFORMATION PRACTICE PRINCIPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Notice/awareness (core principle). Web sites must disclose their information practices before collecting data. Includes identification of collector; uses of data; other recipients of data; nature of collection (active/inactive); voluntary or required status; consequences of refusal; and steps taken to protect confidentiality, integrity, and quality of the data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Choice/consent (core principle). There must be a choice regime in place allowing consumers to choose how their information will be used for secondary purposes other than supporting the transaction, including internal use and transfer to third parties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Access/participation. Consumers should be able to review and contest the accuracy and completeness of data collected about them in a timely, inexpensive process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Security. Data collectors must take responsible steps to assure that consumer information is accurate and secure from unauthorized use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Enforcement. There must be in place a mechanism to enforce FIP principles. This can involve self-regulation, legislation giving consumers legal remedies for violations, or federal statutes and regulations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
data collection schemes (FTC, 2010). Other proposed Internet privacy legislation focuses on protecting the online use of personal identification numbers, such as social security numbers; protecting personal information collected on the Internet that deals with individuals not covered by COPPA; and limiting the use of data mining for homeland security.

Beginning in 2009 and continuing through 2012, the FTC extended its FIP doctrine to address the issue of behavioral targeting. The FTC held hearings to discuss its program for voluntary industry principles for regulating behavioral targeting. The online advertising trade group Network Advertising Initiative (discussed later in this section), published its own self-regulatory principles that largely agreed with the FTC. Nevertheless, the government, privacy groups, and the online ad industry are still at loggerheads over two issues. Privacy advocates want both an opt-in policy at all sites and a national Do Not Track list. The industry opposes these moves and continues to insist on an opt-out capability being the only way to avoid tracking. In May 2011, Senator Jay D. Rockefeller (D-WV), Chairman of the Senate Commerce Subcommittee on Consumer Protection, Product Safety, and Insurance, held hearings to discuss consumer privacy concerns and to explore the possible role of the federal government in protecting consumers in the mobile marketplace. Rockefeller supports the Do-Not-Track Online Act of 2011 (reintroduced in 2013), which requires firms to notify consumers they are being tracked and allows consumers to opt out of the tracking (U.S. Senate, 2011). Nevertheless, there is an emerging consensus among all parties that greater transparency and user control (especially making opting out of tracking the default option) is required to deal with behavioral tracking. While there are many studies of privacy issues at the federal level, there has been no significant legislation in recent years.

Privacy protections have also been added to recent laws deregulating financial services and safeguarding the maintenance and transmission of health information about individuals. The Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act of 1999, which repeals earlier restrictions on affiliations among banks, securities firms, and insurance companies, includes some privacy protection for consumers of financial services. All financial institutions are required to disclose their policies and practices for protecting the privacy of nonpublic personal information and to allow customers to opt out of information-sharing arrangements with nonaffiliated third parties. The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) of 1996, which took effect on April 14, 2003, includes privacy protection for medical records. The law gives patients access to their personal medical records maintained by health care providers, hospitals, and health insurers, and the right to authorize how protected information about themselves can be used or disclosed. Doctors, hospitals, and other health care providers must limit the disclosure of personal information about patients to the minimum amount necessary to achieve a given purpose.

The European Directive on Data Protection
In Europe, privacy protection is much more stringent than in the United States. Unlike the United States, European countries do not allow businesses to use personally identifiable information without consumers’ prior consent. On October 25, 1998, the European Commission’s Directive on Data Protection went into effect, broadening privacy protection in the European Union (EU) nations. The directive requires companies to inform people when they collect information about them and disclose how it will be stored and used. Customers must provide
their informed consent before any company can legally use data about them, and they have the right to access that information, correct it, and request that no further data be collected. Informed consent can be defined as consent given with knowledge of all the facts needed to make a rational decision. EU member nations must translate these principles into their own laws and cannot transfer personal data to countries, such as the United States, that do not have similar privacy protection regulations. In 2009, the European Parliament passed new rules governing the use of third-party cookies for behavioral tracking purposes. These new rules were implemented in May 2011 and require that Web site visitors must give explicit consent to be tracked by cookies. Web sites will be required to have highly visible warnings on their pages if third-party cookies are being used (European Parliament, 2009).

In January 2012, the E.U. issued significant proposed changes to its data protection rules, the first overhaul since 1995 (European Commission, 2012). The new rules would apply to all companies providing services in Europe, and require Internet companies like Amazon, Facebook, Apple, Google, and others to obtain explicit consent from consumers about the use of their personal data, delete information at the user's request (based on the “right to be forgotten”), and retain information only as long as absolutely necessary. In 2014 the European Union is considering significant changes in privacy policies by extending greater control to users of the Internet. While the privacy policies of United States firms are largely voluntary, in Europe privacy policies are mandated, and more consistent across jurisdictions. Among the changes being discussed are a requirement that firms inform users before collecting data, and every time they collect data, and how it will be used. Users would have to give consent to any data collection. Other proposals call for users to have a “right of access” to personal data, and the “right to be forgotten.”

Working with the European Commission, the U.S. Department of Commerce developed a safe harbor framework for U.S. firms. A safe harbor is a private, self-regulating policy and enforcement mechanism that meets the objectives of government regulators and legislation but does not involve government regulation or enforcement. U.S. businesses would be allowed to use personal data from EU countries if they develop privacy protection policies that meet EU standards. Enforcement would occur in the United States using self-policing, regulation, and government enforcement of fair trade statutes.

**Internet Challenges to Privacy**

Internet technology has posed new challenges for the protection of individual privacy. Information sent over this vast network of networks may pass through many different computer systems before it reaches its final destination. Each of these systems is capable of monitoring, capturing, and storing communications that pass through it.

Web sites track searches that have been conducted, the Web sites and Web pages visited, the online content a person has accessed, and what items that person has inspected or purchased over the Web. This monitoring and tracking of Web site visitors occurs in the background without the visitor's knowledge. It is conducted not just by individual Web sites but by advertising networks such as Microsoft Advertising, Yahoo, and Google's DoubleClick that are capable of tracking personal browsing behavior across thousands of Web sites. Both Web site publishers and the advertising industry defend tracking of individuals across the Web because doing so allows more relevant ads to be targeted to users, and it pays for the cost of publishing Web sites. In this sense, it's like broadcast television: advertiser-supported content that is free to the user. The commercial demand for this personal
information is virtually insatiable. However, these practices also impinge on individual privacy, as discussed in the Interactive Session on Technology.

**Cookies** are small text files deposited on a computer hard drive when a user visits Web sites. Cookies identify the visitor’s Web browser software and track visits to the Web site. When the visitor returns to a site that has stored a cookie, the Web site software will search the visitor’s computer, find the cookie, and know what that person has done in the past. It may also update the cookie, depending on the activity during the visit. In this way, the site can customize its content for each visitor's interests. For example, if you purchase a book on Amazon.com and return later from the same browser, the site will welcome you by name and recommend other books of interest based on your past purchases. DoubleClick, described earlier in this chapter, uses cookies to build its dossiers with details of online purchases and to examine the behavior of Web site visitors. Figure 4.3 illustrates how cookies work.

Web sites using cookie technology cannot directly obtain visitors' names and addresses. However, if a person has registered at a site, that information can be combined with cookie data to identify the visitor. Web site owners can also combine the data they have gathered from cookies and other Web site monitoring tools with personal data from other sources, such as offline data collected from surveys or paper catalog purchases, to develop very detailed profiles of their visitors.

There are now even more subtle and surreptitious tools for surveillance of Internet users. So-called “super cookies" or Flash cookies cannot be easily deleted and can be installed whenever a person clicks on a Flash video. These so-called "Local Shared Object" files are used by Flash to play videos and are put on the user’s computer without their consent. Marketers use Web beacons as another tool to monitor online behavior. **Web beacons**, also called Web bugs (or simply “tracking files"), are tiny software programs that keep a record of users' online clickstream and report this data back to whomever owns the tracking file invisibly embedded in e-mail messages and Web pages that are designed to monitor the behavior of the user visiting a Web site or sending e-mail. Web

---

**FIGURE 4.3 HOW COOKIES IDENTIFY WEB VISITORS**

1. The Web server reads the user’s Web browser and determines the operating system, browser name, version number, Internet address, and other information.
2. The server transmits a tiny text file with user identification information called a cookie, which the user’s browser receives and stores on the user’s computer hard drive.
3. When the user returns to the Web site, the server requests the contents of any cookie it deposited previously in the user’s computer.
4. The Web server reads the cookie, identifies the visitor, and calls up data on the user.

Cookies are written by a Web site on a visitor’s hard drive. When the visitor returns to that Web site, the Web server requests the ID number from the cookie and uses it to access the data stored by that server on that visitor. The Web site can then use these data to display personalized information.
Chapter 4 Ethical and Social Issues in Information Systems 141

INTERACTIVE SESSION: TECHNOLOGY

BIG DATA GETS PERSONAL: BEHAVIORAL TARGETING

Ever get the feeling somebody is trailing you on the Web, watching your every click? Do you wonder why you start seeing display ads and pop-ups just after you’ve been searching the Web for a car, a dress, or cosmetic product? Well, you’re right: your behavior is being tracked, and you are being targeted on the Web as you move from site to site in order to expose you to certain “targeted” ads. It’s Big Data’s dark side.

Individual Web sites and companies whose business is identifying and tracking Internet users for advertisers and marketers are collecting data on your every online move. Google, which handles more than 3.5 billion Web searches each day, knows more about you than your mother does. Many of the tracking tools gather incredibly personal information such as age, gender, race, income, marital status, health concerns (health topics you search on), TV shows and movies viewed, magazines and newspapers read, and books purchased. A $31 billion dollar online ad industry is driving this intense data collection. Facebook, which maintains detailed data on over 1 billion users, employs its Like button to follow users around the Web even if you log off. Its social networking site is one giant tracking system that remembers what you like, what your friends like, and whatever you reveal on your Wall. (See the chapter-ending case study.) Plus, Google’s social networking tool, knows about your friendships on Gmail, the places you go on maps, and how you spend your time on the more than two million websites in Google’s ad network. It is able to gather this information even though relatively few people use Plus for their social network.

While tracking firms claim the information they gather is anonymous, this is true in name only. Scholars have shown that with just a few pieces of information, such as age, gender, zip code, and marital status, specific individuals can be easily identified. Moreover, tracking firms combine their online data with data they purchase from offline firms who track retail store purchases of virtually all Americans. Here, personal names and other identifiers are used.

Use of real identities across the Web is going mainstream at a rapid clip. A Wall Street Journal examination of nearly 1,000 top Websites found that 75% now include code from social networks, such as Facebook’s “Like” or Twitter’s “Tweet” buttons. Such code can match people’s identities with their Web-browsing activities on an unprecedented scale and can even track a user’s arrival on a page if the button is never clicked.

In separate research, the Journal examined what happens when people logged in to roughly 70 popular Websites that request a login and found that more than a quarter of the time, the sites passed along a user’s real name, email address or other personal details to third-party companies.

Online advertising titans like Google, Microsoft, and Yahoo are all looking for ways to monetize their huge collections of online behavioral data. While search engine marketing is arguably the most effective form of advertising in history, untargeted banner display ad marketing is highly inefficient because it displays ads to everyone regardless of their interests. As a result, these firms cannot charge much for display ads. However, by tracking the online movements of 245 million U.S. Internet users, they can develop a very clear picture of who you are, and use that information to show you ads that might be of interest to you. This would make the marketing process more efficient, and more profitable for all the parties involved.

You’re also being tracked closely when you use your mobile phone to access the Internet, visit your Facebook page, get Twitter feeds, watch video, and listen to music. The mobile Web is working hard to keep track of your whereabouts, locations, habits, and friends in the hope of selling you even more products and services.

New technologies found on smartphones can identify where you are located within a few yards. Performing routine actions using your smart phone makes it possible to locate you throughout the day, to report this information to corporate databases, retain and analyze the information, and then sell it to advertisers. Most of the popular apps report your location. Law enforcement agencies certainly have an interest in knowing the whereabouts of criminals and suspects. There are, of course, many times when you would like to report your location either automatically or on your command. If you were injured, for instance, you might like your cell phone to be able to automatically report your location to authorities, or, if you were in a restaurant, you might want to notify your friends where you are and what you
are doing. But what about occasions when you don’t want anyone to know where you are, least of all advertisers and marketers?

Location data gathered from cell phones has extraordinary commercial value because advertising companies can send you highly targeted advertisements, coupons, and flash bargains, based on where you are located. This technology is the foundation for many location-based services, which include smartphone maps and charts, shopping apps, and social apps that you can use to let your friends know where you are and what you are doing. Revenues from the global location-based services market are projected to reach $10.3 billion in 2015, according to Gartner.

Both Apple’s iPhone and Google’s Android phones collect personal, private location data, and both firms are building massive databases that can pinpoint your location. Advertising firms pay Apple and Google for that information and for distributing their mobile ads, and they are becoming increasingly important sources of revenue. In 2012, Google earned $2.2 billion from its mobile ads. Smartphone apps that provide location-based services are also sources of personal, private location information based on the smartphone GPS capability.

Expect those eyes to follow your movements even more in the future as behavioral targeting becomes even more precise. New software is being developed to help advertisers track users across devices by establishing cross-screen identities. That means that companies will be able to serve ads to your mobile phone based on what they learned about you from surfing the Web on your PC.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Why is behavioral tracking such an important ethical dilemma today? Identify the stakeholders and interest groups in favor of and opposed to behavioral tracking.


3. What would happen if there were no behavioral tracking on the Internet?
Web sites to send banner ads and other unsolicited material to the user, and it can report the user's movements on the Internet to other computers. More information is available about intrusive software in Chapter 8.

Nearly 80 percent of global Internet users use Google Search and other Google services, making Google the world's largest collector of online user data. Whatever Google does with its data has an enormous impact on online privacy. Most experts believe that Google possesses the largest collection of personal information in the world—more data on more people than any government agency. The nearest competitor is Facebook.

After Google acquired the advertising network DoubleClick in 2007, Google has been using behavioral targeting to help it display more relevant ads based on users' search activities and to target individuals as they move from one site to another in order to show them display or banner ads. Google allows tracking software on its search pages, and using DoubleClick, it is able to track users across the Internet. One of its programs enables advertisers to target ads based on the search histories of Google users, along with any other information the user submits to Google such as age, demographics, region, and other Web activities (such as blogging). Google's AdSense program enables Google to help advertisers select keywords and design ads for various market segments based on search histories, such as helping a clothing Web site create and test ads targeted at teenage females. A recent study found that 88 percent of 400,000 Web sites had at least one Google tracking bug.

Google has also been scanning the contents of messages received by users of its free Web-based e-mail service called Gmail. Ads that users see when they read their e-mail are related to the subjects of these messages. Profiles are developed on individual users based on the content in their e-mail. Google now displays targeted ads on YouTube and on Google mobile applications, and its DoubleClick ad network serves up targeted banner ads.

The United States has allowed businesses to gather transaction information generated in the marketplace and then use that information for other marketing purposes without obtaining the informed consent of the individual whose information is being used. An opt-out model of informed consent permits the collection of personal information until the consumer specifically requests that the data not be collected. Privacy advocates would like to see wider use of an opt-in model of informed consent in which a business is prohibited from collecting any personal information unless the consumer specifically takes action to approve information collection and use. Here, the default option is no collection of user information.

The online industry has preferred self-regulation to privacy legislation for protecting consumers. The online advertising industry formed the Online Privacy Alliance to encourage self-regulation to develop a set of privacy guidelines for its members. The group promotes the use of online seals, such as that of TRUSTe, certifying Web sites adhering to certain privacy principles. Members of the advertising network industry, including Google's DoubleClick, have created an additional industry association called the Network Advertising Initiative (NAI) to develop its own privacy policies to help consumers opt out of advertising network programs and provide consumers redress from abuses.

Individual firms like Microsoft, Mozilla Foundation, Yahoo, and Google have recently adopted policies on their own in an effort to address public concern about tracking people online. Microsoft's Internet Explorer 10 Web browser was shipped with the opt-out option as the default in 2013. Other browsers have opt out options but users need to turn them on, and most users fail to do this. AOL established an opt-out policy that allows users of its site to not be tracked. Yahoo
follows NAI guidelines and also allows opt-out for tracking and Web beacons (Web bugs). Google has reduced retention time for tracking data.

In general, most Internet businesses do little to protect the privacy of their customers, and consumers do not do as much as they should to protect themselves. For commercial Web sites that depend on advertising to support themselves, most revenue derives from selling customer information. Of the companies that do post privacy policies on their Web sites, about half do not monitor their sites to ensure they adhere to these policies. The vast majority of online customers claim they are concerned about online privacy, but less than half read the privacy statements on Web sites. In general, Web site privacy policies require a law degree to understand and are ambiguous about key terms (Laudon and Traver, 2015). In 2014 what firms like Facebook and Google call a “Privacy Policy” is in fact a “Data Use Policy.” The concept of privacy is associated with consumer rights, which firms do not wish to recognize. A Data Use Policy simply tells customers how the information will be used without any mention of rights.

In one of the more insightful studies of consumer attitudes towards Internet privacy, a group of Berkeley students conducted surveys of online users, and of complaints filed with the FTC involving privacy issues. Here are some of their results: people feel they have no control over the information collected about them, and they don’t know who to complain to. Web sites collect all this information, but do not let users have access, the Web site policies are unclear, and they share data with “affiliates” but never identify who the affiliates are and how many there are. Web bug trackers are ubiquitous and users are not informed of trackers on the pages they visit. The results of this study and others suggest that consumers are not saying “Take my privacy, I don’t care, send me the service for free.” They are saying “We want access to the information, we want some controls on what can be collected, what is done with the information, the ability to opt out of the entire tracking enterprise, and some clarity on what the policies really are, and we don’t want those policies changed without our participation and permission.” (The full report is available at knowprivacy.org.)

Technical Solutions

In addition to legislation, there are a few technologies that can protect user privacy during interactions with Web sites. Many of these tools are used for encrypting e-mail, for making e-mail or surfing activities appear anonymous, for preventing client computers from accepting cookies, or for detecting and eliminating spyware. For the most part, technical solutions have failed to protect users from being tracked as they move from one site to another.

Because of growing public criticism of behavioral tracking, targeting of ads, and the failure of industry to self-regulate, attention has shifted to browsers. Many browsers have Do Not Track options. For users who have selected the Do Not Track browser option, their browser will send a request to Web sites requesting the user’s behavior not be tracked. But Web sites are not obligated to honor their visitors’ requests not to be tracked. There is no online advertising industry agreement on how to respond to Do Not Track requests, and currently no legislation requiring Web sites to stop tracking.

PROPERTY RIGHTS: INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY

Contemporary information systems have severely challenged existing laws and social practices that protect private intellectual property. Intellectual property is considered to be intangible property created by individuals
or corporations. Information technology has made it difficult to protect intellectual property because computerized information can be so easily copied or distributed on networks. Intellectual property is subject to a variety of protections under three different legal traditions: trade secrets, copyright, and patent law.

**Trade Secrets**

Any intellectual work product—a formula, device, pattern, or compilation of data—used for a business purpose can be classified as a trade secret, provided it is not based on information in the public domain. Protections for trade secrets vary from state to state. In general, trade secret laws grant a monopoly on the ideas behind a work product, but it can be a very tenuous monopoly.

Software that contains novel or unique elements, procedures, or compilations can be included as a trade secret. Trade secret law protects the actual ideas in a work product, not only their manifestation. To make this claim, the creator or owner must take care to bind employees and customers with nondisclosure agreements and to prevent the secret from falling into the public domain.

The limitation of trade secret protection is that, although virtually all software programs of any complexity contain unique elements of some sort, it is difficult to prevent the ideas in the work from falling into the public domain when the software is widely distributed.

**Copyright**

Copyright is a statutory grant that protects creators of intellectual property from having their work copied by others for any purpose during the life of the author plus an additional 70 years after the author's death. For corporate-owned works, copyright protection lasts for 95 years after their initial creation. Congress has extended copyright protection to books, periodicals, lectures, dramas, musical compositions, maps, drawings, artwork of any kind, and motion pictures. The intent behind copyright laws has been to encourage creativity and authorship by ensuring that creative people receive the financial and other benefits of their work. Most industrial nations have their own copyright laws, and there are several international conventions and bilateral agreements through which nations coordinate and enforce their laws.

In the mid-1960s, the Copyright Office began registering software programs, and in 1980, Congress passed the Computer Software Copyright Act, which clearly provides protection for software program code and for copies of the original sold in commerce, and sets forth the rights of the purchaser to use the software while the creator retains legal title.

Copyright protects against copying of entire programs or their parts. Damages and relief are readily obtained for infringement. The drawback to copyright protection is that the underlying ideas behind a work are not protected, only their manifestation in a work. A competitor can use your software, understand how it works, and build new software that follows the same concepts without infringing on a copyright.

“Look and feel” copyright infringement lawsuits are precisely about the distinction between an idea and its expression. For instance, in the early 1990s, Apple Computer sued Microsoft Corporation and Hewlett-Packard for infringement of the expression of Apple’s Macintosh interface, claiming that the defendants copied the expression of overlapping windows. The defendants countered that the idea of overlapping windows can be expressed only in a single way
and, therefore, was not protectable under the merger doctrine of copyright law. When ideas and their expression merge, the expression cannot be copyrighted.

In general, courts appear to be following the reasoning of a 1989 case—*Brown Bag Software v. Symantec Corp*—in which the court dissected the elements of software alleged to be infringing. The court found that similar concept, function, general functional features (e.g., drop-down menus), and colors are not protectable by copyright law (*Brown Bag Software v. Symantec Corp*, 1992).

**Patents**

A patent grants the owner an exclusive monopoly on the ideas behind an invention for 20 years. The congressional intent behind patent law was to ensure that inventors of new machines, devices, or methods receive the full financial and other rewards of their labor and yet make widespread use of the invention possible by providing detailed diagrams for those wishing to use the idea under license from the patent's owner. The granting of a patent is determined by the United States Patent and Trademark Office and relies on court rulings.

The key concepts in patent law are originality, novelty, and invention. The Patent Office did not accept applications for software patents routinely until a 1981 Supreme Court decision that held that computer programs could be a part of a patentable process. Since that time, hundreds of patents have been granted and thousands await consideration.

The strength of patent protection is that it grants a monopoly on the underlying concepts and ideas of software. The difficulty is passing stringent criteria of nonobviousness (e.g., the work must reflect some special understanding and contribution), originality, and novelty, as well as years of waiting to receive protection.

In what some call the patent trial of the century, in 2011, Apple sued Samsung for violating its patents for iPhones, iPads, and iPods. On August 24, 2012, a California jury in federal district court delivered a decisive victory to Apple and a stunning defeat to Samsung. The jury awarded Apple $1 billion in damages. The decision established criteria for determining just how close a competitor can come to an industry-leading and standard-setting product like Apple's iPhone before it violates the design and utility patents of the leading firm. The same court ruled that Samsung could not sell its new tablet computer (Galaxy 10.1) in the United States. In a later patent dispute, Samsung won an infringement case against Apple. In June 2013, the United States International Trade Commission issued a ban for a handful of older iPhone and iPad devices because they violated Samsun patents from years ago. In 2014 Apple sued Samsung again, claiming infringement of five patents. The patents cover hardware and software techniques for handling photos, videos, and lists used on the popular Galaxy 5. Apple is seeking $2 billion in damages.

To make matters more complicated, Apple has been one of Samsung's largest customers for flash memory processors, graphic chips, solid-state drives and display parts that are used in Apple's iPhones, iPads, iPod Touch devices, and MacBooks. The Samsung and Apple patent cases are indicative of the complex relationships among the leading computer firms.

**Challenges to Intellectual Property Rights**

Contemporary information technologies, especially software, pose severe challenges to existing intellectual property regimes and, therefore, create significant ethical, social, and political issues. Digital media differ from books, periodicals, and other media in terms of ease of replication; ease of transmission;
ease of alteration; difficulty in classifying a software work as a program, book, or even music; compactness—making theft easy; and difficulties in establishing uniqueness.

The proliferation of electronic networks, including the Internet, has made it even more difficult to protect intellectual property. Before widespread use of networks, copies of software, books, magazine articles, or films had to be stored on physical media, such as paper, computer disks, or videotape, creating some hurdles to distribution. Using networks, information can be more widely reproduced and distributed. The Ninth Annual Global Software Piracy Study conducted by International Data Corporation and the Business Software Alliance reported that the rate of global software piracy climbed to 42 percent in 2013, representing $73 billion in global losses from software piracy. Worldwide, for every $100 worth of legitimate software sold that year, an additional $75 worth was obtained illegally (Business Software Alliance, 2014).

The Internet was designed to transmit information freely around the world, including copyrighted information. With the World Wide Web in particular, you can easily copy and distribute virtually anything to thousands and even millions of people around the world, even if they are using different types of computer systems. Information can be illicitly copied from one place and distributed through other systems and networks even though these parties do not willingly participate in the infringement.

Individuals have been illegally copying and distributing digitized music files on the Internet for several decades. File-sharing services such as Napster, and later Grokster, Kazaa, and Morpheus, Megaupload, The Pirate Bay, sprung up to help users locate and swap digital music and video files, including those protected by copyright. Illegal file sharing became so widespread that it threatened the viability of the music recording industry and, at one point, consumed 20 percent of Internet bandwidth. The recording industry won several legal battles for shutting these services down, but it has not been able to halt illegal file sharing entirely. The motion picture and cable television industries are waging similar battles, as described in the chapter-opening case study. Several European nations have worked with U.S. authorities to shut down illegal sharing sites, with mixed results. In France, illegal downloaders can lose access to the Internet for a year or more.

As legitimate online music stores like the iTunes Store expanded, and more recently as Internet radio services like Pandora expanded, some forms of illegal file sharing have declined. Technology has radically altered the prospects for intellectual property protection from theft, at least for music, videos, and television shows (less so for software). The Apple iTunes Store legitimated paying for music and entertainment, and created a closed environment where music and videos could not be easily copied and widely distributed unless played on Apple devices. Amazon’s Kindle also protects the rights of publishers and writers because its books cannot be copied to the Internet and distributed. Streaming of Internet radio, on services such as Pandora and Spotify, and Hollywood movies (at sites such as Hulu and Netflix) also inhibits piracy because the streams cannot be easily recorded on separate devices and videos can be downloaded so easily. Moreover, the large Web distributors like Apple, Google, and Amazon do not want to encourage piracy in music or videos simply because they need these properties to earn revenue.

The Digital Millennium Copyright Act (DMCA) of 1998 also provides some copyright protection. The DMCA implemented a World Intellectual Property Organization Treaty that makes it illegal to circumvent technology-based protections of copyrighted materials. Internet service
providers (ISPs) are required to take down sites of copyright infringers they are hosting once the ISPs are notified of the problem. Microsoft and other major software and information content firms are represented by the Software and Information Industry Association (SIIA), which lobbies for new laws and enforcement of existing laws to protect intellectual property around the world. The SIIA runs an antipiracy hotline for individuals to report piracy activities, offers educational programs to help organizations combat software piracy, and has published guidelines for employee use of software.

4.4 **How have information systems affected laws for establishing accountability, liability, and the quality of everyday life?**

Along with privacy and property laws, new information technologies are challenging existing liability laws and social practices for holding individuals and institutions accountable. If a person is injured by a machine controlled, in part, by software, who should be held accountable and, therefore, held liable? Should a social network site like Facebook or Twitter be held liable and accountable for the posting of pornographic material or racial insults, or should they be held harmless against any liability for what users post (as is true of common carriers, such as the telephone system)? What about the Internet? If you outsource your information processing, to the Cloud, and the Cloud provider fails to provide adequate service, what can you do? Cloud providers often claim the software you are using is the problem, not the Cloud servers. Some real-world examples may shed light on these questions.

**Computer-related liability problems**

In the final days of the 2013 holiday shopping season, Target, one of the largest U.S. retailers, confirmed publicly that credit and debit card information for 40 million of its customers had been compromised. A few weeks later, the company said additional personal information, like email and mailing addresses, from some 70 to 110 million customers, had been exposed as well. In the meantime, security analysts noticed a huge spike in the number of credit card numbers for sale on hacker Web sites. Target's sales took an immediate hit from which it has still not recovered. The company claims that east European hackers entered their point of sale systems by using brute force techniques to crack their security. Federal officials believe that six other large retailers also were hacked by the same group, including Nieman Marcus. Later in 2014, Target's senior technology officer resigned from Target. Target says it has spent over $60 million to strengthen its systems. It has paid an even greater price through the loss of sales and trust. (You can find out more about Target's hacking problems in the Chapter 8 Interactive Session on Management.)

Who is liable for any economic harm caused to individuals or businesses that had their credit cards compromised? Is Target responsible for allowing the breach to occur despite efforts it did make to secure the information? Or is this just a cost of doing business in a credit card world where customers and businesses have insurance policies to protect them against losses? Customers, for instance, have a maximum liability of $50 for credit card theft under federal banking law.
This case reveals the difficulties faced by information systems executives who ultimately are responsible for any harm done by systems they have selected and installed. Beyond IT managers, insofar as computer software is part of a machine, and the machine injures someone physically or economically, the producer of the software and the operator can be held liable for damages. Insofar as the software acts like a book, storing and displaying information, courts have been reluctant to hold authors, publishers, and booksellers liable for contents (the exception being instances of fraud or defamation), and hence courts have been wary of holding software authors liable for software.

In general, it is very difficult (if not impossible) to hold software producers liable for their software products that are considered to be like books, regardless of the physical or economic harm that results. Historically, print publishers of books and periodicals have not been held liable because of fears that liability claims would interfere with First Amendment rights guaranteeing freedom of expression. And the kind of harm caused by software failures is rarely fatal and typically inconveniences users but does not physically harm them (the exception being medical devices).

What about software as a service? ATM machines are a service provided to bank customers. Should this service fail, customers will be inconvenienced and perhaps harmed economically if they cannot access their funds in a timely manner. Should liability protections be extended to software publishers and operators of defective financial, accounting, simulation, or marketing systems?

Software is very different from books. Software users may develop expectations of infallibility about software; software is less easily inspected than a book, and it is more difficult to compare with other software products for quality; software claims to perform a task rather than describe a task, as a book does; and people come to depend on services essentially based on software. Given the centrality of software to everyday life, the chances are excellent that liability law will extend its reach to include software even when the software merely provides an information service.

Telephone systems have not been held liable for the messages transmitted because they are regulated common carriers. In return for their right to provide telephone service, they must provide access to all, at reasonable rates, and achieve acceptable reliability. But broadcasters and cable television stations are subject to a wide variety of federal and local constraints on content and facilities. In the United States, with few exceptions, Web sites are not held liable for content posted on their sites regardless if it was placed there by the Web site owners or users.

**SYSTEM QUALITY: DATA QUALITY AND SYSTEM ERRORS**

White Christmas turned into a black out for millions of Netflix customers, and social network users, on December 25th, 2012. The blackout was caused by the failure of Amazon’s cloud computing service, which provides storage and computing power for all kinds of Web sites and services, including Netflix. The loss of service lasted for a day. Amazon blamed it on “Elastic Load Balancing,” a software program that balances the loads on all its cloud servers to prevent overload. Amazon’s cloud computing services have had several subsequent outages, although not as long-lasting as the Christmas Eve outage. Outages at cloud computing services are rare, but are recurring. These outages have
called into question the reliability and quality of cloud services. Are these outages acceptable?

The debate over liability and accountability for unintentional consequences of system use raises a related but independent moral dimension: What is an acceptable, technologically feasible level of system quality? At what point should system managers say, “Stop testing, we’ve done all we can to perfect this software. Ship it!” Individuals and organizations may be held responsible for avoidable and foreseeable consequences, which they have a duty to perceive and correct. The gray area is that some system errors are foreseeable and correctable only at very great expense, an expense so great that pursuing this level of perfection is not feasible economically—no one could afford the product.

For example, although software companies try to debug their products before releasing them to the marketplace, they knowingly ship buggy products because the time and cost of fixing all minor errors would prevent these products from ever being released. What if the product was not offered on the marketplace, would social welfare as a whole not advance and perhaps even decline? Carrying this further, just what is the responsibility of a producer of computer services—should it withdraw the product that can never be perfect, warn the user, or forget about the risk (let the buyer beware)?

Three principal sources of poor system performance are (1) software bugs and errors, (2) hardware or facility failures caused by natural or other causes, and (3) poor input data quality. A Chapter 8 Learning Track discusses why zero defects in software code of any complexity cannot be achieved and why the seriousness of remaining bugs cannot be estimated. Hence, there is a technological barrier to perfect software, and users must be aware of the potential for catastrophic failure. The software industry has not yet arrived at testing standards for producing software of acceptable but imperfect performance.

Although software bugs and facility catastrophes are likely to be widely reported in the press, by far the most common source of business system failure is data quality. Few companies routinely measure the quality of their data, but individual organizations report data error rates ranging from 0.5 to 30 percent.

**QUALITY OF LIFE: EQUITY, ACCESS, AND BOUNDARIES**

The negative social costs of introducing information technologies and systems are beginning to mount along with the power of the technology. Many of these negative social consequences are not violations of individual rights or property crimes. Nevertheless, these negative consequences can be extremely harmful to individuals, societies, and political institutions. Computers and information technologies potentially can destroy valuable elements of our culture and society even while they bring us benefits. If there is a balance of good and bad consequences of using information systems, who do we hold responsible for the bad consequences? Next, we briefly examine some of the negative social consequences of systems, considering individual, social, and political responses.

**Balancing Power: Center Versus Periphery**

An early fear of the computer age was that huge, centralized mainframe computers would centralize power in the nation’s capital, resulting in a Big Brother society, as was suggested in George Orwell’s novel 1984. The shift toward highly decentralized client-server computing, coupled with an ideology of empowerment of Twitter and social media users, and the decentralization
of decision making to lower organizational levels, up until recently reduced the fears of power centralization in government institutions. Yet much of the empowerment described in popular business magazines is trivial. Lower-level employees may be empowered to make minor decisions, but the key policy decisions may be as centralized as in the past. At the same time, corporate Internet behemoths like Google, Apple, Yahoo, Amazon, and Microsoft have come to dominate the collection and analysis of personal private information of all citizens. Since the terrorist attacks against the United States on September 11, 2001, the federal government has greatly expanded its use of this private sector information, as well as other forms of digital communication, in pursuit of national security. In this sense, power has become more centralized into the hands of a few private oligopolies and large government agencies.

Rapidity of Change: Reduced Response Time to Competition

Information systems have helped to create much more efficient national and international markets. Today’s more efficient global marketplace has reduced the normal social buffers that permitted businesses many years to adjust to competition. Time-based competition has an ugly side: The business you work for may not have enough time to respond to global competitors and may be wiped out in a year, along with your job. We stand the risk of developing a “just-in-time society” with “just-in-time jobs” and “just-in-time” workplaces, families, and vacations.

Maintaining Boundaries: Family, Work, and Leisure

Parts of this book were produced on trains and planes, as well as on vacations and during what otherwise might have been “family” time. The danger to ubiquitous computing, telecommuting, nomad computing, mobile computing, and the “do anything anywhere” computing environment is that it is actually coming true. The traditional boundaries that separate work from family and just plain leisure have been weakened.

Although authors have traditionally worked just about anywhere, the advent of information systems, coupled with the growth of knowledge-work occupations, means that more and more people are working when traditionally they would have been playing or communicating with family and friends. The work umbrella now extends far beyond the eight-hour day into commuting time, vacation time, and leisure time. The explosive growth and use of smart phones has only heightened the sense of many employees that they are never “away from work.”

Even leisure time spent on the computer threatens these close social relationships. Extensive Internet and cell phone use, even for entertainment or recreational purposes, takes people away from their family and friends. Among middle school and teenage children, it can lead to harmful anti-social behavior, such as the recent upsurge in cyberbullying.

Weakening these institutions poses clear-cut risks. Family and friends historically have provided powerful support mechanisms for individuals, and they act as balance points in a society by preserving private life, providing a place for people to collect their thoughts, allowing people to think in ways contrary to their employer, and dream.

Dependence and Vulnerability

Today, our businesses, governments, schools, and private associations, such as churches, are incredibly dependent on information systems and
are, therefore, highly vulnerable if these systems fail. Secondary schools, for instance, increasingly use and rely on educational software. Test results are often stored off campus. If these systems were to shut down, there is no backup educational structure or content that can make up for the loss of the system. With systems now as ubiquitous as the telephone system, it is startling to remember that there are no regulatory or standard-setting forces in place that are similar to telephone, electrical, radio, television, or other public utility technologies. The absence of standards and the criticality of some system applications will probably call forth demands for national standards and perhaps regulatory oversight.

**Computer Crime and Abuse**

New technologies, including computers, create new opportunities for committing crime by creating new valuable items to steal, new ways to steal them, and new ways to harm others. **Computer crime** is the commission of illegal acts through the use of a computer or against a computer system. Computers or computer systems can be the object of the crime (destroying a company's computer center or a company's computer files), as well as the instrument of a crime (stealing computer lists by illegally gaining access to a computer system using a home computer). Simply accessing a computer system without authorization or with intent to do harm, even by accident, is now a federal crime. How common is computer crime? One source of information is the Internet Crime Complaint Center ("IC3"), a partnership between the National White Collar Crime Center and the Federal Bureau of Investigation. The IC3 data is useful for gauging the types of e-commerce crimes most likely to be reported by consumers. In 2012, the IC3 processed about 290,000 Internet crime complaints, the second-highest number in its 11-year history. Over half the complainants reported a financial loss, with the total reported amount at $525 million. The average amount of loss for those who reported a financial loss was more

Although some people enjoy the convenience of working at home, the “do anything anywhere” computing environment can blur the traditional boundaries between work and family time.
than $4,573. The most common complaints were for scams involving the FBI, identity theft, and advance fee fraud (National White Collar Crime Center and the Federal Bureau of Investigation, 2013). The Computer Security Institute’s annual Computer Crime and Security Survey is another source of information. In 2011, its most recent report, the survey was based on the responses of 351 security practitioners in U.S. corporations, government agencies, financial institutions, medical institutions, and universities. The survey reported that 46 percent of responding organizations experienced a computer security incident within the past year. The most common type of attack experienced was a malware infection (67%), followed by phishing fraud (39%), laptop and mobile hardware theft (34%), attacks by botnets (29%), and insider abuse (25%). The true cost of all computer crime is estimated to be in the billions of dollars. On average, the cost to a firm of a single computer crime averages about $8.9 million (Ponemon Institute, 2012).

**Computer abuse** is the commission of acts involving a computer that may not be illegal but that are considered unethical. The popularity of the Internet and e-mail has turned one form of computer abuse—spamming—into a serious problem for both individuals and businesses. Originally, Spam is junk e-mail sent by an organization or individual to a mass audience of Internet users who have expressed no interest in the product or service being marketed. But as cell phone use has mushroomed, spam was certain to follow. Identity and financial theft cyber criminals are turning their attention to smart phones as users check mail, do online banking, pay bills, and reveal personal information. Cell phone spam usually comes in the form of SMS text messages, but increasingly users are receiving spam in their Facebook Newsfeed and messaging service as well. Verizon estimates that it blocks about 200 million spam messages a month using its filters and security checks. Spammers tend to market pornography, fraudulent deals and services, outright scams, and other products not widely approved in most civilized societies. Some countries have passed laws to outlaw spamming or to restrict its use. In the United States, it is still legal if it does not involve fraud and the sender and subject of the e-mail are properly identified.

Spamming has mushroomed because it costs only a few cents to send thousands of messages advertising wares to Internet users. The percentage of all e-mail that is spam was estimated at around 66 percent in 2014 (Symantec, 2014). Most spam originates from bot networks, which consist of thousands of captured PCs that can initiate and relay spam messages. Spam volume has declined somewhat since authorities took down the Rustock botnet in 2011. Spam is seasonally cyclical, and varies monthly due to the impact of new technologies (both supportive and discouraging of spammers), new prosecutions, and seasonal demand for products and services. Spam costs for businesses are very high (estimated at over $50 billion per year) because of the computing and network resources consumed by billions of unwanted e-mail messages and the time required to deal with them.

Internet service providers and individuals can combat spam by using spam filtering software to block suspicious e-mail before it enters a recipient’s e-mail inbox. However, spam filters may block legitimate messages. Spammers know how to skirt around filters by continually changing their e-mail accounts, by incorporating spam messages in images, by embedding spam in e-mail attachments and electronic greeting cards, and by using other people’s computers that have been hijacked by botnets (see Chapter 8). Many spam messages are sent from one country while another country hosts the spam Web site.
Spamming is more tightly regulated in Europe than in the United States. In 2002, the European Parliament passed a ban on unsolicited commercial messaging. Electronic marketing can be targeted only to people who have given prior consent.

The U.S. CAN-SPAM Act of 2003, which went into effect in 2004, does not outlaw spamming but does ban deceptive e-mail practices by requiring commercial e-mail messages to display accurate subject lines, identify the true senders, and offer recipients an easy way to remove their names from e-mail lists. It also prohibits the use of fake return addresses. A few people have been prosecuted under the law, but it has had a negligible impact on spamming in large part because of the Internet's exceptionally poor security and the use of offshore servers and botnets. In 2008, Robert Soloway, the so-called Seattle “Spam King,” was sentenced to 47 months in prison for sending over 90 million spam messages in just three months off two servers. In 2011, the so-called Facebook “Spam King,” Sanford Wallace, was indicted for sending over 27 million spam messages to Facebook users. He is facing a 40-year sentence because of prior spamming convictions. In 2014 most large scale spamming has moved offshore to Russia and Eastern Europe where hackers control global botnets capable of generating billions of spam messages. The largest spam network in 2013 was the Russian network Festi based in St. Petersburg. Festi is best known as the spam generator behind the global Viagra-spam industry which stretches from Russia to Indian pharmaceutical firms selling counterfeit Viagra. The spam industry in Russia generates an estimated $60 million for criminal groups (Kramer, 2013).

**Employment: Trickle-Down Technology and Reengineering Job Loss**

Reengineering work is typically hailed in the information systems community as a major benefit of new information technology. It is much less frequently noted that redesigning business processes has caused millions of mid-level factory managers, and clerical workers to lose their jobs. One economist has raised the possibility that we will create a society run by a small “high tech elite of corporate professionals . . . in a nation of the permanently unemployed” (Rifkin, 1993). In 2011, some economists have sounded new alarms about information and computer technology threatening middle-class, white-collar jobs (in addition to blue-collar factory jobs). Erik Brynjolfsson and Andrew P. McAfee argue that the pace of automation has picked up in recent years because of a combination of technologies including robotics, numerically controlled machines, computerized inventory control, pattern recognition, voice recognition, and online commerce. One result is that machines can now do a great many jobs heretofore reserved for humans including tech support, call center work, X-ray examiners, and even legal document review (Brynjolfsson and McAfee, 2011). These views contrast with earlier assessments by economists that both labor and capital would receive stable shares of income, and that new technologies created as many or more new jobs as they destroyed old ones. But there is no guarantee this will happen in the future, and the income wealth share of labor may continue to fall relative to capital, resulting in a loss of high paying jobs and further declines in wages.

Other economists are much more sanguine about the potential job losses. They believe relieving bright, educated workers from reengineered jobs will result in these workers moving to better jobs in fast-growth industries. Missing from this equation are unskilled, blue-collar workers and older,
less well-educated middle managers. It is not clear that these groups can be retrained easily for high-quality (high-paying) jobs.

**Equity and Access: Increasing Racial and Social Class Cleavages**

Does everyone have an equal opportunity to participate in the digital age? Will the social, economic, and cultural gaps that exist in the United States and other societies be reduced by information systems technology? Or will the cleavages be increased, permitting the better off to become even more better off relative to others?

These questions have not yet been fully answered because the impact of systems technology on various groups in society has not been thoroughly studied. What is known is that information, knowledge, computers, and access to these resources through educational institutions and public libraries are inequitably distributed along ethnic and social class lines, as are many other information resources. Several studies have found that poor and minority groups in the United States are less likely to have computers or online Internet access even though computer ownership and Internet access have soared in the past five years. Although the gap is narrowing, higher-income families in each ethnic group are still more likely to have home computers and Internet access than lower-income families in the same group.

A similar digital divide exists in U.S. schools, with schools in high-poverty areas less likely to have computers, high-quality educational technology programs, or Internet access availability for their students. Left uncorrected, the digital divide could lead to a society of information haves, computer literate and skilled, versus a large group of information have-nots, computer illiterate and unskilled. Public interest groups want to narrow this digital divide by making digital information services—including the Internet—available to virtually everyone, just as basic telephone service is now.

**Health Risks: RSI, CVS, and Technostress**

A common occupational disease today is repetitive stress injury (RSI). RSI occurs when muscle groups are forced through repetitive actions often with high-impact loads (such as tennis) or tens of thousands of repetitions under low-impact loads (such as working at a computer keyboard). The incidence of repetitive stress syndrome is estimated to be 3% to 6% of the workforce (LeBlanc and Cestia, 2011).

The single largest source of RSI is computer keyboards. The most common kind of computer-related RSI is carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS), in which pressure on the median nerve through the wrist's bony structure, called a carpal tunnel, produces pain. The pressure is caused by constant repetition of keystrokes: in a single shift, a word processor may perform 23,000 keystrokes. Symptoms of carpal tunnel syndrome include numbness, shooting pain, inability to grasp objects, and tingling. Millions of workers have been diagnosed with carpal tunnel syndrome.

RSI is avoidable. Designing workstations for a neutral wrist position (using a wrist rest to support the wrist), proper monitor stands, and footrests all contribute to proper posture and reduced RSI. Ergonomically correct keyboards are also an option. These measures should be supported by frequent rest breaks and rotation of employees to different jobs.

RSI is not the only occupational illness computers cause. Back and neck pain, leg stress, and foot pain also result from poor ergonomic designs of workstations.
Repetitive stress injury (RSI) is the leading occupational disease today. The single largest cause of RSI is computer keyboard work.

Computer vision syndrome (CVS) refers to any eyestrain condition related to display screen use in desktop computers, laptops, e-readers, smartphones, and handheld video games. CVS affects about 90 percent of people who spend three hours or more per day at a computer (Beck, 2010). Its symptoms, which are usually temporary, include headaches, blurred vision, and dry and irritated eyes.

The newest computer-related malady is technostress, which is stress induced by computer and cell phone use. Its symptoms include aggravation, hostility toward humans, impatience, and fatigue. According to experts, humans working continuously with computers come to expect other humans and human institutions to behave like computers, providing instant responses, attentiveness, and an absence of emotion. Technostress is thought to be related to high levels of job turnover in the computer industry, high levels of early retirement from computer-intense occupations, and elevated levels of drug and alcohol abuse.

The incidence of technostress is not known but is thought to be in the millions and growing in the United States. Computer-related jobs now top the list of stressful occupations based on health statistics in several industrialized countries.

In addition to these maladies, computer technology may be harming our cognitive functions or at least changing how we think and solve problems. Although the Internet has made it much easier for people to access, create, and use information, some experts believe that it is also preventing people from focusing and thinking clearly.

The computer has become a part of our lives—personally as well as socially, culturally, and politically. It is unlikely that the issues and our choices will become easier as information technology continues to transform our world. The growth of the Internet and the information economy suggests that all the ethical and social issues we have described will be heightened further as we move into the first digital century.
1. **What ethical, social, and political issues are raised by information systems?**

   Information technology is introducing changes for which laws and rules of acceptable conduct have not yet been developed. Increasing computing power, storage, and networking capabilities—including the Internet—expand the reach of individual and organizational actions and magnify their impacts. The ease and anonymity with which information is now communicated, copied, and manipulated in online environments pose new challenges to the protection of privacy and intellectual property. The main ethical, social, and political issues raised by information systems center around information rights and obligations, property rights and obligations, accountability and control, system quality, and quality of life.

2. **What specific principles for conduct can be used to guide ethical decisions?**

   Six ethical principles for judging conduct include the Golden Rule, Immanuel Kant's Categorical Imperative, Descartes' rule of change, the Utilitarian Principle, the Risk Aversion Principle, and the ethical "no free lunch" rule. These principles should be used in conjunction with an ethical analysis.

3. **Why do contemporary information systems technology and the Internet pose challenges to the protection of individual privacy and intellectual property?**

   Contemporary data storage and data analysis technology enables companies to easily gather personal data about individuals from many different sources and analyze these data to create detailed electronic profiles about individuals and their behaviors. Data flowing over the Internet can be monitored at many points. Cookies and other Web monitoring tools closely track the activities of Web site visitors. Not all Web sites have strong privacy protection policies, and they do not always allow for informed consent regarding the use of personal information. Traditional copyright laws are insufficient to protect against software piracy because digital material can be copied so easily and transmitted to many different locations simultaneously over the Internet.

4. **How have information systems affected laws for establishing accountability, liability, and the quality of everyday life?**

   New information technologies are challenging existing liability laws and social practices for holding individuals and institutions accountable for harm done to others. Although computer systems have been sources of efficiency and wealth, they have some negative impacts. Computer errors can cause serious harm to individuals and organizations. Poor data quality is also responsible for disruptions and losses for businesses. Jobs can be lost when computers replace workers or tasks become unnecessary in reengineered business processes. The ability to own and use a computer may be exacerbating socioeconomic disparities among different racial groups and social classes. Widespread use of computers increases opportunities for computer crime and computer abuse. Computers can also create health problems, such as repetitive stress injury, computer vision syndrome, and technostress.

---

**Key Terms**

Accountability, 131  
Carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS), 155  
Computer abuse, 153  
Computer crime, 152  
Computer vision syndrome (CVS), 156  
Cookies, 140  
Copyright, 145  
Digital divide, 155  
Digital Millennium Copyright Act (DMCA), 147  
Due process, 130  
Ethical "no free lunch" rule, 135  
Ethics, 126  
Fair Information Practices (FIP), 136  
Golden Rule, 134  
Immanuel Kant's Categorical Imperative, 134  
Information rights, 128  
Informed consent, 139  
Intellectual property, 144  
Liability, 133  
Nonobvious relationship awareness (NORA), 130  
Opt-in, 143  
Opt-out, 143  
Patent, 146  
Privacy, 136  
Profiling, 129  
Repetitive stress injury (RSI), 155
Review Questions

4-1 What ethical, social, and political issues are raised by information systems?
- Explain how ethical, social, and political issues are connected and give some examples.
- List and describe the key technological trends that heighten ethical concerns.
- Differentiate between responsibility, accountability, and liability.

4-2 What specific principles for conduct can be used to guide ethical decisions?
- List and describe the five steps in an ethical analysis.
- Identify and describe six ethical principles.

4-3 Why do contemporary information systems technology and the Internet pose challenges to the protection of individual privacy and intellectual property?
- Define privacy and fair information practices.
- Explain how the Internet challenges the protection of individual privacy and intellectual property.
- Explain how informed consent, legislation, industry self-regulation, and technology tools help protect the individual privacy of Internet users.
- List and define the three different regimes that protect intellectual property rights.

4-4 How have information systems affected laws for establishing accountability, liability, and the quality of everyday life?
- Explain why it is so difficult to hold software services liable for failure or injury.
- List and describe the principal causes of system quality problems.
- Name and describe four quality of life impacts of computers and information systems.
- Define and describe technostress and repetitive stress injury (RSI) and explain their relationship to information technology.

Discussion Questions

4-5 Should producers of software-based services, such as ATMs, be held liable for economic injuries suffered when their systems fail?

4-6 Should companies be responsible for unemployment caused by their information systems? Why or why not?

4-7 Discuss the pros and cons of allowing companies to amass personal data for behavioral targeting.
Hands-On MIS Projects

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience in analyzing the privacy implications of using online data brokers, developing a corporate policy for employee Web usage, using blog creation tools to create a simple blog, and using Internet newsgroups for market research.

Management Decision Problems

4-8 InfoFree's Web site is linked to massive databases that consolidate personal data on millions of people and. Users can purchase marketing lists of consumers broken down by location, age, income level, home value, and interests. One could use this capability to obtain a list, for example, of everyone in Peekskill, New York, making $150,000 or more per year. Do data brokers such as InfoFree raise privacy issues? Why or why not? If your name and other personal information were in this database, what limitations on access would you want in order to preserve your privacy? Consider the following data users: government agencies, your employer, private business firms, other individuals.

4-9 As the head of a small insurance company with six employees, you are concerned about how effectively your company is using its networking and human resources. Budgets are tight, and you are struggling to meet payrolls because employees are reporting many overtime hours. You do not believe that the employees have a sufficiently heavy work load to warrant working longer hours and are looking into the amount of time they spend on the Internet.

Each employee uses a computer with Internet access on the job. Review a sample of your company's weekly report of employee Web usage, which can be found in MyMISLab™.

- Calculate the total amount of time each employee spent on the Web for the week and the total amount of time that company computers were used for this purpose. Rank the employees in the order of the amount of time each spent online.
- Do your findings and the contents of the report indicate any ethical problems employees are creating? Is the company creating an ethical problem by monitoring its employees' use of the Internet?
- Use the guidelines for ethical analysis presented in this chapter to develop a solution to the problems you have identified.

Achieving Operational Excellence: Creating a Simple Blog

Software skills: Blog creation
Business skills: Blog and Web page design

4-10 In this project, you'll learn how to build a simple blog of your own design using the online blog creation software available at Blogger.com. Pick a sport, hobby, or topic of interest as the theme for your blog. Name the blog, give it a title, and choose a template for the blog. Post at least four entries to the blog, adding a label for each posting. Edit your posts, if necessary. Upload an image, such as a photo from your hard drive or the Web to your blog. Add capabilities for other registered users, such as team members, to comment on your blog. Briefly describe how your blog could be useful to a company selling products or services related to the theme of your blog. List the tools available to Blogger that would make your blog more useful for business and describe the business uses of each. Save your blog and show it to your instructor.

Improving Decision Making: Analyzing Web Browser Privacy

Software Skills: Web browser software
Business Skills: Analyzing Web browser privacy protection features

4-11 This project will help develop your Internet skills for using the privacy protection features of leading Web browser software.
Collaboration and Teamwork Project

4-12 In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Docs, Google Sites, Google+, or other open source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.

Facebook Privacy: There Is No Privacy

CASE STUDY

Over the course of less than a decade, Facebook has morphed from a small, niche networking site for mostly Ivy League college students into a publicly traded company with a market worth of $148 billion in 2014 (up from $59 billion in 2013). Facebook boasts that it is free to join and always will be, so where's the money coming from to service 1 billion worldwide subscribers? Just like its fellow tech titan and rival Google, Facebook's revenue comes almost entirely from advertising. Facebook does not have a diverse array of hot new gadgets, a countrywide network of brick-and-mortar retail outlets, or a full inventory of software for sale; instead, it has your personal information, and the information of hundreds of millions of others with Facebook accounts.

Advertisers have long understood the value of Facebook's unprecedented trove of personal information. They can serve ads using highly specific details, like relationship status, location, employment status, favorite books, movies, or TV shows, and a host of other categories. For example, an Atlanta woman who posts that she has become engaged might be offered an ad for a wedding photographer on her Facebook page. When advertisements are served to finely targeted subsets of users, the response is much more successful than traditional types of advertising. A growing number of companies both big and small have taken notice: In 2014, Facebook generated $7.8 billion in revenue, 88 percent of which ($7 billion) was from selling ads, and the remainder from selling games, and virtual goods. Facebook's ad revenues in 2012 grew by 63 percent over the previous year, driven mostly by adding new users. Existing users are not clicking on more ads.

That was good news for Facebook, which launched its IPO (initial public stock offering) in May 2012, and is expected to continue to increase its revenue in coming years. But is it good news for you, the Facebook user? More than ever, companies like Facebook and Google, which made approximately $55 billion in advertising revenue in 2013, are using your online activity to develop a frighteningly accurate picture of your life. Facebook's goal is to serve advertisements that are more relevant to you than anywhere else on the Web, but the personal information they gather about you both with and without your consent can also be used against you in other ways.

Facebook has a diverse array of compelling and useful features. Facebook's partnership with the Department of Labor helps to connect job seekers and employers; Facebook has helped families find lost pets after natural disasters, such as when tornadoes hit the Midwest in 2012; Facebook allows active-duty soldiers to stay in touch with their families; it
gives smaller companies a chance to further their e-commerce efforts and larger companies a chance to solidify their brands; and, perhaps most obviously, Facebook allows you to more easily keep in touch with your friends. These are the reasons why so many people are on Facebook.

However, Facebook's goal is to get its users to share as much data as possible, because the more Facebook knows about you, the more accurately it can serve relevant advertisements to you. Facebook CEO Mark Zuckerberg often says that people want the world to be more open and connected. It's unclear whether that is truly the case, but it is certainly true that Facebook wants the world to be more open and connected, because it stands to make more money in that world. Critics of Facebook are concerned that the existence of a repository of personal data of the size that Facebook has amassed requires protections and privacy controls that extend far beyond those that Facebook currently offers.

Facebook wanting to make more money is not a bad thing, but the company has a checkered past of privacy violations and missteps that raise doubts about whether it should be responsible for the personal data of hundreds of millions of people. There are no laws in the United States that give consumers the right to know what data companies like Facebook have compiled. You can challenge information in credit reports, but you can't even see what data Facebook has gathered about you, let alone try to change it. It's different in Europe: you can request Facebook to turn over a report of all the information it has about you. More than ever, your every move, every click, on social networks is being used by outside entities to assess your interests, and behavior, and then pitch you an ad based on this knowledge. Law enforcement agencies use social networks to gather evidence on tax evaders, and other criminals; employers use social networks to make decisions about prospective candidates for jobs; and data aggregators are gathering as much information about you as they can sell to the highest bidder.

In a recent study, Consumer Reports found that of 150 million Americans on Facebook everyday, at least 4.8 million are willingly sharing information that could be used against them in some way. That includes plans to travel on a particular day, which burglars could use to time robberies, or Liking a page about a particular health condition or treatment, which insurers could use to deny coverage. Thirteen million users have never adjusted Facebook's privacy controls, which allow friends using Facebook applications to unwittingly transfer your data to a third party without your knowledge. Credit card companies and other similar organizations have begun engaging in "weblining", taken from the phrase redlining, by altering their treatment of you based on the actions of other people with profiles similar to yours.

Ninety-three percent of people polled believe that Internet companies should be forced to ask for permission before using your personal information, and 72 percent want the ability to opt out of online tracking. Why, then, do so many people share sensitive details of their life on Facebook? Often it's because users do not realize that their data are being collected and transmitted in this way. A Facebook user's friends are not notified if information about them is collected by that user's applications. Many of Facebook's features and services are enabled by default when they are launched without notifying users. And a study by Siegel+Gale found that Facebook's privacy policy is more difficult to comprehend than government notices or typical bank credit card agreements, which are notoriously dense. Next time you visit Facebook, click on Privacy Settings, and see if you can understand your options.

Facebook's value and growth potential is determined by how effectively it can leverage the personal data it aggregated about its users to attract advertisers. Facebook also stands to gain from managing and avoiding the privacy concerns raised by its users and government regulators. For Facebook users that value the privacy of their personal data, this situation appears grim. But there are some signs that Facebook might become more responsible with its data collection processes, whether by its own volition or because it is forced to do so. As a publicly traded company, Facebook now invites more scrutiny from investors and regulators because, unlike in the past, their balance sheets, assets, and financial reporting documents are readily available.

In August 2012, Facebook settled a lawsuit with the FTC in which they were barred from misrepresenting the privacy or security of users' personal information. Facebook was charged with deceiving its users by telling them they could keep their information on Facebook private, but then repeatedly allowing it to be shared and made public. Facebook agreed to obtain user consent before making any change to that user's privacy preferences, and to submit to bi-annual privacy audits by an independent firm for the next 20 years. Privacy advocate groups like the Electronic Privacy Information Center (EPIC) want Facebook to restore its more robust privacy settings from 2009, as well as to offer complete
access to all data it keeps about its users. Facebook has also come under fire from EPIC for collecting information about users who are not even logged into Facebook or may not even have accounts on Facebook. Facebook keeps track of activity on other sites that have Like buttons or “recommendations” widgets, and records the time of your visit and your IP address when you visit a site with those features, regardless of whether or not you click on them.

While U.S. Facebook users have little recourse to access data that Facebook has collected on them, users from other countries have made inroads in this regard. An Austrian law student was able to get a full copy of his personal information from Facebook's Dublin office, due to the more stringent consumer privacy protections in Ireland. The full document was 1,222 pages long and covered three years of activity on the site, including deleted Wall posts and messages with sensitive personal information and deleted e-mail addresses. In Europe, 40,000 Facebook users have already requested their data, and European law requires that Facebook respond to these requests within 40 days.

It isn't just text-based data that Facebook is stockpiling, either. Facebook is also compiling a biometric database of unprecedented size. The company stores more than 60 billion photos on its servers and that number grows by 250 million each day. A recent feature launched by Facebook called Tag Suggest scans photographs using facial recognition technology. When Tag Suggest was launched, it was enabled for many users without opting in. This database has value to law enforcement and other organizations looking to compile profiles of users for use in advertising. EPIC also has demanded that Facebook stop creating facial recognition profiles without user consent.

In 2012, as part of the settlement of another class-action lawsuit, Facebook agreed to allow users to opt in to its Sponsored Stories service, which serves advertisements in the user's News Feed that highlight products and businesses that your Facebook friends are using. This allowed users to control which of their actions on Facebook generate advertisements that their friends will see. Sponsored Stories are one of the most effective forms of advertising on Facebook because they don't seem like advertisements at all to most users. Facebook had previously argued that users were giving “implied consent” every time they clicked a Like button on a page. Despite this earlier settlement, in January 2014, Facebook closed down its Sponsored Stories feature entirely, after many lawsuits, attempted settlements, and criticism from privacy groups, the FTC, and annoyed parents whose children's photos were being used throughout Facebook to sell products. In August 2013, Facebook had agreed to a settlement in a class action lawsuit brought by parents of teenagers caught up in the Facebook information machine. Every time their children liked a product on Facebook, their photos were used to promote the product not just to their friends, but to everyone on Facebook who potentially might be interested. The legal settlement only enraged privacy advocates and Congress, leading to Facebook's abandonment of Sponsored Stories.

While Facebook has shut down one of its more egregious privacy-invading features, the company's Data Use policies make it very clear that, as a condition of using the service, users grant the company wide latitude in using their information in advertising. This includes a person's name, photo, comments, and other information. Facebook's existing policies make clear that users are required to grant the company wide permission to use their personal information in advertising as a condition of using the service. This includes "social advertising" where your personal information is broadcast to your friends, and indeed, the entire Facebook service if the company sees fit. While users can limit some uses, an advanced degree in Facebook data features is required.

Despite consumer protests and government scrutiny, Facebook continues to challenge its customers' sense of control over their personal information. In January 2013, Facebook launched its Graph Search program, a social network search engine intended to rival Google but based on a totally different approach. Rather than scour the Internet for information related to a user's search term, Graph Search responds to user queries with information produced by all Facebook users on their personal pages, and their friends personal pages. For instance, Graph Search, without consent of the user, allows any Facebook user to type in your name, and click the link “Photos of...” which appears underneath the search bar. Complete strangers can find pictures of you. The person searched may not be able to control who sees personal photos: it depends on the privacy settings of other users with whom the photos were shared. If you shared your photos with friends who had less strict privacy settings, then those lesser settings determine who will have access to your photos. Graph Search results in new pages being created that contain the search results. These pages present Facebook with additional opportunities to sell ads, and to monetize the activities and information of its users.
The future of Facebook as a private corporation, and its stock price, will depend on its ability to monetize its most valuable asset: personal, private information.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

4-13 Perform an ethical analysis of Facebook. What is the ethical dilemma presented by this case?

4-14 What is the relationship of privacy to Facebook’s business model?

4-15 Describe the weaknesses of Facebook’s privacy policies and features. What management, organization, and technology factors have contributed to those weaknesses?

4-16 Will Facebook be able to have a successful business model without invading privacy? Explain your answer. Are there any measures Facebook could take to make this possible?

**MyMISLab**

Go to mymislab.com for Auto-graded writing questions as well as the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

4-17 What are the five principles of Fair Information Practices? For each principle, describe a business situation where the principle comes into play, and how you think managers should react.

4-18 What are five digital technology trends that characterize American business today that raise ethical issues for business firms and managers? Provide an example from business or personal experience where an ethical issue resulted from each of these trends.
Chapter 4 References

Part Two provides the technical foundation for understanding information systems by examining hardware, software, database, and networking technologies along with tools and techniques for security and control. This part answers questions such as: What technologies do businesses today need to accomplish their work? What do I need to know about these technologies to make sure they enhance the performance of the firm? How are these technologies likely to change in the future? What technologies and procedures are required to ensure that systems are reliable and secure?
IT Infrastructure and Emerging Technologies

LEARNING OBJECTIVES
After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. What is IT infrastructure and what are the stages and drivers of IT infrastructure evolution?
2. What are the components of IT infrastructure?
3. What are the current trends in computer hardware platforms?
4. What are the current trends in computer software platforms?
5. What are the challenges of managing IT infrastructure and management solutions?

MyMISLab™
Visit mymislab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.

CHAPTER CASES
Portugal Telecom Offers IT Infrastructure for Sale
Wearable Computers Go to Work
Is It Time for Cloud Computing?
The Pleasures and Pitfalls of BYOD

VIDEO CASES
ESPN.com: Getting to eXtreme Scale On the Web
Salesforce.com: Managing by Smartphone
Acxiom’s Strategic Advantage: IBM’s Virtual Blade Platform
Instructional Videos:
Google and IBM Produce Cloud Computing
IBM Blue Cloud Is Ready-to-Use Computing
Portugal Telecom SGPS SA (Portugal Telecom, also known as PT) is a Portugal-based holding company providing telecommunications and information technology services in Portugal, Brazil, Angola, Macao, and Namibia. The company serves more than 100 million business and residential customers worldwide and generates 58 percent of its revenue outside Portugal. The global telecommunications industry is unusually fast-changing and competitive, due to the end of state-owned or monopoly enterprises and the emergence of new services, including mobile phones, the Internet, and digital television.

PT today provides a range of telecommunications and multimedia services, including fixed line and mobile telephone services; television (TV) distribution; Internet Service Provider (ISP) services; and data transmission. These services are delivered primarily over digital networks and are very information-technology intensive. Portugal Telecom has been able to leverage its technology expertise to provide information technology (IT) systems and services to other companies of all sizes.

Portugal Telecom’s newest data center is in the mountain city of Covilhã, Portugal, where it can take advantage of “free cooling” from Covilhã’s often-chilly mountain air 99 percent of the time, thereby reducing energy usage. The Covilhã center opened in September 2013, and combines progressive architecture, sustainability and leading-edge information technology. The entire project, once complete, will feature four block-like data center structures spanning 75,500 square meters, equivalent to about 800,000 square feet. The PT facility is built to have minimum impact on the environment and features
a rain water collection system (which forms a moat around the data center building) and a garden with more than 600 trees. Large numbers of solar panels around the facility are an additional source of clean energy.

The center boasts a power usage effectiveness (PUE) rating of just 1.25, compared to an industry average of 1.88, making it among the most energy-efficient data centers in the world. (PUE is a metric for determining the energy efficiency of a data center and is calculated by dividing the total amount of power consumed by a data center by the amount of power used to run the computer infrastructure within it. The closer PUE approaches 1.0, the greater the overall energy efficiency. ) When completely built out, the Covilhã data center will be the largest in the country and one of the largest in the world, capable of hosting 56,000 servers. The Covilhã data center is expected to achieve an annual availability of 99.98 percent.

PT management estimates that just one-sixth of the Covilhã data center's eventual capacity will be required for domestic needs. The rest will provide cloud-based applications and services to other countries, including Brazil and African nations, enabling the company to expand its services across the globe. The Covilhã data center and six other domestic data centers run cloud-based information technology services for other companies known as SmartCloudPT. These cloud services include cloud storage and file synchronization services, infrastructure as a service (IaaS), platform as a service (PaaS), and software as a service (SaaS). Companies who subscribe to SmartCloudPT pay only for the services they actually use. PT and Oracle are now working on incorporating Oracle software applications into SmartCloudPT. Customers need only to register at the SmartCloud PT Web site and log in to purchase the available services that they need, which are billed in the customers' PT invoice, together with other PT services.

PT claims the benefits of its cloud services include having the information protected in the country's largest data center network, the speed and reliability that customers' businesses need, access to PT's cutting-edge technology, and having certified security, advantages that only PT can provide. And because of its energy savings, PT estimates it can price its services 34 percent lower than the average price for premium data centers in Europe. For PT, green computing is good for business.


The experience of Portugal Telecom illustrates the importance of information technology infrastructure in running a business today. The right technology at the right price will improve organizational performance. Because of the need to prevail in a highly competitive industry requiring leading-edge information technology, PT had world-class expertise in computer hardware, software, and networking technology that enabled it to run its business effectively. The company was then able to leverage its IT investment to sell some of its computing resources and expertise as on-line “cloud” services to other companies. This helped other companies achieve cost savings or acquire information technology resources that they were unable to manage on their own to make their businesses more competitive and efficient.
In Chapter 1, we defined information technology (IT) infrastructure as the shared technology resources that provide the platform for the firm’s specific information system applications. An IT infrastructure includes investment in hardware, software, and services—such as consulting, education, and training—that are shared across the entire firm or across entire business units in the firm. A firm’s IT infrastructure provides the foundation for
serving customers, working with vendors, and managing internal firm business processes (see Figure 5.1).

Supplying firms worldwide with IT infrastructure (hardware and software) in 2014 is estimated to be a $3.8 trillion industry when telecommunications, networking equipment, and telecommunications services (Internet, telephone, and data transmission) are included. This does not include IT and related business process consulting services, which add another $400 billion. Investments in infrastructure account for between 25 and 50 percent of information technology expenditures in large firms, led by financial services firms where IT investment is well over half of all capital investment.

DEFINING IT INFRASTRUCTURE

An IT infrastructure consists of a set of physical devices and software applications that are required to operate the entire enterprise. But an IT infrastructure is also a set of firmwide services budgeted by management and comprising both human and technical capabilities. These services include the following:

- Computing platforms used to provide computing services that connect employees, customers, and suppliers into a coherent digital environment, including large mainframes, midrange computers, desktop and laptop computers, and mobile handheld and remote cloud computing services.
- Telecommunications services that provide data, voice, and video connectivity to employees, customers, and suppliers
- Data management services that store and manage corporate data and provide capabilities for analyzing the data

FIGURE 5.1 CONNECTION BETWEEN THE FIRM, IT INFRASTRUCTURE, AND BUSINESS CAPABILITIES

The services a firm is capable of providing to its customers, suppliers, and employees are a direct function of its IT infrastructure. Ideally, this infrastructure should support the firm’s business and information systems strategy. New information technologies have a powerful impact on business and IT strategies, as well as the services that can be provided to customers.
• Application software services, including online software services, that provide enterprise-wide capabilities such as enterprise resource planning, customer relationship management, supply chain management, and knowledge management systems that are shared by all business units

• Physical facilities management services that develop and manage the physical installations required for computing, telecommunications, and data management services

• IT management services that plan and develop the infrastructure, coordinate with the business units for IT services, manage accounting for the IT expenditure, and provide project management services

• IT standards services that provide the firm and its business units with policies that determine which information technology will be used, when, and how

• IT education services that provide training in system use to employees and offer managers training in how to plan for and manage IT investments

• IT research and development services that provide the firm with research on potential future IT projects and investments that could help the firm differentiate itself in the marketplace

This “service platform” perspective makes it easier to understand the business value provided by infrastructure investments. For instance, the real business value of a fully loaded personal computer operating at 3.4 gigahertz that costs about $1,000 and a high-speed Internet connection is hard to understand without knowing who will use it and how it will be used. When we look at the services provided by these tools, however, their value becomes more apparent: The new PC makes it possible for a high-cost employee making $100,000 a year to connect to all the company’s major systems and the public Internet. The high-speed Internet service saves this employee about one hour per day in reduced wait time for Internet information. Without this PC and Internet connection, the value of this one employee to the firm might be cut in half.

**EVOLUTION OF IT INFRASTRUCTURE**

The IT infrastructure in organizations today is an outgrowth of over 50 years of evolution in computing platforms. There have been five stages in this evolution, each representing a different configuration of computing power and infrastructure elements (see Figure 5.2). The five eras are general-purpose mainframe and minicomputer computing, personal computers, client/server networks, enterprise computing, and cloud and mobile computing.

Technologies that characterize one era may also be used in another time period for other purposes. For example, some companies still run traditional mainframe systems or use mainframe computers as massive servers supporting large Web sites and corporate enterprise applications.

**General-Purpose Mainframe and Minicomputer Era: (1959 to Present)**

The introduction of the IBM 1401 and 7090 transistorized machines in 1959 marked the beginning of widespread commercial use of **mainframe** computers. In 1965, the mainframe computer truly came into its own with the introduction of the IBM 360 series. The 360 was the first commercial computer with a powerful operating system that could provide time sharing, multitasking, and virtual memory in more advanced models. IBM has dominated mainframe computing
Illustrated here are the typical computing configurations characterizing each of the five eras of IT infrastructure evolution.
from this point on. Mainframe computers became powerful enough to support thousands of online remote terminals connected to the centralized mainframe using proprietary communication protocols and proprietary data lines.

The mainframe era was a period of highly centralized computing under the control of professional programmers and systems operators (usually in a corporate data center), with most elements of infrastructure provided by a single vendor, the manufacturer of the hardware and the software.

This pattern began to change with the introduction of minicomputers produced by Digital Equipment Corporation (DEC) in 1965. DEC minicomputers (PDP-11 and later the VAX machines) offered powerful machines at far lower prices than IBM mainframes, making possible decentralized computing, customized to the specific needs of individual departments or business units rather than time sharing on a single huge mainframe. In recent years, the minicomputer has evolved into a midrange computer or midrange server and is part of a network.

**Personal Computer Era: (1981 to Present)**

Although the first truly personal computers (PCs) appeared in the 1970s (the Xerox Alto, the MITS Altair 8800, and the Apple I and II, to name a few), these machines had only limited distribution to computer enthusiasts. The appearance of the IBM PC in 1981 is usually considered the beginning of the PC era because this machine was the first to be widely adopted by American businesses. At first using the DOS operating system, a text-based command language, and later the Microsoft Windows operating system, the Wintel PC computer (Windows operating system software on a computer with an Intel microprocessor) became the standard desktop personal computer. In 2014, there are an estimated 2 billion PCs in the world, and about 276 million new PCs were sold in 2014 (Gartner, 2014). Approximately 90 percent are thought to run a version of Windows, and 10 percent run a Macintosh OS. The Wintel dominance as a computing platform is receding as iPhone and Android device sales increase. About 1.75 billion people worldwide own smartphones, and most of these users access the Internet with their mobile devices.

Proliferation of PCs in the 1980s and early 1990s launched a spate of personal desktop productivity software tools—word processors, spreadsheets, electronic presentation software, and small data management programs—that were very valuable to both home and corporate users. These PCs were stand-alone systems until PC operating system software in the 1990s made it possible to link them into networks.

**Client/Server Era (1983 to Present)**

In client/server computing, desktop or laptop computers called clients are networked to powerful server computers that provide the client computers with a variety of services and capabilities. Computer processing work is split between these two types of machines. The client is the user point of entry, whereas the server typically processes and stores shared data, serves up Web pages, or manages network activities. The term “server” refers to both the software application and the physical computer on which the network software runs. The server could be a mainframe, but today, server computers typically are more powerful versions of personal computers, based on inexpensive chips and often using multiple processors in a single computer box, or in server racks.

The simplest client/server network consists of a client computer networked to a server computer, with processing split between the two types of machines. This is called a two-tiered client/server architecture. Whereas simple client/server
networks can be found in small businesses, most corporations have more complex, **multitiered** (often called N-tier) **client/server architectures** in which the work of the entire network is balanced over several different levels of servers, depending on the kind of service being requested (see Figure 5.3).

For instance, at the first level, a **Web server** will serve a Web page to a client in response to a request for service. Web server software is responsible for locating and managing stored Web pages. If the client requests access to a corporate system (a product list or price information, for instance), the request is passed along to an **application server**. Application server software handles all application operations between a user and an organization’s back-end business systems. The application server may reside on the same computer as the Web server or on its own dedicated computer. Chapters 6 and 7 provide more detail on other pieces of software that are used in multitiered client/server architectures for e-commerce and e-business.

Client/server computing enables businesses to distribute computing work across a series of smaller, inexpensive machines that cost much less than centralized mainframe systems. The result is an explosion in computing power and applications throughout the firm.

Novell NetWare was the leading technology for client/server networking at the beginning of the client/server era. Today, Microsoft is the market leader with its **Windows** operating systems (Windows Server, Windows 8, Windows 7, and Windows Vista).

**Enterprise Computing Era (1992 to Present)**

In the early 1990s, firms turned to networking standards and software tools that could integrate disparate networks and applications throughout the firm into an enterprise-wide infrastructure. As the Internet developed into a trusted communications environment after 1995, business firms began seriously using the **Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** networking standard to tie their disparate networks together. We discuss TCP/IP in detail in Chapter 7.

The resulting IT infrastructure links different pieces of computer hardware and smaller networks into an enterprise-wide network so that information can flow freely across the organization and between the firm and other

**FIGURE 5.3** **A MULTITIERED CLIENT/SERVER NETWORK (N-TIER)**

In a multitiered client/server network, client requests for service are handled by different levels of servers.
organizations. It can link different types of computer hardware, including mainframes, servers, PCs, and mobile devices, and it includes public infrastructures such as the telephone system, the Internet, and public network services. The enterprise infrastructure also requires software to link disparate applications and enable data to flow freely among different parts of the business, such as enterprise applications (see Chapters 2 and 9) and Web services (discussed in Section 5.4).

**Cloud and Mobile Computing Era (2000 to Present)**

The growing bandwidth power of the Internet has pushed the client/server model one step further, towards what is called the “Cloud Computing Model.” Cloud computing refers to a model of computing that provides access to a shared pool of computing resources (computers, storage, applications, and services) over a network, often the Internet. These “clouds” of computing resources can be accessed on an as-needed basis from any connected device and location. Currently, cloud computing is the fastest growing form of computing, with companies spending about $175 billion on cloud infrastructure and services in 2014 (Hamilton, 2014).

Thousands or even hundreds of thousands of computers are located in cloud data centers, where they can be accessed by desktop computers, laptop computers, tablets, entertainment centers, smartphones, and other client machines linked to the Internet, with both personal and corporate computing increasingly moving to mobile platforms. Amazon, Google, IBM, and Microsoft operate huge, scalable cloud computing centers that provide computing power, data storage, and high-speed Internet connections to firms that want to maintain their IT infrastructures remotely. Firms such as Google, Microsoft, SAP, Oracle, and Salesforce.com sell software applications as services delivered over the Internet.

We discuss cloud and mobile computing in more detail in Section 5.3. The Learning Tracks include a table titled Comparing Stages in IT Infrastructure Evolution, which compares each era on the infrastructure dimensions introduced.

**TECHNOLOGY DRIVERS OF INFRASTRUCTURE EVOLUTION**

The changes in IT infrastructure we have just described have resulted from developments in computer processing, memory chips, storage devices, telecommunications and networking hardware and software, and software design that have exponentially increased computing power while exponentially reducing costs. Let’s look at the most important developments.

**Moore's Law and Microprocessing Power**

In 1965, Gordon Moore, the director of Fairchild Semiconductor’s Research and Development Laboratories, an early manufacturer of integrated circuits, wrote in *Electronics* magazine that since the first microprocessor chip was introduced in 1959, the number of components on a chip with the smallest manufacturing costs per component (generally transistors) had doubled each year. This assertion became the foundation of Moore's Law. Moore later reduced the rate of growth to a doubling every two years.

This law would later be interpreted in multiple ways. There are at least three variations of Moore’s Law, none of which Moore ever stated: (1) the power of microprocessors doubles every 18 months; (2) computing power doubles every 18 months; and (3) the price of computing falls by half every 18 months.
Figure 5.4 illustrates the relationship between number of transistors on a microprocessor and millions of instructions per second (MIPS), a common measure of processor power. Figure 5.5 shows the exponential decline in the cost of transistors and rise in computing power. For instance, in 2014, you can buy an Intel i7 quad-core processor chip with 2.5 billion transistors for about one ten-millionth of a dollar per transistor.

Exponential growth in the number of transistors and the power of processors coupled with an exponential decline in computing costs is likely to continue. Chip manufacturers continue to miniaturize components. Today’s transistors should no longer be compared to the size of a human hair but rather to the size of a virus.

By using nanotechnology, chip manufacturers can even shrink the size of transistors down to the width of several atoms. Nanotechnology uses individual atoms and molecules to create computer chips and other devices that are thousands of times smaller than current technologies permit. Chip manufacturers are trying to develop a manufacturing process to produce nanotube processors economically (Figure 5.6). Stanford University scientists have built a nanotube computer.

The Law of Mass Digital Storage
A second technology driver of IT infrastructure change is the Law of Mass Digital Storage. The amount of digital information is roughly doubling every year (Gantz and Reinsel, 2011; Lyman and Varian, 2003). Fortunately, the cost of storing digital information is falling at an exponential rate of 100 percent a year. Figure 5.7 shows that the number of megabytes that can be stored on magnetic media for $1 from 1950 to the present roughly doubled every 15 months. In 2014, a 500 gigabyte hard disk drive sells at retail for about $60.
Nanotubes are tiny tubes about 10,000 times thinner than a human hair. They consist of rolled-up sheets of carbon hexagons and have the potential uses as minuscule wires or in ultrasmall electronic devices and are very powerful conductors of electrical current. © Tyler Boyes/Shutterstock.
Metcalfe’s Law and Network Economics

Moore's Law and the Law of Mass Storage help us understand why computing resources are now so readily available. But why do people want more computing and storage power? The economics of networks and the growth of the Internet provide some answers.

Robert Metcalfe—inventor of Ethernet local area network technology—claimed in 1970 that the value or power of a network grows exponentially as a function of the number of network members. Metcalfe and others point to the increasing returns to scale that network members receive as more and more people join the network. As the number of members in a network grows linearly, the value of the entire system grows exponentially and continues to grow forever as members increase. Demand for information technology has been driven by the social and business value of digital networks, which rapidly multiply the number of actual and potential links among network members.

Declining Communications Costs and the Internet

A fourth technology driver transforming IT infrastructure is the rapid decline in the costs of communication and the exponential growth in the size of the Internet. There are over 3 billion Internet users worldwide (Internetlivestats.com, 2014). Figure 5.8 illustrates the exponentially declining cost of communication both over the Internet and over telephone networks (which increasingly are based on the Internet). As communication costs fall toward a very small number and approach 0, utilization of communication and computing facilities explode.
One reason for the growth in the Internet population is the rapid decline in Internet connection and overall communication costs. The cost per kilobit of Internet access has fallen exponentially since 1995. Digital subscriber line (DSL) and cable modems now deliver a kilobit of communication for a retail price of less than one penny.

Source: Authors.

To take advantage of the business value associated with the Internet, firms must greatly expand their Internet connections, including wireless connectivity, and greatly expand the power of their client/server networks, desktop clients, and mobile computing devices. There is every reason to believe these trends will continue.

Standards and Network Effects

Today’s enterprise infrastructure and Internet computing would be impossible—both now and in the future—without agreements among manufacturers and widespread consumer acceptance of technology standards. Technology standards are specifications that establish the compatibility of products and the ability to communicate in a network (Stango, 2004).

Technology standards unleash powerful economies of scale and result in price declines as manufacturers focus on the products built to a single standard. Without these economies of scale, computing of any sort would be far more expensive than is currently the case. Table 5.1 describes important standards that have shaped IT infrastructure.

Beginning in the 1990s, corporations started moving toward standard computing and communications platforms. The Wintel PC with the Windows operating system and Microsoft Office desktop productivity applications became the standard desktop and mobile client computing platform. (It now shares the spotlight with other standards, such as Apple’s iOS and Macintosh operating systems and the Android operating system.) Widespread adoption of Unix-Linux as the enterprise server operating system of choice made possible the replacement of proprietary and expensive mainframe infrastructures. In telecommunications, the Ethernet standard enabled PCs to connect together in small local area networks (LANs; see Chapter 7), and the TCP/IP standard enabled these LANs to be connected into firmwide networks, and ultimately, to the Internet.
5.2 What are the components of IT infrastructure?

IT infrastructure today is composed of seven major components. Figure 5.9 illustrates these infrastructure components and the major vendors within each component category. These components constitute investments that must be coordinated with one another to provide the firm with a coherent infrastructure.

In the past, technology vendors supplying these components were often in competition with one another, offering purchasing firms a mixture of incompatible, proprietary, partial solutions. But increasingly the vendor firms have been forced by large customers to cooperate in strategic partnerships with one another. For instance, a hardware and services provider such as IBM cooperates with all the major enterprise software providers, has strategic relationships with system integrators, and promises to work with whichever database products its client firms wish to use (even though it sells its own database management software called DB2).

**Computer Hardware Platforms**

Firms worldwide are expected to spend $669 billion on computer hardware devices in 2014, including mainframes, servers, PCs, tablets, and smartphones.
You can think of all these computers and their processors as the computer hardware platform for corporate (and personal) computing worldwide. There are approximately 2 billion PCs in the world today, 2,000 government data centers, and an estimated 8,000 corporate data centers and cloud computing centers. Nearly all their computing takes place using microprocessor “chips” manufactured or designed by Intel Corporation, and to a lesser extent, AMD Corporation. Intel and AMD processors are often referred to as “i86” processors because the original IBM PCs used an Intel 8086 processor, and all the Intel (and AMD) chips that followed are downward compatible with this processor. (For instance, you should be able to run a software application designed ten years ago on a new PC computer you bought yesterday.) Without this commonality in i86 processors, it is unlikely that today’s installed base of 2 billion PCs would exist.

The computer platform has changed dramatically in the last decade, with the introduction of mobile computing devices, from the iPod in 2001, to the iPhone in 2007, and the iPad in 2010. Worldwide, 1.7 billion people use smartphones. You can think of these devices as a second computer hardware platform, one that is consumer device-driven.

There are seven major components that must be coordinated to provide the firm with a coherent IT infrastructure. Listed here are major technologies and suppliers for each component.
The computers with Intel microprocessors in the first computer hardware platform use complex instruction set computing (CISC), with several thousand native instructions built into the chip. This requires a considerable number of transistors per processor, consumes power, and generates heat. Mobile devices in the second computer hardware platform are not required to perform as many tasks as computers in the first computer hardware platform. They are able to use reduced instruction set computing (RISC), which contains a smaller set of instructions, consumes less power, and generates less heat. Apple and Samsung consumer devices use microprocessors designed by ARM Holdings, Inc., a British firm. RISC processors for mobile devices are manufactured by a wide range of firms, including Apple, Texas Instruments, Samsung, and Qualcomm.

The server market, which includes infrastructures ranging from a few computers to large data centers with over 10,000 individual computers, uses mostly Intel and AMD processors in the form of blade servers on racks. Blade servers are computers consisting of a circuit board with processors, memory and network connections that are stored in racks. They take up less space than traditional box-based PC servers. Secondary storage is provided by a hard drive in each blade server, but more commonly by external mass-storage devices. Some specialized servers use Sun SPARC or IBM microprocessors specifically designed for server use.

Mainframes have not disappeared. Mainframes continue to be used to reliably and securely handle huge volumes of transactions, for analyzing very large quantities of data, and for handling large workloads in cloud computing centers. The mainframe is still the digital workhorse for banking and telecommunications networks that are often running software programs that are older and require a specific hardware platform. However, the number of providers has dwindled to one: IBM. IBM has also repurposed its mainframe systems so they can be used as giant servers for massive enterprise networks and corporate Web sites. A single IBM mainframe can run up to 17,000 instances of Linux or Windows Server software and is capable of replacing thousands of smaller blade servers (see the discussion of virtualization in Section 5.3).

**OPERATING SYSTEM PLATFORMS**

Microsoft Windows Server comprises about 35 percent of the server operating system market, with 65 percent of corporate servers using some form of the Unix operating system or Linux, an inexpensive and robust open source relative of Unix. Microsoft Windows Server is capable of providing enterprise-wide operating system and network services, and appeals to organizations seeking Windows-based IT infrastructures.

Unix and Linux are scalable, reliable, and much less expensive than mainframe operating systems. They can also run on many different types of processors. The major providers of Unix operating systems are IBM, HP, and Sun, each with slightly different and partially incompatible versions.

At the client level, 90 percent of PCs use some form of the Microsoft Windows operating system (such as Windows 8, Windows 7, or Windows Vista) to manage the resources and activities of the computer. However, there is now a much greater variety of operating systems than in the past, with new operating systems for computing on handheld mobile digital devices or cloud-connected computers.
Google’s Chrome OS provides a lightweight operating system for cloud computing using a Web-connected computer. Programs are not stored on the user’s computer but are used over the Internet and accessed through the Chrome Web browser. User data reside on servers across the Internet. Android is an open source operating system for mobile devices such as smartphones and tablet computers developed by the Open Handset Alliance led by Google. It has become the most popular smartphone platform worldwide, competing with iOS, Apple’s mobile operating system for the iPhone, iPad, and iPod Touch.

Conventional client operating system software is designed around the mouse and keyboard, but increasingly becoming more natural and intuitive by using touch technology. iOS, the operating system for the phenomenally popular Apple iPad, iPhone, and iPod Touch, features a multitouch interface, where users employ one or more fingers to manipulate objects on a screen without a mouse or keyboard. Microsoft’s Windows 8, which runs on tablets as well as PCs, has a user interface optimized for touch, but also works with a mouse and keyboard. Multitouch capabilities are also available on some Android devices.

**ENTERPRISE SOFTWARE APPLICATIONS**

Firms worldwide are expected to spend about $320 billion in 2014 on software for enterprise applications that are treated as components of IT infrastructure. We introduced the various types of enterprise applications in Chapter 2, and Chapter 9 provides a more detailed discussion of each.

The largest providers of enterprise application software are SAP and Oracle (which acquired PeopleSoft). Also included in this category is middleware software supplied by vendors such as IBM and Oracle for achieving firmwide integration by linking the firm’s existing application systems. Microsoft is attempting to move into the lower ends of this market by focusing on small and medium-sized businesses that have not yet implemented enterprise applications.

**DATA MANAGEMENT AND STORAGE**

Enterprise database management software is responsible for organizing and managing the firm’s data so that they can be efficiently accessed and used. Chapter 6 describes this software in detail. The leading database software providers are IBM (DB2), Oracle, Microsoft (SQL Server), and Sybase (Adaptive Server Enterprise), which supply more than 90 percent of the U.S. database software marketplace. MySQL is a Linux open source relational database product now owned by Oracle Corporation, and Apache Hadoop is an open source software framework for managing massive data sets (see Chapter 6).

The physical data storage market is dominated by EMC Corporation for large-scale systems, and a small number of PC hard disk manufacturers led by Seagate and Western Digital.

Digital information is doubling every two years and the market for digital data storage devices has been growing at more than 15 percent annually over the last five years. In addition to traditional disk arrays and tape libraries, large firms are turning to network-based storage technologies. **Storage area networks (SANs)** connect multiple storage devices on a separate high-speed network dedicated to storage. The SAN creates a large central pool of storage that can be rapidly accessed and shared by multiple servers.
NETWORKING/TELECOMMUNICATIONS PLATFORMS

Companies worldwide are expected to spend $1.65 trillion for telecommunications services in 2014 (Gartner, 2014). Chapter 7 is devoted to an in-depth description of the enterprise networking environment, including the Internet. Windows Server is predominantly used as a local area network operating system, followed by Linux and Unix. Large, enterprise wide area networks use some variant of Unix. Most local area networks, as well as wide area enterprise networks, use the TCP/IP protocol suite as a standard (see Chapter 7).

The leading networking hardware providers are Cisco, Alcatel-Lucent, and Juniper Networks. Telecommunications platforms are typically provided by telecommunications/telephone services companies that offer voice and data connectivity, wide area networking, wireless services, and Internet access. Leading telecommunications service vendors include AT&T and Verizon. This market is exploding with new providers of cellular wireless, high-speed Internet, and Internet telephone services.

INTERNET PLATFORMS

Internet platforms overlap with, and must relate to, the firm's general networking infrastructure and hardware and software platforms. They include hardware, software, and management services to support a firm's Web site, including Web hosting services, routers, and cabling or wireless equipment. A Web hosting service maintains a large Web server, or series of servers, and provides fee-paying subscribers with space to maintain their Web sites.

The Internet revolution created a veritable explosion in server computers, with many firms collecting thousands of small servers to run their Internet operations. Since then there has been a steady push toward server consolidation, reducing the number of server computers by increasing the size and power of each and by using software tools that make it possible to run more applications on a single server. The Internet hardware server market has become increasingly concentrated in the hands of IBM, Dell, Sun (Oracle), and HP, as prices have fallen dramatically.

The major Web software application development tools and suites are supplied by Microsoft (Microsoft Visual Studio and the Microsoft .NET family of development tools), Oracle-Sun (Sun's Java is the most widely used tool for developing interactive Web applications on both the server and client sides), and a host of independent software developers, including Adobe (Creative Suite) and Real Networks (media software). Chapter 7 describes the components of the firm's Internet platform in greater detail.

CONSULTING AND SYSTEM INTEGRATION SERVICES

Today, even a large firm does not have the staff, the skills, the budget, or the necessary experience to deploy and maintain its entire IT infrastructure. Implementing a new infrastructure requires (as noted in Chapters 3 and 14) significant changes in business processes and procedures, training and education, and software integration. Leading consulting firms providing this expertise include Accenture, IBM Global Services, HP, Infosys, and Wipro Technologies.

Software integration means ensuring the new infrastructure works with the firm's older, so-called legacy systems and ensuring the new elements of the infrastructure work with one another. Legacy systems are
generally older transaction processing systems created for mainframe computers that continue to be used to avoid the high cost of replacing or redesigning them. Replacing these systems is cost prohibitive and generally not necessary if these older systems can be integrated into a contemporary infrastructure.

5.3 WHAT ARE THE CURRENT TRENDS IN COMPUTER HARDWARE PLATFORMS?

The exploding power of computer hardware and networking technology has dramatically changed how businesses organize their computing power, putting more of this power on networks and mobile handheld devices. We look at seven hardware trends: the mobile digital platform, consumerization of IT, quantum computing, virtualization, cloud computing, green computing, and high-performance/power-saving processors.

THE MOBILE DIGITAL PLATFORM

Chapter 1 pointed out that new mobile digital computing platforms have emerged as alternatives to PCs and larger computers. Smartphones such as the iPhone, Android, and BlackBerry smartphones have taken on many functions of PCs, including transmission of data, surfing the Web, transmitting e-mail and instant messages, displaying digital content, and exchanging data with internal corporate systems. The new mobile platform also includes small, lightweight netbooks optimized for wireless communication and Internet access, tablet computers such as the iPad, and digital e-book readers such as Amazon’s Kindle with Web access capabilities.

Smartphones and tablet computers are becoming an important means of accessing the Internet. These devices are increasingly used for business computing as well as for consumer applications. For example, senior executives at General Motors are using smartphone applications that drill down into vehicle sales information, financial performance, manufacturing metrics, and project management status.

Wearable computing devices are a recent addition to the mobile digital platform. These include smartwatches, smart glasses, smart badges, and activity trackers. Wearable computing technology is still in its infancy, but it already has business uses, as described in the Interactive Session on Technology.

CONSUMERIZATION OF IT AND BYOD

The popularity, ease of use, and rich array of useful applications for smartphones and tablet computers have created a groundswell of interest in allowing employees to use their personal mobile devices in the workplace, a phenomenon popularly called ‘bring your own device’ (BYOD). BYOD is one aspect of the consumerization of IT, in which new information technology that first emerges in the consumer market spreads into business organizations. Consumerization of IT includes not only mobile personal devices but also business uses of software services that originated in the consumer marketplace as well, such as Google and Yahoo search, Gmail, Google Apps, Dropbox (see Chapter 2), and even Facebook and Twitter.

Consumerization of IT is forcing businesses, especially large enterprises, to rethink the way they obtain and manage information technology equipment
Wearable Computing Goes to Work

It looks like wearable computing is taking off! Smartwatches, smartglasses, smart ID badges, and activity trackers promise to change how we go about each day and the way we do our jobs.

Tech enthusiasts have been abuzz about Google Glass, the small, wrap-around, lens-less glass frames with the built-in computer display. Google Glass displays information in a hands-free format. Wearers communicate with the Internet via natural language and the glasses can both snap pictures and record video. To stay competitive, Facebook purchased Oculus VR Inc. in March 2014. Facebook plans to expand the uses of Oculus's virtual-reality goggles called Rift, from videogames to broader experiences, simulating face-to-face doctor's appointments, classroom experiences, and premium seating at sporting events. Facebook hopes to eventually marry virtual reality and social networking to create the ultimate mobile social platform.

Competition is also heating up over smartwatches that serve as wearable computers on the wrist. Many smartwatches run mobile apps, play music, make or answer phone calls, and display text messages and other notifications. Other smartwatch features include a camera, accelerometer, thermometer, altimeter, barometer, compass, calculator, map display, and GPS navigation. Runners, cyclists, and walkers can use these smartwatches to access speed, distance, and time data (see the Chapter 3 Interactive Session on Technology).

Google has introduced the Android Wear operating system for wearable technology like smartwatches. Google has been working with companies like LG, Motorola, and Samsung on devices that use Android Wear. Android Wear integrates with existing Android services, including Google Maps and Google Now, Google’s contextual understanding and search service that uses location, user preferences and information from emails and schedules to ‘push’ information to the user. Competition from the Apple iWatch is expected by the end of 2014.

These wearable devices are just starting to touch the lives of consumers, but they are taking off in the business world. The broad-based allure—hands-free data delivery—enable workers to perform tasks while receiving visual and aural cues. Here are some examples:

The Hitachi Business Microscope (HBM), an ID badge-sized device worn on a lanyard around the neck, contains multiple sensors that track office temperature, light levels, and other environmental data along with employees’ movements around the office. The HBM records with whom they speak and when, how often they nod or gesture with their hands, and even their energy level. Feedback garnered will promote productive collaboration. An LCD screen displays real-time stats, and data review can be used to formulate personal benchmarks for effective communication. Improvements can be as elementary as increasing the number of interactions with a group or individual, or more complex, such as making adjustments in communication habits and energy level.

At Duke Medical Center and other hospitals, a growing number of surgeons are using Google Glass to stream their operations online, float medical images in their field of view, and hold video consultations with colleagues as they operate. For example, orthopedic surgeon Selene Parekh uses Google Glass to record and archive all of his surgeries at Duke, with plans to stream live feeds of his operations to hospitals in India as a way to train and educate orthopedic surgeons there. Google Glass also has software that transforms the Glass projector into a medical dashboard and displays patient vital signs, urgent lab results and surgical checklists.

Military equipment company Raytheon has worked with Lumus on a helmet worn by both pilots and controllers that includes a drop-down monocle equipped with the Advanced Warfighter Awareness for Real-time Engagement (AWARE) system. This situational awareness device turns a dense tree-filled hillside into a 3D smart display with blue symbols overlaid on trees to mark the location of pinned down soldiers and red symbols to mark individual enemies. The wearer can focus on a target and send the coordinates to a nearby ally.

High definition smartglasses maker Vuzix teamed up with software maker SAP to create smartglasses for manufacturers, logistics companies and service technicians. The glasses connect with a smartphone to access data, which are displayed on a screen right in front of the user’s eyes. The worker interacts with the device using voice commands. Used in this manner, the devices are able to guide warehouse workers
to the products on their pick lists, warn that an item is fragile, or inform an employee that he or she does not have the correct item to fill an order, all without the employee having to look away from his or her normal viewpoint. A warning is issued if a collision with another vehicle is imminent, and employees can conduct video chats to repair equipment and solve technical problems.

At Walt Disney World Resort in Orlando, FL, guests are issued a MagicBand, a radio-frequency identification (RFID) wristband, which serves as their hotel room key and park entrance ticket and can be assigned a PIN and linked to a credit card to make purchases. The wristband is also used to link photos to guest accounts and will soon connect to a vacation-planning system. Staff are equipped with long-range RFID readers so they can personally greet guests. Aggregated RFID data will be used to minimize attraction wait times. Messages will entice guests to relocate to less busy areas of the park. FastPass+, Disney’s ride reservation system, allocates guests to the most popular attractions by assigning one hour return windows for express entrance. Visitors will soon be able to switch a previously assigned reservation without having to locate a FastPass kiosk.

Buffalo Bills football players wear OptimEye sensors from Catapult Sports. Gyroscopes, accelerometers, and magnetometers power a matchbox-sized device embedded in their undershirts.

Communicating with GPS systems, it collects statistics such as top speed attained, total distance run, acceleration, and changes in direction, and calculates a “PlayerLoad” stat. A prime cause of football injuries is simple fatigue. A quantifiable measure now informs collaborative coaching efforts to adjust practice routines so that players’ bodies are not overstressed. One long-term goal is to analyze aggregate data to develop safety standards for each position.

Many other businesses are salivating over the possibilities for using collected and consolidated data that incorporates location, environment, and health information along with purchasing, search, and interaction histories. Successful adoption of wearable computing depends not only on cost effectiveness, but on the development of new and better apps and integration with existing IT infrastructure and the organization’s tools for managing and securing mobile devices.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Wearables aren’t just a consumer phenomenon: they have the potential to change the way organizations and workers conduct business. Discuss the implications of this statement.

2. What management, organization, and technology issues would have to be addressed if a company was thinking of equipping its workers with a wearable computing device?

3. What kinds of businesses are most likely to benefit from mobile computing? Select a business and describe how a mobile computing device could help that business improve operations or decisionmaking.

and services. Historically, at least in large firms, the IT department was responsible for selecting and managing the information technology and applications used by the firm and its employees. It furnished employees with desktops or laptops that were able to access corporate systems securely. The IT department maintained control over the firm’s hardware and software to ensure that the business was being protected and that information systems served the purposes of the firm and its management. Today, employees and
business departments are playing a much larger role in technology selection, in many cases demanding that employees be able to use their own personal computers, smartphones, and tablets to access the corporate network. It is more difficult for the firm to manage and control these consumer technologies, and make sure they serve the needs of the business. The chapter-ending case study explores some of these management challenges created by BYOD and IT consumerization.

**QUANTUM COMPUTING**

Quantum computing is an emerging technology with the potential to dramatically boost computer processing power to find answers to problems that would take conventional computers many years to solve. Quantum computing uses the principles of quantum physics to represent data and perform operations on these data. A quantum computer would gain enormous processing power through the ability to be in many different states at once, allowing it to perform multiple operations simultaneously and solve some scientific and business problems millions of times faster than can be done today. Researchers at IBM, MIT, and the Los Alamos National Laboratory have been working on quantum computing, and the aerospace firm Lockheed Martin has purchased a quantum computer for commercial use.

**VIRTUALIZATION**

Virtualization is the process of presenting a set of computing resources (such as computing power or data storage) so that they can all be accessed in ways that are not restricted by physical configuration or geographic location. Virtualization enables a single physical resource (such as a server or a storage device) to appear to the user as multiple logical resources. For example, a server or mainframe can be configured to run many instances of an operating system (or different operating systems) so that it acts like many different machines. Each virtual server “looks” like a real physical server to software programs, and multiple virtual servers can run in parallel on a single machine. Virtualization also enables multiple physical resources (such as storage devices or servers) to appear as a single logical resource, as would be the case with storage area networks. VMware is the leading virtualization software vendor for Windows and Linux servers.

Server virtualization is a common method of reducing technology costs by providing the ability to host multiple systems on a single physical machine. Most servers run at just 15-20 percent of capacity, and virtualization can boost utilization server utilization rates to 70 percent or higher. Higher utilization rates translate into fewer computers required to process the same amount of work, reduced data center space to house machines, and lower energy usage. Virtualization also facilitates centralization and consolidation of hardware administration. It is now possible for companies and individuals to perform all of their computing work using a virtualized IT infrastructure in a remote location, as is the case with cloud computing.

**CLOUD COMPUTING**

Cloud computing is a model of computing in which computer processing, storage, software, and other services are provided as a pool of virtualized resources over a network, primarily the Internet. These “clouds” of computing
resources can be accessed on an as-needed basis from any connected device and location. Figure 5.10 illustrates the cloud computing concept.

The U.S. National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) defines cloud computing as having the following essential characteristics (Mell and Grance, 2009):

- **On-demand self-service**: Consumers can obtain computing capabilities such as server time or network storage as needed automatically on their own.

- **Ubiquitous network access**: Cloud resources can be accessed using standard network and Internet devices, including mobile platforms.

- **Location-independent resource pooling**: Computing resources are pooled to serve multiple users, with different virtual resources dynamically assigned according to user demand. The user generally does not know where the computing resources are located.

- **Rapid elasticity**: Computing resources can be rapidly provisioned, increased, or decreased to meet changing user demand.

- **Measured service**: Charges for cloud resources are based on amount of resources actually used.

Cloud computing consists of three different types of services:

**FIGURE 5.10 CLOUD COMPUTING PLATFORM**

In cloud computing, hardware and software capabilities are a pool of virtualized resources provided over a network, often the Internet. Businesses and employees have access to applications and IT infrastructure anywhere, at any time, and on any device.
Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS): Customers use processing, storage, networking, and other computing resources from cloud service providers to run their information systems. For example, Amazon uses the spare capacity of its IT infrastructure to provide a broadly based cloud environment selling IT infrastructure services. These include its Simple Storage Service (S3) for storing customers' data and its Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) service for running their applications. Users pay only for the amount of computing and storage capacity they actually use. (See the Interactive Session on Organizations).

Platform as a Service (PaaS): Customers use infrastructure and programming tools supported by the cloud service provider to develop their own applications. For example, IBM offers a Smart Business Application Development & Test service for software development and testing on the IBM Cloud. Another example is Salesforce.com's Force.com, which allows developers to build applications that are hosted on its servers as a service.

Software as a Service (SaaS): Customers use software hosted by the vendor on the vendor's cloud infrastructure and delivered over a network. Leading examples are Google Apps, which provides common business applications online and Salesforce.com, which also leases customer relationship management and related software services over the Internet. Both charge users an annual subscription fee, although Google provides a free version of some of its business productivity tools. Users access these applications from a Web browser, and the data and software are maintained on the providers' remote servers.

A cloud can be private or public. A public cloud is owned and maintained by a cloud service provider, such as Amazon Web Services, and made available to the general public or industry group. A private cloud is operated solely for an organization. It may be managed by the organization or a third party and may exist on premise or off premise. Like public clouds, private clouds are able to allocate storage, computing power, or other resources seamlessly to provide computing resources on an as-needed basis. Companies that want flexible IT resources and a cloud service model while retaining control over their own IT infrastructure are gravitating toward these private clouds. (See the Interactive Session on Organizations.)

Since organizations using public clouds do not own the infrastructure, they do not have to make large investments in their own hardware and software. Instead, they purchase their computing services from remote providers and pay only for the amount of computing power they actually use (utility computing) or are billed on a monthly or annual subscription basis. The term on-demand computing has also been used to describe such services.

Cloud computing has some drawbacks. Unless users make provisions for storing their data locally, the responsibility for data storage and control is in the hands of the provider. Some companies worry about the security risks related to entrusting their critical data and systems to an outside vendor that also works with other companies. Companies expect their systems to be available 24/7 and do not want to suffer any loss of business capability if cloud infrastructures malfunction. Nevertheless, the trend is for companies to shift more of their computer processing and storage to some form of cloud infrastructure.

Cloud computing is more immediately appealing to small and medium-sized businesses that lack resources to purchase and own their own hardware and software. However, large corporations have huge investments in complex proprietary systems supporting unique business processes, some of which give
IS IT TIME FOR CLOUD COMPUTING?

Cloud computing is taking off. The biggest players in the cloud computing marketplace include Amazon Web Services division (AWS), Microsoft, and Google. These companies have streamlined cloud computing and made it an affordable and sensible option for companies ranging from tiny Internet startups to established companies like FedEx.

For example, AWS provides subscribing companies with flexible computing power and data storage, as well as data management, messaging, payment, and other services that can be used together or individually as the business requires. Anyone with an Internet connection and a little bit of money can harness the same computing systems that Amazon itself uses to run its retail business. If customers provide the amount of server space, bandwidth, storage, and any other services they require, AWS can automatically allocate those resources. Amazon’s sales pitch is that you don’t pay a monthly or yearly fee to use their computing resources – instead, you pay for exactly what you use.

This appeals to many businesses because it allows Amazon to handle all of the maintenance and upkeep of IT infrastructures, leaving businesses to spend more time on higher-value work. For example, using AWS helped Merrifield Garden Center reduce costs, improve the stability and security of its applications and data, and eliminate the burden of managing IT infrastructure so it can focus on new customer-facing initiatives to grow the business.

Startup companies and smaller companies are finding that they no longer need to build their own data center. With cloud infrastructures like Amazon’s readily available, they have access to technical capability that was formerly available to only much larger businesses. San Francisco-based Socialcam provides a popular mobile social video application currently installed on over 20 million iPhone and Android smartphones. The Socialcam application makes it easy to take a video of any size, post it online, and share with friends. Socialcam became so popular that the company’s engineers couldn’t install hardware fast enough to keep up with demand. By moving to the AWS Cloud, Socialcam can quickly add or remove capacity to meet demand. Netco Sports produces the Canal + Football app that enables viewers to replay any move from any camera angle, on any device, within 3 minutes after it happens. By using AWS, Netco Sports can scale 100 servers in under 10 minutes to support streaming for 500,000 viewers.

Until recently, banks have been reluctant to use public cloud services due to security and regulatory concerns, but shrinking profits are encouraging them to take a second look. In the meantime, some banks are using private clouds for their sensitive financial transactions. National Australia Bank (NAB), with $793 billion in assets, uses an internal private cloud based on IBM’s infrastructure on demand. IBM had already been managing the bank’s IT infrastructure under a seven-year contract signed in 2010. The private cloud hosts the bank’s main production environment, including a new Oracle banking system, and will support short-term computing-intensive projects such as marketing campaigns. NAB pays only for what it uses so that it doesn’t have to make large IT capital expenditures. The equipment is all hosted in NAB’s data centers, which is unusual for on-demand environments.

Although low overhead and infrastructure management costs make public cloud computing especially attractive to startups, the financial benefits of cloud computing for large and midsized organizations are less apparent. Cliff Olson, director of infrastructure systems at FP International, Inc., a Fremont, California-based packaging company, notes that paying a public cloud provider a monthly service fee for 10,000 or more employees will probably be more expensive than having the company manage its own IT infrastructure and staff. Companies also worry about unexpected “runaway costs” from using a pay-per-use model. Integrating cloud services with existing IT infrastructures, errors, mismanagement, or unusually high volumes of Web traffic will run up the bill for cloud service users.

Gartner Inc. technology consultants advises clients contemplating public cloud services to take into account the number of machines an organization will run; the number of hours per day or per week they’ll run; and the amount of storage their data will require. Additional costs include licenses that need to be paid for on a recurring basis; the rate of change for the data; and how much new data the business is expected to generate. A very large company may find it cheaper to own and manage its own data center or private cloud. But as public
clouds become more efficient and secure and the technology grows cheaper, large companies will start using more cloud resources.

A major barrier to widespread cloud adoption is concern about cloud reliability and security. Amazon’s cloud experienced significant outages in April and August 2011; on June 14 and 29, 2012; on December 24, 2012; on January 31, 2013; and on August 25, 2013. Normally, cloud networks are very reliable, and often more so than private networks operated by individual companies. But when a cloud of significant size like Amazon’s goes down, it sends ripples across the entire Web. The August 2013 outage was caused by a hardware failure lasting 49 minutes at Amazon’s U.S.-East data center in North Virginia. It led to spiraling problems at a host of well-trafficked online services, including Instagram, Vine, AirBnB, and the mobile magazine app Flipboard. Amazon attributed the outage to glitches with a single networking device that resulted in data loss.

The outages have been proof that the vision of a cloud with 100 percent uptime is still far from reality. Nevertheless, some large cloud users such as Netflix believe that overall cloud service availability and reliability have steadily improved. A number of experts recommend that companies for whom an outage would be a major risk consider using another computing service as a backup.

Most midsized and large companies will gravitate toward a hybrid approach. For example, InterContinental Hotels revamped its IT infrastructure to include both private and public cloud usage. To improve response time for customers, InterContinental moved its core room reservation transaction system onto a private cloud within its own data center, but it moved room availability and pricing Web site applications onto public cloud data centers on the East and West coasts. Customers receive data faster if the data are located on a server that is physically close to them, and cloud computing helps InterContinental to take advantage of this.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. What business benefits do cloud computing services provide? What problems do they solve?
2. What are the disadvantages of cloud computing?
3. How do the concepts of capacity planning, scalability, and TCO apply to this case? Apply these concepts both to Amazon and to subscribers of its services.
4. What kinds of businesses are most likely to benefit from using cloud computing? Why?
Large firms are most likely to adopt a hybrid cloud computing model where they use their own infrastructure for their most essential core activities and adopt public cloud computing for less-critical systems or for additional processing capacity during peak business periods. Cloud computing will gradually shift firms from having a fixed infrastructure capacity toward a more flexible infrastructure, some of it owned by the firm, and some of it rented from giant computer centers owned by computer hardware vendors. You can find out more about cloud computing in the Learning Tracks for this chapter.

**GREEN COMPUTING**

By curbing hardware proliferation and power consumption, virtualization has become one of the principal technologies for promoting green computing. Green computing or green IT, refers to practices and technologies for designing, manufacturing, using, and disposing of computers, servers, and associated devices such as monitors, printers, storage devices, and networking and communications systems to minimize impact on the environment.

Reducing computer power consumption has been a very high “green” priority. Information technology is responsible for about 2 percent of total U.S. power demand and is believed to contribute about 2 percent of the world’s greenhouse gases. A corporate data center can easily consume more than 100 times more power than a standard office building. All this additional power consumption has a negative impact on the environment and corporate operating costs. The chapter-opening case on Portugal Telecom illustrates some of the technologies and data center design considerations for green computing and the business and environmental benefits of cutting power consumption in the data center.

**HIGH-PERFORMANCE AND POWER-SAVING PROCESSORS**

Another way to reduce power requirements and hardware sprawl is to use more efficient and power-saving processors. Contemporary microprocessors now feature multiple processor cores (which perform the reading and execution of computer instructions) on a single chip. A multicore processor is an integrated circuit to which two or more processor cores have been attached for enhanced performance, reduced power consumption, and more efficient simultaneous processing of multiple tasks. This technology enables two or more processing engines with reduced power requirements and heat dissipation to perform tasks faster than a resource-hungry chip with a single processing core. Today you’ll find PCs with dual-core, quad-core, six-core, and eight core processors and servers with 16-core processors.

Intel and other chip manufacturers have developed microprocessors that minimize power consumption, which is essential for prolonging battery life in small mobile digital devices. You will now find highly power-efficient microprocessors, such as the A6 and A7 processors used in the Apple iPhone and iPad, and Intel’s Atom processor for netbooks and mobile Internet devices. The Apple microprocessors have about one-fiftieth the power consumption of a laptop dual-core processor. Intel recently unveiled a line of ultrasmall low-power microprocessors called Quark that can be used in wearable devices, skin patches, or even swallowed to gather medical data.
5.4 WHAT ARE THE CURRENT TRENDS IN COMPUTER SOFTWARE PLATFORMS?

There are four major themes in contemporary software platform evolution:

- Linux and open source software
- Java, HTML, and HTML5
- Web services and service-oriented architecture
- Software outsourcing and cloud services

LINUX AND OPEN SOURCE SOFTWARE

Open source software is software produced by a community of several hundred thousand programmers around the world. According to the leading open source professional association, OpenSource.org, open source software is free and can be modified by users. Works derived from the original code must also be free, and the software can be redistributed by the user without additional licensing. Open source software is by definition not restricted to any specific operating system or hardware technology, although most open source software is currently based on a Linux or Unix operating system.

The open source movement has been evolving for more than 30 years and has demonstrated that it can produce commercially acceptable, high-quality software. Popular open source software tools include the Linux operating system, the Apache HTTP Web server, the Mozilla Firefox Web browser, and the Apache OpenOffice desktop productivity suite. Google’s Android mobile operating system and Chrome Web browser are based on open source tools. You can find out more about the Open Source Definition from the Open Source Initiative and the history of open source software at the Learning Tracks for this chapter.

Linux

Perhaps the most well-known open source software is Linux, an operating system related to Unix. Linux was created by the Finnish programmer Linus Torvalds and first posted on the Internet in August 1991. Linux applications are embedded in cell phones, smartphones, tablet computers and consumer electronics. Linux is available in free versions downloadable from the Internet or in low-cost commercial versions that include tools and support from vendors such as Red Hat.

Although Linux is not used in many desktop systems, it is a leading operating system on servers, mainframe computers, and supercomputers. Linux has become the operating system of choice in the high performance computing market, powering 97 percent of the world's fastest computers. IBM, HP, Intel, Dell, and Oracle have made Linux a central part of their offerings to corporations. The popular Android operating system for mobile devices has a Linux foundation.

The rise of open source software, particularly Linux and the applications it supports, has profound implications for corporate software platforms: cost reduction, reliability and resilience, and integration, because Linux works on all the major hardware platforms from mainframes to servers to clients.

SOFTWARE FOR THE WEB: JAVA, HTML, AND HTML5

Java is an operating system-independent, processor-independent, object-oriented programming language that has become the leading interactive
environment for the Web. Java was created by James Gosling and the Green Team at Sun Microsystems in 1992. In November 13, 2006, Sun released much of Java as open source software under the terms of the GNU General Public License (GPL), completing the process on May 8, 2007.

The Java platform has migrated into cell phones, smartphones, automobiles, music players, game machines, and into set-top cable television systems serving interactive content and pay-per-view services. Java software is designed to run on any computer or computing device, regardless of the specific microprocessor or operating system the device uses. Java is the most popular development platform for mobile devices running the Android operating system. For each of the computing environments in which Java is used, Sun created a Java Virtual Machine that interprets Java programming code for that machine. In this manner, the code is written once and can be used on any machine for which there exists a Java Virtual Machine.

Java developers can create small applet programs that can be embedded in Web pages and downloaded to run on a Web browser. A Web browser is an easy-to-use software tool with a graphical user interface for displaying Web pages and for accessing the Web and other Internet resources. Microsoft's Internet Explorer, Mozilla Firefox, and Google Chrome browser are examples. At the enterprise level, Java is being used for more complex e-commerce and e-business applications that require communication with an organization's back-end transaction processing systems.

**HTML and HTML5**

**HTML (Hypertext Markup Language)** is a page description language for specifying how text, graphics, video, and sound are placed on a Web page and for creating dynamic links to other Web pages and objects. Using these links, a user need only point at a highlighted keyword or graphic, click on it, and immediately be transported to another document.

HTML was originally designed to create and link static documents composed largely of text. Today, however, the Web is much more social and interactive, and many Web pages have multimedia elements—images, audio, and video. Third-party plug-in applications like Flash, Silverlight, and Java have been required to integrate these rich media with Web pages. However, these add-ons require additional programming and put strains on computer processing. The next evolution of HTML, called **HTML5**, solves this problem by making it possible to embed images, audio, video, and other elements directly into a document without processor-intensive add-ons. HTML5 makes it easier for Web pages to function across different display devices, including mobile devices as well as desktops, and it will support the storage of data offline for apps that run over the Web. Other popular programming tools for Web applications include Ruby and Python. Ruby is an object-oriented programming language known for speed and ease of use in building Web applications and Python (praised for its clarity) is being used for building cloud computing applications. Major Web sites such as Google, Facebook, Amazon, and Twitter use Python and Ruby as well as Java.

**WEB SERVICES AND SERVICE-ORIENTED ARCHITECTURE**

Web services refer to a set of loosely coupled software components that exchange information with each other using universal Web communication
standards and languages. They can exchange information between two different systems regardless of the operating systems or programming languages on which the systems are based. They can be used to build open standard Web-based applications linking systems of two different organizations, and they can also be used to create applications that link disparate systems within a single company. Web services are not tied to any one operating system or programming language, and different applications can use them to communicate with each other in a standard way without time-consuming custom coding.

The foundation technology for Web services is XML, which stands for Extensible Markup Language. This language was developed in 1996 by the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C, the international body that oversees the development of the Web) as a more powerful and flexible markup language than hypertext markup language (HTML) for Web pages. Whereas HTML is limited to describing how data should be presented in the form of Web pages, XML can perform presentation, communication, and storage of data. In XML, a number is not simply a number; the XML tag specifies whether the number represents a price, a date, or a ZIP code. Table 5.2 illustrates some sample XML statements.

By tagging selected elements of the content of documents for their meanings, XML makes it possible for computers to manipulate and interpret their data automatically and perform operations on the data without human intervention. Web browsers and computer programs, such as order processing or enterprise resource planning (ERP) software, can follow programmed rules for applying and displaying the data. XML provides a standard format for data exchange, enabling Web services to pass data from one process to another.

Web services communicate through XML messages over standard Web protocols. Companies discover and locate Web services through a directory much as they would locate services in the Yellow Pages of a telephone book. Using Web protocols, a software application can connect freely to other applications without custom programming for each different application with which it wants to communicate. Everyone shares the same standards.

The collection of Web services that are used to build a firm’s software systems constitutes what is known as a service-oriented architecture. A service-oriented architecture (SOA) is a set of self-contained services that communicate with each other to create a working software application. Business tasks are accomplished by executing a series of these services. Software developers reuse these services in other combinations to assemble other applications as needed.

Virtually all major software vendors provide tools and entire platforms for building and integrating software applications using Web services. IBM includes Web service tools in its WebSphere e-business software platform, and Microsoft has incorporated Web services tools in its Microsoft .NET platform.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLAIN ENGLISH</th>
<th>XML</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subcompact</td>
<td><code>&lt;AUTOMOBILETYPE=&quot;subcompact&quot;&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 passenger</td>
<td><code>&lt;PASSENGERUNIT=&quot;PASS&quot;&gt;4&lt;/PASSENGER&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$16,800</td>
<td><code>&lt;PRICE CURRENCY=&quot;USD&quot;&gt;$16,800&lt;/PRICE&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Dollar Rent A Car’s systems use Web services for its online booking system with Southwest Airlines’ Web site. Although both companies’ systems are based on different technology platforms, a person booking a flight on Southwest.com can reserve a car from Dollar without leaving the airline’s Web site. Instead of struggling to get Dollar’s reservation system to share data with Southwest’s information systems, Dollar used Microsoft .NET Web services technology as an intermediary. Reservations from Southwest are translated into Web services protocols, which are then translated into formats that can be understood by Dollar’s computers.

Other car rental companies have linked their information systems to airline companies’ Web sites before. But without Web services, these connections had to be built one at a time. Web services provide a standard way for Dollar’s computers to “talk” to other companies’ information systems without having to build special links to each one. Dollar is now expanding its use of Web services to link directly to the systems of a small tour operator and a large travel reservation system as well as a wireless Web site for cell phones and smartphones. It does not have to write new software code for each new partner’s information systems or each new wireless device (see Figure 5.11).

SOFTWARE OUTSOURCING AND CLOUD SERVICES

Today, many business firms continue to operate legacy systems that continue to meet a business need and that would be extremely costly to replace. But they will purchase or rent most of their new software applications from external sources. Figure 5.12 illustrates the rapid growth in external sources of software for U.S. firms.
There are three external sources for software: software packages from a commercial software vendor, outsourcing custom application development to an external vendor, (which may or may not be offshore), and cloud-based software services and tools.

**Software Packages and Enterprise Software**

We have already described software packages for enterprise applications as one of the major types of software components in contemporary IT infrastructures. A software package is a prewritten commercially available set of software programs that eliminates the need for a firm to write its own software programs for certain functions, such as payroll processing or order handling.

Enterprise application software vendors such as SAP and Oracle-PeopleSoft have developed powerful software packages that can support the primary business processes of a firm worldwide from warehousing, customer relationship management, and supply chain management, to finance and human resources. These large-scale enterprise software systems provide a single, integrated, worldwide software system for firms at a cost much less than they would pay if they developed it themselves. Chapter 9 discusses enterprise systems in detail.

**Software Outsourcing**

Software outsourcing enables a firm to contract custom software development or maintenance of existing legacy programs to outside firms, which often operate offshore in low-wage areas of the world. According to industry analysts, spending on global IT outsourcing services was approximately $440 billion in 2014 (Kanaracus, 2014).
For example, Cemex, Mexico’s largest cement manufacturer, signed a 10-year $1 billion outsourcing deal with IBM in July 2012. Under the deal, IBM responsibilities include application development and maintenance as well as IT infrastructure management at Cemex company headquarters in Monterrey, Mexico, and around the globe. IBM will take over and run Cemex’s finance, accounting, and human resources systems (McDougall, 2012).

Offshore software outsourcing firms have primarily provided lower-level maintenance, data entry, and call center operations, although more sophisticated and experienced offshore firms, particularly in India, have been hired for new-program development. However, as wages offshore rise, and the costs of managing offshore projects are factored in (see Chapter 13), some work that would have been sent offshore is returning to domestic companies.

Cloud-Based Software Services and Tools

In the past, software such as Microsoft Word or Adobe Illustrator came in a box and was designed to operate on a single machine. Today, you’re more likely to download the software from the vendor’s Web site, or to use the software as a cloud service delivered over the Internet.

Cloud-based software and the data it uses are hosted on powerful servers in massive data centers, and can be accessed with an Internet connection and standard Web browser. In addition to free or low-cost tools for individuals and small businesses provided by Google or Yahoo, enterprise software and other complex business functions are available as services from the major commercial software vendors. Instead of buying and installing software programs, subscribing companies rent the same functions from these services, with users paying either on a subscription or per-transaction basis. Services for delivering and providing access to software remotely as a Web-based service are now referred to as software as a service (SaaS). A leading example is Salesforce.com, which provides on-demand software services for customer relationship management.

In order to manage their relationship with an outsourcer or technology service provider, firms need a contract that includes a service level agreement (SLA). The SLA is a formal contract between customers and their service providers that defines the specific responsibilities of the service provider and the level of service expected by the customer. SLAs typically specify the nature and level of services provided, criteria for performance measurement, support options, provisions for security and disaster recovery, hardware and software ownership and upgrades, customer support, billing, and conditions for terminating the agreement. We provide a Learning Track on this topic.

Mashups and Apps

The software you use for both personal and business tasks may consist of large self-contained programs, or it may be composed of interchangeable components that integrate freely with other applications on the Internet. Individual users and entire companies mix and match these software components to create their own customized applications and to share information with others. The resulting software applications are called mashups. The idea is to take different sources and produce a new work that is "greater than" the sum of its parts. You have performed a mashup if you’ve ever personalized your Facebook profile or your blog with a capability to display videos or slide shows.

Web mashups combine the capabilities of two or more online applications to create a kind of hybrid that provides more customer value than the original sources alone. For instance, ZipRealty uses Google Maps and data provided by
online real estate database Zillow.com to display a complete list of multiple listing service (MLS) real estate listings for any zip code specified by the user. Amazon uses mashup technologies to aggregate product descriptions with partner sites and user profiles.

Apps are small specialized software programs that run on the Internet, on your computer, or on your mobile phone or tablet and are generally delivered over the Internet. Google refers to its online services as apps, including the Google Apps suite of desktop productivity tools. But when we talk about apps today, most of the attention goes to the apps that have been developed for the mobile digital platform. It is these apps that turn smartphones and other mobile handheld devices into general-purpose computing tools.

Some downloaded apps do not access the Web but many do, providing faster access to Web content than traditional Web browsers. They provide a non-browser pathway for users to experience the Web and perform a number of tasks, ranging from reading the newspaper to shopping, searching, and buying. Because so many people are now accessing the Internet from their mobile devices, some say that apps are “the new browsers.” Apps are also starting to influence the design and function of traditional Web sites as consumers are attracted to the look and feel of apps and their speed of operation.

Many apps are free or purchased for a small charge, much less than conventional software, which further adds to their appeal. There are already over 1 million apps for the Apple iPhone and iPad platform and a similar number that run on devices using Google’s Android operating system. The success of these mobile platforms depends in large part on the quantity and the quality of the apps they provide. Apps tie the customer to a specific hardware platform: As the user adds more and more apps to his or her mobile phone, the cost of switching to a competing mobile platform rises.

At the moment, the most commonly downloaded apps are games, news and weather, maps/navigation, social networking, music, and video/movies. But there are also serious apps for business users that make it possible to create and edit documents, connect to corporate systems, schedule and participate in meetings, track shipments, and dictate voice messages (see the Chapter 1 Interactive Session on Management). There are also a huge number of e-commerce apps for researching and buying goods and services online.

## 5.5 What are the Challenges of Managing IT Infrastructure and Management Solutions?

Creating and managing a coherent IT infrastructure raises multiple challenges: dealing with platform and technology change (including cloud and mobile computing), management and governance, and making wise infrastructure investments.

### Dealing with Platform and Infrastructure Change

As firms grow, they often quickly outgrow their infrastructure. As firms shrink, they can get stuck with excessive infrastructure purchased in better times. How can a firm remain flexible when most of the investments in IT infrastructure are fixed-cost purchases and licenses? How well does the infrastructure scale?
**Scalability** refers to the ability of a computer, product, or system to expand to serve a large number of users without breaking down. New applications, mergers and acquisitions, and changes in business volume all impact computer workload and must be considered when planning hardware capacity.

Firms using mobile computing and cloud computing platforms will require new policies and procedures for managing these platforms. They will need to inventory all of their mobile devices in business use and develop policies and tools for tracking, updating, and securing them and for controlling the data and applications that run on them. Firms using cloud computing and SaaS will need to fashion new contractual arrangements with remote vendors to make sure that the hardware and software for critical applications are always available when needed and that they meet corporate standards for information security. It is up to business management to determine acceptable levels of computer response time and availability for the firm's mission-critical systems to maintain the level of business performance they expect.

**MANAGEMENT AND GOVERNANCE**

A long-standing issue among information system managers and CEOs has been the question of who will control and manage the firm's IT infrastructure. Chapter 2 introduced the concept of IT governance and described some issues it addresses. Other important questions about IT governance are: Should departments and divisions have the responsibility of making their own information technology decisions or should IT infrastructure be centrally controlled and managed? What is the relationship between central information systems management and business unit information systems management? How will infrastructure costs be allocated among business units? Each organization will need to arrive at answers based on its own needs.

**MAKING WISE INFRASTRUCTURE INVESTMENTS**

IT infrastructure is a major investment for the firm. If too much is spent on infrastructure, it lies idle and constitutes a drag on the firm's financial performance. If too little is spent, important business services cannot be delivered and the firm's competitors (who spent just the right amount) will outperform the under-investing firm. How much should the firm spend on infrastructure? This question is not easy to answer.

A related question is whether a firm should purchase and maintain its own IT infrastructure components or rent them from external suppliers, including those offering cloud services. The decision either to purchase your own IT assets or rent them from external providers is typically called the *rent-versus-buy* decision.

Cloud computing may be a low-cost way to increase scalability and flexibility, but firms should evaluate this option carefully in light of security requirements and impact on business processes and workflows. In some instances, the cost of renting software adds up to more than purchasing and maintaining an application in-house. Yet there may be benefits to using cloud services, if this allows the company to focus on core business issues instead of technology challenges.

**Total Cost of Ownership of Technology Assets**

The actual cost of owning technology resources includes the original cost of acquiring and installing hardware and software, as well as ongoing administration costs for hardware and software upgrades, maintenance, technical
support, training, and even utility and real estate costs for running and housing the technology. The **total cost of ownership (TCO)** model can be used to analyze these direct and indirect costs to help firms determine the actual cost of specific technology implementations. Table 5.3 describes the most important TCO components to consider in a TCO analysis.

When all these cost components are considered, the TCO for a PC might run up to three times the original purchase price of the equipment. Although the purchase price of a wireless handheld for a corporate employee may run several hundred dollars, the TCO for each device is much higher, ranging from $1,000 to $3,000, according to various consultant estimates. Gains in productivity and efficiency from equipping employees with mobile computing devices must be balanced against increased costs from integrating these devices into the firm’s IT infrastructure and from providing technical support. Other cost components include fees for wireless airtime, end-user training, help desk support, and software for special applications. Costs are higher if the mobile devices run many different applications or need to be integrated into back-end systems such as enterprise applications.

Hardware and software acquisition costs account for only about 20 percent of TCO, so managers must pay close attention to administration costs to understand the full cost of the firm’s hardware and software. It is possible to reduce some of these administration costs through better management. Many large firms are saddled with redundant, incompatible hardware and software because their departments and divisions have been allowed to make their own technology purchases.

In addition to switching to cloud services, these firms could reduce their TCO through greater centralization and standardization of their hardware and software resources. Companies could reduce the size of the information systems staff required to support their infrastructure if the firm minimizes the number of different computer models and pieces of software that employees are allowed to use. In a centralized infrastructure, systems can be administered from a central location and troubleshooting can be performed from that location.

### Table 5.3 Total Cost of Ownership (TCO) Cost Components

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFRASSTRUCTURE COMPONENT</th>
<th>COST COMPONENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hardware acquisition</td>
<td>Purchase price of computer hardware equipment, including computers, terminals, storage, and printers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software acquisition</td>
<td>Purchase or license of software for each user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation</td>
<td>Cost to install computers and software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Training</td>
<td>Cost to provide training for information systems specialists and end users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support</td>
<td>Cost to provide ongoing technical support, help desks, and so forth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance</td>
<td>Cost to upgrade the hardware and software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrastructure</td>
<td>Cost to acquire, maintain, and support related infrastructure, such as networks and specialized equipment (including storage backup units)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downtime</td>
<td>Cost of lost productivity if hardware or software failures cause the system to be unavailable for processing and user tasks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space and energy</td>
<td>Real estate and utility costs for housing and providing power for the technology</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Competitive Forces Model for IT Infrastructure Investment

Figure 5.13 illustrates a competitive forces model you can use to address the question of how much your firm should spend on IT infrastructure.

Market demand for your firm’s services. Make an inventory of the services you currently provide to customers, suppliers, and employees. Survey each group, or hold focus groups to find out if the services you currently offer are meeting the needs of each group. For example, are customers complaining of slow responses to their queries about price and availability? Are employees complaining about the difficulty of finding the right information for their jobs? Are suppliers complaining about the difficulties of discovering your production requirements?

Your firm’s business strategy. Analyze your firm’s five-year business strategy and try to assess what new services and capabilities will be required to achieve strategic goals.

Your firm’s IT strategy, infrastructure, and cost. Examine your firm’s information technology plans for the next five years and assess its alignment with the firm’s business plans. Determine the total IT infrastructure costs. You will want to perform a TCO analysis. If your firm has no IT strategy, you will need to devise one that takes into account the firm’s five-year strategic plan.

Information technology assessment. Is your firm behind the technology curve or at the bleeding edge of information technology? Both situations are to be avoided. It is usually not desirable to spend resources on advanced technolo-

**Figure 5.13** Competitive Forces Model for IT Infrastructure Investment

There are six factors you can use to answer the question, “How much should our firm spend on IT infrastructure?”
gies that are still experimental, often expensive, and sometimes unreliable. You want to spend on technologies for which standards have been established and IT vendors are competing on cost, not design, and where there are multiple suppliers. However, you do not want to put off investment in new technologies or allow competitors to develop new business models and capabilities based on the new technologies.

**Competitor firm services.** Try to assess what technology services competitors offer to customers, suppliers, and employees. Establish quantitative and qualitative measures to compare them to those of your firm. If your firm’s service levels fall short, your company is at a competitive disadvantage. Look for ways your firm can excel at service levels.

**Competitor firm IT infrastructure investments.** Benchmark your expenditures for IT infrastructure against your competitors. Many companies are quite public about their innovative expenditures on IT. If competing firms try to keep IT expenditures secret, you may be able to find IT investment information in public companies’ SEC Form 10-K annual reports to the federal government when those expenditures impact a firm’s financial results.

Your firm does not necessarily need to spend as much as, or more than, your competitors. Perhaps it has discovered much less-expensive ways of providing services, and this can lead to a cost advantage. Alternatively, your firm may be spending far less than competitors and experiencing commensurate poor performance and losing market share.

---

### Review Summary

1. **What is IT infrastructure and what are the stages and drivers of IT infrastructure evolution?**
   
   IT infrastructure is the shared technology resources that provide the platform for the firm’s specific information system applications. IT infrastructure includes hardware, software, and services that are shared across the entire firm.
   
   The five stages of IT infrastructure evolution are: the mainframe era, the personal computer era, the client/server era, the enterprise computing era, and the cloud and mobile computing era. Moore’s Law deals with the exponential increase in processing power and decline in the cost of computer technology, stating that every 18 months the power of microprocessors doubles and the price of computing falls in half. The Law of Mass Digital Storage deals with the exponential decrease in the cost of storing data, stating that the number of kilobytes of data that can be stored on magnetic media for $1 roughly doubles every 15 months. Metcalfe’s Law states that a network’s value to participants grows exponentially as the network takes on more members. The rapid decline in costs of communication and growing agreement in the technology industry to use computing and communications standards is also driving an explosion of computer use.

2. **What are the components of IT infrastructure?**
   
   Major IT infrastructure components include computer hardware platforms, operating system platforms, enterprise software platforms, networking and telecommunications platforms, database management software, Internet platforms, and consulting services and systems integrators.

3. **What are the current trends in computer hardware platforms?**
   
   Increasingly, computing is taking place on a mobile digital platform. Quantum computing is an emerging technology that could dramatically boost processing power through the ability to be in more than one state at the same time. Consumerization of IT is the business use of information technology that originated in the consumer market. Virtualization organizes computing resources so that their use is not restricted by physical configuration or geographic location. In cloud computing, firms and individuals obtain computing power and software as services over a network, including the Internet, rather than purchasing and installing the hardware and software on their own computers. A
multicore processor is a microprocessor to which two or more processing cores have been attached for enhanced performance. Green computing includes practices and technologies for producing, using, and disposing of information technology hardware to minimize negative impact on the environment.

4. **What are the current trends in computer software platforms?**

Open source software is produced and maintained by a global community of programmers and is often downloadable for free. Linux is a powerful, resilient open source operating system that can run on multiple hardware platforms and is used widely to run Web servers. Java is an operating-system- and hardware-independent programming language that is the leading interactive programming environment for the Web. HTML5 makes it possible to embed images, audio, and video directly into a Web document without add-on programs. Web services are loosely coupled software components based on open Web standards that work with any application software and operating system. They can be used as components of Web-based applications linking the systems of two different organizations or to link disparate systems of a single company. Companies are purchasing their new software applications from outside sources, including software packages, by outsourcing custom application development to an external vendor (that may be offshore), or by renting online software services (SaaS). Mashups combine two different software services to create new software applications and services. Apps are small pieces of software that run on the Internet, on a computer, or on a mobile phone and are generally delivered over the Internet.

5. **What are the challenges of managing IT infrastructure and management solutions?**

Major challenges include dealing with platform and infrastructure change, infrastructure management and governance, and making wise infrastructure investments. Solution guidelines include using a competitive forces model to determine how much to spend on IT infrastructure and where to make strategic infrastructure investments, and establishing the total cost of ownership (TCO) of information technology assets. The total cost of owning technology resources includes not only the original cost of computer hardware and software but also costs for hardware and software upgrades, maintenance, technical support, and training.

---

**Key Terms**

- Android, 183
- Application server, 174
- Apps, 200
- Blade servers, 182
- Chrome OS, 183
- Clients, 173
- Client/server computing, 173
- Cloud computing, 175
- Consumerization of IT, 185
- Extensible Markup Language (XML), 196
- Green computing, 193
- HTML (Hypertext Markup Language), 195
- HTML5, 195
- Hybrid cloud, 193
- iOS, 183
- Java, 194
- Legacy systems, 184
- Linux, 182
- Mainframe, 171
- Mashup, 199
- Minicomputers, 173
- Moore’s Law, 175
- Multicore processor, 193
- Multitiered (N-tier) client/server architecture, 174
- Multitouch, 183
- Nanotechnology, 176
- On-demand computing, 190
- Open source software, 194
- Operating system, 182
- Outsourcing, 198
- Private cloud, 190
- Public cloud, 190
- Quantum computing, 188
- SaaS (Software as a Service), 199
- Scalability, 201
- Service level agreement (SLA), 199
- Server, 173
- Service-oriented architecture (SOA), 196
- Software package, 198
- Storage area network (SAN), 183
- Tablet computers, 185
- Technology standards, 179
- Total cost of ownership (TCO), 202
- Unix, 182
- Virtualization, 188
- Web browser, 195
- Web hosting service, 184
- Web server, 174
- Web services, 195
- Windows, 174
- Windows 8, 183
- Wintel PC, 173
Review Questions

5-1 What is IT infrastructure and what are the stages and drivers of IT infrastructure evolution?
- Define IT infrastructure from both a technology and a services perspective.
- List each of the eras in IT infrastructure evolution and describe its distinguishing characteristics.
- Define and describe the following: Web server, application server, multitiered client/server architecture.
- Describe how network economics, declining communications costs, and technology standards affect IT infrastructure.

5-2 What are the components of IT infrastructure?
- List and describe the components of IT infrastructure that firms need to manage.

5-3 What are the current trends in computer hardware platforms?
- Describe the evolving mobile platform, consumerization of IT, and cloud computing.
- Explain how businesses can benefit from virtualization, green computing, and multicore processors.

5-4 What are the current trends in computer software platforms?
- Define and describe open source software and Linux and explain their business benefits.
- Define Java and HTML5 and explain why they are important.
- Define and describe Web services and the role played by XML.
- Name and describe the three external sources for software.
- Define and describe software mashups and apps.

5-5 What are the challenges of managing IT infrastructure and management solutions?
- Name and describe the management challenges posed by IT infrastructure.
- Explain how using a competitive forces model and calculating the TCO of technology assets help firms make good infrastructure investments.

Discussion Questions

5-6 Why is selecting computer hardware and software for the organization an important management decision? What management, organization, and technology issues should be considered when selecting computer hardware and software?

5-7 Should organizations use software service providers for all their software needs? Why or why not? What management, organization, and technology factors should be considered when making this decision?

5-8 What are the advantages and disadvantages of cloud computing?
Hands-On MIS Projects

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience in developing solutions for managing IT infrastructures and IT outsourcing, using spreadsheet software to evaluate alternative desktop systems, and using Web research to budget for a sales conference.

Management Decision Problems

5-9 The University of Pittsburgh Medical Center (UPMC) relies on information systems to operate 19 hospitals, a network of other care sites, and international and commercial ventures. Demand for additional servers and storage technology was growing by 20 percent each year. UPMC was setting up a separate server for every application, and its servers and other computers were running a number of different operating systems, including several versions of Unix and Windows. UPMC had to manage technologies from many different vendors, including Hewlett-Packard (HP), Sun Microsystems, Microsoft, and IBM. Assess the impact of this situation on business performance. What factors and management decisions must be considered when developing a solution to this problem?

5-10 Qantas Airways, Australia’s leading airline, faces cost pressures from high fuel prices and lower levels of global airline traffic. To remain competitive, the airline must find ways to keep costs low while providing a high level of customer service. Qantas had a 30-year-old data center. Management had to decide whether to replace its IT infrastructure with newer technology or outsource it. What factors should be considered by Qantas management when deciding whether to outsource? If Qantas decides to outsource, list and describe points that should be addressed in a service level agreement.

Improving Decision Making: Using a Spreadsheet to Evaluate Hardware and Software Options

Software skills: Spreadsheet formulas
Business skills: Technology pricing

5-11 In this exercise, you will use spreadsheet software to calculate the cost of desktop systems, printers, and software.

Use the Internet to obtain pricing information on hardware and software for an office of 30 people. You will need to price 30 PC desktop systems (monitors, computers, and keyboards) manufactured by Lenovo, Dell, and HP. (For the purposes of this exercise, ignore the fact that desktop systems usually come with preloaded software packages.) Also obtain pricing on 15 desktop printers manufactured by HP, Canon, and Dell. Each desktop system must satisfy the minimum specifications shown in tables which you can find in MyMISLab.

Also obtain pricing on 30 copies of the most recent versions of Microsoft Office and Apache OpenOffice (formerly Oracle Open Office), and on 30 copies of Microsoft Windows 7 Professional or Windows 8 Pro. Each desktop productivity package should contain programs for word processing, spreadsheets, database, and presentations. Prepare a spreadsheet showing your research results for the software and the desktop system, printer, and software combination offering the best performance and pricing per worker. Because every two workers share one printer (15 printers/30 systems), your calculations should assume only half a printer cost per worker.

Improving Decision Making: Using Web Research to Budget for a Sales Conference

Software skills: Internet-based software
Business skills: Researching transportation and lodging costs

5-12 The Foremost Composite Materials Company is planning a two-day sales conference for October 19–20, starting with a reception on the evening of October 18. The conference consists of all-day meetings that the entire sales force, numbering 120 sales representatives and their 16 managers, must attend. Each sales representative requires his or her own room, and the company needs two common
meeting rooms, one large enough to hold the entire sales force plus a few visitors (200) and the other able to hold half the force. Management has set a budget of $175,000 for the representatives’ room rentals. The company would like to hold the conference in either Miami or Marco Island, Florida, at a Hilton- or Marriott-owned hotel.

Use the Hilton and Marriott Web sites to select a hotel in whichever of these cities that would enable the company to hold its sales conference within its budget and meet its sales conference requirements. Then locate flights arriving the afternoon prior to the conference. Your attendees will be coming from Los Angeles (54), San Francisco (32), Seattle (22), Chicago (19), and Pittsburgh (14). Determine costs of each airline ticket from these cities. When you are finished, create a budget for the conference. The budget will include the cost of each airline ticket, the room cost, and $70 per attendee per day for food.

Collaboration and Teamwork Project

5-13 In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Docs, Google Sites, Google+, or other open-source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.
The Pleasures and Pitfalls of BYOD

CASE STUDY

Just about everyone who has a smartphone wants to be able to bring it to work and use it on the job. And why not? Employees using their own smartphones would allow companies to enjoy all of the same benefits of a mobile workforce without spending their own money to purchase these devices. Smaller companies are able to go mobile without making large investments in devices and mobile services. One IBM-sponsored study by Forrester Consulting found that a BYOD program using mobile enterprise services from IBM achieved a 108 percent return on investment and payback within one month. "Anywhere/anytime" access to computing tools increased workplace productivity and raised effective employee work time by 45–60 minutes per week. According to Gartner Inc., by 2017, 50 percent of employers will require employees to supply their own mobile devices for the workplace. BYOD is becoming the "new normal."

But...wait a minute. Nearly three out of five enterprises believe that BYOD represents a growing problem for their organizations, according to a survey of 162 enterprises conducted by Osterman Research on behalf of Dell Inc. Although BYOD can improve employee job satisfaction and productivity, it also can cause a number of problems if not managed properly: support for personally owned devices is more difficult than it is for company-supplied devices, the cost of managing mobile devices can increase, and protecting corporate data and networks becomes more difficult. Research conducted by the Aberdeen Group found that on average, an enterprise with 1,000 mobile devices spends an extra $170,000 per year when it allows BYOD. So it's not that simple.

BYOD requires a significant portion of corporate IT resources dedicated to managing and maintaining a large number of devices within the organization. In the past, companies tried to limit business smartphone use to a single platform. This made it easier to keep track of each mobile device and to roll out software upgrades or fixes, because all employees were using the same devices, or at the very least, the same operating system. The most popular employer-issued smartphone used to be Research in Motion's BlackBerry, because it was considered the "most secure" mobile platform available. (BlackBerry mobile devices access corporate e-mail and data using a proprietary software and networking platform that is company-controlled and protected from outsiders.)

Today, the mobile digital landscape is much more complicated, with a variety of devices and operating systems on the market that do not have well-developed tools for administration and security. Android has over 79 percent of the worldwide smartphone market, but it is more difficult to use for corporate work than Apple mobile devices using the iOS operating system. iOS is considered a closed system and runs only on a limited number of different Apple mobile devices. In contrast, Android’s fragmentation makes it more difficult and costly for corporate IT to manage. As of July 2013, there were at least 11,868 different Android-based devices were available from more than 1,700 different brands, according to a report by OpenSignal, which researches wireless networks and devices. Android’s huge consumer market share attracts many hackers. Android is also vulnerable because it has an open-source architecture and comes in multiple versions.

If employees are allowed to work with more than one type of mobile device and operating system, companies need an effective way to keep track of all the devices employees are using. To access company information, the company’s networks must be configured to receive connections from that device. When employees make changes to their personal phone, such as switching cellular carriers, changing their phone number, or buying a new mobile device altogether, companies will need to quickly and flexibly ensure that their employees are still able to remain productive. Firms need an efficient inventory management system that keeps track of which devices employees are using, where the device is located, whether it is being used, and what software it is equipped with. For unprepared companies, keeping track of who gets access to what data could be a nightmare.

With the large variety of phones and operating systems available, providing adequate technical support for every employee could be difficult. When employees are not able to access critical data or encounter other problems with their mobile devices, they will need assistance from the information systems department. Companies that rely on desktop computers tend to have many of the same computers
with the same specs and operating systems, making tech support that much easier. Mobility introduces a new layer of variety and complexity to tech support that companies need to be prepared to handle.

There are significant concerns with securing company information accessed with mobile devices. If a device is stolen or compromised, companies need ways to ensure that sensitive or confidential information isn’t freely available to anyone. Mobility puts assets and data at greater risk than if they were only located within company walls and on company machines. Companies often use technologies that allow them to wipe data from devices remotely, or encrypt data so that if it is stolen, it cannot be used. You’ll find a detailed discussion of mobile security issues in Chapter 8.

IBM’s CIO Jeannette Horan believes that BYOD may cause as many problems as it solves. BYOD was not saving IBM any money and had actually created new challenges for the IT department because employees’ devices are full of software that IBM doesn’t control. IBM provides secure BlackBerrys for about 40,000 of its 400,000 workers while allowing 80,000 more employees to use their own smartphones or tablets to access IBM networks.

The IBM IT department found it had no grasp of which apps and services employees were using on their personal devices, and employees themselves were “blissfully unaware” of the security risks posed by popular apps. IBM decided to ban the use of such popular services as the Dropbox cloud-based cyberlocker, fearing that employees would put IBM-sensitive information in their personal Dropbox accounts, forward internal email to public Web mail services, or use their smartphones as mobile Wi-Fi hotspots. According to research by the International Data Company (IDC), 20 percent of corporate employees use personal cloud storage services admitted to using them to store enterprise data, so this is becoming a serious problem.

IBM will not allow an employee to access its corporate networks with his or her personal device unless it secures the device. The IT department configures the device so that its memory can be erased remotely if it is lost or stolen. The IT group also disables public file-transfer programs like Apple’s iCloud; instead, employees use an IBM-hosted version called MyMobileHub. IBM even turns off Siri, the voice-activated personal assistant, on employees’ iPhones because the spoken queries are uploaded to Apple servers.

Each employee’s device is treated differently, depending on the model and the job responsibilities of the person using it. Some people are only allowed to receive IBM e-mail, calendars, and contacts on their portable devices, while others can access internal IBM applications and files (see Chapter 8). IBM equips the mobile devices of the latter category of employees with additional software, such as programs that encrypt information as it travels to and from corporate networks.

One company that has successfully implemented BYOD is Intel Corporation, the giant semiconductor company. About 70 percent of the 39,000 devices registered on its network are personal devices. Intel approached BYOD in a positive manner, trying to find ways to make it work rather than to defeat it. Diane Bryant, then Intel’s CIO, didn’t want to be dependent on a single mobile vendor or device.

Intel hammered out a BYOD strategy and created an end-user service-level agreement that clarified that end users were voluntarily using BYOD rather than being mandated by Intel. The company developed different policies, rules, and access limits for each type of device—smartphone, tablet, or laptop—with multiple levels of controls in place. Intel maintains a list of approved devices. If a device does not meet its requirements, it is blocked from the network. Intel’s BYOD program today offers 40 proprietary applications, including travel tools to help schedule a flight and conference room finders. The company has an internal “app store” and uses a variety of software and security tools, including mobile device management (MDM) software and mobile app management (MAM) software.

Intel’s goal for BYOD is not to save money but to make employees happier and more productive. Employees like being able to use their own device and apps alongside specialized Intel apps. On average, Intel workers report that bringing their own devices saves them about 57 minutes per day, which amounts to 5 million hours annually company-wide.

Canadian Tire decided not to allow BYOD at all and issued new BlackBarry Q10 and Z10 smartphones to its 3,000 corporate employees. (Canadian Tire is one of Canada’s largest companies, with an online e-commerce store and 1,200 retail outlets selling automotive, sports, leisure, home products, and apparel; petroleum outlets; and financial services.) The company felt that for its purposes, the bring-your-own-device model was not sufficiently secure. Canadian Tire’s chief technology officer (CTO) Eugene Roman worries that an email could send a virus into the company’s core infrastructure. At present, Canadian Tire’s management thinks BYOD...
is interesting but is not yet ready for the company's mainstream business applications.

In order to successfully deploy mobile devices, companies need to carefully examine their business processes and determine whether or not mobility makes sense for them. Not every firm will benefit from mobility to the same degree. Without a clear idea of how exactly mobile devices fit into the long term plans for the firm, companies will end up wasting their money on unnecessary devices and programs.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

5-14 What are the advantages and disadvantages of allowing employees to use their personal smartphones for work?

5-15 What management, organization, and technology factors should be addressed when deciding whether to allow employees to use their personal smartphones for work?

5-16 Compare the BYOD experiences of IBM and Intel. Why did BYOD at Intel work so well?

5-17 Allowing employees use their own smartphones for work will save the company money. Do you agree? Why or why not?
Chapter 5 References


Evangelista, Michelle. "The Total Impact of IBM Managed Mobility for BYOD." IBM (2013).


"Internet Users." Internetlivestats.com (April 1, 2014).


LEARNING OBJECTIVES
After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. What are the problems of managing data resources in a traditional file environment?
2. What are the major capabilities of database management systems (DBMS) and why is a relational DBMS so powerful?
3. What are the principal tools and technologies for accessing information from databases to improve business performance and decision making?
4. Why are information policy, data administration, and data quality assurance essential for managing the firm’s data resources?

MyMISLab™
Visit mymislab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.

CHAPTER CASES
Better Data Management Helps the Toronto Globe and Mail Reach Its Customers
Driving ARI Fleet Management with Real-Time Analytics
American Water Keeps Data Flowing
Does Big Data Bring Big Rewards?

VIDEO CASES
Dubuque Uses Cloud Computing and Sensors to Build a Smarter City
Data Warehousing at REI: Understanding the Customer
Maruti Suzuki Business Intelligence and Enterprise Databases
Have you ever received a new subscription offer from a newspaper or magazine to which you already subscribed? In addition to being an annoyance, sending a superfluous offer to customers increases marketing costs. So why is this happening? The answer is probably because of poor data management. The newspaper most likely was unable to match its existing subscriber list, which it maintained in one place, with another file containing its list of marketing prospects.

The Globe and Mail, based in Toronto, Canada, was one of those publications that had these problems. In print for 167 years, it is Canada’s largest newspaper, with a cumulative six-day readership of nearly 3.3 million. The paper has a very ambitious marketing program, viewing every Canadian household that does not already subscribe as a prospect. But it has had trouble housing and managing the data on these prospects.

Running a major newspaper requires managing huge amounts of data, including circulation data, advertising revenue data, marketing prospect and “do not contact” data, and data on logistics and deliveries. Add to that the data required to run any business, including finance and human resources data.

For many years The Globe and Mail housed much of its data in a mainframe system where the data were not easy to access and analyze. If users needed any information, they had to extract the data from the mainframe and bring it to one of a number of local databases for analysis, including those maintained in Microsoft Access, Foxbase Pro, and Microsoft Excel. This practice created numerous pockets of data maintained in isolated databases for specific purposes but no central repository where the most up-to-date data could be
accessed from a single place. With data scattered in so many different systems throughout the company, it was very difficult to cross-reference subscribers with prospects when developing the mailing list for a marketing campaign. There were also security issues: The Globe and Mail collects and stores customer payment information, and housing this confidential data in multiple places makes it more difficult to ensure that proper data security controls are in place.

In 2002, the newspaper began addressing these problems by implementing a SAP enterprise system with a SAP NetWeaver BW data warehouse that would contain all of the company's data from its various data sources in a single location where the data could be easily accessed and analyzed by business users.

The first data to populate the data warehouse was advertising sales data, which is a major source of revenue. In 2007, The Globe and Mail added circulation data to the warehouse, including delivery data details such as how much time is left on a customer's subscription and data on marketing prospects from third-party sources. Data on prospects were added to the warehouse as well.

With all these data in a single place, the paper can easily match prospect and customer data to avoid targeting existing customers with subscription promotions. It can also match the data to "do not contact" and delivery area data to determine if a newspaper can be delivered or whether a customer should be targeted with a promotion for a digital subscription.

Despite the obvious benefits of the new data warehouse, not all of The Globe and Mail's business users immediately came on board. People who were used to extracting data from the mainframe system and manipulating it in their own local databases or file continued to do the same thing after the data warehouse went live. They did not understand the concept of a data warehouse or the need to work towards enterprise-wide data management. The Globe and Mail's management decided to tackle this new problem by educating its users, especially its marketing professionals, with the value of having all the organization's data in a data warehouse and the tools available for accessing and analyzing these data.

The Globe and Mail's new data analysis capabilities produced savings from efficiencies and streamlined processes that paid for the investment in one year. Marketing campaigns that previously took two weeks to complete now only take one day. The newspaper can determine its saturation rates in a given area to guide its marketing plans. And there are fewer complaints from subscribers and potential subscribers about being contacted unnecessarily.

To capitalize further on data management and analytics, The Globe and Mail turned to the cloud. A key business goal for the company was to beef up online content and increase the paper's digital subscriber base. The Globe and Mail devoted more resources to digital online content, with different subscription rates for online-only customers and print customers. To aggressively court digital subscribers, The Globe and Mail had to mine its clickstream data logging user actions on the Web to target potential digital subscribers based not only on their specific interests but also their interests on a particular day. The volume of data was too large to be handled by the company's conventional Oracle database. The solution was to use SAP HANA ONE in-memory computing software running on the Amazon Web Services cloud computing platform, which accelerates data analysis and processing by storing data in the computer's main memory (RAM) rather than on external storage devices. This cloud solution lets The Globe and Mail pay for only what capabilities it uses on an hourly basis.

The experience of The Globe and Mail illustrates the importance of data management. Business performance depends on what a firm can or cannot do with its data. The Globe and Mail was a large and thriving business, but both operational efficiency and management decision making were hampered by fragmented data stored in multiple systems that were difficult to access. How businesses store, organize, and manage their data has an enormous impact on organizational effectiveness.

The chapter-opening diagram calls attention to important points raised by this case and this chapter. The Globe and Mail's business users were maintaining their own local databases because the company's data were so difficult to access in the newspaper's traditional mainframe system. Marketing campaigns took much longer than necessary because the required data took so long to assemble. The solution was to consolidate organizational data in an enterprise-wide data warehouse that provided a single source of data for reporting and analysis. The newspaper had to reorganize its data into a standard company-wide format, establish rules, responsibilities, and procedures for accessing and using the data, provide tools for making the data accessible to users for querying and reporting, and educate its users about the benefits of the warehouse.

The data warehouse boosted efficiency by making the Globe's data easier to locate and assemble for reporting. The data warehouse integrated company data from all of its disparate sources into a single comprehensive database that could be queried directly. The data were reconciled to prevent errors such as contacting existing subscribers with subscription offers. The solution improved customer service while reducing costs. The Globe and Mail increased its ability to quickly analyze vast quantities of data by using SAP HANA running on Amazon's cloud service.

Here are some questions to think about: What was the business impact of The Globe and Mail's data management problems? What work had to be done by both business and technical staff to make sure that the data warehouse produced the results envisioned by management?
6.1 What are the Problems of Managing Data Resources in a Traditional File Environment?

An effective information system provides users with accurate, timely, and relevant information. Accurate information is free of errors. Information is timely when it is available to decision makers when it is needed. Information is relevant when it is useful and appropriate for the types of work and decisions that require it.

You might be surprised to learn that many businesses don’t have timely, accurate, or relevant information because the data in their information systems have been poorly organized and maintained. That's why data management is so essential. To understand the problem, let's look at how information systems arrange data in computer files and traditional methods of file management.

FILE ORGANIZATION TERMS AND CONCEPTS

A computer system organizes data in a hierarchy that starts with bits and bytes and progresses to fields, records, files, and databases (see Figure 6.1). A **bit** represents the smallest unit of data a computer can handle. A group of bits, called a **byte**, represents a single character, which can be a letter, a number, or another symbol. A grouping of characters into a word, a group of words, or a complete number (such as a person's name or age) is called a **field**. A group of related fields, such as the student's name, the course taken, the date, and the grade, comprises a **record**; a group of records of the same type is called a **file**.

For example, the records in Figure 6.1 could constitute a student course file. A group of related files makes up a database. The student course file illustrated in Figure 6.1 could be grouped with files on students’ personal histories and financial backgrounds to create a student database.

A record describes an entity. An **entity** is a person, place, thing, or event on which we store and maintain information. Each characteristic or quality describing a particular entity is called an **attribute**. For example, Student_ID, Course, Date, and Grade are attributes of the entity COURSE. The specific values that these attributes can have are found in the fields of the record describing the entity COURSE.

PROBLEMS WITH THE TRADITIONAL FILE ENVIRONMENT

In most organizations, systems tended to grow independently without a company-wide plan. Accounting, finance, manufacturing, human resources, and sales and marketing all developed their own systems and data files. Figure 6.2 illustrates the traditional approach to information processing.

Each application, of course, required its own files and its own computer program to operate. For example, the human resources functional area might have a personnel master file, a payroll file, a medical insurance file, a pension file, a mailing list file, and so forth until tens, perhaps hundreds, of files and programs existed. In the company as a whole, this process led to multiple master files created, maintained, and operated by separate divisions or departments. As this process goes on for 5 or 10 years, the organization is saddled with hundreds of programs and applications that are very difficult to maintain.
and manage. The resulting problems are data redundancy and inconsistency, program-data dependence, inflexibility, poor data security, and an inability to share data among applications.

**Data Redundancy and Inconsistency**

**Data redundancy** is the presence of duplicate data in multiple data files so that the same data are stored in more than one place or location. Data redundancy occurs when different groups in an organization independently collect the same piece of data and store it independently of each other. Data redundancy wastes storage resources and also leads to **data inconsistency**, where the same attribute may have different values. For example, in instances of the entity COURSE illustrated in Figure 6.1, the Date may be updated in some systems but not in others. The same attribute, Student_ID, may also have different names in different systems throughout the organization. Some systems might use Student_ID and others might use ID, for example.

Additional confusion might result from using different coding systems to represent values for an attribute. For instance, the sales, inventory, and
manufacturing systems of a clothing retailer might use different codes to represent clothing size. One system might represent clothing size as “extra large,” whereas another might use the code “XL” for the same purpose. The resulting confusion would make it difficult for companies to create customer relationship management, supply chain management, or enterprise systems that integrate data from different sources.

**Program-Data Dependence**

*Program-data dependence* refers to the coupling of data stored in files and the specific programs required to update and maintain those files such that changes in programs require changes to the data. Every traditional computer program has to describe the location and nature of the data with which it works. In a traditional file environment, any change in a software program could require a change in the data accessed by that program. One program might be modified from a five-digit to a nine-digit zip code. If the original data file were changed from five-digit to nine-digit zip codes, then other programs that required the five-digit zip code would no longer work properly. Such changes could cost millions of dollars to implement properly.

**Lack of Flexibility**

A traditional file system can deliver routine scheduled reports after extensive programming efforts, but it cannot deliver ad hoc reports or respond to unanticipated information requirements in a timely fashion. The information required by ad hoc requests is somewhere in the system but may be too expensive to
retrieve. Several programmers might have to work for weeks to put together the
required data items in a new file.

**Poor Security**
Because there is little control or management of data, access to and dissemination of information may be out of control. Management may have no way of knowing who is accessing or even making changes to the organization's data.

**Lack of Data Sharing and Availability**
Because pieces of information in different files and different parts of the organization cannot be related to one another, it is virtually impossible for information to be shared or accessed in a timely manner. Information cannot flow freely across different functional areas or different parts of the organization. If users find different values of the same piece of information in two different systems, they may not want to use these systems because they cannot trust the accuracy of their data.

6.2 **WHAT ARE THE MAJOR CAPABILITIES OF DATABASE MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS (DBMS) AND WHY IS A RELATIONAL DBMS SO POWERFUL?**

Database technology cuts through many of the problems of traditional file organization. A more rigorous definition of a database is a collection of data organized to serve many applications efficiently by centralizing the data and controlling redundant data. Rather than storing data in separate files for each application, data appears to users as being stored in only one location. A single database services multiple applications. For example, instead of a corporation storing employee data in separate information systems and separate files for personnel, payroll, and benefits, the corporation could create a single common human resources database.

**DATABASE MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS**

A database management system (!DBMS!) is software that permits an organization to centralize data, manage them efficiently, and provide access to the stored data by application programs. The DBMS acts as an interface between application programs and the physical data files. When the application program calls for a data item, such as gross pay, the DBMS finds this item in the database and presents it to the application program. Using traditional data files, the programmer would have to specify the size and format of each data element used in the program and then tell the computer where they were located.

The DBMS relieves the programmer or end user from the task of understanding where and how the data are actually stored by separating the logical and physical views of the data. The logical view presents data as they would be perceived by end users or business specialists, whereas the physical view shows how data are actually organized and structured on physical storage media.

The database management software makes the physical database available for different logical views required by users. For example, for the human resources database illustrated in Figure 6.3, a benefits specialist might require a view consisting of the employee's name, social security number, and health
A single human resources database provides many different views of data, depending on the information requirements of the user. Illustrated here are two possible views, one of interest to a benefits specialist and one of interest to a member of the company's payroll department.

**How a DBMS Solves the Problems of the Traditional File Environment**

A DBMS reduces data redundancy and inconsistency by minimizing isolated files in which the same data are repeated. The DBMS may not enable the organization to eliminate data redundancy entirely, but it can help control redundancy. Even if the organization maintains some redundant data, using a DBMS eliminates data inconsistency because the DBMS can help the organization ensure that every occurrence of redundant data has the same values. The DBMS uncouples programs and data, enabling data to stand on their own. The description of the data used by the program does not have to be specified in detail each time a different program is written. Access and availability of information will be increased and program development and maintenance costs reduced because users and programmers can perform ad hoc queries of the database for many simple applications without having to write complicated programs. The DBMS enables the organization to centrally manage data, their use, and security. Data-sharing throughout the organization is easier because the data are presented to users as being in a single location rather than fragmented in many different systems and files.

**Relational DBMS**

Contemporary DBMS use different database models to keep track of entities, attributes, and relationships. The most popular type of DBMS today for PCs as well as for larger computers and mainframes is the relational DBMS. Relational databases represent data as two-dimensional tables (called relations). Tables may be referred to as files. Each table contains data on an entity and its attributes. Microsoft Access is a relational DBMS for desktop systems, whereas
DB2, Oracle Database, and Microsoft SQL Server are relational DBMS for large mainframes and midrange computers. MySQL is a popular open source DBMS.

Let’s look at how a relational database organizes data about suppliers and parts (see Figure 6.4). The database has a separate table for the entity SUPPLIER and a table for the entity PART. Each table consists of a grid of columns and rows of data. Each individual element of data for each entity is stored as a separate field, and each field represents an attribute for that entity. Fields in a relational database are also called columns. For the entity SUPPLIER, the supplier identification number, name, street, city, state, and zip code are stored as separate fields within the SUPPLIER table and each field represents an attribute for the entity SUPPLIER.

The actual information about a single supplier that resides in a table is called a row. Rows are commonly referred to as records, or in very technical terms, as tuples. Data for the entity PART have their own separate table.

The field for Supplier_Number in the SUPPLIER table uniquely identifies each record so that the record can be retrieved, updated, or sorted. It is called a key field. Each table in a relational database has one field that is designated as its primary key. This key field is the unique identifier for all the information

**FIGURE 6.4 RELATIONAL DATABASE TABLES**

A relational database organizes data in the form of two-dimensional tables. Illustrated here are tables for the entities SUPPLIER and PART showing how they represent each entity and its attributes. Supplier_Number is a primary key for the SUPPLIER table and a foreign key for the PART table.
in any row of the table and this primary key cannot be duplicated. Supplier_Number is the primary key for the SUPPLIER table and Part_Number is the primary key for the PART table. Note that Supplier_Number appears in both the SUPPLIER and PART tables. In the SUPPLIER table, Supplier_Number is the primary key. When the field Supplier_Number appears in the PART table, it is called a foreign key and is essentially a lookup field to look up data about the supplier of a specific part.

**Operations of a Relational DBMS**

Relational database tables can be combined easily to deliver data required by users, provided that any two tables share a common data element. Suppose we wanted to find in this database the names of suppliers who could provide us with part number 137 or part number 150. We would need information from two tables: the SUPPLIER table and the PART table. Note that these two files have a shared data element: Supplier_Number.

In a relational database, three basic operations, as shown in Figure 6.5, are used to develop useful sets of data: select, join, and project. The select operation creates a subset consisting of all records in the file that meet stated criteria. Select creates, in other words, a subset of rows that meet certain criteria. In our example, we want to select records (rows) from the PART table where the Part_Number equals 137 or 150. The join operation combines relational tables to provide the user with more information than is available in individual tables. In our example, we want to join the now-shortened PART table (only parts 137 or 150 will be presented) and the SUPPLIER table into a single new table.

The project operation creates a subset consisting of columns in a table, permitting the user to create new tables that contain only the information required. In our example, we want to extract from the new table only the following columns: Part_Number, Part_Name, Supplier_Number, and Supplier_Name.

**Non-Relational Databases and Databases in the Cloud**

For over 30 years, relational database technology has been the gold standard. Cloud computing, unprecedented data volumes, massive workloads for Web services, and the need to store new types of data require database alternatives to the traditional relational model of organizing data in the form of tables, columns, and rows. Companies are turning to "NoSQL" non-relational database technologies for this purpose. **Non-relational database management systems** use a more flexible data model and are designed for managing large data sets across many distributed machines and for easily scaling up or down. They are useful for accelerating simple queries against large volumes of structured and unstructured data, including Web, social media, graphics, and other forms of data that are difficult to analyze with traditional SQL-based tools.

There are several different kinds of NoSQL databases, each with its own technical features and behavior. Oracle NoSQL Database is one example, as is Amazon's SimpleDB, one of the Amazon Web Services that run in the cloud. SimpleDB provides a simple Web services interface to create and store multiple data sets, query data easily, and return the results. There is no need to pre-define a formal database structure or change that definition if new data are added later. For example, MetLife decided to employ the MongoDB open source NoSQL database to quickly integrate disparate data and deliver a consolidated view of the customer. MetLife's database brings together data from more than 70 separate administrative systems, claims systems and other data sources, including semi-structured and unstructured data, such as images of health records and death certificates. The NoSQL database is able to ingest
The select, join, and project operations enable data from two different tables to be combined and only selected attributes to be displayed.
structured, semi-structured and unstructured information without requiring tedious, expensive and time-consuming database-mapping (Henschen, 2013).

Amazon and other cloud computing vendors provide relational database services as well. Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) offers MySQL, SQL Server, or Oracle Database as database engines. Pricing is based on usage. Oracle has its own database cloud service using its relational Oracle Database and Microsoft SQL Azure Database is a cloud-based relational database service based on Microsoft’s SQL Server DBMS. Cloud-based data management services have special appeal for Web-focused start-ups or small to medium-sized businesses seeking database capabilities at a lower price than in-house database products.

In addition to public cloud-based data management services, companies now have the option of using databases in private clouds. For example, Sabre Holdings, the world’s largest software as a service (SaaS) provider for the aviation industry, has a private database cloud that supports more than 100 projects and 700 users. A consolidated database spanning a pool of standardized servers running Oracle Database provides database services for multiple applications.

**CAPABILITIES OF DATABASE MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS**

A DBMS includes capabilities and tools for organizing, managing, and accessing the data in the database. The most important are its data definition language, data dictionary, and data manipulation language.

DBMS have a data definition capability to specify the structure of the content of the database. It would be used to create database tables and to define the characteristics of the fields in each table. This information about the database would be documented in a data dictionary. A data dictionary is an automated or manual file that stores definitions of data elements and their characteristics.

Microsoft Access has a rudimentary data dictionary capability that displays information about the name, description, size, type, format, and other properties of each field in a table (see Figure 6.6). Data dictionaries for large corporate databases may capture additional information, such as usage, ownership (who in the organization is responsible for maintaining the data), authorization, security, and the individuals, business functions, programs, and reports that use each data element.

**Querying and Reporting**

DBMS includes tools for accessing and manipulating information in databases. Most DBMS have a specialized language called a data manipulation language that is used to add, change, delete, and retrieve the data in the database. This language contains commands that permit end users and programming specialists to extract data from the database to satisfy information requests and develop applications. The most prominent data manipulation language today is Structured Query Language, or SQL. Figure 6.7 illustrates the SQL query that would produce the new resultant table in Figure 6.5. You can find out more about how to perform SQL queries in our Learning Tracks for this chapter.

Users of DBMS for large and midrange computers, such as DB2, Oracle, or SQL Server, would employ SQL to retrieve information they needed from the database. Microsoft Access also uses SQL, but it provides its own set of user-friendly tools for querying databases and for organizing data from databases into more polished reports.
In Microsoft Access, you will find features that enable users to create queries by identifying the tables and fields they want and the results, and then selecting the rows from the database that meet particular criteria. These actions in turn are translated into SQL commands. Figure 6.8 illustrates how the same query as the SQL query to select parts and suppliers would be constructed using the Microsoft query-building tools.

Microsoft Access and other DBMS include capabilities for report generation so that the data of interest can be displayed in a more structured and polished format than would be possible just by querying. Crystal Reports is a popular report generator for large corporate DBMS, although it can also be used with Access. Access also has capabilities for developing desktop system applications. These include tools for creating data entry screens, reports, and developing the logic for processing transactions.

DESIGNING DATABASES

To create a database, you must understand the relationships among the data, the type of data that will be maintained in the database, how the data will be...
used, and how the organization will need to change to manage data from a company-wide perspective. The database requires both a conceptual design and a physical design. The conceptual, or logical, design of a database is an abstract model of the database from a business perspective, whereas the physical design shows how the database is actually arranged on direct-access storage devices.

**Normalization and Entity-Relationship Diagrams**

The conceptual database design describes how the data elements in the database are to be grouped. The design process identifies relationships among data elements and the most efficient way of grouping data elements together to meet business information requirements. The process also identifies redundant data elements and the groupings of data elements required for specific application programs. Groups of data are organized, refined, and streamlined until an overall logical view of the relationships among all the data in the database emerges.

To use a relational database model effectively, complex groupings of data must be streamlined to minimize redundant data elements and awkward many-to-many relationships. The process of creating small, stable, yet flexible and adaptive data structures from complex groups of data is called **normalization**. Figures 6.9 and 6.10 illustrate this process.

In the particular business modeled here, an order can have more than one part but each part is provided by only one supplier. If we build a relation called ORDER with all the fields included here, we would have to repeat the name

---

**FIGURE 6.9 AN UNNORMALIZED RELATION FOR ORDER**

An unnormalized relation contains repeating groups. For example, there can be many parts and suppliers for each order. There is only a one-to-one correspondence between Order_Number and Order_Date.
and address of the supplier for every part on the order, even though the order
is for parts from a single supplier. This relationship contains what are called
repeating data groups because there can be many parts on a single order to
given supplier. A more efficient way to arrange the data is to break down
ORDER into smaller relations, each of which describes a single entity. If we
go step by step and normalize the relation ORDER, we emerge with the rela-
tions illustrated in Figure 6.10. You can find out more about normalization,
entity-relationship diagramming, and database design in the Learning Tracks
for this chapter.

Relational database systems try to enforce referential integrity
rules to
ensure that relationships between coupled tables remain consistent. When
one table has a foreign key that points to another table, you may not add a
record to the table with the foreign key unless there is a corresponding record
in the linked table. In the database we examined earlier in this chapter, the
foreign key Supplier_Number links the PART table to the SUPPLIER table.
We may not add a new record to the PART table for a part with Supplier_
Number 8266 unless there is a corresponding record in the SUPPLIER table.
We must also delete the corresponding record in the PART table if we delete the record in the SUPPLIER table for Supplier_
Number 8266. In other words, we shouldn’t have parts from nonexistent
suppliers!

Database designers document their data model with an entity-relationship
diagram, illustrated in Figure 6.11. This diagram illustrates the relationship
between the entities SUPPLIER, PART, LINE_ITEM, and ORDER. The boxes

---

**Figure 6.10 Normalized Tables Created from ORDER**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PART</th>
<th>LINE ITEM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Part_Number</td>
<td>Order_Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part_Name</td>
<td>Part_Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit_Price</td>
<td>Part_Quantity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplier_Number</td>
<td>Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Key</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After normalization, the original relation ORDER has been broken down into four smaller relations. The relation ORDER is left with only two attributes and the relation LINE_ITEM has a combined, or concatenated, key consisting of Order_Number and Part_Number.

**Figure 6.11 An Entity-Relationship Diagram**

This diagram shows the relationships between the entities SUPPLIER, PART, LINE_ITEM, and ORDER that might be used to model the database in Figure 6.10.
represent entities. The lines connecting the boxes represent relationships. A line connecting two entities that ends in two short marks designates a one-to-one relationship. A line connecting two entities that ends with a crow's foot topped by a short mark indicates a one-to-many relationship. Figure 6.11 shows that one ORDER can contain many LINE_ITEMS. (A PART can be ordered many times and appear many times as a line item in a single order.) Each PART can have only one SUPPLIER, but many PARTs can be provided by the same SUPPLIER.

It can't be emphasized enough: If the business doesn't get its data model right, the system won't be able to serve the business well. The company's systems will not be as effective as they could be because they'll have to work with data that may be inaccurate, incomplete, or difficult to retrieve. Understanding the organization's data and how they should be represented in a database is perhaps the most important lesson you can learn from this course.

For example, Famous Footwear, a shoe store chain with more than 800 locations in 49 states, could not achieve its goal of having "the right style of shoe in the right store for sale at the right price" because its database was not properly designed for rapidly adjusting store inventory. The company had an Oracle relational database running on a midrange computer, but the database was designed primarily for producing standard reports for management rather than for reacting to marketplace changes. Management could not obtain precise data on specific items in inventory in each of its stores. The company had to work around this problem by building a new database where the sales and inventory data could be better organized for analysis and inventory management.

6.3 **WHAT ARE THE PRINCIPAL TOOLS AND TECHNOLOGIES FOR ACCESSING INFORMATION FROM DATABASES TO IMPROVE BUSINESS PERFORMANCE AND DECISION MAKING?**

Businesses use their databases to keep track of basic transactions, such as paying suppliers, processing orders, keeping track of customers, and paying employees. But they also need databases to provide information that will help the company run the business more efficiently, and help managers and employees make better decisions. If a company wants to know which product is the most popular or who is its most profitable customer, the answer lies in the data.

**THE CHALLENGE OF BIG DATA**

Most data collected by organizations used to be transaction data that could easily fit into rows and columns of relational database management systems. We are now witnessing an explosion of data from Web traffic, e-mail messages, and social media content (tweets, status messages), as well as machine-generated data from sensors (used in smart meters, manufacturing sensors, and electrical meters) or from electronic trading systems. These data may be unstructured or semi-structured and thus not suitable for relational database products that organize data in the form of columns and rows. We now use the term **big data** to describe these datasets with volumes so huge that they are beyond the ability of typical DBMS to capture, store, and analyze.

Big data doesn't refer to any specific quantity, but usually refers to data in the petabyte and exabyte range—in other words, billions to trillions of records,
all from different sources. Big data are produced in much larger quantities and much more rapidly than traditional data. For example, a single jet engine is capable of generating 10 terabytes of data in just 30 minutes, and there are more than 25,000 airline flights each day. Even though “tweets” are limited to 140 characters each, Twitter generates over 8 terabytes of data daily. According to the International Data Center (IDC) technology research firm, data are more than doubling every two years, so the amount of data available to organizations is skyrocketing.

Businesses are interested in big data because they can reveal more patterns and interesting anomalies than smaller data sets, with the potential to provide new insights into customer behavior, weather patterns, financial market activity, or other phenomena. However, to derive business value from these data, organizations need new technologies and tools capable of managing and analyzing non-traditional data along with their traditional enterprise data.

**BUSINESS INTELLIGENCE INFRASTRUCTURE**

Suppose you wanted concise, reliable information about current operations, trends, and changes across the entire company. If you worked in a large company, the data you need might have to be pieced together from separate systems, such as sales, manufacturing, and accounting, and even from external sources, such as demographic or competitor data. Increasingly, you might need to use big data. A contemporary infrastructure for business intelligence has an array of tools for obtaining useful information from all the different types of data used by businesses today, including semi-structured and unstructured big data in vast quantities. These capabilities include data warehouses and data marts, Hadoop, in-memory computing, and analytical platforms. Some of these capabilities are available as cloud services.

**Data Warehouses and Data Marts**

The traditional tool for analyzing corporate data for the past two decades has been the data warehouse. A **data warehouse** is a database that stores current and historical data of potential interest to decision makers throughout the company. The data originate in many core operational transaction systems, such as systems for sales, customer accounts, and manufacturing, and may include data from Web site transactions. The data warehouse extracts current and historical data from multiple operational systems inside the organization. These data are combined with data from external sources and transformed by correcting inaccurate and incomplete data and restructuring the data for management reporting and analysis before being loaded into the data warehouse.

The data warehouse makes the data available for anyone to access as needed, but it cannot be altered. A data warehouse system also provides a range of ad hoc and standardized query tools, analytical tools, and graphical reporting facilities. Companies often build enterprise-wide data warehouses, where a central data warehouse serves the entire organization, or they create smaller, decentralized warehouses called data marts. A **data mart** is a subset of a data warehouse in which a summarized or highly focused portion of the organization’s data is placed in a separate database for a specific population of users. For example, a company might develop marketing and sales data marts to deal with customer information. Bookseller Barnes & Noble used to maintain a series of data marts—one for point-of-sale data in retail stores, another for college bookstore sales, and a third for online sales.
Hadoop
Relational DBMS and data warehouse products are not well-suited for organizing and analyzing big data or data that do not easily fit into columns and rows used in their data models. For handling unstructured and semi-structured data in vast quantities, as well as structured data, organizations are using **Hadoop**. Hadoop is an open source software framework managed by the Apache Software Foundation that enables distributed parallel processing of huge amounts of data across inexpensive computers. It breaks a big data problem down into sub-problems, distributes them among up to thousands of inexpensive computer processing nodes, and then combines the result into a smaller data set that is easier to analyze. You’ve probably used Hadoop to find the best airfare on the Internet, get directions to a restaurant, do a search on Google, or connect with a friend on Facebook.

Hadoop consists of several key services: the Hadoop Distributed File System (HDFS) for data storage and MapReduce for high-performance parallel data processing. HDFS links together the file systems on the numerous nodes in a Hadoop cluster to turn them into one big file system. Hadoop's MapReduce was inspired by Google's MapReduce system for breaking down processing of huge datasets and assigning work to the various nodes in a cluster. HBase, Hadoop's non-relational database, provides rapid access to the data stored on HDFS and a transactional platform for running high-scale real-time applications.

Hadoop can process large quantities of any kind of data, including structured transactional data, loosely structured data such as Facebook and Twitter feeds, complex data such as Web server log files, and unstructured audio and video data. Hadoop runs on a cluster of inexpensive servers, and processors can be added or removed as needed. Companies use Hadoop for analyzing very large volumes of data as well as for a staging area for unstructured and semi-structured data before they are loaded into a data warehouse. Facebook stores much of its data on its massive Hadoop cluster, which holds an estimated 100 petabytes, about 10,000 times more information than the Library of Congress. Yahoo uses Hadoop to track user behavior so it can modify its home page to fit their interests. Life sciences research firm NextBio uses Hadoop and HBase to process data for pharmaceutical companies conducting genomic research. Top database vendors such as IBM, Hewlett-Packard, Oracle, and Microsoft have their own Hadoop software distributions. Other vendors offer tools for moving data into and out of Hadoop or for analyzing data within Hadoop.

**In-Memory Computing**
Another way of facilitating big data analysis is to use **in-memory computing**, which relies primarily on a computer's main memory (RAM) for data storage. (Conventional DBMS use disk storage systems.) Users access data stored in system primary memory, thereby eliminating bottlenecks from retrieving and reading data in a traditional, disk-based database and dramatically shortening query response times. In-memory processing makes it possible for very large sets of data, amounting to the size of a data mart or small data warehouse, to reside entirely in memory. Complex business calculations that used to take hours or days are able to be completed within seconds, and this can even be accomplished on handheld devices. (See the Interactive Session on Technology.)

The previous chapter describes some of the advances in contemporary computer hardware technology that make in-memory processing possible, such as powerful high-speed processors, multicore processing, and falling computer memory prices. These technologies help companies optimize the use of memory and accelerate processing performance while lowering costs.
INTERACTIVE SESSION: TECHNOLOGY

DRIVING ARI FLEET MANAGEMENT WITH REAL-TIME ANALYTICS

Automotive Resources International®, better known as simply ARI®, is the world’s largest privately-held company for vehicle fleet management services. ARI is headquartered in Mt. Laurel, New Jersey and has 2,500 employees and offices throughout North America, Europe, the UK, and Hong Kong. The company manages more than 1,000,000 vehicles in the U.S., Canada, Mexico, Puerto Rico and Europe.

Businesses that need vehicles for shipments (trucks, vans, cars, ships, and rail cars) may choose to manage their own fleet of vehicles or they may outsource fleet management to companies such as ARI which specialize in these services. ARI manages the entire lifecycle and operation of a fleet of vehicles for its customers, from up-front specification and acquisition to resale, including financing, maintenance, fuel management, and risk management services such as driver safety training and accident management. ARI also maintains six call centers in North America that operate 24/7, 365 days a year to support customers’ fleet operations by providing assistance regarding repairs, breakdowns, accident response, preventive maintenance, and other driver needs. These call centers handle about 3.5 million calls per year from customers, drivers, and suppliers who expect access to real-time actionable information.

Providing this information has become increasingly challenging. Operating a single large commercial vehicle fleet generates high volumes of complex data, such as data on fuel consumption, maintenance, licensing, and compliance. A fuel transaction, for example, requires data on state taxes paid, fuel grade, total sale, amount sold, and time and place of purchase. A simple brake job and preventive maintenance checkup generates dozens of records for each component that is serviced. Each part and service performed on a vehicle is tracked using American Trucking Association codes. ARI collects and analyzes over 14,000 pieces of data per vehicle. Then multiply the data by hundreds of fleets, some with up to 10,000 vehicles, all operating simultaneously throughout the globe, and you’ll have an idea of the enormous volume of data ARI needs to manage, both for itself and for its customers.

ARI provided its customers with detailed information about their fleet operations, but the type of information it could deliver was very limited. For example, ARI could generate detailed reports on line-item expenditures, vehicle purchases, maintenance records, and other operational information presented as simple spreadsheets, charts, or graphs, but it was not possible to analyze all the data to spot trends and make recommendations. ARI was able to analyze data customer by customer, but it was not able to aggregate data across its entire customer base. For instance, if ARI was managing a pharmaceutical company’s vehicle fleet, its information systems could not benchmark that fleet’s performance against others in the industry. That type of problem required too much manual work and time, and still didn’t deliver the level of insight management thought was possible.

What’s more, in order to create reports, ARI had to go through internal subject matter experts in various aspects of fleet operations, who were called “reporting power users.” Every request for information was passed to these power users. A request for a report would take 5 days to fill. If the report was unsatisfactory, it would go back to the report writer to make changes. ARI’s process for analyzing its data was extremely drawn out.

In mid-2011, ARI implemented SAP BusinessObjects Explorer to give customers the enhanced ability to access data and run their own reports. SAP BusinessObjects Explorer is a business intelligence tool that enables business users to view, sort and analyze business intelligence data. Users search through data sources using an iTunes-like interface. They do not have to create queries to search the data and results are shown with a chart that indicates the best information match. The graphical representation of results changes as the user asks further questions of the data.

In early 2012, ARI integrated SAP BusinessObjects Explorer with HANA, SAP’s in-memory computing platform that is deployable as an on-premise appliance (hardware and software) or in the cloud. HANA is optimized for performing real-time analytics and handling very high volumes of operational and transactional data in real time. HANA’s in-memory analytics queries data stored in random access memory (RAM) instead of on a hard disk or flash storage.

Things started happening quickly after that. When ARI’s controller wanted an impact analysis of the company’s top 10 customers, SAP HANA produced the result in 3 to 3 ½ seconds. In ARI’s old systems
environment, this task would have been assigned to a power user versed in using reporting tools, specifications would have to be drawn up and a program designed for that specific query, a process that would have taken about 36 hours.

Using HANA, ARI is now able to quickly mine its vast data resources and generate predictions based on the results. For example, the company can produce precise figures on what it costs to operate a fleet of a certain size over a particular route across specific industries during a certain type of weather and predict what the impact of changes in any of these variables. And it can do so nearly as easily as providing customers with a simple history of their expenditures on fuel. With such helpful information ARI provides more value to its customers.

HANA has also reduced the time required for each transaction handled by ARI’s call centers—from the time a call center staffer takes a call to retrieving and delivering the requested information—by 5 percent. Since call center staff account for 40 percent of ARI’s direct overhead, that time reduction translates into major cost savings.

ARI plans to make some of these real-time reporting and analytic capabilities available on mobile devices, which will enable customers to instantly approve a variety of operational procedures, such as authorizing maintenance repairs. Customers will also be able to use the mobile tools for instant insight into their fleet operations, down to a level of detail such as a specific vehicle’s tire history.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. Why was data management so problematic at ARI?
2. Describe ARI’s earlier capabilities for data analysis and reporting and their impact on the business.
3. Was SAP HANA a good solution for ARI? Why or why not?
4. Describe the changes in the business as a result of adopting HANA.

Leading commercial products for in-memory computing include SAP’s High Performance Analytics Appliance (HANA) and Oracle Exalytics. Each provides a set of integrated software components, including in-memory database software and specialized analytics software, that run on hardware optimized for in-memory computing work.

**Analytic Platforms**

Commercial database vendors have developed specialized high-speed analytic platforms using both relational and non-relational technology that are optimized for analyzing large datasets. Analytic platforms such as IBM Netezza and Oracle Exadata feature preconfigured hardware-software systems that are specifically designed for query processing and analytics. For example, IBM Netezza features tightly integrated database, server, and storage components that handle complex analytic queries 10 to 100 times faster than traditional systems. Analytic platforms also include in-memory systems and NoSQL non-relational database management systems. Analytic platforms are now available as cloud services.

Figure 6.12 illustrates a contemporary business intelligence infrastructure using the technologies we have just described. Current and historical data are extracted from multiple operational systems along with Web data, machine-generated data, unstructured audio/visual data, and data from external sources that’s been restructured and reorganized for reporting and analysis. Hadoop clusters pre-process big data for use in the data warehouse, data marts, or an
A contemporary business intelligence infrastructure features capabilities and tools to manage and analyze large quantities and different types of data from multiple sources. Easy-to-use query and reporting tools for casual business users and more sophisticated analytical toolsets for power users are included.

analytic platform, or for direct querying by power users. Outputs include reports and dashboards as well as query results. Chapter 12 discusses the various types of BI users and BI reporting in greater detail.

**ANALYTICAL TOOLS: RELATIONSHIPS, PATTERNS, TRENDS**

Once data have been captured and organized using the business intelligence technologies we have just described, they are available for further analysis using software for database querying and reporting, multidimensional data analysis (OLAP), and data mining. This section will introduce you to these tools, with more detail about business intelligence analytics and applications in Chapter 12.

**Online Analytical Processing (OLAP)**

Suppose your company sells four different products—nuts, bolts, washers, and screws—in the East, West, and Central regions. If you wanted to ask a fairly straightforward question, such as how many washers sold during the past quarter, you could easily find the answer by querying your sales database. But what if you wanted to know how many washers sold in each of your sales regions and compare actual results with projected sales?

To obtain the answer, you would need **online analytical processing (OLAP)**. OLAP supports multidimensional data analysis, enabling users to view the same data in different ways using multiple dimensions. Each aspect
of information—product, pricing, cost, region, or time period—represents a different dimension. So, a product manager could use a multidimensional data analysis tool to learn how many washers were sold in the East in June, how that compares with the previous month and the previous June, and how it compares with the sales forecast. OLAP enables users to obtain online answers to ad hoc questions such as these in a fairly rapid amount of time, even when the data are stored in very large databases, such as sales figures for multiple years.

Figure 6.13 shows a multidimensional model that could be created to represent products, regions, actual sales, and projected sales. A matrix of actual sales can be stacked on top of a matrix of projected sales to form a cube with six faces. If you rotate the cube 90 degrees one way, the face showing will be product versus actual and projected sales. If you rotate the cube 90 degrees again, you will see region versus actual and projected sales. If you rotate 180 degrees from the original view, you will see projected sales and product versus region. Cubes can be nested within cubes to build complex views of data. A company would use either a specialized multidimensional database or a tool that creates multidimensional views of data in relational databases.

**Data Mining**

Traditional database queries answer such questions as, “How many units of product number 403 were shipped in February 2013?” OLAP, or multidimensional analysis, supports much more complex requests for information, such as, “Compare sales of product 403 relative to plan by quarter and sales region for the past two years.” With OLAP and query-oriented data analysis, users need to have a good idea about the information for which they are looking.

Data mining is more discovery-driven. Data mining provides insights into corporate data that cannot be obtained with OLAP by finding hidden patterns and relationships in large databases and inferring rules from them to predict future behavior. The patterns and rules are used to guide decision making and forecast the effect of those decisions. The types of information obtainable

---

**Figure 6.13 MULTIDIMENSIONAL DATA MODEL**

This view shows product versus region. If you rotate the cube 90 degrees, the face that will show is product versus actual and projected sales. If you rotate the cube 90 degrees again, you will see region versus actual and projected sales. Other views are possible.
from data mining include associations, sequences, classifications, clusters, and forecasts.

- **Associations** are occurrences linked to a single event. For instance, a study of supermarket purchasing patterns might reveal that, when corn chips are purchased, a cola drink is purchased 65 percent of the time, but when there is a promotion, cola is purchased 85 percent of the time. This information helps managers make better decisions because they have learned the profitability of a promotion.

- In **sequences**, events are linked over time. We might find, for example, that if a house is purchased, a new refrigerator will be purchased within two weeks 65 percent of the time, and an oven will be bought within one month of the home purchase 45 percent of the time.

- **Classification** recognizes patterns that describe the group to which an item belongs by examining existing items that have been classified and by inferring a set of rules. For example, businesses such as credit card or telephone companies worry about the loss of steady customers. Classification helps discover the characteristics of customers who are likely to leave and can provide a model to help managers predict who those customers are so that the managers can devise special campaigns to retain such customers.

- **Clustering** works in a manner similar to classification when no groups have yet been defined. A data mining tool can discover different groupings within data, such as finding affinity groups for bank cards or partitioning a database into groups of customers based on demographics and types of personal investments.

- Although these applications involve predictions, **forecasting** uses predictions in a different way. It uses a series of existing values to forecast what other values will be. For example, forecasting might find patterns in data to help managers estimate the future value of continuous variables, such as sales figures.

These systems perform high-level analyses of patterns or trends, but they can also drill down to provide more detail when needed. There are data mining applications for all the functional areas of business, and for government and scientific work. One popular use for data mining is to provide detailed analyses of patterns in customer data for one-to-one marketing campaigns or for identifying profitable customers.

Entertainment, formerly known as Harrah's Entertainment, is the largest gaming company in the world. It continually analyzes data about its customers gathered when people play its slot machines or use its casinos and hotels. The corporate marketing department uses this information to build a detailed gambling profile, based on a particular customer's ongoing value to the company. For instance, data mining lets Caesars know the favorite gaming experience of a regular customer at one of its riverboat casinos, along with that person's preferences for room accommodations, restaurants, and entertainment. This information guides management decisions about how to cultivate the most profitable customers, encourage those customers to spend more, and attract more customers with high revenue-generating potential. Business intelligence improved Caesars's profits so much that it became the centerpiece of the firm's business strategy.

**Text Mining and Web Mining**

Unstructured data, most in the form of text files, is believed to account for over 80 percent of useful organizational information and is one of the major sources of
big data that firms want to analyze. E-mail, memos, call center transcripts, survey responses, legal cases, patent descriptions, and service reports are all valuable for finding patterns and trends that will help employees make better business decisions. **Text mining** tools are now available to help businesses analyze these data. These tools are able to extract key elements from unstructured big data sets, discover patterns and relationships, and summarize the information.

Businesses might turn to text mining to analyze transcripts of calls to customer service centers to identify major service and repair issues or to measure customer sentiment about their company. **Sentiment analysis** software is able to mine text comments in an e-mail message, blog, social media conversation, or survey form to detect favorable and unfavorable opinions about specific subjects.

For example, the discount broker Charles Schwab uses Attensity Analyze software to analyze hundreds of thousands of its customer interactions each month. The software analyzes Schwab's customer service notes, e-mails, survey responses, and online discussions to discover signs of dissatisfaction that might cause a customer to stop using the company's services. Attensity is able to automatically identify the various “voices” customers use to express their feedback (such as a positive, negative, or conditional voice) to pinpoint a person's intent to buy, intent to leave, or reaction to a specific product or marketing message. Schwab uses this information to take corrective actions such as stepping up direct broker communication with the customer and trying to quickly resolve the problems that are making the customer unhappy.

The Web is another rich source of unstructured big data for revealing patterns, trends, and insights into customer behavior. The discovery and analysis of useful patterns and information from the World Wide Web is called **Web mining**. Businesses might turn to Web mining to help them understand customer behavior, evaluate the effectiveness of a particular Web site, or quantify the success of a marketing campaign. For instance, marketers use the Google Trends and Google Insights for Search services, which track the popularity of various words and phrases used in Google search queries, to learn what people are interested in and what they are interested in buying.

Web mining looks for patterns in data through content mining, structure mining, and usage mining. Web content mining is the process of extracting knowledge from the content of Web pages, which may include text, image, audio, and video data. Web structure mining examines data related to the structure of a particular Web site. For example, links pointing to a document indicate the popularity of the document, while links coming out of a document indicate the richness or perhaps the variety of topics covered in the document. Web usage mining examines user interaction data recorded by a Web server whenever requests for a Web site's resources are received. The usage data records the user's behavior when the user browses or makes transactions on the Web site and collects the data in a server log. Analyzing such data can help companies determine the value of particular customers, cross marketing strategies across products, and the effectiveness of promotional campaigns.

The chapter-ending case describes organizations’ experiences as they use the analytical tools and business intelligence technologies we have described to grapple with “big data” challenges.

**DATABASES AND THE WEB**

Have you ever tried to use the Web to place an order or view a product catalog? If so, you were probably using a Web site linked to an internal
corporate database. Many companies now use the Web to make some of the
information in their internal databases available to customers and business
partners.

Suppose, for example, a customer with a Web browser wants to search an
online retailer's database for pricing information. Figure 6.14 illustrates how
that customer might access the retailer's internal database over the Web. The
user accesses the retailer's Web site over the Internet using Web browser
software on his or her client PC. The user's Web browser software requests
data from the organization's database, using HTML commands to communi-
cate with the Web server.

Because many back-end databases cannot interpret commands written in
HTML, the Web server passes these requests for data to software that
translates HTML commands into SQL so the commands can be processed by the DBMS
working with the database. In a client/server environment, the DBMS resides
on a dedicated computer called a database server. The DBMS receives the
SQL requests and provides the required data. Middleware transfers information
from the organization's internal database back to the Web server for delivery in
the form of a Web page to the user.

Figure 6.14 shows that the middleware working between the Web server and
the DBMS is an application server running on its own dedicated computer (see
Chapter 5). The application server software handles all application operations,
including transaction processing and data access, between browser-based com-
puters and a company's back-end business applications or databases. The appli-
cation server takes requests from the Web server, runs the business logic to
process transactions based on those requests, and provides connectivity to the
organization's back-end systems or databases. Alternatively, the software for
handling these operations could be a custom program or a CGI script. A CGI
script is a compact program using the Common Gateway Interface (CGI) specifi-
cation for processing data on a Web server.

There are a number of advantages to using the Web to access an organiza-
tion's internal databases. First, Web browser software is much easier to use
than proprietary query tools. Second, the Web interface requires few or no
changes to the internal database. It costs much less to add a Web interface in
front of a legacy system than to redesign and rebuild the system to improve
user access.

Accessing corporate databases through the Web is creating new efficiencies,
opportunities, and business models. ThomasNet.com provides an up-to-date
online directory of more than 700,000 suppliers of industrial products, such as
chemicals, metals, plastics, rubber, and automotive equipment. Formerly called

\[ \text{FIGURE 6.14 LINKING INTERNAL DATABASES TO THE WEB} \]

Users access an organization’s internal database through the Web using their desktop PCs and Web
browser software.
Thomas Register, the company used to send out huge paper catalogs with this information. Now it provides this information to users online via its Web site and has become a smaller, leaner company.

Other companies have created entirely new businesses based on access to large databases through the Web. One is the social networking service Facebook, which helps users stay connected with each other and meet new people. Facebook features "profiles" with information on more than 1.3 billion active users with information about themselves, including interests, friends, photos, and groups with which they are affiliated. Facebook maintains a massive database to house and manage all of this content. There are also many Web-enabled databases in the public sector to help consumers and citizens access helpful information.

6.4 **WHY ARE INFORMATION POLICY, DATA ADMINISTRATION, AND DATA QUALITY ASSURANCE ESSENTIAL FOR MANAGING THE FIRM'S DATA RESOURCES?**

Setting up a database is only a start. In order to make sure that the data for your business remain accurate, reliable, and readily available to those who need it, your business will need special policies and procedures for data management.

**ESTABLISHING AN INFORMATION POLICY**

Every business, large and small, needs an information policy. Your firm’s data are an important resource, and you don’t want people doing whatever they want with them. You need to have rules on how the data are to be organized and maintained, and who is allowed to view the data or change them.

An **information policy** specifies the organization's rules for sharing, disseminating, acquiring, standardizing, classifying, and inventoring information. Information policy lays out specific procedures and accountabilities, identifying which users and organizational units can share information, where information can be distributed, and who is responsible for updating and maintaining the information. For example, a typical information policy would specify that only selected members of the payroll and human resources department would have the right to change and view sensitive employee data, such as an employee’s salary or social security number, and that these departments are responsible for making sure that such employee data are accurate.

If you are in a small business, the information policy would be established and implemented by the owners or managers. In a large organization, managing and planning for information as a corporate resource often requires a formal data administration function. **Data administration** is responsible for the specific policies and procedures through which data can be managed as an organizational resource. These responsibilities include developing information policy, planning for data, overseeing logical database design and data dictionary development, and monitoring how information systems specialists and end-user groups use data.

You may hear the term **data governance** used to describe many of these activities. Promoted by IBM, data governance deals with the policies and
processes for managing the availability, usability, integrity, and security of the data employed in an enterprise, with special emphasis on promoting privacy, security, data quality, and compliance with government regulations.

A large organization will also have a database design and management group within the corporate information systems division that is responsible for defining and organizing the structure and content of the database, and maintaining the database. In close cooperation with users, the design group establishes the physical database, the logical relations among elements, and the access rules and security procedures. The functions it performs are called database administration.

**ENSURING DATA QUALITY**

A well-designed database and information policy will go a long way toward ensuring that the business has the information it needs. However, additional steps must be taken to ensure that the data in organizational databases are accurate and remain reliable.

What would happen if a customer's telephone number or account balance were incorrect? What would be the impact if the database had the wrong price for the product you sold or your sales system and inventory system showed different prices for the same product? Data that are inaccurate, untimely, or inconsistent with other sources of information lead to incorrect decisions, product recalls, and financial losses. Gartner Inc. reported that more than 25 percent of the critical data in large Fortune 1000 companies' databases is inaccurate or incomplete, including bad product codes and product descriptions, faulty inventory descriptions, erroneous financial data, incorrect supplier information, and incorrect employee data. A Sirius Decisions study on “The Impact of Bad Data on Demand Creation” found that 10 to 25 percent of customer and prospect records contain critical data errors. Correcting these errors at their source and following best practices for promoting data quality increased the productivity of the sales process and generated a 66 percent increase in revenue.

Some of these data quality problems are caused by redundant and inconsistent data produced by multiple systems feeding a data warehouse. For example, the sales ordering system and the inventory management system might both maintain data on the organization's products. However, the sales ordering system might use the term *Item Number* and the inventory system might call the same attribute *Product Number*. The sales, inventory, or manufacturing systems of a clothing retailer might use different codes to represent values for an attribute. One system might represent clothing size as “extra large,” whereas the other system might use the code “XL” for the same purpose. During the design process for the warehouse database, data describing entities, such as a customer, product, or order, should be named and defined consistently for all business areas using the database.

Think of all the times you’ve received several pieces of the same direct mail advertising on the same day. This is very likely the result of having your name maintained multiple times in a database. Your name may have been misspelled or you used your middle initial on one occasion and not on another or the information was initially entered onto a paper form and not scanned properly into the system. Because of these inconsistencies, the database would treat you as different people! We often receive redundant mail addressed to Laudon, Lavdon, Ludden, or Landon.

If a database is properly designed and enterprise-wide data standards established, duplicate or inconsistent data elements should be minimal.
Most data quality problems, however, such as misspelled names, transposed numbers, or incorrect or missing codes, stem from errors during data input. The incidence of such errors is rising as companies move their businesses to the Web and allow customers and suppliers to enter data into their Web sites that directly update internal systems.

Before a new database is in place, organizations need to identify and correct their faulty data and establish better routines for editing data once their database is in operation. Analysis of data quality often begins with a data quality audit, which is a structured survey of the accuracy and level of completeness of the data in an information system. Data quality audits can be performed by surveying entire data files, surveying samples from data files, or surveying end users for their perceptions of data quality.

Data cleansing, also known as data scrubbing, consists of activities for detecting and correcting data in a database that are incorrect, incomplete, improperly formatted, or redundant. Data cleansing not only corrects errors but also enforces consistency among different sets of data that originated in separate information systems. Specialized data-cleansing software is available to automatically survey data files, correct errors in the data, and integrate the data in a consistent company-wide format.

Data quality problems are not just business problems. They also pose serious problems for individuals, affecting their financial condition and even their jobs. For example, inaccurate or outdated data about consumers’ credit histories maintained by credit bureaus can prevent creditworthy individuals from obtaining loans or lower their chances of finding or keeping a job.

The Interactive Session on Management illustrates American Water’s experience with managing data as a resource. As you read this case, try to identify the policies, procedures, and technologies that were required to improve data management at this company.
American Water, founded in 1886, is the largest public water utility in the United States. Headquartered in Voorhees, N.J., the company employs more than 7,000 dedicated professionals who provide drinking water, wastewater and other related services to approximately 16 million people in 35 states, as well as Ontario and Manitoba, Canada. Most of American Water’s services support locally-managed utility subsidiaries that are regulated by the U.S. state in which each operates as well as the federal government. American Water also owns subsidiaries that manage municipal drinking water and wastewater systems under contract and others that supply businesses and residential communities with water management products and services.

Until recently, American Water’s systems and business processes were very localized, and many of these processes were manual. Over time, this information environment became increasingly difficult to manage. Many systems were not integrated, so that running any type of report that had to provide information about more than one region was a heavily manual process. Data had to be extracted from the systems supporting each region and then combined manually to create the desired output. When the company was preparing to hold an initial public offering of its stock in 2006, its software systems could not handle the required regulatory controls, so roughly 80 percent of this work had to be performed manually. It was close to a nightmare.

Management wanted to change the company from a decentralized group of independent regional businesses into a more centralized organization with standard company-wide business processes and enterprise-wide reporting. The first step toward achieving this goal was to implement an enterprise resource planning (ERP) system designed to replace disparate systems with a single integrated software platform. The company selected SAP as its ERP system vendor.

An important step of this project was to migrate the data from American Water’s old systems to the new platform. The company’s data resided in many different systems in various formats. Each regional business maintained some of its own data in its own systems, and a portion of these data were redundant and inconsistent. For example, there were duplicate pieces of materials master data because a material might be called one thing in the company’s Missouri operation and another in its New Jersey business. These names had to be standardized so that the same name for a piece of data was used by every business unit. American Water’s business users had to buy into this new company-wide view of data.

Data migration entails much more than just transferring data between old and new systems. Business users need to know that data are not just a responsibility of the information systems department: the business “owns” the data. It is business needs that determine the rules and standards for managing the data. Therefore, it is up to business users to inventory and review all the pieces of data in their systems to determine precisely which pieces of data from the old system will be used in the new system and which data do not need to be brought over. The data also need to be reviewed to make sure they are accurate and consistent and that redundant data are eliminated.

Most likely some type of data cleansing will be required. For example, American Water had data on more than 70,000 vendors in its vendor master data file. Andrew Clarkson, American Water’s Business Intelligence Lead, asked business users to define an active vendor and to use that definition to identify which data to migrate. He also worked with various functional groups to standardize how to present address data.

One of the objectives of American Water’s data management work was to support an enterprise-wide business intelligence program based on a single view of the business. An analytical system and data warehouse would be able to combine data from the SAP ERP System with data from other sources, including new customer information and enterprise asset management systems. That meant that American Water’s business users had to do a lot of thinking about the kinds of reports they wanted. The company had originally planned to have the system provide 200 reports, but later reduced that number by half. Business users were trained to generate these reports and customize them. Most financial users initially tried to create their reports using Microsoft Excel spreadsheet software. Over time, however, they learned to do the same thing using SAP Business Objects Web Intelligence tools that came with the system. SAP Business Objects Web
Intelligence is a set of tools that enables business users to view, sort, and analyze business intelligence data. It includes tools for generating queries, reports and interactive dashboards.

At present, American Water is focusing on promoting the idea that data must be “clean” to be effective and has poured an incredible amount of effort into its data cleansing work—identifying incomplete, incorrect, inaccurate, and irrelevant pieces of data and then replacing, modifying, or deleting the “dirty” data. According to Clarkson, just as water treatment plants have measurements and meters to check water quality as its being treated, data management needs to ensure the quality of data at every step to make sure the final product will be genuinely useful for the company.


### CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Discuss the role of information policy, data administration, and efforts to ensure data quality in improving data management at American Water.
2. Describe roles played by information systems specialists and end users in American Water’s systems transformation project.
3. Why was the participation of business users so important? If they didn’t play this role, what would have happened?
4. How did implementing a data warehouse help American Water move toward a more centralized organization?
5. Give some examples of problems that would have occurred at American Water if its data were not “clean”?
6. How did American Water’s data warehouse improve operations and management decision making?

### Review Summary

1. **What are the problems of managing data resources in a traditional file environment?**
   Traditional file management techniques make it difficult for organizations to keep track of all of the pieces of data they use in a systematic way and to organize these data so that they can be easily accessed. Different functional areas and groups were allowed to develop their own files independently. Over time, this traditional file management environment creates problems such as data redundancy and inconsistency, program-data dependence, inflexibility, poor security, and lack of data sharing and availability. A database management system (DBMS) solves these problems with software that permits centralization of data and data management so that businesses have a single consistent source for all their data needs. Using a DBMS minimizes redundant and inconsistent files.

2. **What are the major capabilities of DBMS and why is a relational DBMS so powerful?**
   The principal capabilities of a DBMS includes a data definition capability, a data dictionary capability, and a data manipulation language. The data definition capability specifies the structure and content of the database. The data dictionary is an automated or manual file that stores information about the data in the database, including names, definitions, formats, and descriptions of data elements. The data manipulation language, such as SQL, is a specialized language for accessing and manipulating the data in the database.

   The relational database has been the primary method for organizing and maintaining data in information systems because it is so flexible and accessible. It organizes data in two-dimensional tables called relations with rows and columns. Each table contains data about an entity and its attributes. Each row represents a record and each column represents an attribute or field. Each table also contains a key field to uniquely identify each record for retrieval or manipulation. Relational database tables can be combined easily to deliver data required by users, provided that any two tables share a common
data element. Non-relational databases are becoming popular for managing types of data that can't be handled easily by the relational data model. Both relational and non-relational database products are available as cloud computing services.

Designing a database requires both a logical design and a physical design. The logical design models the database from a business perspective. The organization's data model should reflect its key business processes and decision-making requirements. The process of creating small, stable, flexible, and adaptive data structures from complex groups of data when designing a relational database is termed normalization. A well-designed relational database will not have many-to-many relationships, and all attributes for a specific entity will only apply to that entity. It will try to enforce referential integrity rules to ensure that relationships between coupled tables remain consistent. An entity-relationship diagram graphically depicts the relationship between entities (tables) in a relational database.

3. **What are the principal tools and technologies for accessing information from databases to improve business performance and decision making?**

Contemporary data management technology has an array of tools for obtaining useful information from all the different types of data used by businesses today, including semi-structured and unstructured big data in vast quantities. These capabilities include data warehouses and data marts, Hadoop, in-memory computing, and analytical platforms. OLAP represents relationships among data as a multidimensional structure, which can be visualized as cubes of data and cubes within cubes of data, enabling more sophisticated data analysis. Data mining analyzes large pools of data, including the contents of data warehouses, to find patterns and rules that can be used to predict future behavior and guide decision making. Text mining tools help businesses analyze large unstructured data sets consisting of text. Web mining tools focus on analysis of useful patterns and information from the World Wide Web, examining the structure of Web sites and activities of Web site users as well as the contents of Web pages. Conventional databases can be linked via middleware to the Web or a Web interface to facilitate user access to an organization's internal data.

4. **Why are information policy, data administration, and data quality assurance essential for managing the firm's data resources?**

Developing a database environment requires policies and procedures for managing organizational data as well as a good data model and database technology. A formal information policy governs the maintenance, distribution, and use of information in the organization. In large corporations, a formal data administration function is responsible for information policy, as well as for data planning, data dictionary development, and monitoring data usage in the firm.

Data that are inaccurate, incomplete, or inconsistent create serious operational and financial problems for businesses because they may create inaccuracies in product pricing, customer accounts, and inventory data, and lead to inaccurate decisions about the actions that should be taken by the firm. Firms must take special steps to make sure they have a high level of data quality. These include using enterprise-wide data standards, databases designed to minimize inconsistent and redundant data, data quality audits, and data cleansing software.

**Key Terms**

- Analytic platform, 234
- Attribute, 218
- Big data, 230
- Bit, 218
- Byte, 218
- Data administration, 240
- Data cleansing, 242
- Data definition, 226
- Data dictionary, 226
- Data governance, 240
- Data inconsistency, 219
- Data manipulation language, 226
- Data mart, 231
- Data mining, 236
- Data quality audit, 242
- Data redundancy, 219
- Data warehouse, 231
- Database, 221
- Database administration, 241
- Database management system (DBMS), 221
- Database server, 239
- Entity, 218
- Entity-relationship diagram, 229
- Field, 218
- File, 218
- Foreign key, 224
Review Questions

6-1 What are the problems of managing data resources in a traditional file environment?
- List and describe each of the components in the data hierarchy.
- Define and explain the significance of entities, attributes, and key fields.
- List and describe the problems of the traditional file environment.

6-2 What are the major capabilities of database management systems (DBMS) and why is a relational DBMS so powerful?
- Define a database and a database management system.
- Name and briefly describe the capabilities of a DBMS.
- Define a relational DBMS and explain how it organizes data.
- List and describe the three operations of a relational DBMS.
- Explain why non-relational databases are useful.
- Define and describe normalization and referential integrity and explain how they contribute to a well-designed relational database.
- Define and describe an entity-relationship diagram and explain its role in database design.

6-3 What are the principal tools and technologies for accessing information from databases to improve business performance and decision making?
- Define big data and describe the technologies for managing and analyzing it.
- List and describe the components of a contemporary business intelligence infrastructure.
- Describe the capabilities of online analytical processing (OLAP).
- Define data mining, describing how it differs from OLAP and the types of information it provides.
- Explain how text mining and Web mining differ from conventional data mining.
- Describe how users can access information from a company's internal databases through the Web.

6-4 Why are information policy, data administration, and data quality assurance essential for managing the firm's data resources?
- Describe the roles of information policy and data administration in information management.
- Explain why data quality audits and data cleansing are essential.
Discussion Questions

6-5 It has been said there is no bad data, just bad management. Discuss the implications of this statement.

6-6 To what extent should end users be involved in the selection of a database management system and database design?

6-7 What are the consequences of an organization not having an information policy?

Hands-On MIS Projects

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience in analyzing data quality problems, establishing company-wide data standards, creating a database for inventory management, and using the Web to search online databases for overseas business resources.

Management Decision Problems

6-8 Emerson Process Management, a global supplier of measurement, analytical, and monitoring instruments and services based in Austin, Texas, had a new data warehouse designed for analyzing customer activity to improve service and marketing. However, the data warehouse was full of inaccurate and redundant data. The data in the warehouse came from numerous transaction processing systems in Europe, Asia, and other locations around the world. The team that designed the warehouse had assumed that sales groups in all these areas would enter customer names and addresses the same way. In fact, companies in different countries were using multiple ways of entering quote, billing, shipping, and other data. Assess the potential business impact of these data quality problems. What decisions have to be made and steps taken to reach a solution?

6-9 Your industrial supply company wants to create a data warehouse where management can obtain a single corporate-wide view of critical sales information to identify bestselling products, key customers, and sales trends. Your sales and product information are stored in several different systems: a divisional sales system running on a Unix server and a corporate sales system running on an IBM mainframe. You would like to create a single standard format that consolidates these data from both systems. In MyMISLab, you can review the proposed format, along with sample files from the two systems that would supply the data for the data warehouse. Then answer the following questions:

• What business problems are created by not having these data in a single standard format?
• How easy would it be to create a database with a single standard format that could store the data from both systems? Identify the problems that would have to be addressed.
• Should the problems be solved by database specialists or general business managers? Explain.
• Who should have the authority to finalize a single company-wide format for this information in the data warehouse?

Achieving Operational Excellence: Building a Relational Database for Inventory Management

Software skills: Database design, querying, and reporting
Business skills: Inventory management

6-10 In this exercise, you will use database software to design a database for managing inventory for a small business. Sylvester's Bike Shop, located in San Francisco, California, sells road, mountain, hybrid, leisure, and children's bicycles. Currently, Sylvester's purchases bikes from three suppliers, but plans to add new suppliers in the near future. Using the information found in the tables in MyMISLab, build a simple relational database to manage information about Sylvester's suppliers and products. Once you have built the database, perform the following activities.
• Prepare a report that identifies the five most expensive bicycles. The report should list the bicycles in descending order from most expensive to least expensive, the quantity on hand for each, and the markup percentage for each.
• Prepare a report that lists each supplier, its products, the quantities on hand, and associated reorder levels. The report should be sorted alphabetically by supplier. For each supplier, the products should be sorted alphabetically.
• Prepare a report listing only the bicycles that are low in stock and need to be reordered. The report should provide supplier information for the items identified.
• Write a brief description of how the database could be enhanced to further improve management of the business. What tables or fields should be added? What additional reports would be useful?

Improving Decision Making: Searching Online Databases for Overseas Business Resources

Software skills: Online databases
Business skills: Researching services for overseas operations

6-11 This project develops skills in searching Web-enabled databases with information about products and services in faraway locations.

Your company is located in Greensboro, North Carolina, and manufactures office furniture of various types. You are considering opening a facility to manufacture and sell your products in Australia. You would like to contact organizations that offer many services necessary for you to open your Australian office and manufacturing facility, including lawyers, accountants, import-export experts, and telecommunications equipment and support firms. Access the following online databases to locate companies that you would like to meet with during your upcoming trip: Australian Business Register (abr.gov.au), AustraliaTrade Now (australiatradenow.com), and the Nationwide Business Directory of Australia (www.nationwide.com.au). If necessary, use search engines such as Yahoo and Google.

• List the companies you would contact on your trip to determine whether they can help you with these and any other functions you think are vital to establishing your office.
• Rate the databases you used for accuracy of name, completeness, ease of use, and general helpfulness.

Collaboration and Teamwork Project

6-12 In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Docs, Google Sites, Google+, or other open source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.
Today’s companies are dealing with an avalanche of data from social media, search, and sensors as well as from traditional sources. According to one estimate, 2.5 quintillion bytes of data per day are generated around the world. Making sense of “big data” has become one of the primary challenges for corporations of all shapes and sizes, but it also represents new opportunities. How are companies currently taking advantage of “big data?”

Green Mountain Coffee in Waterbury, Vermont, is analyzing both structured and unstructured audio and text data to learn more about customer behavior and buying patterns. The firm has 20 different brands and more than 200 different beverages, and uses Calabrio Speech Analytics to glean insights from multiple interaction channels and data streams. In the past, Green Mountain was unable to fully utilize all the data gathered when customers called into its contact center. The company wanted to know more about how many people were asking for a specific product, which products generated the most questions, and which products and categories created the most confusion. By analyzing its big data, Green Mountain was able to gather much more precise information and use it to produce materials, Web pages, and database entries to help representatives do their jobs more effectively. Management is now able to identify issues more rapidly before they create problems for customers.

AutoZone uses big data to help it adjust inventory and product prices at some of its 5,000 stores. For example, a customer walking into an AutoZone store in Waco, Texas, might find a deal on Gabriel shocks which that person would not find in most other AutoZone stores. The Mulberry, Florida AutoZone store might feature a special on a bug deflector. To target these deals at the local level, the auto parts retailer analyzes information gleaned from a variety of databases, such as the types of cars driven by people living around its retail outlets. Software from NuoDB, which uses a cloud services model, makes it possible to quickly increase the amount of data analyzed without bringing down the system, or changing a line of code.

Benefits from analyzing big data are not limited to businesses. A number of services have emerged to analyze big data to help consumers. For example, personal devices such as the NikeFuelBand, SonySmartBand, and Jawbone UP24 enable people analyze their routines, diets, and sleeping patterns to see how they compare with others. This can lead to more-effective workouts and help people meet fitness goals. A number of online services enable consumers to check thousands of different flight and hotel options and book their own reservations, tasks previously handled by travel agents. New mobile-based services make it even easier to compare prices and pick the best travel options. For instance, a mobile app from Skyscanner Ltd. shows deals from all over the Web in one list—sorted by price, duration or airline—so travelers don’t have to scour multiple sites to book within their budget. Skyscanner uses information from more than 300 airlines, travel agents and timetables and shapes the data into at-a-glance formats, with algorithms to keep pricing current and make predictions about who will have the best deal for a given market.

There are limits to using big data. A number of companies have rushed to start big data projects without first establishing a business goal for this new information. Swimming in numbers doesn’t necessarily mean that the right information is being collected or that people will make smarter decisions. Although big data is very good at detecting correlations, especially subtle correlations that an analysis of smaller data sets might miss, big data analysis doesn’t necessarily indicate which correlations are meaningful. For example, examining big data might show that from 2006 to 2011 the United States murder rate was highly correlated with the market share of Internet Explorer, since both declined sharply. But that doesn’t necessarily mean there is any meaningful connection between the two phenomena.

Several years ago, Google developed what it thought was a leading-edge algorithm using data it collected from Web searches to determine exactly how many people had influenza. It tried to calculate the number of people with flu in the United States by relating people’s location to flu-related search queries on Google. The service has consistently overestimated flu rates, when compared to conventional data collected afterward by the US Centers for Disease Control (CDC). According to Google Flu Trends, nearly 11 percent of the U.S. population was
supposed to have had influenza at the flu season’s peak in mid-January 2013. However, an article in the science journal Nature stated that Google’s results were twice the actual amount estimated by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, which had 6 percent of the population coming down with the disease. Why did this happen? Several scientists suggested that Google was “tricked” by widespread media coverage of the year’s severe flu season in the U.S., which was further amplified by social media coverage. Google’s algorithm only looked at numbers, not the context of the search results.

Sears Holdings, the parent company of Sears and Kmart, has been trying to use big data to get closer to its customers. Sears used to be the largest retailer in the United States, but for many years has steadily lost ground to discounters such as Walmart and Target and to competitively-priced specialty retailers such as Home Depot and Lowe’s. The company has been slow to reduce operating costs, keep pace with current merchandising trends, and remodel its 2,429 stores, many of which are run-down and in undesirable locations.

Over the years, Sears had invested heavily in information technology. At one time it spent more on information technology and networking than all other non-computer firms in the United States except the Boeing Corporation. Sears used its huge customer databases of 60 million past and present Sears credit card holders to target groups such as tool buyers, appliance buyers, and gardening enthusiasts with special promotions. These efforts did not translate into competitive advantage because Sears’ cost structure remained one of the highest in its industry.

The Sears company has continued to embrace new technology to revive flagging sales: online shopping, mobile apps, and an Amazon.com-like marketplace with other vendors for 18 million products, along with heavy in-store promotions. So far, these efforts have not paid off, and sales have declined since the 2005 merger with Kmart. The company posted a loss of nearly $1.4 billion for 2013.

Sears Holdings CEO Lou D’Ambrosio believes even more intensive use of technology and mining of customer data is the answer. The expectation is that deeper knowledge of customer preferences and buying patterns will make promotions, merchandising, and selling much more effective. Customers should flock to Sears stores because they will be carrying exactly what they want.

A customer loyalty program called Shop Your Way Rewards promises customers generous free deals for repeat purchases if they agree to share their personal shopping data with the company. Sears would not disclose how many customers have signed up for Shop Your Way Rewards, but loyalty-marketing firm Colloquy estimates around 50 million people are members.

Sears wanted to personalize marketing campaigns, coupons, and offers down to the individual customer, but its legacy systems were incapable of supporting that level of activity. In order to use big models on large data sets, Sears turned to Apache Hadoop and big data technology. It used to take Sears six weeks to analyze marketing campaigns for loyalty club members using a mainframe, Teradata data warehouse software, and SAS servers. Using Hadoop, the processing can be completed weekly. Certain online and mobile commerce analyses can be performed daily and targeting is much more precise, in some cases down to the individual customer. Sears’s old models were able to use 10 percent of available data, but the new models are able to work with 100 percent. In the past, Sears was only able to retain data from 90 days to two years, but with Hadoop, it can keep everything, increasing its chances of finding more meaningful patterns in the data.

What's more, Hadoop processing is much less costly than conventional relational databases. A Hadoop system handling 200 terabytes of data runs about one-third the cost of a 200-terabyte relational platform. With Hadoop’s massively parallel processing power, processing 2 billion records takes Sears little more than one minute longer than processing 100 million records.

Hadoop is still an immature platform, and Hadoop expertise is scarce. Sears had to learn Hadoop largely by trial and error. But it now runs critical reports on the platform, including analyses of customers, financial data, products, and supply chains. Capitalizing on its experience as a big-data innovator, Sears set up a subsidiary called MetaScale to sell big data cloud and consulting services to other companies.

Sears can point to many conceptual uses of Hadoop, but the question still lingers about whether the company is effectively using Hadoop to solve its enormous business problems. Is it truly able to offer customers personalized promotions and are they working? What is the business impact? Where are the numbers to show that big data is helping Sears become more profitable? Sears may be able to generate revenue by selling big data expertise to MetaScale customers, but will Hadoop really help turn Sears around?
Jim Sullivan, a partner at loyalty marketing firm Colloquy, notes that a good loyalty program that gives a company better intelligence about what its customers really want can be a strategic advantage, but even the best loyalty programs can’t fix a fundamentally broken brand.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

6-13 Describe the kinds of “big data” collected by the organizations described in this case.

6-14 List and describe the business intelligence technologies described in this case.

6-15 Why did the companies and services described in this case need to maintain and analyze big data? What business benefits did they obtain? How much were they helped by analyzing big data?

6-16 Identify three decisions that were improved by using big data.

6-17 Should all organizations try to analyze big data? Why or why not? What management, organization, and technology issues should be addressed before a company decides to work with big data?

---

**MyMISLab**

Go to mymislab.com for Auto-graded writing questions as well as the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

6-18 Identify the five problems of a traditional file environment and explain how a database management system solves them.

6-19 Discuss how the following facilitate the management of big data: Hadoop, in-memory computing, analytic platforms.
Chapter 6 References

Aiken, Peter, Mark Gillenson, Xihui Zhang, and David Rafner. "Data Management and Data Administration. Assessing 25 Years of Practice." Journal of Database Management (July-September 2011).


Clifford, James, Albert Croker, and Alex Tuzhilin. "On Data Representation and Use in a Temporal Relational DBMS." Information Systems Research 7, No. 3 (September 1996).


Jinesh Radadia. "Breaking the Bad Data Bottlenecks." Information Management (May/June 2010).


Mulani, Narendra. "In-Memory Technology: Keeping Pace with Your Data." Information Management (February 27, 2013).


Wallace, David J. "How Caesar’s Entertainment Sustains a Data-Driven Culture." DataInformed (December 14, 2012).
LEARNING OBJECTIVES
After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. What are the principal components of telecommunications networks and key networking technologies?
2. What are the different types of networks?
3. How do the Internet and Internet technology work and how do they support communication and e-business?
4. What are the principal technologies and standards for wireless networking, communication, and Internet access?

MyMISLab™
Visit mymislab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.

CHAPTER CASES
Wireless Technology Makes Dundee Precious Metals Good as Gold
The Battle Over Net Neutrality
Monitoring Employees on Networks: Unethical or Good Business?
Google, Apple, and Facebook Struggle for Your Internet Experience

VIDEO CASES
Telepresence Moves Out of the Boardroom and Into the Field
Virtual Collaboration with Lotus Sametime
WIRELESS TECHNOLOGY MAKES DUNDEE PRECIOUS METALS GOOD AS GOLD

Dundee Precious Metals (DPM) is a Canadian-based, international mining company engaged in the acquisition, exploration, development and mining and processing of precious metal properties. One of the company’s principal assets is the Chelopech copper and gold mine east of Sofia, Bulgaria, and the company also has a gold mine in southern Armenia and a smelter in Namibia.

The price of gold and other metals has fluctuated wildly, and Dundee was looking for a way to offset lower gold prices by making its mining operations more efficient. However, mines are very complex operations, and there are special challenges with communicating and coordinating work underground.

Management decided to implement an underground wireless Wi-Fi network that allows electronic devices to exchange data wirelessly at the Chelopech mine to monitor the location of equipment, people, and ore throughout the mine’s tunnels and facilities. The company deployed several hundred Cisco Systems Inc. high-speed wireless access points (in waterproof, dustproof, and crush-resistant enclosures), extended range antennas, communications boxes with industrial switches connected to 90 kilometers of fiber optic lines that snake through the mine, emergency boxes on walls for Linksys VoIP phones, protected vehicle antennas that can withstand being knocked against a mine ceiling, and custom “walkie-talkie” software. Dundee was able to get access points that normally have a range of 200 meters to work at a range of 600 to 800 meters in a straight line, or 400 to 600 meters around a curve.

Another part of the solution was to use AeroScout Wi-Fi radio frequency identification (RFID) technology to track workers, equipment, and vehicles.
About 1,000 AeroScout Wi-Fi RFID tags are worn by miners or mounted on vehicles and equipment, transmitting data about vehicle rock loads and mechanical status, miner locations, and the status of doors and ventilation fans over the mine's Wi-Fi network. AeroScout's Mobile View software is able to display a real-time visual representation of the location of people and items. The software can determine where loads came from, where rock should be sent, and where empty vehicles should go next. Data about any mishap or slowdown, such as a truck that made an unscheduled stop, or a miner who is behind schedule, are transmitted to Dundee's surface crew so that appropriate action can be taken.

The Mobile View interface is easy to use and provides a variety of reports and rules-based alerts. By using this wireless technology to track the location of equipment and workers underground, Dundee has been able to decrease equipment downtime and utilize resources more efficiently. Dundee also uses the data from the underground wireless network for its Dassault Systemes' Geovia mine management software and IBM mobile planning software.

Before implementing AeroScout, Dundee kept track of workers by noting who had turned in their cap lamps at the end of their shift. AeroScout has automated this process, enabling staff in the control room to quickly determine the location of miners.

It is also essential that workers driving equipment underground be able to communicate closely with the mine's control room. In the past, workers used a radio checkpoint system to relay their location. The new wireless system enables control room staff to actually see the location of machinery, so they can direct traffic more effectively, quickly identify problems, and respond more rapidly to emergencies.

Thanks to wireless technology, Dundee has been able to reduce costs and increase productivity while improving the safety of its workers. Communication costs have dropped 20 percent. According to Dundee CEO Rick Howes, the ability to use real-time data will increase the company's profit per miner by 10 to 15 percent.


The experience of Dundee Precious Metals illustrates some of the powerful capabilities and opportunities provided by contemporary networking technology. The company uses wireless networking, radio frequency identification (RFID) technology, and AeroScout MobileView software to automate tracking of workers, equipment, and ore as they move through its Chelopech underground mine.

The chapter-opening diagram calls attention to important points raised by his case and this chapter. The Dundee Precious Metals production environment in its Chelopech mine is difficult to monitor because it is underground, yet requires intensive oversight and coordination to make sure that people, materials, and equipment are available when and where they are needed underground and that work is flowing smoothly. Tracking components manually or using older radio identification methods was slow, cumbersome, and error-prone. Dundee was also under pressure to cut costs because the price of gold had dropped and precious metals typically have wild price fluctuations.

Management decided that wireless Wi-Fi technology and RFID tagging provided a solution and arranged for the deployment of a wireless Wi-Fi network throughout the entire underground Chelopech production facility.
If you run or work in a business, you can't do without networks. You need to communicate rapidly with your customers, suppliers, and employees. Until about 1990, businesses used the postal system or telephone system with voice or fax for communication. Today, however, you and your employees use computers, e-mail, text messaging, the Internet, mobile phones, and mobile computers connected to wireless networks for this purpose. Networking and the Internet are now nearly synonymous with doing business.

### NETWORKING AND COMMUNICATION TRENDS

Firms in the past used two fundamentally different types of networks: telephone networks and computer networks. Telephone networks historically handled voice communication, and computer networks handled data traffic. Telephone networks were built by telephone companies throughout the twentieth century using voice transmission technologies (hardware and software), and these companies almost always operated as regulated monopolies throughout
the world. Computer networks were originally built by computer companies seeking to transmit data between computers in different locations.

Thanks to continuing telecommunications deregulation and information technology innovation, telephone and computer networks are converging into a single digital network using shared Internet-based standards and equipment. Telecommunications providers today, such as AT&T and Verizon, offer data transmission, Internet access, mobile phone service, and television programming as well as voice service. Cable companies, such as Cablevision and Comcast, offer voice service and Internet access. Computer networks have expanded to include Internet telephone and video services. Increasingly, all of these voice, video, and data communications are based on Internet technology.

Both voice and data communication networks have also become more powerful (faster), more portable (smaller and mobile), and less expensive. For instance, the typical Internet connection speed in 2000 was 56 kilobits per second, but today more than 74 percent of U.S. households have high-speed broadband connections provided by telephone and cable TV companies running at 1 to 15 million bits per second. The cost for this service has fallen exponentially, from 25 cents per kilobit in 2000 to a tiny fraction of a cent today.

Increasingly, voice and data communication, as well as Internet access, are taking place over broadband wireless platforms, such as mobile phones, mobile handheld devices, and PCs in wireless networks. More than half the Internet users in the United States use smartphones and tablets to access the Internet.

**WHAT IS A COMPUTER NETWORK?**

If you had to connect the computers for two or more employees together in the same office, you would need a computer network. Exactly what is a network? In its simplest form, a network consists of two or more connected computers. Figure 7.1 illustrates the major hardware, software, and transmission components used in a simple network: a client computer and a dedicated server computer, network interfaces, a connection medium, network operating system software, and either a hub or a switch.

Each computer on the network contains a network interface device to link the computer to the network. The connection medium for linking network components can be a telephone wire, coaxial cable, or radio signal in the case of cell phone and wireless local area networks (Wi-Fi networks).

The network operating system (NOS) routes and manages communications on the network and coordinates network resources. It can reside on every computer in the network, or it can reside primarily on a dedicated server computer for all the applications on the network. A server computer is a computer on a network that performs important network functions for client computers, such as serving up Web pages, storing data, and storing the network operating system (and hence controlling the network). Microsoft Windows Server, Linux, and Novell Open Enterprise Server are the most widely used network operating systems.

Most networks also contain a switch or a hub acting as a connection point between the computers. Hubs are very simple devices that connect network components, sending a packet of data to all other connected devices. A switch has more intelligence than a hub and can filter and forward data to a specified destination on the network.

What if you want to communicate with another network, such as the Internet? You would need a router. A router is a communications processor used to route packets of data through different networks, ensuring that the data sent gets to the correct address.
Network switches and routers have proprietary software built into their hardware for directing the movement of data on the network. This can create network bottlenecks and makes the process of configuring a network more complicated and time-consuming. **Software-defined networking (SDN)** is a new networking approach in which many of these control functions are managed by one central program, which can run on inexpensive commodity servers that are separate from the network devices themselves. This is especially helpful in a cloud computing environment with many different pieces of hardware because it allows a network administrator to manage traffic loads in a flexible and more efficient manner.

**Networks in Large Companies**

The network we’ve just described might be suitable for a small business. But what about large companies with many different locations and thousands of employees? As a firm grows, and collects hundreds of small local area networks, these networks can be tied together into a corporate-wide networking infrastructure. The network infrastructure for a large corporation consists of a large number of these small local area networks linked to other local area networks and to firmwide corporate networks. A number of powerful servers support a corporate Web site, a corporate intranet, and perhaps an extranet. Some of these servers link to other large computers supporting back-end systems.

Figure 7.2 provides an illustration of these more complex, larger scale corporate-wide networks. Here you can see that the corporate network infrastructure supports a mobile sales force using mobile phones and smartphones, mobile employees linking to the company Web site, internal
Today’s corporate network infrastructure is a collection of many different networks from the public switched telephone network, to the Internet, to corporate local area networks linking workgroups, departments, or office floors.

Company networks using mobile wireless local area networks (Wi-Fi networks), and a videoconferencing system to support managers across the world. In addition to these computer networks, the firm’s infrastructure may include a separate telephone network that handles most voice data. Many firms are dispensing with their traditional telephone networks and using Internet telephones that run on their existing data networks (described later).

As you can see from this figure, a large corporate network infrastructure uses a wide variety of technologies—everything from ordinary telephone service and corporate data networks to Internet service, wireless Internet, and mobile phones. One of the major problems facing corporations today is how to integrate all the different communication networks and channels into a coherent system that enables information to flow from one part of the corporation to another, and from one system to another. As more and more communication networks become digital, and based on Internet technologies, it will become easier to integrate them.

**KEY DIGITAL NETWORKING TECHNOLOGIES**

Contemporary digital networks and the Internet are based on three key technologies: client/server computing, the use of packet switching, and the development of widely used communications standards (the most important
of which is Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol, or TCP/IP) for linking disparate networks and computers.

**Client/Server Computing**

Client/server computing, introduced in Chapter 5, is a distributed computing model in which some of the processing power is located within small, inexpensive client computers, and resides literally on desktops, laptops, or in handheld devices. These powerful clients are linked to one another through a network that is controlled by a network server computer. The server sets the rules of communication for the network and provides every client with an address so others can find it on the network.

Client/server computing has largely replaced centralized mainframe computing in which nearly all of the processing takes place on a central large mainframe computer. Client/server computing has extended computing to departments, workgroups, factory floors, and other parts of the business that could not be served by a centralized architecture. It also makes it possible for personal computing devices such as PCs, laptops, and mobile phones, to be connected to networks such as the Internet. The Internet is the largest implementation of client/server computing.

**Packet Switching**

Packet switching is a method of slicing digital messages into parcels called packets, sending the packets along different communication paths as they become available, and then reassembling the packets once they arrive at their destinations (see Figure 7.3). Prior to the development of packet switching, computer networks used leased, dedicated telephone circuits to communicate with other computers in remote locations. In circuit-switched networks, such as the telephone system, a complete point-to-point circuit is assembled, and then communication can proceed. These dedicated circuit-switching techniques

![Figure 7.3](image.png)

**FIGURE 7.3 PACKET-SWITCHED NETWORKS AND PACKET COMMUNICATIONS**

Data are grouped into small packets, which are transmitted independently over various communications channels and reassembled at their final destination.
were expensive and wasted available communications capacity—the circuit was maintained regardless of whether any data were being sent.

Packet switching makes much more efficient use of the communications capacity of a network. In packet-switched networks, messages are first broken down into small fixed bundles of data called packets. The packets include information for directing the packet to the right address and for checking transmission errors along with the data. The packets are transmitted over various communications channels using routers, each packet traveling independently. Packets of data originating at one source will be routed through many different paths and networks before being reassembled into the original message when they reach their destinations.

**TCP/IP and Connectivity**

In a typical telecommunications network, diverse hardware and software components need to work together to transmit information. Different components in a network communicate with each other only by adhering to a common set of rules called protocols. A *protocol* is a set of rules and procedures governing transmission of information between two points in a network.

In the past, many diverse proprietary and incompatible protocols often forced business firms to purchase computing and communications equipment from a single vendor. But today, corporate networks are increasingly using a single, common, worldwide standard called *Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol* (TCP/IP). TCP/IP was developed during the early 1970s to support U.S. Department of Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) efforts to help scientists transmit data among different types of computers over long distances.

TCP/IP uses a suite of protocols, the main ones being TCP and IP. TCP refers to the Transmission Control Protocol, which handles the movement of data between computers. TCP establishes a connection between the computers, sequences the transfer of packets, and acknowledges the packets sent. IP refers to the Internet Protocol (IP), which is responsible for the delivery of packets and includes the disassembling and reassembling of packets during transmission. Figure 7.4 illustrates the four-layered Department of Defense reference model for TCP/IP, and the layers are described as follows:

![Figure 7.4 THE TRANSMISSION CONTROL PROTOCOL/INTERNET PROTOCOL (TCP/IP) REFERENCE MODEL](image)

This figure illustrates the four layers of the TCP/IP reference model for communications.
1. **Application layer.** The Application layer enables client application programs to access the other layers and defines the protocols that applications use to exchange data. One of these application protocols is the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP), which is used to transfer Web page files.

2. **Transport layer.** The Transport layer is responsible for providing the Application layer with communication and packet services. This layer includes TCP and other protocols.

3. **Internet layer.** The Internet layer is responsible for addressing, routing, and packaging data packets called IP datagrams. The Internet Protocol is one of the protocols used in this layer.

4. **Network Interface layer.** At the bottom of the reference model, the Network Interface layer is responsible for placing packets on and receiving them from the network medium, which could be any networking technology.

Two computers using TCP/IP are able to communicate even if they are based on different hardware and software platforms. Data sent from one computer to the other passes downward through all four layers, starting with the sending computer's Application layer and passing through the Network Interface layer. After the data reach the recipient host computer, they travel up the layers and are reassembled into a format the receiving computer can use. If the receiving computer finds a damaged packet, it asks the sending computer to retransmit it. This process is reversed when the receiving computer responds.

### 7.2 What are the different types of networks?

Let’s look more closely at alternative networking technologies available to businesses.

**Signals: Digital vs. Analog**

There are two ways to communicate a message in a network: an analog signal or a digital signal. An *analog signal* is represented by a continuous waveform that passes through a communications medium and has been used for voice communication. The most common analog devices are the telephone handset, the speaker on your computer, or your iPod earphone, all of which create analog waveforms that your ear can hear.

A *digital signal* is a discrete, binary waveform, rather than a continuous waveform. Digital signals communicate information as strings of two discrete states: one bit and zero bits, which are represented as on-off electrical pulses. Computers use digital signals and require a modem to convert these digital signals into analog signals that can be sent over (or received from) telephone lines, cable lines, or wireless media that use analog signals (see Figure 7.5).

**Modem** stands for modulator-demodulator. Cable modems connect your computer to the Internet using a cable network. DSL modems connect your computer to the Internet using a telephone company's landline network. Wireless modems perform the same function as traditional modems, connecting your computer to a wireless network that could be a cell phone network, or a Wi-Fi network. Without modems, computers could not communicate with one another using analog networks (which include the telephone system and cable networks).
There are many different kinds of networks and ways of classifying them. One way of looking at networks is in terms of their geographic scope (see Table 7.1).

Local Area Networks
If you work in a business that uses networking, you are probably connecting to other employees and groups via a local area network. A local area network (LAN) is designed to connect personal computers and other digital devices within a half-mile or 500-meter radius. LANs typically connect a few computers in a small office, all the computers in one building, or all the computers in several buildings in close proximity. LANs also are used to link to long-distance wide area networks (WANs, described later in this section) and other networks around the world using the Internet.

Review Figure 7.1, which could serve as a model for a small LAN that might be used in an office. One computer is a dedicated network file server, providing users with access to shared computing resources in the network, including software programs and data files.

The server determines who gets access to what and in which sequence. The router connects the LAN to other networks, which could be the Internet or another corporate network, so that the LAN can exchange information with networks external to it. The most common LAN operating systems are Windows, Linux, and Novell. Each of these network operating systems supports TCP/IP as its default networking protocol.

Ethernet is the dominant LAN standard at the physical network level, specifying the physical medium to carry signals between computers, access control rules, and a standardized set of bits used to carry data over the system.

### Table 7.1  Types of Networks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>AREA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local area network (LAN)</td>
<td>Up to 500 meters (half a mile); an office or floor of a building</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campus area network (CAN)</td>
<td>Up to 1,000 meters (a mile); a college campus or corporate facility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metropolitan area network (MAN)</td>
<td>A city or metropolitan area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wide area network (WAN)</td>
<td>A transcontinental or global area</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A modem is a device that translates digital signals into analog form (and vice versa) so that computers can transmit data over analog networks such as telephone and cable networks.
Originally, Ethernet supported a data transfer rate of 10 megabits per second (Mbps). Newer versions, such as Gigabit Ethernet, support a data transfer rate of 1 gigabit per second (Gbps).

The LAN illustrated in Figure 7.1 uses a client/server architecture where the network operating system resides primarily on a single file server, and the server provides much of the control and resources for the network. Alternatively, LANs may use a peer-to-peer architecture. A peer-to-peer network treats all processors equally and is used primarily in small networks with 10 or fewer users. The various computers on the network can exchange data by direct access and can share peripheral devices without going through a separate server.

In LANs using the Windows Server family of operating systems, the peer-to-peer architecture is called the workgroup network model, in which a small group of computers can share resources, such as files, folders, and printers, over the network without a dedicated server. The Windows domain network model, in contrast, uses a dedicated server to manage the computers in the network.

Larger LANs have many clients and multiple servers, with separate servers for specific services, such as storing and managing files and databases (file servers or database servers), managing printers (print servers), storing and managing e-mail (mail servers), or storing and managing Web pages (Web servers).

Metropolitan and Wide Area Networks

Wide area networks (WANs) span broad geographical distances—entire regions, states, continents, or the entire globe. The most universal and powerful WAN is the Internet. Computers connect to a WAN through public networks, such as the telephone system or private cable systems, or through leased lines or satellites. A metropolitan area network (MAN) is a network that spans a metropolitan area, usually a city and its major suburbs. Its geographic scope falls between a WAN and a LAN.

TRANSMISSION MEDIA AND TRANSMISSION SPEED

Networks use different kinds of physical transmission media, including twisted pair wire, coaxial cable, fiber-optic cable, and media for wireless transmission. Each has advantages and limitations. A wide range of speeds is possible for any given medium depending on the software and hardware configuration. Table 7.2 compares these media.

Bandwidth: Transmission Speed

The total amount of digital information that can be transmitted through any telecommunications medium is measured in bits per second (bps). One signal change, or cycle, is required to transmit one or several bits; therefore, the transmission capacity of each type of telecommunications medium is a function of its frequency. The number of cycles per second that can be sent through that medium is measured in hertz—one hertz is equal to one cycle of the medium.

The range of frequencies that can be accommodated on a particular telecommunications channel is called its bandwidth. The bandwidth is the difference between the highest and lowest frequencies that can be accommodated on a single channel. The greater the range of frequencies, the greater the bandwidth and the greater the channel’s transmission capacity.
We all use the Internet, and many of us can’t do without it. It's become an indispensable personal and business tool. But what exactly is the Internet? How does it work, and what does Internet technology have to offer for business? Let’s look at the most important Internet features.

**WHAT IS THE INTERNET?**

The Internet has become the world’s most extensive, public communication system. It’s also the world's largest implementation of client/server computing and internetworking, linking millions of individual networks all over the world. This global network of networks began in the early 1970s as a U.S. Department of Defense network to link scientists and university professors around the world.

Most homes and small businesses connect to the Internet by subscribing to an Internet service provider. An Internet service provider (ISP) is a commercial organization with a permanent connection to the Internet that sells temporary connections to retail subscribers. EarthLink, NetZero, AT&T, and Time Warner are ISPs. Individuals also connect to the Internet through their business firms, universities, or research centers that have designated Internet domains.

There are a variety of services for ISP Internet connections. Connecting via a traditional telephone line and modem, at a speed of 56.6 kilobits per second (Kbps), used to be the most common form of connection worldwide, but it has been largely replaced by broadband connections. Digital subscriber line, cable, satellite Internet connections, and T lines provide these broadband services. Digital subscriber line (DSL) technologies operate over existing telephone lines to carry voice, data, and video at transmission rates ranging from 385 Kbps.
all the way up to 40 Mbps, depending on usage patterns and distance. **Cable Internet connections** provided by cable television vendors use digital cable coaxial lines to deliver high-speed Internet access to homes and businesses. They can provide high-speed access to the Internet of up to 50 Mbps, although most providers offer service ranging from 1 Mbps to 6 Mbps. In areas where DSL and cable services are unavailable, it is possible to access the Internet via satellite, although some satellite Internet connections have slower upload speeds than other broadband services.

T1 and T3 are international telephone standards for digital communication. They are leased, dedicated lines suitable for businesses or government agencies requiring high-speed guaranteed service levels. **T1 lines** offer guaranteed delivery at 1.54 Mbps, and T3 lines offer delivery at 45 Mbps. The Internet does not provide similar guaranteed service levels, but simply “best effort.”

**INTERNET ADDRESSING AND ARCHITECTURE**

The Internet is based on the TCP/IP networking protocol suite described earlier in this chapter. Every computer on the Internet is assigned a unique **Internet Protocol (IP) address**, which currently is a 32-bit number represented by four strings of numbers ranging from 0 to 255 separated by periods. For instance, the IP address of www.microsoft.com is 207.46.250.119.

When a user sends a message to another user on the Internet, the message is first decomposed into packets using the TCP protocol. Each packet contains its destination address. The packets are then sent from the client to the network server and from there on to as many other servers as necessary to arrive at a specific computer with a known address. At the destination address, the packets are reassembled into the original message.

**The Domain Name System**

Because it would be incredibly difficult for Internet users to remember strings of 12 numbers, the **Domain Name System (DNS)** converts domain names to IP addresses. The **domain name** is the English-like name that corresponds to the unique 32-bit numeric IP address for each computer connected to the Internet. DNS servers maintain a database containing IP addresses mapped to their corresponding domain names. To access a computer on the Internet, users need only specify its domain name.

DNS has a hierarchical structure (see Figure 7.6). At the top of the DNS hierarchy is the root domain. The child domain of the root is called a top-level domain, and the child domain of a top-level domain is called a second-level domain. Top-level domains are two- and three-character names you are familiar with from surfing the Web, for example, .com, .edu, .gov, and the various country codes such as .ca for Canada or .it for Italy. Second-level domains have two parts, designating a top-level name and a second-level name—such as buy.com, nyu.edu, or amazon.ca. A host name at the bottom of the hierarchy designates a specific computer on either the Internet or a private network.

The most common domain extensions currently available and officially approved are shown in the following list. Countries also have domain names such as .uk, .au, and .fr (United Kingdom, Australia, and France, respectively), and there is a new class of “internationalized” top-level domains that use non-English characters. In the future, this list will expand to include many more types of organizations and industries.
Internet data traffic is carried over transcontinental high-speed backbone networks that generally operate in the range of 45 Mbps to 2.5 Gbps (see Figure 7.7). These trunk lines are typically owned by long-distance telephone companies (called network service providers) or by national governments. Local connection lines are owned by regional telephone and cable television companies in the United States that connect retail users in homes and businesses to the Internet. The regional networks lease access to ISPs, private companies, and government institutions.

Each organization pays for its own networks and its own local Internet connection services, a part of which is paid to the long-distance trunk line owners. Individual Internet users pay ISPs for using their service, and they generally pay a flat subscription fee, no matter how much or how little they use the Internet. A debate is now raging on whether this arrangement should continue or whether heavy Internet users who download large video and music files should pay more for the bandwidth they consume. The Interactive Session on Organizations explores this topic, by examining the pros and cons of net neutrality.

**Internet Architecture and Governance**

Domain Name System is a hierarchical system with a root domain, top-level domains, second-level domains, and host computers at the third level.

- .com  Commercial organizations/businesses
- .edu  Educational institutions
- .gov  U.S. government agencies
- .mil  U.S. military
- .net  Network computers
- .org  Nonprofit organizations and foundations
- .biz  Business firms
- .info  Information providers
No one "owns" the Internet, and it has no formal management. However, worldwide Internet policies are established by a number of professional organizations and government bodies, including the Internet Architecture Board (IAB), which helps define the overall structure of the Internet; the Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Numbers (ICANN), which assigns IP addresses; and the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C), which sets Hypertext Markup Language and other programming standards for the Web. These organizations influence government agencies, network owners, ISPs, and software developers with the goal of keeping the Internet operating as efficiently as possible. The Internet must also conform to the laws of the sovereign nation-states in which it operates, as well as the technical infrastructures that exist within the nation-states. Although in the early years of the Internet and the Web there was very little legislative or executive interference, this situation is changing as the Internet plays a growing role in the distribution of information and knowledge, including content that some find objectionable.

ICANN was created by the Department of Commerce in 1986 to manage the domain name system, and the central core servers of the Internet domains located in the United States. Emerging nations and others have long called for the U.S. dominance of the Internet to end, and instead support a multi-national controlling agency. After the terrorist attacks on the United States on September 11, 2001, the U.S. refused to consider such a change. This opinion changed again in March 2014 when the Commerce Department announced its intention to transfer the domain name functions of the Internet
INTERACTIVE SESSION: ORGANIZATIONS

THE BATTLE OVER NET NEUTRALITY

What kind of Internet user are you? Do you primarily use the Net to do a little e-mail and online banking? Or are you online all day, watching YouTube videos, downloading music files, or playing online games? Do you use your iPhone to stream TV shows and movies on a regular basis? If you're a power Internet or smartphone user, you are consuming a great deal of bandwidth. Could hundreds of millions of people like you start to slow the Internet down?

Video streaming on Netflix accounts for 32 percent of all bandwidth use in the United States, and Google’s YouTube for 19 percent of Web traffic at peak hours. If user demand overwhelms network capacity, the Internet might not come to a screeching halt, but users could face sluggish download speeds and video transmission. Heavy use of iPhones in urban areas such as New York and San Francisco has already degraded service on the AT&T wireless network. AT&T reported that 3 percent of its subscriber base accounted for 40 percent of its data traffic.

Internet service providers (ISPs) assert that network congestion is a serious problem and that expanding their networks would require passing on burdensome costs to consumers. These companies believe differential pricing methods, which include data caps and metered use—charging based on the amount of bandwidth consumed—are the fairest way to finance necessary investments in their network infrastructures. But metering Internet use is not widely accepted, because of an ongoing debate about net neutrality.

Net neutrality is the idea that Internet service providers must allow customers equal access to content and applications, regardless of the source or nature of the content. Presently, the Internet is neutral: all Internet traffic is treated equally on a first-come, first-served basis by Internet backbone owners. However, this arrangement prevents telecommunications and cable companies from charging differentiated prices based on the amount of bandwidth consumed by the content being delivered over the Internet.

The strange alliance of net neutrality advocates includes MoveOn.org; the Christian Coalition; the American Library Association; data-intensive Web businesses such as Netflix, Amazon, and Google; major consumer groups; and a host of bloggers and small businesses. Net neutrality advocates argue that differentiated pricing would impose heavy costs on heavy bandwidth users such as YouTube, Skype, and other innovative services, preventing high-bandwidth startup companies from gaining traction. Net neutrality supporters also argue that without net neutrality, ISPs that are also cable companies, such as Comcast, might block online streaming video from Netflix or Hulu in order to force customers to use the cable company’s on-demand movie rental services.

Network owners believe regulation to enforce net neutrality will impede U.S. competitiveness by discouraging capital expenditure for new networks and curbing their networks’ ability to cope with the exploding demand for Internet and wireless traffic. U.S. Internet service lags behind many other nations in overall speed, cost, and quality of service, adding credibility to this argument. And with enough options for Internet access, dissatisfied consumers could simply switch to providers who enforce net neutrality and allow unlimited Internet use.

The wireless industry had been largely exempted from net neutrality rules, because the government determined it was a less mature network and companies should be allowed more freedom to manage traffic. Wireless providers already have tiered plans that charge heavy bandwidth users larger service fees.

A December 2012 report by the non-profit, non-partisan, public policy institute, New America Foundation (NAF), disputes these claims. Like personal computers, the processing capacity of the routers and switches in wired broadband networks has vastly expanded while the price has declined. Although total U.S. Internet data consumption rose 120% in 2012, the cost to transport the data decreased at a faster pace. The net cost to carriers was at worst flat and for the most part, down. The NAF report further asserts that lack of competition has enabled wired broadband carriers to charge higher rates, institute data caps, and spend less on the capital expenditures needed to upgrade and maintain their networks than they have in the past.

The courts have maintained that the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) has no authority to dictate how the Internet operates. The Communications Act of 1996 forbids the agency from managing the Internet as a “common carrier,” the
1. What is net neutrality? Why has the Internet operated under net neutrality up to this point in time?

2. Who's in favor of net neutrality? Who's opposed? Why?

3. What would be the impact on individual users, businesses, and government if Internet providers switched to a tiered service model for transmission over land lines as well as wireless?

4. It has been said that net neutrality is the most important issue facing the Internet since the advent of the Internet. Discuss the implications of this statement.

5. Are you in favor of legislation enforcing network neutrality? Why or why not?
technical means (NTIA, 2014; Wyatt, 2014). The hope is that the transition to a multinational body will not disrupt the orderly operation of the Internet.

**The Future Internet: IPv6 and Internet2**

The Internet was not originally designed to handle the transmission of massive quantities of data and billions of users. Because of sheer Internet population growth, the world is about to run out of available IP addresses using the old addressing convention. The old addressing system is being replaced by a new version of the IP addressing schema called IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 6), which contains 128-bit addresses (2 to the power of 128), or more than a quadrillion possible unique addresses. IPv6 is not compatible with the existing Internet addressing system, so the transition to the new standard will take years.

**Internet2** is an advanced networking consortium representing over 350 U.S. universities, private businesses, and government agencies working with 66,000 institutions across the United States and international networking partners from more than 100 countries. To connect these communities, Internet2 developed a high-capacity 100 Gbps network that serves as a testbed for leading-edge technologies that may eventually migrate to the public Internet, including telemedicine, distance learning, and other advanced applications not possible with consumer-grade Internet services. The fourth generation of this network is being rolled out to provide 8.8 terabits of capacity.

**INTERNET SERVICES AND COMMUNICATION TOOLS**

The Internet is based on client/server technology. Individuals using the Internet control what they do through client applications on their computers, such as Web browser software. The data, including e-mail messages and Web pages, are stored on servers. A client uses the Internet to request information from a particular Web server on a distant computer, and the server sends the requested information back to the client over the Internet. Chapters 5 and 6 describe how Web servers work with application servers and database servers to access information from an organization’s internal information systems applications and their associated databases. Client platforms today include not only PCs and other computers but also smartphones and tablets.

**Internet Services**

A client computer connecting to the Internet has access to a variety of services. These services include e-mail, chatting and instant messaging, electronic discussion groups, Telnet, File Transfer Protocol (FTP), and the Web. Table 7.3 provides a brief description of these services.

Each Internet service is implemented by one or more software programs. All of the services may run on a single server computer, or different services may be allocated to different machines. Figure 7.8 illustrates one way that these services can be arranged in a multiteried client/server architecture.

**E-mail** enables messages to be exchanged from computer to computer, with capabilities for routing messages to multiple recipients, forwarding messages, and attaching text documents or multimedia files to messages. Most e-mail today is sent through the Internet. The cost of e-mail is far lower than equivalent voice, postal, or overnight delivery costs, and e-mail messages arrive anywhere in the world in a matter of seconds.

Nearly 90 percent of U.S. workplaces have employees communicating interactively using chat or instant messaging tools. Chatting enables two or more people who are simultaneously connected to the Internet to hold live,
interactive conversations. Chat systems now support voice and video chat as well as written conversations. Many online retail businesses offer chat services on their Web sites to attract visitors, to encourage repeat purchases, and to improve customer service.

**Instant messaging** is a type of chat service that enables participants to create their own private chat channels. The instant messaging system alerts the user whenever someone on his or her private list is online so that the user can initiate a chat session with other individuals. Instant messaging systems for consumers include Yahoo! Messenger, Google Talk, AOL Instant Messenger, and Facebook Chat. Companies concerned with security use proprietary communications and messaging systems such as IBM Sametime.

Newsgroups are worldwide discussion groups posted on Internet electronic bulletin boards on which people share information and ideas on a defined topic, such as radiology or rock bands. Anyone can post messages on these bulletin boards for others to read. Many thousands of groups exist that discuss almost all conceivable topics.

### TABLE 7.3 MAJOR INTERNET SERVICES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAPABILITY</th>
<th>FUNCTIONS SUPPORTED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E-mail</td>
<td>Person-to-person messaging; document sharing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chatting and instant messaging</td>
<td>Interactive conversations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newsgroups</td>
<td>Discussion groups on electronic bulletin boards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telnet</td>
<td>Logging on to one computer system and doing work on another</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Transfer Protocol (FTP)</td>
<td>Transferring files from computer to computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World Wide Web</td>
<td>Retrieving, formatting, and displaying information (including text, audio, graphics, and video) using hypertext links</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIGURE 7.8 CLIENT/SERVER COMPUTING ON THE INTERNET**

Client computers running Web browsers and other software can access an array of services on servers over the Internet. These services may all run on a single server or on multiple specialized servers.
Employee use of e-mail, instant messaging, and the Internet is supposed to increase worker productivity, but the accompanying Interactive Session on Management shows that this may not always be the case. Many company managers now believe they need to monitor and even regulate their employees’ online activity. But is this ethical? Although there are some strong business reasons why companies may need to monitor their employees’ e-mail and Web activities, what does this mean for employee privacy?

**Voice over IP**

The Internet has also become a popular platform for voice transmission and corporate networking. **Voice over IP (VoIP)** technology delivers voice information in digital form using packet switching, avoiding the tolls charged by local and long-distance telephone networks (see Figure 7.9). Calls that would ordinarily be transmitted over public telephone networks travel over the corporate network based on the Internet Protocol, or the public Internet. Voice calls can be made and received with a computer equipped with a microphone and speakers or with a VoIP-enabled telephone.

Cable firms such as Time Warner and Cablevision provide VoIP service bundled with their high-speed Internet and cable offerings. Skype offers free VoIP worldwide using a peer-to-peer network, and Google has its own free VoIP service.

Although there are up-front investments required for an IP phone system, VoIP can reduce communication and network management costs by 20 to 30 percent. For example, VoIP saves Virgin Entertainment Group $700,000 per year in long-distance bills. In addition to lowering long-distance costs and eliminating monthly fees for private lines, an IP network provides a single voice-data infrastructure for both telecommunications and computing services. Companies no longer have to maintain separate networks or provide support services and personnel for each different type of network.

**Unified Communications**

In the past, each of the firm’s networks for wired and wireless data, voice communications, and videoconferencing operated independently of each other.
INTERACTIVE SESSION: MANAGEMENT

MONITORING EMPLOYEES ON NETWORKS: UNETHICAL OR GOOD BUSINESS?

The Internet has become an extremely valuable business tool, but it’s also a huge distraction for workers on the job. Employees are wasting valuable company time by surfing inappropriate Web sites (Facebook, shopping, sports, etc.), sending and receiving personal email, talking to friends via online chat, and downloading videos and music. According to IT research firm Gartner Inc., non-work-related Internet surfing results in an estimated 40% productivity loss each year for American businesses. A recent Gallup Poll found that the average employee spends over 75 minutes per day using office computers for non-business related activity. That translates into an annual loss of $6,250 per year, per employee. An average mid-size company of 500 employees could be expected to lose $3.25 million in lost productivity due to Internet misuse.

Many companies have begun monitoring employee use of e-mail and the Internet, sometimes without their knowledge. Many tools are now available for this purpose, including SONAR, Spector CNE Investigator, iSafe, OsMonitor, IMonitor, Work Examiner, Net Spy, Activity Monitor, Mobistealth, and Spytech. These products enable companies to record online searches, monitor file downloads and uploads, record keystrokes, keep tabs on emails, create transcripts of chats, or take certain screenshots of images displayed on computer screens. Instant messaging, text messaging, and social media monitoring are also increasing. Although U.S. companies have the legal right to monitor employee Internet and e-mail activity while they are at work, is such monitoring unethical, or is it simply good business?

Managers worry about the loss of time and employee productivity when employees are focusing on personal rather than company business. Too much time on personal business translates into lost revenue. Some employees may even be billing time they spend pursuing personal interests online to clients, thus overcharging them.

If personal traffic on company networks is too high, it can also clog the company’s network so that legitimate business work cannot be performed. Procter & Gamble (P&G) found that on an average day, employees were listening to 4,000 hours of music on Pandora and viewing 50,000 five-minute YouTube videos. These activities involved streaming huge quantities of data, which slowed down P&G’s Internet connection.

When employees use e-mail or the Web (including social networks) at employer facilities or with employer equipment, anything they do, including anything illegal, carries the company’s name. Therefore, the employer can be traced and held liable. Management in many firms fear that racist, sexually explicit, or other potentially offensive material accessed or traded by their employees could result in adverse publicity and even lawsuits for the firm. An estimated 27 percent of Fortune 500 organizations have had to defend themselves against claims of sexual harassment stemming from inappropriate email. Even if the company is found not to be liable, responding to lawsuits could run up huge legal bills. Symantec’s 2011 Social Media Protection Flash Poll found that the average litigation cost for companies with social media incidents ran over $650,000.

Companies also fear leakage of confidential information and trade secrets through e-mail or social networks. Another survey conducted by the American Management Association and the ePolicy Institute found that 14 percent of the employees polled admitted they had sent confidential or potentially embarrassing company e-mails to outsiders.

U.S. companies have the legal right to monitor what employees are doing with company equipment during business hours. The question is whether electronic surveillance is an appropriate tool for maintaining an efficient and positive workplace. Some companies try to ban all personal activities on corporate networks—zero tolerance. Others block employee access to specific Web sites or social sites, closely monitor e-mail messages, or limit personal time on the Web.

For example, P&G blocks Netflix and has asked employees to limit their use of Pandora. It still allows some YouTube viewing, and is not blocking access to social networking sites because staff use them for digital marketing campaigns. Ajax Boiler in Santa Ana, California, uses software from SpectorSoft Corporation that records all the Web sites employees visit, time spent at each site, and all e-mails sent. Financial services and investment firm Wedbush Securities monitors the daily e-mails, instant messag-
ing, and social networking activity of its 1,000-plus employees. The firm's e-mail monitoring software flags certain types of messages and keywords within messages for further investigation.

A number of firms have fired employees who have stepped out of bounds. A Proofpoint survey found that one in five large U.S. companies fired an employee for violating e-mail policies in the past year. Among managers who fired employees for Internet misuse, the majority did so because the employees' e-mail contained sensitive, confidential, or embarrassing information.

No solution is problem-free, but many consultants believe companies should write corporate policies on employee e-mail, social media, and Web use. The policies should include explicit ground rules that state, by position or level, under what circumstances employees can use company facilities for e-mail, blogging, or Web surfing. The policies should also inform employees whether these activities are monitored and explain why.

IBM now has "social computing guidelines" that cover employee activity on sites such as Facebook and Twitter. The guidelines urge employees not to conceal their identities, to remember that they are personally responsible for what they publish, and to refrain from discussing controversial topics that are not related to their IBM role.

The rules should be tailored to specific business needs and organizational cultures. For example, investment firms will need to allow many of their employees access to other investment sites. A company dependent on widespread information sharing, innovation, and independence could very well find that monitoring creates more problems than it solves.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Should managers monitor employee e-mail and Internet usage? Why or why not?
2. Describe an effective e-mail and Web use policy for a company.
3. Should managers inform employees that their Web behavior is being monitored? Or should managers monitor secretly? Why or why not?
Virtual Private Networks

What if you had a marketing group charged with developing new products and services for your firm with members spread across the United States? You would want them to be able to e-mail each other and communicate with the home office without any chance that outsiders could intercept the communications. In the past, one answer to this problem was to work with large private networking firms who offered secure, private, dedicated networks to customers. But this was an expensive solution. A much less-expensive solution is to create a virtual private network within the public Internet.

A virtual private network (VPN) is a secure, encrypted, private network that has been configured within a public network to take advantage of the economies of scale and management facilities of large networks, such as the Internet (see Figure 7.10). A VPN provides your firm with secure, encrypted communications at a much lower cost than the same capabilities offered by traditional non-Internet providers who use their private networks to secure communications. VPNs also provide a network infrastructure for combining voice and data networks.

Several competing protocols are used to protect data transmitted over the public Internet, including Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP). In a process called tunneling, packets of data are encrypted and wrapped inside IP packets. By adding this wrapper around a network message to hide its content, business firms create a private connection that travels through the public Internet.

THE WEB

The Web is the most popular Internet service. It’s a system with universally accepted standards for storing, retrieving, formatting, and displaying information using a client/server architecture. Web pages are formatted using hypertext with embedded links that connect documents to one another and that also link pages to other objects, such as sound, video, or animation files. When you click a graphic and a video clip plays, you have clicked a hyperlink. A typical Web site is a collection of Web pages linked to a home page.

Figure 7.10 A Virtual Private Network Using the Internet

This VPN is a private network of computers linked using a secure “tunnel” connection over the Internet. It protects data transmitted over the public Internet by encoding the data and “wrapping” them within the Internet Protocol (IP). By adding a wrapper around a network message to hide its content, organizations can create a private connection that travels through the public Internet.
Hypertext
Web pages are based on a standard Hypertext Markup Language (HTML), which formats documents and incorporates dynamic links to other documents and pictures stored in the same or remote computers (see Chapter 5). Web pages are accessible through the Internet because Web browser software operating your computer can request Web pages stored on an Internet host server using the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP). HTTP is the communications standard used to transfer pages on the Web. For example, when you type a Web address in your browser, such as http://www.sec.gov, your browser sends an HTTP request to the sec.gov server requesting the home page of sec.gov.

HTTP is the first set of letters at the start of every Web address, followed by the domain name, which specifies the organization's server computer that is storing the document. Most companies have a domain name that is the same as or closely related to their official corporate name. The directory path and document name are two more pieces of information within the Web address that help the browser track down the requested page. Together, the address is called a uniform resource locator (URL). When typed into a browser, a URL tells the browser software exactly where to look for the information. For example, in the URL http://www.megacorp.com/content/features/082610.html, http names the protocol used to display Web pages, www.megacorp.com is the domain name, content/features is the directory path that identifies where on the domain Web server the page is stored, and 082610.html is the document name and the name of the format it is in (it is an HTML page).

Web Servers
A Web server is software for locating and managing stored Web pages. It locates the Web pages requested by a user on the computer where they are stored and delivers the Web pages to the user's computer. Server applications usually run on dedicated computers, although they can all reside on a single computer in small organizations.

The most common Web server in use today is Apache HTTP Server, followed by Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS). Apache is an open source product that is free of charge and can be downloaded from the Web.

Searching for Information on the Web
No one knows for sure how many Web pages there really are. The surface Web is the part of the Web that search engines visit and about which information is recorded. For instance, Google visited an estimated 600 billion pages in 2013, and this reflects a large portion of the publicly accessible Web page population. But there is a “deep Web” that contains an estimated 1 trillion additional pages, many of them proprietary (such as the pages of the Wall Street Journal Online, which cannot be visited without a subscription or access code) or that are stored in protected corporate databases. Searching for information on Facebook is another matter. With an estimated 1.3 billion members, each with pages of text, photos, and media, the population of Web pages is larger than many estimates. But Facebook is a “closed” Web, and its pages are not searchable by Google or other search engines.

Search Engines
Obviously, with so many Web pages, finding specific Web pages that can help you or your business, nearly instantly, is an important problem. The question is, how can you find the one or two pages you really want and need out of billions of indexed Web pages? Search engines attempt to solve the problem of finding useful information on the Web nearly instantly,
and, arguably, they are the “killer app” of the Internet era. Today’s search engines can sift through HTML files, files of Microsoft Office applications, PDF files, as well as audio, video, and image files. There are hundreds of different search engines in the world, but the vast majority of search results are supplied by Google, Yahoo!, and Microsoft’s Bing (see Figure 7.11).

Web search engines started out in the early 1990s as relatively simple software programs that roamed the nascent Web, visiting pages and gathering information about the content of each page. The first search engines were simple keyword indexes of all the pages they visited, leaving the user with lists of pages that may not have been truly relevant to their search.

In 1994, Stanford University computer science students David Filo and Jerry Yang created a hand-selected list of their favorite Web pages and called it “Yet Another Hierarchical Officious Oracle,” or Yahoo. Yahoo was not initially a search engine but rather an edited selection of Web sites organized by categories the editors found useful. Currently Yahoo relies on Microsoft’s Bing for search results.

In 1998, Larry Page and Sergey Brin, two other Stanford computer science students, released their first version of Google. This search engine was different: Not only did it index each Web page’s words but it also ranked search results based on the relevance of each page. Page patented the idea of a page ranking system (called PageRank System), which essentially measures the popularity of a Web page by calculating the number of sites that link to that page as well as the number of pages to which it links. The premise is that really popular Web pages are more “relevant” to users. Brin contributed a unique Web crawler program that indexed not only keywords on a page but also combinations of words (such as authors and the titles of their articles). These two ideas became the foundation for the Google search engine. Figure 7.12 illustrates how Google works.

**Mobile Search** With the growth of mobile smartphones and tablet computers, and with about 167 million Americans accessing the Internet via mobile devices, the nature of e-commerce and search is changing. Mobile search from smartphones and tablets made up about 50 percent of all searches in 2014, and

---

**FIGURE 7.11 TOP WEB SEARCH ENGINES IN THE UNITED STATES**

Google is the most popular search engine, handling nearly 70 percent of Web searches in the United States and around 90% in Europe.

Sources: Based on data from comScore Inc., February 2014.
according to Google will expand rapidly in the next few years. Both Google and Yahoo have developed new search interfaces to make searching and shopping from smartphones more convenient. Amazon, for instance, sold over $1 billion in goods in 2013 through mobile searches of its store (Search Agency, 2013). While smartphones are widely used to shop, actual purchases typically take place on laptops or desktops, followed by tablets.

**Search Engine Marketing** Search engines have become major advertising platforms and shopping tools by offering what is now called **search engine marketing**. Searching for information is one of the Web’s most popular activities: 60% of American adult Internet users use a search engine at least once a day, generating about 90 billion queries a month. With this huge audience, search engines are the foundation for the most lucrative form of online marketing and advertising, search engine marketing. When users enter a search term at Google, Bing, Yahoo, or any of the other sites serviced by these search engines, they receive two types of listings: sponsored links, for which advertisers have paid to be listed (usually at the top of the search results page), and unsponsored “organic” search results. In addition, advertisers can purchase small text boxes on the side of search results pages. The paid, sponsored advertisements are the fastest growing form of Internet advertising and are powerful new marketing tools that precisely match consumer interests with advertising messages at the right moment. Search engine marketing monetizes the value of the search process. In 2014, search engine marketing is expected to generate $22.8 billion in revenue, nearly half of all online advertising ($51 billion).
Google will for over 38% of all online advertising in 2014. About 97% of Google’s revenue of $60 billion in 2013 came from online advertising, and 95% of the ad revenue came from search engine marketing (Google, 2014).

Because search engine marketing is so effective (it has the highest click-through rate and the highest return on ad investment), companies seek to optimize their Web sites for search engine recognition. The better optimized the page is, the higher a ranking it will achieve in search engine result listings. **Search engine optimization (SEO)** is the process of improving the quality and volume of Web traffic to a Web site by employing a series of techniques that help a Web site achieve a higher ranking with the major search engines when certain keywords and phrases are put into the search field. One technique is to make sure that the keywords used in the Web site description match the keywords likely to be used as search terms by prospective customers. For example, your Web site is more likely to be among the first ranked by search engines if it uses the keyword “lighting” rather than “lamps” if most prospective customers are searching for “lighting.” It is also advantageous to link your Web site to as many other Web sites as possible because search engines evaluate such links to determine the popularity of a Web page and how it is linked to other content on the Web. Search engines can be gamed by scammers who create thousands of phony Web site pages and link them altogether, or link them to a single retailer’s site in an attempt to fool Google’s search engine. Firms can also pay so-called “link farms” to link to their site. Google changed its search algorithm in 2012. Codenamed “Penguin,” the new algorithm examines the quality of links more carefully with the intent of down ranking sites that have a suspicious pattern of sites linking to them. Penguin is updated annually and published.

Google and other search engine firms are attempting to refine search engine algorithms to capture more of what the user intended, and more the “meaning” of a search. Google introduced Hummingbird, its new search algorithm in September 2013. Rather than evaluate each word separately in a search, Google’s semantically informed Hummingbird will try to evaluate an entire sentence. So, if your search is a long sentence like “Google annual report selected financial data 2013,” Hummingbird should be able to figure out that you really want the SEC Form 10k report filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on March 31, 2014. How about “Italian restaurant Brooklyn Bridge”? This will return the name and location of a number of Italian restaurants in vicinity of the Brooklyn Bridge. Semantic search more closely follows conversational search, or search as you would ordinarily speak it to another human being. Google’s predictive search is now a part of most search results. In **predictive search**, this part of the search algorithm guesses what you are looking for, and suggests search terms as you enter your search. Google searches also take advantage of Knowledge Graph, an effort of the search algorithm to anticipate what you might want to know more about as you search on a topic. Results of the knowledge graph appear on the right of the screen and contain more information about the topic or person you are searching on.

In general, search engines have been very helpful to small businesses that cannot afford large marketing campaigns. Because shoppers are looking for a specific product or service when they use search engines, they are what marketers call “hot prospects”—people who are looking for information and often intending to buy. Moreover, search engines charge only for click-throughs to a site. Merchants do not have to pay for ads that don’t work, only for ads that receive a click. Consumers benefit from search engine marketing because ads for merchants appear only when consumers are looking for a specific product. There
are no pop-ups, Flash animations, videos, interstitials, e-mails, or other irrelevant communications to deal with. Thus, search engine marketing saves consumers cognitive energy and reduces search costs (including the cost of transportation needed to physically search for products). One study estimated the global value of search to both merchants and consumers to be more than $800 billion, with about 65 percent of the benefit going to consumers in the form of lower search costs and lower prices (McKinsey, 2011). Google and Microsoft face challenges ahead as desktop PC search growth slows, and revenues decline because the price of search engine ads is declining slightly. The growth in mobile search does not make up for the loss of desktop search revenues because mobile ads sell for generally half as much as desktop search ads.

**Social Search** One problem with Google and mechanical search engines is that they are so thorough: Enter a search for “ultra computers” and in .2 seconds you will receive over 300 million responses! Search engines are not very discriminating. **Social search** is an effort to provide fewer, more relevant, and trustworthy search results based on a person’s network of social contacts. In contrast to the top search engines that use a mathematical algorithm to find pages that satisfy your query, a social search Web site would review your friends’ recommendations (and their friends’), their past Web visits, and their use of “Like” buttons.

In January 2013 Facebook launched Graph Search, a social network search engine that responds to user search queries with information from the user’s social network of friends and connections. Graph Search relies upon the huge amount of data on Facebook that is, or can be, linked to individuals and organizations. You might use Graph Search to search for Boston restaurants that your friends like, alumni from the University of South Carolina who like Lady Gaga, or pictures of your friends before 2010. Google has developed Google +1 as a social layer on top of its existing search engine. Users can place a +1 next to the Web sites they found helpful, and their friends will be notified automatically. Subsequent searches by their friends would list the +1 sites recommended by friends higher up on the page. One problem with social search is that your close friends may not have intimate knowledge of topics you are exploring, or they may have tastes you don’t appreciate. It’s also possible your close friends don’t have any knowledge about what you are searching for.

**Semantic Search** Another way for search engines to become more discriminating and helpful is to make search engines that could understand what it is we are really looking for. Called “semantic search” the goal is to build a search engine that could really understand human language and behavior. For instance, in 2012 Google's search engine began delivering more than millions of links. It started to give users more facts and direct answers, and to provide more relevant links to sites based on the search engine's estimation of what the user intended, and even on the user’s past search behavior. Google's search engine is trying to understand what people are most likely thinking about when they search for something. Google hopes to use its massive database of objects (people, places, things), and smart software to provide users better results than just millions of hits. For instance, do a search on “Lake Tahoe” and the search engine will return basic facts about Tahoe (altitude, average temperature, and local fish), a map, and hotel accommodations (Efrati, 2012).

Although search engines were originally designed to search text documents, the explosion of photos and videos on the Internet created a demand for searching and classifying these visual objects. Facial recognition software can create a digital version of a human face. In 2012 Facebook introduced
its facial recognition software and combined it with tagging, to create a new feature called Tag Suggest. The software creates a digital facial print, similar to a fingerprint. Users can put their own tagged photo on their timeline, and their friend's timelines. Once a person's photo is tagged, Facebook can pick that person out of a group photo, and identify for others who is in the photo. You can also search for people on Facebook using their digital image to find and identify them.

**Intelligent Agent Shopping Bots** Chapter 11 describes the capabilities of software agents with built-in intelligence that can gather or filter information and perform other tasks to assist users. **Shopping bots** use intelligent agent software for searching the Internet for shopping information. Shopping bots such as MySimon or PriceGrabber can help people interested in making a purchase filter and retrieve information about products of interest, evaluate competing products according to criteria the users have established, and negotiate with vendors for price and delivery terms. Many of these shopping agents search the Web for pricing and availability of products specified by the user and return a list of sites that sell the item along with pricing information and a purchase link.

**Web 2.0**

Today's Web sites don't just contain static content—they enable people to collaborate, share information, and create new services and content online. These second-generation interactive Internet-based services are referred to as **Web 2.0**. If you have shared photos over the Internet at Flickr or another photo site, pinned a photo on Pinterest, posted a video to YouTube, created a blog, or added an app to your Facebook page, you've used some of these Web 2.0 services.

Web 2.0 has four defining features: interactivity, real-time user control, social participation (sharing), and user-generated content. The technologies and services behind these features include cloud computing, software mashups and apps, blogs, RSS, wikis, and social networks.

Mashups, which we introduced in Chapter 5, are software services that enable users and system developers to mix and match content or software components to create something entirely new. For example, Yahoo's photo storage and sharing site Flickr combines photos with other information about the images provided by users and tools to make it usable within other programming environments. Web 2.0 tools and services have fueled the creation of social networks and other online communities where people can interact with one another in the manner of their choosing.

A **blog**, the popular term for a Weblog, is a personal Web site that typically contains a series of chronological entries (newest to oldest) by its author, and links to related Web pages. Blogging is a major activity for U.S. Internet users: 74 million read blogs, and 22 million write blogs or post to blogs. The blog may include a **blogroll** (a collection of links to other blogs) and **trackbacks** (a list of entries in other blogs that refer to a post on the first blog). Most blogs allow readers to post comments on the blog entries as well. The act of creating a blog is often referred to as "blogging." Blogs can be hosted by a third-party service such as Blogger.com, TypePad.com, and Xanga.com, and blogging features have been incorporated into social networks such as Facebook and collaboration platforms such as Lotus Notes. WordPress is a leading open source blogging tool and content management system. **Microblogging**, used in Twitter, is a type of blogging that features short posts of 140 characters or less.
Blog pages are usually variations on templates provided by the blogging service or software. Therefore, millions of people without HTML skills of any kind can post their own Web pages and share content with others. The totality of blog-related Web sites is often referred to as the blogosphere. Although blogs have become popular personal publishing tools, they also have business uses (see Chapters 2 and 10).

If you're an avid blog reader, you might use RSS to keep up with your favorite blogs without constantly checking them for updates. RSS, which stands for Really Simple Syndication or Rich Site Summary, pulls specified content from Web sites and feeds it automatically to users' computers. RSS reader software gathers material from the Web sites or blogs that you tell it to scan and brings new information from those sites to you. RSS readers are available through Web sites such as Google and Yahoo, and they have been incorporated into the major Web browsers and e-mail programs.

Blogs allow visitors to add comments to the original content, but they do not allow visitors to change the original posted material. Wikis, in contrast, are collaborative Web sites where visitors can add, delete, or modify content on the site, including the work of previous authors. Wiki comes from the Hawaiian word for “quick.”

Wiki software typically provides a template that defines layout and elements common to all pages, displays user-editable software program code, and then renders the content into an HTML-based page for display in a Web browser. Some wiki software allows only basic text formatting, whereas other tools allow the use of tables, images, or even interactive elements, such as polls or games. Most wikis provide capabilities for monitoring the work of other users and correcting mistakes.

Because wikis make information sharing so easy, they have many business uses. The U.S. Department of Homeland Security’s National Cyber Security Center (NCSC) deployed a wiki to facilitate collaboration among federal agencies on cybersecurity. NCSC and other agencies use the wiki for real-time information sharing on threats, attacks, and responses and as a repository for technical and standards information. Pixar Wiki is a collaborative community wiki for publicizing the work of Pixar Animation Studios. The wiki format allows anyone to create or edit an article about a Pixar film.

Social networking sites enable users to build communities of friends and professional colleagues. Members typically create a “profile,” a Web page for posting photos, videos, MP3 files, and text, and then share these profiles with others on the service identified as their “friends” or contacts. Social networking sites are highly interactive, offer real-time user control, rely on user-generated content, and are broadly based on social participation and sharing of content and opinions. Leading social networking sites include Facebook, Twitter (with 1.3 billion and 270 million monthly active users respectively in 2014), and LinkedIn (for professional contacts).

For many, social networking sites are the defining Web 2.0 application, and one that has radically changed how people spend their time online; how people communicate and with whom; how business people stay in touch with customers, suppliers, and employees; how providers of goods and services learn about their customers; and how advertisers reach potential customers. The large social networking sites are also morphing into application development platforms where members can create and sell software applications to other members of the community. Facebook alone has over 1 million developers who created over 550,000 applications for gaming, video sharing, and communicating with friends and family. We talk more about business
applications of social networking in Chapters 2 and 10, and you can find social networking discussions in many other chapters of this book. You can also find a more detailed discussion of Web 2.0 in our Learning Tracks.

**Web 3.0 and the Future Web**

Americans conducted about 19 billion searches in January 2014 (comScore, 2014). How many of these produced a meaningful result (a useful answer in the first three listings)? Arguably, fewer than half. Google, Yahoo, Microsoft, and Amazon are all trying to increase the odds of people finding meaningful answers to search engine queries. But with over 500 billion Web pages indexed, the means available for finding the information you really want are quite primitive, based on the words used on the pages, and the relative popularity of the page among people who use those same search terms. In other words, it's hit or miss.

To a large extent, the future of the Web involves developing techniques to make searching the 500 billion public Web pages more productive and meaningful for ordinary people. Web 1.0 solved the problem of obtaining access to information. Web 2.0 solved the problem of sharing that information with others and building new Web experiences. **Web 3.0** is the promise of a future Web where all this digital information, all these contacts, can be woven together into a single meaningful experience.

Sometimes this is referred to as the **Semantic Web**. “Semantic” refers to meaning. Most of the Web's content today is designed for humans to read and for computers to display, not for computer programs to analyze and manipulate. Semantic Search, described above, is a subset of a larger effort to make the Web more intelligent, more humanlike (W3C, 2012). Search engines can discover when a particular term or keyword appears in a Web document, but they do not really understand its meaning or how it relates to other information on the Web. You can check this out on Google by entering two searches. First, enter “Paris Hilton”. Next, enter “Hilton in Paris”. Because Google does not understand ordinary English, it has no idea that you are interested in the Hilton Hotel in Paris in the second search. Because it cannot understand the meaning of pages it has indexed, Google's search engine returns the most popular pages for those queries where “Hilton” and “Paris” appear on the pages.

First described in a 2001 *Scientific American* article, the Semantic Web is a collaborative effort led by the World Wide Web Consortium to add a layer of meaning atop the existing Web to reduce the amount of human involvement in searching for and processing Web information. For instance, the New York Times launched a semantic application called Longitude which provides a graphical interface to access the Times content. You can ask for stories about Germany in the last 24 hours, or a city in the United States, to retrieve all recent stories in the Times.

Views on the future of the Web vary, but they generally focus on ways to make the Web more “intelligent,” with machine-facilitated understanding of information promoting a more intuitive and effective user experience. For instance, let's say you want to set up a party with your tennis buddies at a local restaurant Friday night after work. One problem is that you are already scheduled to go to a movie with another friend. In a Semantic Web 3.0 environment, you would be able to coordinate this change in plans with the schedules of your tennis buddies and the schedule of your movie friend, and make a reservation at the restaurant all with a single set of commands issued as text or voice to your handheld smartphone. Right now, this capability is beyond our grasp.
Work proceeds slowly on making the Web a more intelligent experience, in large part because it is difficult to make machines, including software programs, that are truly intelligent like humans. But there are other views of the future Web. Some see a 3-D Web where you can walk through pages in a 3-D environment. Others point to the idea of a pervasive Web that controls everything from a city’s traffic lights and water usage, to the lights in your living room, to your car’s rear view mirror, not to mention managing your calendar and appointments. This is referred to as the “Internet of Things.”

The Internet of Things includes the widespread use and distribution of sensors. Firms like IBM, HP, and Oracle are exploring how to build smart machines, factories, and cities through extensive use of remote sensors and fast cloud computing. We provide more detail on this topic in the following section.

The “App Internet” is another element in the future Web. The growth of apps within the mobile platform is astounding: Over 80% of mobile minutes in the United States are generated through apps, only 20% using browsers. Apps give users direct access to content and are much faster than loading a browser and searching for content.

The visual Web is another part of the future Web. The “visual Web” refers to Web sites like Pinterest where pictures replace text documents, where users search on pictures, and where pictures of products replace display ads for products. Pinterest is a social networking site that provides users (as well as brands) with an online board to which they can “pin” interesting pictures. Looking for a blue dress, or black dress shirt? Google will deliver thousands of links to sites that sell these items. Pinterest will deliver a much smaller collection of magazine quality photos linked subtly to vendor Web sites. Considered the fastest growing Web site in history, Pinterest has 70 million monthly users and was the 35th most popular Web destination in 2014. The Instagram app is another example of the visual Web. Instagram is a photo and video sharing site that allows users to take pictures, enhance them, and share them with friends on other social sites like Facebook, Twitter, Tumblr, and Google+. In 2014 Instagram had 220 million monthly active users.

Other complementary trends leading toward a future Web 3.0 include more widespread use of cloud computing and software as a service (SaaS) business models, ubiquitous connectivity among mobile platforms and Internet access devices, and the transformation of the Web from a network of separate siloed applications and content into a more seamless and interoperable whole. These more modest visions of the future Web 3.0 are more likely to be realized in the near term.

7.4 What are the principal technologies and standards for wireless networking, communication, and Internet access?

Welcome to the wireless revolution! Cell phones, smartphones, tablets, and wireless-enabled personal computers have morphed into portable media and computing platforms that let you perform many of the computing tasks you used to do at your desk, and a whole lot more. We introduced smartphones in our discussions of the mobile digital platform in Chapters 1 and 5. Smartphones such as the iPhone, Android phones, and BlackBerry combine the functionality of a cell phone with that of a mobile laptop computer with Wi-Fi capability. This makes it possible to combine music, video, Internet
access, and telephone service in one device. A large part of the Internet is becoming a mobile, access-anywhere, broadband service for the delivery of video, music, and Web search.

**CELLULAR SYSTEMS**

In 2013, over 1.8 billion cell phones were sold worldwide. In the United States, there are 365 million cell phone subscriptions, and 164 million people have smartphones. About 167 million people access the Web using their phone (eMarketer, 2014). In a few years, smartphones will be the predominant source of searches, not the desktop PC. Digital cellular service uses several competing standards. In Europe and much of the rest of the world outside the United States, the standard is Global System for Mobile Communications (GSM). GSM’s strength is its international roaming capability. There are GSM cell phone systems in the United States, including T-Mobile and AT&T.

A competing standard in the United States is Code Division Multiple Access (CDMA), which is the system used by Verizon and Sprint. CDMA was developed by the military during World War II. It transmits over several frequencies, occupies the entire spectrum, and randomly assigns users to a range of frequencies over time, making it more efficient than GSM.

Earlier generations of cellular systems were designed primarily for voice and limited data transmission in the form of short text messages. Today wireless carriers offer 3G and 4G networks. **3G networks**, with transmission speeds ranging from 144 Kbps for mobile users in, say, a car, to more than 2 Mbps for stationary users, offer fair transmission speeds for e-mail, browsing the Web, and online shopping, but are too slow for videos. **4G networks** have much higher speeds: 100 megabits/second download, and 50 megabits upload speed, with more than enough capacity for watching high definition video on your smartphone. Long Term Evolution (LTE) and mobile Worldwide Interoperability for Microwave Access (WiMax—see the following section) are the current 4G standards.

**WIRELESS COMPUTER NETWORKS AND INTERNET ACCESS**

An array of technologies provide high-speed wireless access to the Internet for PCs and mobile devices. These new high-speed services have extended Internet access to numerous locations that could not be covered by traditional wired Internet services, and have made ubiquitous computing, anywhere, anytime, a reality.

**Bluetooth**

Bluetooth is the popular name for the 802.15 wireless networking standard, which is useful for creating small **personal area networks (PANS)**. It links up to eight devices within a 10-meter area using low-power, radio-based communication and can transmit up to 722 Kbps in the 2.4-GHz band.

Wireless phones, pagers, computers, printers, and computing devices using Bluetooth communicate with each other and even operate each other without direct user intervention (see Figure 7.13). For example, a person could direct a notebook computer to send a document file wirelessly to a printer. Bluetooth connects wireless keyboards and mice to PCs or cell phones to earpieces without wires. Bluetooth has low power requirements, making it appropriate for battery-powered handheld computers or cell phones.
Although Bluetooth lends itself to personal networking, it has uses in large corporations. For example, FedEx drivers use Bluetooth to transmit the delivery data captured by their handheld PowerPad computers to cellular transmitters, which forward the data to corporate computers. Drivers no longer need to spend time docking their handheld units physically in the transmitters, and Bluetooth has saved FedEx $20 million per year.

**Wi-Fi and Wireless Internet Access**

The 802.11 set of standards for wireless LANs and wireless Internet access is also known as **Wi-Fi**. The first of these standards to be widely adopted was 802.11b, which can transmit up to 11 Mbps in the unlicensed 2.4-GHz band and has an effective distance of 30 to 50 meters. The 802.11g standard can transmit up to 54 Mbps in the 2.4-GHz range. 802.11n is capable of transmitting over 100 Mbps. Today’s PCs and netbooks have built-in support for Wi-Fi, as do the iPhone, iPad, and other smartphones.

In most Wi-Fi communication, wireless devices communicate with a wired LAN using access points. An access point is a box consisting of a radio receiver/transmitter and antennas that links to a wired network, router, or hub. Mobile access points such as Verizon’s Mobile Hotspots use the existing cellular network to create Wi-Fi connections.

Figure 7.14 illustrates an 802.11 wireless LAN that connects a small number of mobile devices to a larger wired LAN and to the Internet. Most wireless devices are client machines. The servers that the mobile client stations need to use are on the wired LAN. The access point controls the wireless stations and acts as a bridge between the main wired LAN and the wireless LAN. (A bridge connects two LANs based on different technologies.) The access point also controls the wireless stations.
Mobile laptop computers equipped with network interface cards link to the wired LAN by communicating with the access point. The access point uses radio waves to transmit network signals from the wired network to the client adapters, which convert them into data that the mobile device can understand. The client adapter then transmits the data from the mobile device back to the access point, which forwards the data to the wired network.

The most popular use for Wi-Fi today is for high-speed wireless Internet service. In this instance, the access point plugs into an Internet connection, which could come from a cable service or DSL telephone service. Computers within range of the access point use it to link wirelessly to the Internet.

Hotspots typically consist of one or more access points providing wireless Internet access in a public place. Some hotspots are free or do not require any additional software to use; others may require activation and the establishment of a user account by providing a credit card number over the Web.

Businesses of all sizes are using Wi-Fi networks to provide low-cost wireless LANs and Internet access. Wi-Fi hotspots can be found in hotels, airport lounges, libraries, cafes, and college campuses to provide mobile access to the Internet. Dartmouth College is one of many campuses where students now use Wi-Fi for research, course work, and entertainment.

Wi-Fi technology poses several challenges, however. One is Wi-Fi’s security features, which make these wireless networks vulnerable to intruders. We provide more detail about Wi-Fi security issues in Chapter 8.

Another drawback of Wi-Fi networks is susceptibility to interference from nearby systems operating in the same spectrum, such as wireless phones, microwave ovens, or other wireless LANs. However, wireless networks based on the 802.11n standard are able to solve this problem by using multiple wireless antennas in tandem to transmit and receive data and technology called MIMO (multiple input multiple output) to coordinate multiple simultaneous radio signals.
WiMax

A surprisingly large number of areas in the United States and throughout the world do not have access to Wi-Fi or fixed broadband connectivity. The range of Wi-Fi systems is no more than 300 feet from the base station, making it difficult for rural groups that don't have cable or DSL service to find wireless access to the Internet.

The IEEE developed a new family of standards known as WiMax to deal with these problems. **WiMax**, which stands for Worldwide Interoperability for Microwave Access, is the popular term for IEEE Standard 802.16. It has a wireless access range of up to 31 miles and transmission speed of up to 75 Mbps.

WiMax antennas are powerful enough to beam high-speed Internet connections to rooftop antennas of homes and businesses that are miles away. Cellular handsets and laptops with WiMax capabilities are appearing in the marketplace. Mobile WiMax is one of the 4G network technologies we discussed earlier in this chapter.

**RFID AND WIRELESS SENSOR NETWORKS**

Mobile technologies are creating new efficiencies and ways of working throughout the enterprise. In addition to the wireless systems we have just described, radio frequency identification systems and wireless sensor networks are having a major impact.

**Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)**

**Radio frequency identification (RFID)** systems provide a powerful technology for tracking the movement of goods throughout the supply chain. RFID systems use tiny tags with embedded microchips containing data about an item and its location to transmit radio signals over a short distance to RFID readers. The RFID readers then pass the data over a network to a computer for processing. Unlike bar codes, RFID tags do not need line-of-sight contact to be read.

The RFID tag is electronically programmed with information that can uniquely identify an item plus other information about the item, such as its location, where and when it was made, or its status during production. Embedded in the tag is a microchip for storing the data. The rest of the tag is an antenna that transmits data to the reader.

The reader unit consists of an antenna and radio transmitter with a decoding capability attached to a stationary or handheld device. The reader emits radio waves in ranges anywhere from 1 inch to 100 feet, depending on its power output, the radio frequency employed, and surrounding environmental conditions. When a RFID tag comes within the range of the reader, the tag is activated and starts sending data. The reader captures these data, decodes them, and sends them back over a wired or wireless network to a host computer for further processing (see Figure 7.15). Both RFID tags and antennas come in a variety of shapes and sizes.

In inventory control and supply chain management, RFID systems capture and manage more detailed information about items in warehouses or in production than bar coding systems. If a large number of items are shipped together, RFID systems track each pallet, lot, or even unit item in the shipment. This technology may help companies such as Walmart improve receiving and storage operations by improving their ability to "see" exactly what stock is stored in warehouses or on retail store shelves. Dundee Precious Metals, described in
RFID uses low-powered radio transmitters to read data stored in a tag at distances ranging from 1 inch to 100 feet. The reader captures the data from the tag and sends them over a network to a host computer for processing.

Walmart has installed RFID readers at store receiving docks to record the arrival of pallets and cases of goods shipped with RFID tags. The RFID reader reads the tags a second time just as the cases are brought onto the sales floor from backroom storage areas. Software combines sales data from Walmart’s point-of-sale systems and the RFID data regarding the number of cases brought out to the sales floor. The program determines which items will soon be depleted and automatically generates a list of items to pick in the warehouse to replenish store shelves before they run out. This information helps Walmart reduce out-of-stock items, increase sales, and further shrink its costs.

The cost of RFID tags used to be too high for widespread use, but now it starts at around 7 cents per tag in the United States. As the price decreases, RFID is starting to become cost-effective for many applications.

In addition to installing RFID readers and tagging systems, companies may need to upgrade their hardware and software to process the massive amounts of data produced by RFID systems—transactions that could add up to tens or hundreds of terabytes.

Software is used to filter, aggregate, and prevent RFID data from overloading business networks and system applications. Applications often need to be redesigned to accept large volumes of frequently generated RFID data and to share those data with other applications. Major enterprise software vendors, including SAP and Oracle PeopleSoft, now offer RFID-ready versions of their supply chain management applications.

**Wireless Sensor Networks**

If your company wanted state-of-the-art technology to monitor building security or detect hazardous substances in the air, it might deploy a wireless sensor network. **Wireless sensor networks (WSNs)** are networks of interconnected wireless devices that are embedded into the physical environment to provide
measurements of many points over large spaces. These devices have built-in processing, storage, and radio frequency sensors and antennas. They are linked into an interconnected network that routes the data they capture to a computer for analysis.

These networks range from hundreds to thousands of nodes. Because wireless sensor devices are placed in the field for years at a time without any maintenance or human intervention, they must have very low power requirements and batteries capable of lasting for years.

Figure 7.16 illustrates one type of wireless sensor network, with data from individual nodes flowing across the network to a server with greater processing power. The server acts as a gateway to a network based on Internet technology.

Wireless sensor networks are valuable in areas such as monitoring environmental changes, monitoring traffic or military activity, protecting property, efficiently operating and managing machinery and vehicles, establishing security perimeters, monitoring supply chain management, or detecting chemical, biological, or radiological material.

RFID systems and wireless sensor networks are major sources of “Big Data” that organizations are starting to analyze to improve their operations and decision making. Output from these systems is fueling what is called the Industrial Internet, also known as the Internet of Things, in which machines such as jet engines, power plant turbines, or agricultural sensors constantly gather data and send the data over the Internet for analysis. The data might signal the need to take action, such as replacing a part that’s close to wearing out, restocking a product on a store shelf, starting the watering system for a soybean field, or slowing down a turbine. Over time, more and more everyday physical objects will be connected to the Internet and will be able to identify themselves to other devices, creating networks that can sense and respond as data changes. Another example is the “smart city,” described in the Chapter 12 Interactive Session on Organizations. You’ll see more examples of the Internet of Things in Chapter 12.
**Review Summary**

1. **What are the principal components of telecommunications networks and key networking technologies?**

   A simple network consists of two or more connected computers. Basic network components include computers, network interfaces, a connection medium, network operating system software, and either a hub or a switch. The networking infrastructure for a large company includes the traditional telephone system, mobile cellular communication, wireless local area networks, videoconferencing systems, a corporate Web site, intranets, extranets, and an array of local and wide area networks, including the Internet.

   Contemporary networks have been shaped by the rise of client/server computing, the use of packet switching, and the adoption of Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) as a universal communications standard for linking disparate networks and computers, including the Internet. Protocols provide a common set of rules that enable communication among diverse components in a telecommunications network.

2. **What are the different types of networks?**

   The principal physical transmission media are twisted copper telephone wire, coaxial copper cable, fiber-optic cable, and wireless transmission.

   Local area networks (LANs) connect PCs and other digital devices together within a 500-meter radius and are used today for many corporate computing tasks. Wide area networks (WANs) span broad geographical distances, ranging from several miles to continents, and are often private networks that are independently managed. Metropolitan area networks (MANs) span a single urban area.

   Digital subscriber line (DSL) technologies, cable Internet connections, and T1 lines are often used for high-capacity Internet connections.

3. **How do the Internet and Internet technology work, and how do they support communication and e-business?**

   The Internet is a worldwide network of networks that uses the client/server model of computing and the TCP/IP network reference model. Every computer on the Internet is assigned a unique numeric IP address. The Domain Name System (DNS) converts IP addresses to more user-friendly domain names. Worldwide Internet policies are established by organizations and government bodies, such as the Internet Architecture Board (IAB) and the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C).

   Major Internet services include e-mail, newsgroups, chatting, instant messaging, Telnet, FTP, and the Web. Web pages are based on Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) and can display text, graphics, video, and audio. Web site directories, search engines, and RSS technology help users locate the information they need on the Web. RSS, blogs, social networking, and wikis are features of Web 2.0.

   Firms are also starting to realize economies by using VoIP technology for voice transmission and by using virtual private networks (VPNs) as low-cost alternatives to private WANs.

4. **What are the principal technologies and standards for wireless networking, communication, and Internet access?**

   Cellular networks are evolving toward high-speed, high-bandwidth, digital packet-switched transmission. Broadband 3G networks are capable of transmitting data at speeds ranging from 144 Kbps to more than 2 Mbps. 4G networks capable of transmission speeds of 100 Mbps are starting to be rolled out.

   Major cellular standards include Code Division Multiple Access (CDMA), which is used primarily in the United States, and Global System for Mobile Communications (GSM), which is the standard in Europe and much of the rest of the world.

   Standards for wireless computer networks include Bluetooth (802.15) for small personal area networks (PANs), Wi-Fi (802.11) for local area networks (LANs), and WiMax (802.16) for metropolitan area networks (MANs).

   Radio frequency identification (RFID) systems provide a powerful technology for tracking the movement of goods by using tiny tags with embedded data about an item and its location. RFID readers read the radio signals transmitted by these tags and pass the data over a network to a computer for processing. Wireless sensor networks (WSNs) are networks of interconnected wireless sensing and transmitting devices that are embedded into the physical environment to provide measurements of many points over large spaces.
Key Terms
3G Networks, 287
4G networks, 287
Bandwidth, 265
Blog, 283
Blogosphere, 284
Bluetooth, 287
Broadband, 258
Cable Internet connections, 267
Chat, 272
Digital subscriber line (DSL), 266
Domain name, 267
Domain Name System (DNS), 267
E-mail, 272
File Transfer Protocol (FTP), 272
Hertz, 265
Hotspots, 289
Hubs, 258
Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP), 278
Instant messaging, 273
Internet of Things, 292
Internet Protocol (IP) address, 267
Internet service provider (ISP), 267
Internet2, 272
IPv6, 272
Local area network (LAN), 264
Metropolitan area network (MAN), 265
Microblogging, 283
Modem, 263
Network operating system (NOS), 258
Packet switching, 261
Peer-to-peer, 265
Personal area networks (PANs), 287
Predictive search, 281
Protocol, 262
Radio frequency identification (RFID), 290
Router, 258
RSS, 284
Search engines, 278
Search engine marketing, 280
Search engine optimization (SEO), 281
Semantic Web, 285
Shopping bots, 283
Smartphones, 286
Social networking, 284
Social search, 282
Software-defined networking (SDN), 259
Switch, 258
T1 lines, 267
telnet, 272
Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP), 262
Unified communications, 276
Uniform resource locator (URL), 278
Virtual private network (VPN), 277
Visual Web, 286
Voice over IP (VoIP), 274
Web 2.0, 283
Web 3.0, 285
Web site, 277
Wide area networks (WANs), 265
Wi-Fi, 288
Wiki, 284
WiMax, 290
Wireless sensor networks (WSNs), 291

MyMISLab
Go to mymislab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

Review Questions
7-1 What are the principal components of telecommunications networks and key networking technologies?
- Describe the features of a simple network and the network infrastructure for a large company.
- Name and describe the principal technologies and trends that have shaped contemporary telecommunications systems.

7-2 What are the different types of networks?
- Define an analog and a digital signal.
- Distinguish between a LAN, MAN, and WAN.

7-3 How do the Internet and Internet technology work, and how do they support communication and e-business?
- Define the Internet, describe how it works, and explain how it provides business value.
- Explain how the Domain Name System (DNS) and IP addressing system work.
- List and describe the principal Internet services.
- Define and describe VoIP and virtual private networks, and explain how they provide value to businesses.
• List and describe alternative ways of locating information on the Web.
• Describe how online search technologies are used for marketing.

7-4 What are the principal technologies and standards for wireless networking, communications, and Internet access?
• Define Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, WiMax, and 3G and 4G networks.

• Describe the capabilities of each and for which types of applications each is best suited.
• Define RFID, explain how it works, and describe how it provides value to businesses.
• Define WSNs, explain how they work, and describe the kinds of applications that use them.

Discussion Questions

7-5 It has been said that within the next few years, smartphones will become the single most important digital device we own. Discuss the implications of this statement.

7-6 Should all major retailing and manufacturing companies switch to RFID? Why or why not?

7-7 What are some of the issues to consider in determining whether the Internet would provide your business with a competitive advantage?

Hands-On MIS Projects

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience evaluating and selecting communications technology, using spreadsheet software to improve selection of telecommunications services, and using Web search engines for business research.

Management Decision Problems

7-8 Your company supplies ceramic floor tiles to Home Depot, Lowe’s, and other home improvement stores. You have been asked to start using radio frequency identification tags on each case of tiles you ship to help your customers improve the management of your products and those of other suppliers in their warehouses. Use the Web to identify the cost of hardware, software, and networking components for an RFID system for your company. What factors should be considered? What are the key decisions that have to be made in determining whether your firm should adopt this technology?

7-9 BestMed Medical Supplies Corporation sells medical and surgical products and equipment from over 700 different manufacturers to hospitals, health clinics, and medical offices. The company employs 500 people at seven different locations in western and midwestern states, including account managers, customer service and support representatives, and warehouse staff. Employees communicate via traditional telephone voice services, e-mail, instant messaging, and cell phones. Management is inquiring about whether the company should adopt a system for unified communications. What factors should be considered? What are the key decisions that have to be made in determining whether to adopt this technology? Use the Web, if necessary, to find out more about unified communications and its costs.

Improving Decision Making: Using Spreadsheet Software to Evaluate Wireless Services

Software skills: Spreadsheet formulas, formatting
Business skills: Analyzing telecommunications services and costs

7-10 In this project, you’ll use the Web to research alternative wireless services and use spreadsheet software to calculate wireless service costs for a sales force.
You would like to equip your sales force of 35, based in St. Louis, Missouri with mobile phones that have capabilities for voice transmission, text messaging, Internet access, and taking and sending photos. Use the Web to select two wireless providers that offer nationwide voice and data service as well as good service in your home area. Examine the features of the mobile handsets and wireless plans offered by each of these vendors. Assume that each of the 35 salespeople will need to spend three hours per weekday between 8 a.m. and 6 p.m. on mobile voice communication, send 30 text messages per weekday, use 1 gigabyte of data per month, and send five photos per week. Use your spreadsheet software to determine the wireless service and handset that will offer the best pricing per user over a two-year period. For the purposes of this exercise, you do not need to consider corporate discounts.

**Achieving Operational Excellence: Using Web Search Engines for Business Research**

Software skills: Web search tools  
Business skills: Researching new technologies

7-11 This project will help develop your Internet skills in using Web search engines for business research.

Use Google and Bing to obtain information about ethanol as an alternative fuel for motor vehicles. If you wish, try some other search engines as well. Compare the volume and quality of information you find with each search tool. Which tool is the easiest to use? Which produced the best results for your research? Why?

**Collaboration and Teamwork Project**

7-12 In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Docs, Google Sites, Google +, or other open-source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.
Three Internet titans—Google, Apple, and Facebook—are in an epic struggle to dominate your Internet experience, and caught in the crossfire are search, music, video, and other media, along with the devices you use for all of these things, cloud computing, and a host of other issues that are likely central to your life. The prize is a projected $400 billion retail e-commerce marketplace where the major access device will be a smartphone or tablet computer.

Mobile devices with advanced functionality and ubiquitous Internet access are rapidly overtaking traditional desktop machines as the most popular form of computing. Today, people spend more than half their time online using mobile devices. These smartphones and tablets take advantage of a growing cloud of computing capacity available to anyone with a smartphone and Internet connectivity. It’s no surprise, then, that today’s tech titans are so aggressively battling for control of this brave new mobile world.

Apple, which started as a personal computer company, quickly expanded into software and consumer electronics. Since upending the music industry with its MP3 player, the iPod, and the iTunes digital music service over a decade ago, Apple took mobile computing by storm with the iPhone, iPod Touch, and iPad. Apple wants to be the computing platform of choice for the Internet. Apple is the leader in mobile software applications, thanks to the popularity of the App Store, with over 1 million apps for mobile and tablet devices. Applications greatly enrich the experience of using a mobile device, and whoever creates the most appealing set of devices and applications will derive a significant competitive advantage over rival companies. Apps are the new equivalent of the traditional browser. Apple still leads in this area.

Google, begun by Stanford computer science graduate students Larry Page and Sergey Brin as campus search engine BackRub in 1996, quickly attracted attention for its unrivaled ability to return relevant search results. It continues to be the world’s leading search engine. Advertising dollars follow page views, and Google’s search dominance quickly led to advertising ascendency. Between AdWords, its keyword-based search advertising product; AdSense, the most popular online advertising network; and DoubleClick, an intermediary between online publishers and ad networks that buys, sells, and conducts performance reporting on display advertising space, Google dominates online advertising.

In 2005, Google had purchased the Android open source mobile operating system and founded the Open Handset Alliance in order to compete in mobile computing. Google provides Android at no cost to smartphone manufacturers and many different manufacturers have adopted Android as a standard. In contrast, Apple only allows its own devices to use its proprietary operating system and the hundreds of thousands of apps it sells can only run on Apple products. Since the first Android phone hit the market in October 2008, free, publicly available source code and permissive licensing have propelled Android to the top place in mobile operating systems. By early 2014, Android was deployed on nearly 58 percent of smartphones in the United States and over 80 percent worldwide. Android has also become the most common operating system on tablets worldwide.

Aggressively following the eyeballs, Google purchased Motorola Mobility Holdings for $12.5 billion in August 2011. This move provided Google with 17,000 patents, with another 7,000 in the pipeline to help defend Android from the smartphone patent wars. Google is also innovating in mobile hardware platforms with its Nexus 7 tablet, Google Glass (a wearable computer with an optical head-mounted display described in the Chapter 5 Interactive Session on Technology), and plans for a modular smartphone that consumers can configure with different features, such as a camera or heart rate monitor.

Whoever has the dominant smartphone operating system will have control over the apps where smartphone users spend most of their time and built-in channels for serving ads to mobile devices, for example, on Google-owned YouTube and the Google Maps app. Although Google search technology can’t easily navigate the mobile apps where users are spending most of their time, Google is starting to index the content inside mobile apps and provide links pointing to that content featured in Google’s search results on smartphones.

The cost-per-click paid for mobile ads has trailed desktop ads. Google instituted a design change to merge PC ads and mobile ads and present a
cleaner mobile search page. Users were increasingly consenting to click mobile ads and shop from their smartphones and tablets. Both changes began to strengthen overall ad prices.

Furthermore, with its advertising networks still contributing 95% of its revenues, Google had to make sure that Facebook did not eclipse it as an advertising vehicle. It launched Google+ (Google Plus) in mid-2011, its fourth foray into social networking. With 300 million active users by March 2014, Google+ has surpassed Twitter. Rather than a single Web site, Google hopes to meld the social experience across all of its sites. Google+ has morphed from a social network into a gateway to Google's package of services like Gmail, Google Docs, Google+ network, maps, hotel reservations, and more. With Google challenging Apple on every front, Apple's profit growth has slowed in the past couple of years. Although Apple has a number of advantages in the battle for mobile supremacy, it faces strong competition in both the U.S. and developing markets like China from Samsung Android phones that have larger screens, and much lower prices. Sales of iPhones were slowing until it introduced the iPhone 6 iOS phone and Apple Watch in September 2014. Two million phones were sold in the first two weeks, twice the rate of previous iPhones. The iPhone 6 comes in a large screen version to compete directly with Samsung. Apple has on its side a history of market-moving innovations, and a loyal user base that has steadily grown and is very likely to buy future product and offerings.

Apple has a legacy of innovation on its side. In 2011, it unveiled the potentially market-disrupting Siri (Speech Interpretation and Recognition Interface), a combination search/navigation tool and personal assistant. Siri uses Yelp for local business searches, tapping into its user recommendations and ratings. For factual and mathematical questions, it enlists Wolfram Alpha. Siri promises personalized recommendations that improve as it gains user familiarity—all from a verbal command. Customer response has been mixed. Google countered by quickly releasing its own AI tool, Google Now.

Facebook, founded by Mark Zuckerberg and several Harvard friends in 2004, provided a way for local students to meet and share information online. Today it's the world's largest social networking service, with nearly 1.3 billion monthly active users. People use Facebook to stay connected with their friends and family and to express what matters most to them. Facebook Platform enables developers to build applications and Web sites that integrate with Facebook to reach its global network of users and to build personalized and social products.

Facebook has persistently worked on ways to convert its popularity and trove of user data into advertising dollars, with the expectation that these dollars will increasingly come from mobile smartphones and tablets. Over 750 million people around the world used Facebook on an average day, and three-quarters of them log on using mobile devices. By the first quarter of 2014, mobile advertising accounted for 59 percent of Facebook's revenue, with many of those ads highly targeted by age, gender, and other demographics. Facebook is now a serious competitor to Google in the mobile ad market and is even trying to compete with emerging mobile platforms, having purchased Oculus VR Inc., a maker of virtual-reality goggles, for $2 billion.

In March 2013, Facebook overhauled its home page to increase the size of both photos and links and allow users to create topical streams. Job number one was to de-clutter smartphone screens. Marketers love larger pictures, both for their prominence and their greater persuasive impact. Job number two was to give advertisers more opportunities, and more interest information, with which to target market. A “personalized newspaper” with, for example, an op-ed feed featuring followed commentary pages, a sports section tailored to preferred events and teams, and a hometown news feed, will swell Facebook's database with useful tidbits. Whether users oblige remains to be seen; a popular app, Flipboard, already serves users interested in creating topical and publication-based streams.

Next, Facebook introduced a mobile application suite to replace the typical smartphone home screen. Facebook Home is an interface running on top of the Android operating system that essentially turns an Android mobile device into a Facebook phone. Home replaces the smartphone's typical cover screen with Facebook content, such as photos, messages and status updates. Home still provides access to apps on the phone, but the experience is centered around Facebook.

About the same time, Facebook also launched a new search tool to challenge Google's dominance of search. Graph Search mines Facebook's vast repository of user data and delivers results based on social signals, such as Facebook “likes,” and friend recommendations. It's a more “social” way of searching than Google. If the desire for friend-based recommendations outweighs users' reluctance to divulge more personal information, Graph Search may be a major revenue driver. While users may be
enticed to check-in, and then assign stars or review local restaurants and styling salons, they are unlikely to reveal sensitive data such as their doctors’ identities or where their children go to school. Moreover, entering ‘liked’ movies, books, and music, etc. takes time. Will users disclose sufficient data for searches to accurately list and rank results? With time and responsiveness to user practices, Facebook may uncover niche areas at which it excels. Even if it cannot directly rival Google’s advertising muscle, it should be able to chip away at its dominance.

Facebook claims that using Graph Search to target Facebook users for advertising is forbidden, but no policy for supervision and sanctions has been revealed. Facebook is already under Federal Trade Commission (FTC) scrutiny, with independent privacy audits mandated for the next twenty years. Trust is the linchpin upon which Facebook’s strategy depends. Eroding user trust means less data to generate relevant search results and less impetus to use Facebook to connect to third-party sites and services. Facebook must tread carefully. But if Facebook can succeed in making itself synonymous with mobile access, the company could very well compete for global advertising dominance, with much of the world’s population just coming on line—on inexpensive Android smartphones.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

7-13 Compare the business models and core competencies of Google, Apple, and Facebook.

7-14 Why is mobile computing so important to these three firms? Evaluate the mobile strategies of each firm.

7-15 What is the significance of search to the success or failure of mobile computing? How have Apple and Facebook attempted to compete with Google? Will their strategies succeed?

7-16 Which company and business model do you think is most likely to dominate the Internet and why?

7-17 What difference would it make to a business or to an individual consumer if Apple, Google, or Facebook dominated the Internet experience? Explain your answer.

MyMISLab
Go to mymislab.com for Auto-graded writing questions as well as the following Assisted-graded writing questions.

7-18 Compare Web 2.0 and Web 3.0.

7-19 How do social search, semantic search, and mobile search differ from searching for information on the Web using conventional search engines?
ICANN. “ICANN Policy Update.” 10, No. 9 (September 2010).
Wittman, Art. “Here Comes the Internet of Things” Information Week (July 22, 2013).
This page intentionally left blank
LEARNING OBJECTIVES
After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. Why are information systems vulnerable to destruction, error, and abuse?
2. What is the business value of security and control?
3. What are the components of an organizational framework for security and control?
4. What are the most important tools and technologies for safeguarding information resources?

MyMISLab™
Visit mymislab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.

CHAPTER CASES
The 21st Century Bank Heist
Target Becomes the Target for Massive Data Theft
BYOD: It’s Not So Safe
The Looming Threat of Cyberwarfare

VIDEO CASES
Stuxnet and Cyberwarfare
Cyberespionage: The Chinese Threat
IBM Zone Trusted Information Channel (ZTIC)

Instructional Videos:
Sony PlayStation Hacked; Data Stolen from 77 Million Users
Zappos Working to Correct Online Security Breach
Meet the Hackers: Anonymous Statement on Hacking SONY
One of the top ten bank heists of all time occurred in December 2012 and February 2013 when a worldwide network of cybercriminals made away with $45 million from two digital hacking operations. The thieves targeted a company in India and a U.S.-based firm that process transactions from Visa and MasterCard prepaid debit cards. Payment processors are known to employ less stringent network security than financial institutions. Once they accessed account information, the hackers sought out prepaid debit cards issued by two Middle Eastern banks whose databases afforded another point of lax security: Rakbank (National Bank of Ras Al-Khaimah) in the United Arab Emirates and the Bank of Muscat in Oman.

Rather than accumulating numerous account numbers, the hackers eliminated the withdrawal caps on just a handful of cards. Information from just five Rakbank-issued cards generated the initial $5 million, with just twelve Bank of Muscat cards garnering the lion’s share in the second strike. No individual or business bank accounts were depleted. Instead, funds were extracted from pooled reserve accounts from which prepaid debit card transactions are immediately deducted with the individual subaccounts, (the value associated with a card) reduced concurrently. Both tactics were designed to delay detection.

Next, the hackers created new PIN (personal identification) numbers for the cards. Then, using commercially-available card encoders attached via USB ports to laptops and PCs, a network of underlings simply used the built-in software to enter the account data, clicked Write or Encode, and swiped any plastic card with a magnetic stripe they could get their hands on, including old...
expired credit cards and hotel key cards. With counterfeit cards in hand, crews in more than two dozen countries including Japan, Russia, Romania, Egypt, Colombia, Great Britain, Sri Lanka, Canada, and the United States began collecting the loot from ATM machines. The $45 million haul was accomplished through 36,000 bank transactions over ten hours' time.

In May 2013, seven members of the New York cell were arrested; the eighth, and purported ringleader, had been found murdered in the Dominican Republic the month before. The global mob leaders were not caught.

Magnetic stripes are an over four-decade old technology that much of the developed world has abandoned because they are so vulnerable to counterfeit replication and theft via handheld card skimmers. Other major regions of the world have been using EMV (Europay, MasterCard, and Visa) technology for nearly 20 years. Often referred to as the chip and PIN system, EMV smartcards store account information in an embedded chip, and their data encryption is stronger than that for magstripe cards. Magnetic-stripe credit cards serve the same authentication data every time they are swiped, whereas chip and PIN system cards offer a different encrypted mathematical value each time, making it harder for criminals to use stolen data for future purchases. For added security, the user must enter a PIN to verify the identity of the cardholder.

U.S. banks and merchants have balked at the expense involved in switching payment processing systems. It is not a trifling matter. Over 600 million credit cards and 520 million debit cards must be exchanged. Over 15 million POS card readers must be replaced. Over 350,000 ATM machines nationwide must all either be retrofitted or replaced. Every store, restaurant, hair salon, gas station, doctor's office, kiosk, and vending machine will be affected, as will the payment processing infrastructure at acquiring banks, where merchant accounts receive the deposits from credit card sales. Payment processors, which supply the software and tech systems to interface with the card associations (Visa, MasterCard, etc.) and process card transactions, will also be affected.

Meanwhile, in the name of global interoperability, the rest of the world had to continue issuing EMV cards with a magnetic stripe and retain magstripe infrastructure. But the U.S. switchover may finally be coming. Beginning in October 2015, and continuing through the end of 2017, if a merchant is not EMV-capable by the specified date, it will assume liability for fraudulent and disputed transactions.


The problems created by the bank theft of $45 million using counterfeit ATM cards illustrate some of the reasons businesses need to pay special attention to information system security. Digital ATM and credit card systems are extremely useful tools for both individuals and businesses. But from a security standpoint, as this case illustrates, they are vulnerable to hackers who were able to access supposedly protected card account data and use the data to create counterfeit cards with which to raid numerous ATM machines.

The chapter-opening diagram calls attention to important points raised by this case and this chapter. Although debit (and credit) card payment processors have some information systems security in place, the security used by some
Why are information systems vulnerable to destruction, error, and abuse?

Can you imagine what would happen if you tried to link to the Internet without a firewall or antivirus software? Your computer would be disabled in a few seconds, and it might take you many days to recover. If you used the computer to run your business, you might not be able to sell to your customers or place orders with your suppliers while it was down. And you might find that your computer system had been penetrated by outsiders, who perhaps stole or destroyed valuable data, including confidential payment data from your customers. If too much data were destroyed or divulged, your business might never be able to recover!
In short, if you operate a business today, you need to make security and control a top priority. **Security** refers to the policies, procedures, and technical measures used to prevent unauthorized access, alteration, theft, or physical damage to information systems. **Controls** are methods, policies, and organizational procedures that ensure the safety of the organization’s assets, the accuracy and reliability of its records, and operational adherence to management standards.

**WHY SYSTEMS ARE VULNERABLE**

When large amounts of data are stored in electronic form, they are vulnerable to many more kinds of threats than when they existed in manual form. Through communications networks, information systems in different locations are interconnected. The potential for unauthorized access, abuse, or fraud is not limited to a single location but can occur at any access point in the network. Figure 8.1 illustrates the most common threats against contemporary information systems. They can stem from technical, organizational, and environmental factors compounded by poor management decisions. In the multi-tier client/server computing environment illustrated here, vulnerabilities exist at each layer and in the communications between the layers. Users at the client layer can cause harm by introducing errors or by accessing systems without authorization. It is possible to access data flowing over networks, steal valuable data during transmission, or alter messages without authorization. Radiation may disrupt a network at various points as well. Intruders can launch denial-of-service attacks or malicious software to disrupt the operation of Web sites. Those capable of penetrating corporate systems can steal, destroy, or alter corporate data stored in databases or files.

Systems malfunction if computer hardware breaks down, is not configured properly, or is damaged by improper use or criminal acts. Errors in programming, improper installation, or unauthorized changes cause computer software

---

**FIGURE 8.1 CONTEMPORARY SECURITY CHALLENGES AND VULNERABILITIES**

The architecture of a Web-based application typically includes a Web client, a server, and corporate information systems linked to databases. Each of these components presents security challenges and vulnerabilities. Floods, fires, power failures, and other electrical problems can cause disruptions at any point in the network.
to fail. Power failures, floods, fires, or other natural disasters can also disrupt computer systems.

Domestic or offshore partnering with another company adds to system vulnerability if valuable information resides on networks and computers outside the organization’s control. Without strong safeguards, valuable data could be lost, destroyed, or could fall into the wrong hands, revealing important trade secrets or information that violates personal privacy.

The popularity of handheld mobile devices for business computing adds to these woes. Portability makes cell phones, smartphones, and tablet computers easy to lose or steal. Smartphones share the same security weaknesses as other Internet devices, and are vulnerable to malicious software and penetration from outsiders. Smartphones used by corporate employees often contain sensitive data such as sales figures, customer names, phone numbers, and e-mail addresses. Intruders may be able to access internal corporate systems through these devices.

**Internet Vulnerabilities**

Large public networks, such as the Internet, are more vulnerable than internal networks because they are virtually open to anyone. The Internet is so huge that when abuses do occur, they can have an enormously widespread impact. When the Internet becomes part of the corporate network, the organization’s information systems are even more vulnerable to actions from outsiders.

Telephone service based on Internet technology (see Chapter 7) is more vulnerable than the switched voice network if it does not run over a secure private network. Most Voice over IP (VoIP) traffic over the public Internet is not encrypted, so anyone with a network can listen in on conversations. Hackers can intercept conversations or shut down voice service by flooding servers supporting VoIP with bogus traffic.

Vulnerability has also increased from widespread use of e-mail, instant messaging (IM), and peer-to-peer file-sharing programs. E-mail may contain attachments that serve as springboards for malicious software or unauthorized access to internal corporate systems. Employees may use e-mail messages to transmit valuable trade secrets, financial data, or confidential customer information to unauthorized recipients. Popular IM applications for consumers do not use a secure layer for text messages, so they can be intercepted and read by outsiders during transmission over the public Internet. Instant messaging activity over the Internet can in some cases be used as a back door to an otherwise secure network. Sharing files over peer-to-peer (P2P) networks, such as those for illegal music sharing, may also transmit malicious software or expose information on either individual or corporate computers to outsiders.

**Wireless Security Challenges**

Is it safe to log onto a wireless network at an airport, library, or other public location? It depends on how vigilant you are. Even the wireless network in your home is vulnerable because radio frequency bands are easy to scan. Both Bluetooth and Wi-Fi networks are susceptible to hacking by eavesdroppers. Local area networks (LANs) using the 802.11 standard can be easily penetrated by outsiders armed with laptops, wireless cards, external antennae, and hacking software. Hackers use these tools to detect unprotected networks, monitor network traffic, and, in some cases, gain access to the Internet or to corporate networks.

Wi-Fi transmission technology was designed to make it easy for stations to find and hear one another. The *service set identifiers* (SSIDs) that identify the access points in a Wi-Fi network are broadcast multiple times and can be
picked up fairly easily by intruders’ sniffer programs (see Figure 8.2). Wireless networks in many locations do not have basic protections against war driving, in which eavesdroppers drive by buildings or park outside and try to intercept wireless network traffic.

An intruder that has associated with an access point by using the correct SSID is capable of accessing other resources on the network. For example, the intruder could use the Windows operating system to determine which other users are connected to the network, access their computer hard drives, and open or copy their files.

Intruders also use the information they have gleaned to set up rogue access points on a different radio channel in physical locations close to users to force a user’s radio network interface controller (NIC) to associate with the rogue access point. Once this association occurs, hackers using the rogue access point can capture the names and passwords of unsuspecting users.

**MALICIOUS SOFTWARE: VIRUSES, WORMS, TROJAN HORSES, AND SPYWARE**

Malicious software programs are referred to as malware and include a variety of threats, such as computer viruses, worms, and Trojan horses. A computer virus is a rogue software program that attaches itself to other software programs or data files in order to be executed, usually without user knowledge or permission. Most computer viruses deliver a “payload.” The payload may be relatively

**FIGURE 8.2  WI-FI SECURITY CHALLENGES**

Many Wi-Fi networks can be penetrated easily by intruders using sniffer programs to obtain an address to access the resources of a network without authorization.
benign, such as instructions to display a message or image, or it may be highly destructive—destroying programs or data, clogging computer memory, reformatting a computer’s hard drive, or causing programs to run improperly. Viruses typically spread from computer to computer when humans take an action, such as sending an e-mail attachment or copying an infected file.

Most recent attacks have come from **worms**, which are independent computer programs that copy themselves from one computer to other computers over a network. Unlike viruses, worms can operate on their own without attaching to other computer program files and rely less on human behavior in order to spread from computer to computer. This explains why computer worms spread much more rapidly than computer viruses. Worms destroy data and programs as well as disrupt or even halt the operation of computer networks.

Worms and viruses are often spread over the Internet from files of downloaded software, from files attached to e-mail transmissions, or from compromised e-mail messages, online ads, or instant messaging. Viruses have also invaded computerized information systems from “infected” disks or infected machines. Especially prevalent today are **drive-by downloads**, consisting of malware that comes with a downloaded file that a user intentionally or unintentionally requests.

Hackers can do to a smartphone just about anything they can do to any Internet device: request malicious files without user intervention, delete files, transmit files, install programs running in the background to monitor user actions, and potentially convert the smartphone into a robot in a botnet to send e-mail and text messages to anyone. With smartphones starting to outsell PCs, and smartphones increasingly used as payment devices, they are becoming a major avenue for malware.

According to McAfee and other IT security experts, mobile devices now pose the greatest security risks, outpacing those from larger computers. Android, which is the world’s leading mobile operating system, not Windows, is the platform targeted by most hackers. (McAfee, 2014; Reisinger, 2014). Mobile device viruses pose serious threats to enterprise computing because so many wireless devices are now linked to corporate information systems (see the Interactive Session on Technology in Section 8.4).

Blogs, wikis, and social networking sites such as Facebook, Twitter, and LinkedIn have emerged as new conduits for malware or spyware. These applications allow users to post software code as part of the permissible content, and such code can be launched automatically as soon as a Web page is viewed. In the spring of 2014, some programs purporting to be Instagram “image viewers,” or “image and video downloaders” to transfer Instagram photos to desktop PCs were bundled with malware. The malware caused Internet slowdown, unwanted redirection to other sites, and sometimes installation of other programs without the user’s consent (Scharf, 2014).

Panda Security reported that in 2013, there were 30 million new malware strains in circulation, averaging 82,000 per day. Additionally 20 percent of all malware that has ever existed was created in that one year alone (Panda, 2014). Table 8.1 describes the characteristics of some of the most harmful worms and viruses that have appeared to date.

Over 70 percent of the infections Panda found were Trojan Horses. A **Trojan horse** is a software program that appears to be benign but then does something other than expected. The Trojan horse is not itself a virus because it does not replicate, but it is often a way for viruses or other malicious code to be introduced into a computer system. The term **Trojan horse** is based on the huge wooden horse used by the Greeks to trick the Trojans into opening the gates
to their fortified city during the Trojan War. Once inside the city walls, Greek soldiers hidden in the horse revealed themselves and captured the city.

An example of a modern-day Trojan horse is the Zeus Trojan which runs on computers with the Microsoft Windows operating system. It is often used to steal login credentials for banking by surreptitiously capturing peoples' keystrokes as they use their computers. Zeus is spread mainly through drive-by downloads and phishing.

**SQL injection attacks** have become a major malware threat. SQL injection attacks take advantage of vulnerabilities in poorly coded Web application software to introduce malicious program code into a company's systems and networks. These vulnerabilities occur when a Web application fails to properly validate or filter data entered by a user on a Web page, which might occur when ordering something online. An attacker uses this input validation error to send a rogue SQL query to the underlying database to access the database, plant malicious code, or access other systems on the network. Large Web applications have hundreds of places for inputting user data, each of which creates an opportunity for an SQL injection attack.

Malware known as ransomware is proliferating on both desktop and mobile devices. Ransomware tries to extort money from users by taking control of

---

**TABLE 8.1 EXAMPLES OF MALICIOUS CODE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conficker (aka Downadup, Downup)</td>
<td>Worm</td>
<td>First detected in November 2008 and still prevalent. Uses flaws in Windows software to take over machines and link them into a virtual computer that can be commanded remotely. Had more than 5 million computers worldwide under its control. Difficult to eradicate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storm</td>
<td>Worm/Trojan horse</td>
<td>First identified in January 2007. Spreads via e-mail spam with a fake attachment. Infected up to 10 million computers, causing them to join its zombie network of computers engaged in criminal activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sasser.ftp</td>
<td>Worm</td>
<td>First appeared in May 2004. Spread over the Internet by attacking random IP addresses. Causes computers to continually crash and reboot, and infected computers to search for more victims. Affected millions of computers worldwide, disrupting British Airways flight check-ins, operations of British coast guard stations, Hong Kong hospitals, Taiwan post office branches, and Australia’s Westpac Bank. Sasser and its variants caused an estimated $14.8 billion to $18.6 billion in damages worldwide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MyDoom.A</td>
<td>Worm</td>
<td>First appeared on January 26, 2004. Spreads as an e-mail attachment. Sends e-mail to addresses harvested from infected machines, forging the sender’s address. At its peak, this worm lowered global Internet performance by 10 percent and Web page loading times by as much as 50 percent. Was programmed to stop spreading after February 12, 2004.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sobig.F</td>
<td>Worm</td>
<td>First detected on August 19, 2003. Spreads via e-mail attachments and sends massive amounts of mail with forged sender information. Deactivated itself on September 10, 2003, after infecting more than 1 million PCs and doing $5 to $10 billion in damage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ILOVEYOU</td>
<td>Virus</td>
<td>First detected on May 3, 2000. Script virus written in Visual Basic script and transmitted as an attachment to e-mail with the subject line ILOVEYOU. Overwrites music, image, and other files with a copy of itself and did an estimated $10 billion to $15 billion in damage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melissa</td>
<td>Macro virus/worm</td>
<td>First appeared in March 1999. Word macro script mailing infected Word file to first 50 entries in user’s Microsoft Outlook address book. Infected 15 to 29 percent of all business PCs, causing $300 million to $600 million in damage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
their computers or displaying annoying pop-up messages. One nasty example, CryptoLocker, encrypts an infected computer’s files, forcing users to pay hundreds of dollars to regain access. You can get ransomware from downloading an infected attachment, clicking a link inside an email or by visiting the wrong Web site.

Some types of spyware also act as malicious software. These small programs install themselves surreptitiously on computers to monitor user Web surfing activity and serve up advertising. Thousands of forms of spyware have been documented.

Many users find such spyware annoying, and some critics worry about its infringement on computer users’ privacy. Some forms of spyware are especially nefarious. Keyloggers record every keystroke made on a computer to steal serial numbers for software, to launch Internet attacks, to gain access to e-mail accounts, to obtain passwords to protected computer systems, or to pick up personal information such as credit card and or bank account numbers. The Zeus Trojan described earlier uses keylogging. Other spyware programs reset Web browser home pages, redirect search requests, or slow performance by taking up too much memory.

**HACKERS AND COMPUTER CRIME**

A hacker is an individual who intends to gain unauthorized access to a computer system. Within the hacking community, the term cracker is typically used to denote a hacker with criminal intent, although in the public press, the terms hacker and cracker are used interchangeably. Hackers and crackers gain unauthorized access by finding weaknesses in the security protections employed by Web sites and computer systems, often taking advantage of various features of the Internet that make it an open system and easy to use.

Hacker activities have broadened beyond mere system intrusion to include theft of goods and information, as well as system damage and cybervandalism, the intentional disruption, defacement, or even destruction of a Web site or corporate information system. For example, a group of pro-Syrian regime hackers called the Syrian Electronic Army hacked Skype’s Twitter account, blog, and Facebook page in early January 2014, publishing a fake message which read, “Don’t use Microsoft emails...They are monitoring your accounts and selling the data to the governments” (Ribeiro, 2014).

**Spoofing and Sniffing**

Hackers attempting to hide their true identities often spoof, or misrepresent, themselves by using fake e-mail addresses or masquerading as someone else. Spoofing may also involve redirecting a Web link to an address different from the intended one, with the site masquerading as the intended destination. For example, if hackers redirect customers to a fake Web site that looks almost exactly like the true site, they can then collect and process orders, effectively stealing business as well as sensitive customer information from the true site. We will provide more detail on other forms of spoofing in our discussion of computer crime.

A sniffer is a type of eavesdropping program that monitors information traveling over a network. When used legitimately, sniffers help identify potential network trouble spots or criminal activity on networks, but when used for criminal purposes, they can be damaging and very difficult to detect. Sniffers enable hackers to steal proprietary information from anywhere on a network, including e-mail messages, company files, and confidential reports.
Denial-of-Service Attacks
In a denial-of-service (DoS) attack, hackers flood a network server or Web server with many thousands of false communications or requests for services to crash the network. The network receives so many queries that it cannot keep up with them and is thus unavailable to service legitimate requests. A distributed denial-of-service (DDoS) attack uses numerous computers to inundate and overwhelm the network from numerous launch points.

Although DoS attacks do not destroy information or access restricted areas of a company’s information systems, they often cause a Web site to shut down, making it impossible for legitimate users to access the site. For example, the blogging service Typepad was subjected to a series of DDoS attacks in April 2014 which lasted five days. During that time period, the site was flooded with so much illicit traffic that it was knocked offline, preventing Typepad users from accessing their blogs and applications (Perez, 2014). For busy e-commerce sites, these attacks are costly; while the site is shut down, customers cannot make purchases. Especially vulnerable are small and midsize businesses whose networks tend to be less protected than those of large corporations.

Perpetrators of DDoS attacks often use thousands of “zombie” PCs infected with malicious software without their owners’ knowledge and organized into a botnet. Hackers create these botnets by infecting other people’s computers with bot malware that opens a back door through which an attacker can give instructions. The infected computer then becomes a slave, or zombie, serving a master computer belonging to someone else. Once hackers infect enough computers, they can use the amassed resources of the botnet to launch DDoS attacks, phishing campaigns, or unsolicited “spam” e-mail.

Ninety percent of the world’s spam and 80 percent of the world’s malware are delivered via botnets. For example, the Grum botnet, once the world’s third-largest botnet, was reportedly responsible for 18% of worldwide spam traffic (amounting to 18 billion spam messages per day) when it was shut down on July 19, 2012. At one point Grum had infected and controlled 560,000–840,000 computers.

Computer Crime
Most hacker activities are criminal offenses, and the vulnerabilities of systems we have just described make them targets for other types of computer crime as well. Computer crime is defined by the U.S. Department of Justice as “any violations of criminal law that involve a knowledge of computer technology for their perpetration, investigation, or prosecution.” Table 8.2 provides examples of the computer as both a target and an instrument of crime. The chapter-opening case describes one of the largest computer crime cases reported to date.

No one knows the magnitude of the computer crime problem—how many systems are invaded, how many people engage in the practice, or the total economic damage. According to the Ponemon Institute’s 2013 Annual Cost of Cyber Crime Study sponsored by HP Enterprise Security, the average annualized cost of cybercrime for the organizations in the study was $11.6 million per year (Ponemon Institute, 2013). Many companies are reluctant to report computer crimes because the crimes may involve employees, or the company fears that publicizing its vulnerability will hurt its reputation. The most economically damaging kinds of computer crime are denial of service attacks, activities of malicious insiders, and Web-based attacks.

Identity Theft
With the growth of the Internet and electronic commerce, identity theft has become especially troubling. Identity theft is a crime in which an imposter
obtains key pieces of personal information, such as social security identification numbers, driver’s license numbers, or credit card numbers, to impersonate someone else. The information may be used to obtain credit, merchandise, or services in the name of the victim or to provide the thief with false credentials.

Identity theft has flourished on the Internet, with credit card files a major target of Web site hackers. According to the Identity Fraud Study by Javelin Strategy & Research, identity fraud affected 13.1 million consumers in 2013. The total dollar losses from identity theft increased to $18 billion (Javelin 2014). Moreover, e-commerce sites are wonderful sources of customer personal information—name, address, and phone number. Armed with this information, criminals are able to assume new identities and establish new credit for their own purposes.

One increasingly popular tactic is a form of spoofing called **phishing**. Phishing involves setting up fake Web sites or sending e-mail messages that look like those of legitimate businesses to ask users for confidential personal data. The e-mail message instructs recipients to update or confirm records by providing social security numbers, bank and credit card information, and other confidential data either by responding to the e-mail message, by entering the information at a bogus Web site, or by calling a telephone number. Ebay, PayPal, Amazon.com, Walmart, and a variety of banks are among the top spoofed companies. In a more targeted form of phishing called **spear phishing**, messages appear to come from a trusted source, such as an individual within the recipient’s own company or a friend.

Phishing techniques called evil twins and pharming are harder to detect. **Evil twins** are wireless networks that pretend to offer trustworthy Wi-Fi connections to the Internet, such as those in airport lounges, hotels, or coffee shops. The bogus network looks identical to a legitimate public network. Fraudsters try to capture passwords or credit card numbers of unwitting users who log on to the network.

**TABLE 8.2 EXAMPLES OF COMPUTER CRIME**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMPUTERS AS TARGETS OF CRIME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Breaching the confidentiality of protected computerized data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessing a computer system without authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowingly accessing a protected computer to commit fraud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intentionally accessing a protected computer and causing damage, negligently or deliberately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowingly transmitting a program, program code, or command that intentionally causes damage to a protected computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threatening to cause damage to a protected computer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMPUTERS AS INSTRUMENTS OF CRIME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Theft of trade secrets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unauthorized copying of software or copyrighted intellectual property, such as articles, books, music, and video</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schemes to defraud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using e-mail for threats or harassment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intentionally attempting to intercept electronic communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illegally accessing stored electronic communications, including e-mail and voice mail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmitting or possessing child pornography using a computer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pharming redirects users to a bogus Web page, even when the individual types the correct Web page address into his or her browser. This is possible if pharming perpetrators gain access to the Internet address information stored by Internet service providers to speed up Web browsing and the ISP companies have flawed software on their servers that allows the fraudsters to hack in and change those addresses.

According to the Ponemon Institute’s 2014 Cost of a Data Breach Study, the average cost of a breach to a company was $3.5 million (Ponemon, 2014). Moreover, brand damage can be significant, albeit hard to quantify. In addition to the data breaches described in the Interactive Session on Management, Table 8.3 describes other major data breaches.

The U.S. Congress addressed the threat of computer crime in 1986 with the Computer Fraud and Abuse Act, which makes it illegal to access a computer system without authorization. Most states have similar laws, and nations in Europe have comparable legislation. Congress passed the National Information Infrastructure Protection Act in 1996 to make malware distribution and hacker attacks to disable Web sites federal crimes.

U.S. legislation, such as the Wiretap Act, Wire Fraud Act, Economic Espionage Act, Electronic Communications Privacy Act, E-Mail Threats and Harassment Act, and Child Pornography Act, covers computer crimes involving intercepting electronic communication, using electronic communication to defraud, stealing trade secrets, illegally accessing stored electronic communications, using e-mail for threats or harassment, and transmitting or possessing child pornography. A proposed federal Data Security and Breach Notification Act would mandate organizations that possess personal information to put in place “reasonable” security procedures to keep the data secure and to notify anyone affected by a data breach, but it has not been enacted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DATA BREACH</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EBay</td>
<td>Cyberattack on eBay servers during February and March 2014 compromises database containing customer names, encrypted passwords, email addresses, physical addresses, phone numbers, and birthdates. No financial data were accessed, but the information is useful for identity theft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heartland Payment Systems</td>
<td>In 2008, criminals led by Miami hacker Albert Gonzales installed spying software on the computer network of Heartland Payment Systems, a payment processor based in Princeton, NJ, and stole the numbers of as many as 100 million credit and debit cards. Gonzales was sentenced in 2010 to 20 years in federal prison, and Heartland paid about $140 million in fines and settlements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TJX</td>
<td>A 2007 data breach at TJX, the retailer that owns national chains including TJ Maxx and Marshalls, cost at least $250 million. Cyber criminals took more than 45 million credit and debit card numbers, some of which were used later to buy millions of dollars in electronics from Walmart and elsewhere. Albert Gonzales, who played a major role in the Heartland hack, was linked to this cyberattack as well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epsilon</td>
<td>In March 2011, hackers stole millions of names and e-mail addresses from the Epsilon e-mail marketing firm, which handles e-mail lists for major retailers and banks like Best Buy, JPMorgan, TiVo, and Walgreens. Costs could range from $100 million to $4 billion, depending on what happens to the stolen data, with most of the costs from losing customers due to a damaged reputation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sony</td>
<td>In April 2011, hackers obtained personal information, including credit, debit, and bank account numbers, from over 100 million PlayStation Network users and Sony Online Entertainment users. The breach could cost Sony and credit card issuers up to a total of $2 billion.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TARGET BECOMES THE TARGET FOR MASSIVE DATA THEFT

Target, the second-largest discount retail chain in the United States, is known for trendy styles at low prices. In late 2013, it also became known as the target for one of the largest data thefts in history. Sometime before Thanksgiving 2013, hackers installed malware in Target's security and payments systems designed to steal every credit card used at the company's 1,797 U.S. stores when customers were paying for their purchases. When customers' credit and debit cards were being swiped at Target's point-of-sale devices, the malware captured the shopper's card number, and stored it on a Target server controlled by the hackers. From there the stolen credit card numbers were transmitted first to three staging point servers spread around the U.S. and then into computers in Russia. Experts believe that the hack at Target was part of a broader campaign aimed at least half a dozen major retailers, including Neiman Marcus, Michael's Arts and Crafts Store, and Easton-Bell Sports.

The malware used in these attacks includes a RAM scraper, which enables cybercriminals to capture encrypted data as the data travel through the computer's live memory, where the data appear as plain text. Once injected into retailers' computer systems, the software seeks out payment programs and data on cards' magnetic stripes, which are unencrypted and stored in the payment system's memory during the authorization process.

Theft of Target data went on from November 27, until the U.S. Secret Service and Justice Department alerted the company on December 13. Investigators who had been tracking cybercriminals overseas and monitoring suspicious credit activity had detected an unusual number of charges and payments made at Target. Target was able to remove the malware capturing its data within a few days. But by that time the cyberthieves were able to steal confidential credit and debit card data, including credit card numbers, names, expiration dates, and encrypted personal identification numbers (PINs) of as many as 40 million Target customers, along with personal information, such as names, phone numbers, addresses, and e-mail addresses of up to 70 million more.

Target had prepared for such an attack. The company has a huge information security staff with more than 300 people. Six months earlier Target began installing the powerful $1.6 million FireEye malware detection platform. FireEye software isolates incoming Web traffic and looks for suspicious activity. Target's team of security specialists in Bangalore monitor its computers around the clock. If Bangalore notices anything suspicious, Target's security operations center in Minneapolis is notified.

FireEye spotted the malware at work and alerted Bangalore, which then notified the Target security team in Minneapolis. The security breach could have been stopped there without human intervention, but the data theft continued until mid-December. The FireEye system has an option to automatically delete malware as it is detected. It's possible that Target's security team turned that function off so that it would have the final decision on what to do. Target's security team claimed it knew about the hacker activity, but that it was insufficient to warrant immediate follow-up. Target's security team sees numerous threats each week and is able to focus on only a limited number of them at its monthly steering committee meetings.

The intruders had initially gained access to Target's systems by stealing the credentials of a Pennsylvania refrigeration and heating company called Fazio Mechanical Services to get inside Target's systems. That company had been the victim of a phishing attack at least 2 months earlier. Fazio's Web site states that its IT systems and security measures are in compliance with industry practices, and that its data connection to Target was purely for billing, contract submission, and project management. Target may have helped the hackers by providing detailed internal documentation for vendors on various public-facing Web pages that do not require a login. For example, the public-facing Target Supplier Portal includes detailed information on how subcontractors should communicate with the company and submit invoices.

Target's systems are supposed to be segmented so that the most sensitive ones, including those for customer payments and personal data, are walled off from other parts of the network and, especially, the open Internet. Obviously Target's walls had some holes. Target had passed an audit in September 2013, certifying its compliance with payment industry requirements for protecting card data.

Customers jammed the company's Website and phone lines, angered by the violation of their
privacy and vulnerability to identity theft. On Target’s Facebook page, shoppers keep leaving furious messages. Target sales dropped 5.3 percent in the fourth quarter of 2013, while its profit fell 46 percent. Profits continued to fall in early 2014 due to continuing customer reluctance to shop at Target. Nearly 70 lawsuits have already been filed against Target. Credit card companies and banks have replaced many customers’ cards and accounts in the wake of the breach—at great cost. Consulting firm Javelin Strategy & Research estimates the total damage to banks and retailers could exceed $18 billion. Consumers could be liable for more than $4 billion in uncovered losses and other costs. Target may need to pay credit card networks to cover some of these losses and expenses for reissuing cards, government investigations, and enforcement proceedings, which will undoubtedly hurt corporate earnings in 2014. Beth Jacob, the Target CIO at the time of the attack, resigned in March 2014, and Target CEO Gregg Steinhafel left the company the following May.

The hackers left few clues behind to identify them. They accidentally left the word Rescator in the software code. This was the same name of the underground carding site, Rescator.la. But investigators have not publicly pinpointed the location of the criminals’ nerve center, suggesting instead that the hackers tend to move around, gather, disband and regroup.

Target has implemented more sophisticated network security to safeguard payment systems and customer data. White-listing technology will only allow Web traffic the company has identified as innocuous to enter its systems. The company has done more to isolate its various systems and networks to make it more difficult for an unwanted intruder to move between them. Target also plans to spend $100 million by 2015 to implement chip-based card technology (described in the chapter-opening case) to increase the security of its credit and debit cards.


### CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. List and describe the security and control weaknesses at Target that are discussed in this case.
2. What management, organization, and technology factors contributed to these problems? How much was management responsible?
3. What was the business impact of Target’s data losses on Target and its customers?
4. What solutions would you suggest to prevent these problems?

### Click Fraud

When you click on an ad displayed by a search engine, the advertiser typically pays a fee for each click, which is supposed to direct potential buyers to its products. **Click fraud** occurs when an individual or computer program fraudulently clicks on an online ad without any intention of learning more about the advertiser or making a purchase. Click fraud has become a serious problem at Google and other Web sites that feature pay-per-click online advertising.

Some companies hire third parties (typically from low-wage countries) to fraudulently click on a competitor’s ads to weaken them by driving up their marketing costs. Click fraud can also be perpetrated with software programs doing the clicking, and botnets are often used for this purpose. Search engines such as Google attempt to monitor click fraud but have been reluctant to publicize their efforts to deal with the problem.
Global Threats: Cyberterrorism and Cyberwarfare

The cyber criminal activities we have described—launching malware, denial-of-service attacks, and phishing probes—are borderless. Attack servers for malware are now hosted in 206 countries and territories, according to the latest FireEye Advanced Threat Report. The most popular sources of malware attacks are the United States, Germany, South Korea, China, Netherlands, United Kingdom, and Russia (Karlovsky, 2014). The global nature of the Internet makes it possible for cybercriminals to operate—and to do harm—anywhere in the world.

Internet vulnerabilities have also turned individuals and even entire nation states into easy targets for politically-motivated hacking to conduct sabotage and espionage. Cyberwarfare is a state-sponsored activity designed to cripple and defeat another state or nation by penetrating its computers or networks for the purposes of causing damage and disruption.

In general, cyberwarfare attacks have become much more widespread, sophisticated, and potentially devastating. There are 250,000 probes trying to find their way into the U.S. Department of Defense networks every hour, and cyberattacks on U.S. federal agencies have increased 150 percent since 2008. Over the years, hackers have stolen plans for missile tracking systems, satellite navigation devices, surveillance drones, and leading-edge jet fighters.

Cyberwarfare poses a serious threat to the infrastructure of modern societies, since their major financial, health, government, and industrial institutions rely on the Internet for daily operations. Cyberwarfare also involves defending against these types of attacks. The chapter-ending case discusses this topic in greater detail.

INTERNAL THREATS: EMPLOYEES

We tend to think the security threats to a business originate outside the organization. In fact, company insiders pose serious security problems. Employees have access to privileged information, and in the presence of sloppy internal security procedures, they are often able to roam throughout an organization's systems without leaving a trace.

Studies have found that user lack of knowledge is the single greatest cause of network security breaches. Many employees forget their passwords to access computer systems or allow co-workers to use them, which compromises the system. Malicious intruders seeking system access sometimes trick employees into revealing their passwords by pretending to be legitimate members of the company in need of information. This practice is called social engineering.

Both end users and information systems specialists are also a major source of errors introduced into information systems. End users introduce errors by entering faulty data or by not following the proper instructions for processing data and using computer equipment. Information systems specialists may create software errors as they design and develop new software or maintain existing programs.

SOFTWARE VULNERABILITY

Software errors pose a constant threat to information systems, causing untold losses in productivity, and sometimes endangering people who use or depend on systems. Growing complexity and size of software programs, coupled with demands for timely delivery to markets, have contributed to an increase in software flaws or vulnerabilities. On April 16, 2013, American Airlines had to cancel or delay 1,950 flights due to a faulty software patch from a vendor or
internal software changes that were not properly tested. A systemwide network outage downed the airline's primary systems that manage airline operations, as well as backup systems that kick in when the primary systems fail (Boulton, 2013).

A major problem with software is the presence of hidden bugs or program code defects. Studies have shown that it is virtually impossible to eliminate all bugs from large programs. The main source of bugs is the complexity of decision-making code. A relatively small program of several hundred lines will contain tens of decisions leading to hundreds or even thousands of different paths. Important programs within most corporations are usually much larger, containing tens of thousands or even millions of lines of code, each with many times the choices and paths of the smaller programs.

Zero defects cannot be achieved in larger programs. Complete testing simply is not possible. Fully testing programs that contain thousands of choices and millions of paths would require thousands of years. Even with rigorous testing, you would not know for sure that a piece of software was dependable until the product proved itself after much operational use.

Flaws in commercial software not only impede performance but also create security vulnerabilities that open networks to intruders. Each year security firms identify thousands of software vulnerabilities in Internet and PC software. A recent example is the Heartbleed bug, which is a flaw in OpenSSL, an open-source encryption technology that is used by an estimated two-thirds of Web servers. Hackers could exploit the bug to access visitors' personal data as well as a site's encryption keys, which can be used to collect even more "protected" data.

To correct software flaws once they are identified, the software vendor creates small pieces of software called patches to repair the flaws without disturbing the proper operation of the software. An example is Microsoft's Windows 7 Service Pack 1, which features security, performance, and stability updates for Windows 7. It is up to users of the software to track these vulnerabilities, test, and apply all patches. This process is called patch management.

Because a company's IT infrastructure is typically laden with multiple business applications, operating system installations, and other system services, maintaining patches on all devices and services used by a company is often time-consuming and costly. Malware is being created so rapidly that companies have very little time to respond between the time a vulnerability and a patch are announced and the time malicious software appears to exploit the vulnerability.

8.2 What is the business value of security and control?

Many firms are reluctant to spend heavily on security because it is not directly related to sales revenue. However, protecting information systems is so critical to the operation of the business that it deserves a second look.

Companies have very valuable information assets to protect. Systems often house confidential information about individuals' taxes, financial assets, medical records, and job performance reviews. They also can contain information on corporate operations, including trade secrets, new product development plans, and marketing strategies. Government systems may store information on weapons systems, intelligence operations, and military targets. These information assets have tremendous value, and the repercussions can be devastating if they
are lost, destroyed, or placed in the wrong hands. Systems that are unable to function because of security breaches, disasters, or malfunctioning technology can permanently impact a company’s financial health. Some experts believe that 40 percent of all businesses will not recover from application or data losses that are not repaired within three days.

Inadequate security and control may result in serious legal liability. Businesses must protect not only their own information assets but also those of customers, employees, and business partners. Failure to do so may open the firm to costly litigation for data exposure or theft. An organization can be held liable for needless risk and harm created if the organization fails to take appropriate protective action to prevent loss of confidential information, data corruption, or breach of privacy. For example, BJ’s Wholesale Club was sued by the U.S. Federal Trade Commission for allowing hackers to access its systems and steal credit and debit card data for fraudulent purchases. Banks that issued the cards with the stolen data sought $13 million from BJ’s to compensate them for reimbursing card holders for the fraudulent purchases. A sound security and control framework that protects business information assets can thus produce a high return on investment. Strong security and control also increase employee productivity and lower operational costs.

**LEGAL AND REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRONIC RECORDS MANAGEMENT**

Recent U.S. government regulations are forcing companies to take security and control more seriously by mandating the protection of data from abuse, exposure, and unauthorized access. Firms face new legal obligations for the retention and storage of electronic records as well as for privacy protection.

If you work in the health care industry, your firm will need to comply with the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) of 1996. **HIPAA** outlines medical security and privacy rules and procedures for simplifying the administration of health care billing and automating the transfer of health care data between health care providers, payers, and plans. It requires members of the health care industry to retain patient information for six years and ensure the confidentiality of those records. It specifies privacy, security, and electronic transaction standards for health care providers handling patient information, providing penalties for breaches of medical privacy, disclosure of patient records by e-mail, or unauthorized network access.

If you work in a firm providing financial services, your firm will need to comply with the Financial Services Modernization Act of 1999, better known as the **Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act** after its congressional sponsors. This act requires financial institutions to ensure the security and confidentiality of customer data. Data must be stored on a secure medium, and special security measures must be enforced to protect such data on storage media and during transmittal.

If you work in a publicly traded company, your company will need to comply with the Public Company Accounting Reform and Investor Protection Act of 2002, better known as the **Sarbanes-Oxley Act** after its sponsors Senator Paul Sarbanes of Maryland and Representative Michael Oxley of Ohio. This Act was designed to protect investors after the financial scandals at Enron, WorldCom, and other public companies. It imposes responsibility on companies and their management to safeguard the accuracy and integrity of financial information that is used internally and released externally. One of the Learning Tracks for this chapter discusses Sarbanes-Oxley in detail.
Sarbanes-Oxley is fundamentally about ensuring that internal controls are in place to govern the creation and documentation of information in financial statements. Because information systems are used to generate, store, and transport such data, the legislation requires firms to consider information systems security and other controls required to ensure the integrity, confidentiality, and accuracy of their data. Each system application that deals with critical financial reporting data requires controls to make sure the data are accurate. Controls to secure the corporate network, prevent unauthorized access to systems and data, and ensure data integrity and availability in the event of disaster or other disruption of service are essential as well.

**ELECTRONIC EVIDENCE AND COMPUTER FORENSICS**

Security, control, and electronic records management have become essential for responding to legal actions. Much of the evidence today for stock fraud, embezzlement, theft of company trade secrets, computer crime, and many civil cases is in digital form. In addition to information from printed or typewritten pages, legal cases today increasingly rely on evidence represented as digital data stored on portable storage devices, CDs, and computer hard disk drives, as well as in e-mail, instant messages, and e-commerce transactions over the Internet. E-mail is currently the most common type of electronic evidence.

In a legal action, a firm is obligated to respond to a discovery request for access to information that may be used as evidence, and the company is required by law to produce those data. The cost of responding to a discovery request can be enormous if the company has trouble assembling the required data or the data have been corrupted or destroyed. Courts now impose severe financial and even criminal penalties for improper destruction of electronic documents.

An effective electronic document retention policy ensures that electronic documents, e-mail, and other records are well organized, accessible, and neither retained too long nor discarded too soon. It also reflects an awareness of how to preserve potential evidence for computer forensics. **Computer forensics** is the scientific collection, examination, authentication, preservation, and analysis of data held on or retrieved from computer storage media in such a way that the information can be used as evidence in a court of law. It deals with the following problems:

- Recovering data from computers while preserving evidential integrity
- Securely storing and handling recovered electronic data
- Finding significant information in a large volume of electronic data
- Presenting the information to a court of law

Electronic evidence may reside on computer storage media in the form of computer files and as ambient data, which are not visible to the average user. An example might be a file that has been deleted on a PC hard drive. Data that a computer user may have deleted on computer storage media can be recovered through various techniques. Computer forensics experts try to recover such hidden data for presentation as evidence.

An awareness of computer forensics should be incorporated into a firm’s contingency planning process. The CIO, security specialists, information systems staff, and corporate legal counsel should all work together to have a plan in place that can be executed if a legal need arises. You can find out more about computer forensics in the Learning Tracks for this chapter.
Even with the best security tools, your information systems won’t be reliable and secure unless you know how and where to deploy them. You’ll need to know where your company is at risk and what controls you must have in place to protect your information systems. You’ll also need to develop a security policy and plans for keeping your business running if your information systems aren’t operational.

**INFORMATION SYSTEMS CONTROLS**

Information systems controls are both manual and automated and consist of general and application controls. **General controls** govern the design, security, and use of computer programs and the security of data files in general throughout the organization’s information technology infrastructure. On the whole, general controls apply to all computerized applications and consist of a combination of hardware, software, and manual procedures that create an overall control environment.

General controls include software controls, physical hardware controls, computer operations controls, data security controls, controls over implementation of system processes, and administrative controls. Table 8.4 describes the functions of each of these controls.

**Application controls** are specific controls unique to each computerized application, such as payroll or order processing. They include both automated and manual procedures that ensure that only authorized data are completely and accurately processed by that application. Application controls can be classified as (1) input controls, (2) processing controls, and (3) output controls.

**Table 8.4 GENERAL CONTROLS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF GENERAL CONTROL</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Software controls</td>
<td>Monitor the use of system software and prevent unauthorized access of software programs, system software, and computer programs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardware controls</td>
<td>Ensure that computer hardware is physically secure, and check for equipment malfunction. Organizations that are critically dependent on their computers also must make provisions for backup or continued operation to maintain constant service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer operations controls</td>
<td>Oversee the work of the computer department to ensure that programmed procedures are consistently and correctly applied to the storage and processing of data. They include controls over the setup of computer processing jobs and backup and recovery procedures for processing that ends abnormally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data security controls</td>
<td>Ensure that valuable business data files on either disk or tape are not subject to unauthorized access, change, or destruction while they are in use or in storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation controls</td>
<td>Audit the systems development process at various points to ensure that the process is properly controlled and managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrative controls</td>
<td>Formalize standards, rules, procedures, and control disciplines to ensure that the organization’s general and application controls are properly executed and enforced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Input controls check data for accuracy and completeness when they enter the system. There are specific input controls for input authorization, data conversion, data editing, and error handling. Processing controls establish that data are complete and accurate during updating. Output controls ensure that the results of computer processing are accurate, complete, and properly distributed. You can find more detail about application and general controls in our Learning Tracks.

RISK ASSESSMENT

Before your company commits resources to security and information systems controls, it must know which assets require protection and the extent to which these assets are vulnerable. A risk assessment helps answer these questions and determine the most cost-effective set of controls for protecting assets.

A risk assessment determines the level of risk to the firm if a specific activity or process is not properly controlled. Not all risks can be anticipated and measured, but most businesses will be able to acquire some understanding of the risks they face. Business managers working with information systems specialists should try to determine the value of information assets, points of vulnerability, the likely frequency of a problem, and the potential for damage. For example, if an event is likely to occur no more than once a year, with a maximum of a $1,000 loss to the organization, it is not wise to spend $20,000 on the design and maintenance of a control to protect against that event. However, if that same event could occur at least once a day, with a potential loss of more than $300,000 a year, $100,000 spent on a control might be entirely appropriate.

Table 8.5 illustrates sample results of a risk assessment for an online order processing system that processes 30,000 orders per day. The likelihood of each exposure occurring over a one-year period is expressed as a percentage. The next column shows the highest and lowest possible loss that could be expected each time the exposure occurred and an average loss calculated by adding the highest and lowest figures together and dividing by two. The expected annual loss for each exposure can be determined by multiplying the average loss by its probability of occurrence.

This risk assessment shows that the probability of a power failure occurring in a one-year period is 30 percent. Loss of order transactions while power is down could range from $5,000 to $200,000 (averaging $102,500) for each occurrence, depending on how long processing is halted. The probability of embezzlement occurring over a yearly period is about 5 percent, with potential losses ranging from $1,000 to $50,000 (and averaging $25,500) for each occurrence. User errors have a 98 percent chance of occurring over a yearly period, with losses ranging from $200 to $40,000 (and averaging $20,100) for each occurrence.

Table 8.5 ONLINE ORDER PROCESSING RISK ASSESSMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXPOSURE</th>
<th>PROBABILITY OF OCCURRENCE (%)</th>
<th>LOSS RANGE/ AVERAGE ($)</th>
<th>EXPECTED ANNUAL LOSS ($)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Power failure</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>$5,000–$200,000 ($102,500)</td>
<td>$30,750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embezzlement</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>$1,000–$50,000 ($25,500)</td>
<td>$1,275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User error</td>
<td>98%</td>
<td>$200–$40,000 ($20,100)</td>
<td>$19,698</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Once the risks have been assessed, system builders will concentrate on the control points with the greatest vulnerability and potential for loss. In this case, controls should focus on ways to minimize the risk of power failures and user errors because anticipated annual losses are highest for these areas.

**SECURITY POLICY**

Once you've identified the main risks to your systems, your company will need to develop a security policy for protecting the company’s assets. A security policy consists of statements ranking information risks, identifying acceptable security goals, and identifying the mechanisms for achieving these goals. What are the firm’s most important information assets? Who generates and controls this information in the firm? What existing security policies are in place to protect the information? What level of risk is management willing to accept for each of these assets? Is it willing, for instance, to lose customer credit data once every 10 years? Or will it build a security system for credit card data that can withstand the once-in-a-hundred-year disaster? Management must estimate how much it will cost to achieve this level of acceptable risk.

The security policy drives other policies determining acceptable use of the firm’s information resources and which members of the company have access to its information assets. An acceptable use policy (AUP) defines acceptable uses of the firm’s information resources and computing equipment, including desktop and laptop computers, wireless devices, telephones, and the Internet. The policy should clarify company policy regarding privacy, user responsibility, and personal use of company equipment and networks. A good AUP defines unacceptable and acceptable actions for every user and specifies consequences for noncompliance. For example, security policy at Unilever, the giant multinational consumer goods company, requires every employee to use a company-specified device and employ a password or other method of identification when logging onto the corporate network.

Security policy also includes provisions for identity management. Identity management consists of business processes and software tools for identifying the valid users of a system and controlling their access to system resources. It includes policies for identifying and authorizing different categories of system users, specifying what systems or portions of systems each user is allowed to access, and the processes and technologies for authenticating users and protecting their identities.

Figure 8.3 is one example of how an identity management system might capture the access rules for different levels of users in the human resources function. It specifies what portions of a human resource database each user is permitted to access, based on the information required to perform that person’s job. The database contains sensitive personal information such as employees’ salaries, benefits, and medical histories.

The access rules illustrated here are for two sets of users. One set of users consists of all employees who perform clerical functions, such as inputting employee data into the system. All individuals with this type of profile can update the system but can neither read nor update sensitive fields, such as salary, medical history, or earnings data. Another profile applies to a divisional manager, who cannot update the system but who can read all employee data fields for his or her division, including medical history and salary. We provide more detail on the technologies for user authentication later on in this chapter.
If you run a business, you need to plan for events, such as power outages, floods, earthquakes, or terrorist attacks that will prevent your information systems and your business from operating. **Disaster recovery planning** devises plans for the restoration of computing and communications services after they have been disrupted. Disaster recovery plans focus primarily on the technical issues involved in keeping systems up and running, such as which files to back up and the maintenance of backup computer systems or disaster recovery services.

For example, MasterCard maintains a duplicate computer center in Kansas City, Missouri, to serve as an emergency backup to its primary computer center in St. Louis. Rather than build their own backup facilities, many firms contract with disaster recovery firms, such as Comdisco Disaster Recovery Services and SunGard Availability Services. These disaster recovery firms provide hot sites housing spare computers at locations around the country where subscribing firms can run their critical applications in an emergency. For example, Champion Technologies, which supplies chemicals used in oil and gas operations, is able to switch its enterprise systems from Houston to a SunGard data center in Scottsdale, Arizona, in two hours.

**Business continuity planning** focuses on how the company can restore business operations after a disaster strikes. The business continuity plan
identifies critical business processes and determines action plans for handling mission-critical functions if systems go down. For example, Deutsche Bank, which provides investment banking and asset management services in 74 different countries, has a well-developed business continuity plan that it continually updates and refines. It maintains full-time teams in Singapore, Hong Kong, Japan, India, and Australia to coordinate plans addressing loss of facilities, personnel, or critical systems so that the company can continue to operate when a catastrophic event occurs. Deutsche Bank's plan distinguishes between processes critical for business survival and those critical to crisis support and is coordinated with the company's disaster recovery planning for its computer centers.

Business managers and information technology specialists need to work together on both types of plans to determine which systems and business processes are most critical to the company. They must conduct a business impact analysis to identify the firm's most critical systems and the impact a systems outage would have on the business. Management must determine the maximum amount of time the business can survive with its systems down and which parts of the business must be restored first.

**THE ROLE OF AUDITING**

How does management know that information systems security and controls are effective? To answer this question, organizations must conduct comprehensive and systematic audits. An information systems audit examines the firm's overall security environment as well as controls governing individual information systems. The auditor should trace the flow of sample transactions through the system and perform tests, using, if appropriate, automated audit software. The information systems audit may also examine data quality.

Security audits review technologies, procedures, documentation, training, and personnel. A thorough audit will even simulate an attack or disaster to test the response of the technology, information systems staff, and business employees.

The audit lists and ranks all control weaknesses and estimates the probability of their occurrence. It then assesses the financial and organizational impact of each threat. Figure 8.4 is a sample auditor's listing of control weaknesses for a loan system. It includes a section for notifying management of such weaknesses and for management's response. Management is expected to devise a plan for countering significant weaknesses in controls.

### 8.4 WHAT ARE THE MOST IMPORTANT TOOLS AND TECHNOLOGIES FOR SAFEGUARDING INFORMATION RESOURCES?

Businesses have an array of technologies for protecting their information resources. They include tools for managing user identities, preventing unauthorized access to systems and data, ensuring system availability, and ensuring software quality.

**IDENTITY MANAGEMENT AND AUTHENTICATION**

Midsize and large companies have complex IT infrastructures and many different systems, each with its own set of users. Identity management
software automates the process of keeping track of all these users and their system privileges, assigning each user a unique digital identity for accessing each system. It also includes tools for authenticating users, protecting user identities, and controlling access to system resources.

To gain access to a system, a user must be authorized and authenticated. **Authentication** refers to the ability to know that a person is who he or she claims to be. Authentication is often established by using passwords known only to authorized users. An end user uses a password to log on to a computer system and may also use passwords for accessing specific systems and files. However, users often forget passwords, share them, or choose poor passwords that are easy to guess, which compromises security. Password systems that are too rigorous hinder employee productivity. When employees must change complex passwords frequently, they often take shortcuts, such as choosing passwords that are easy to guess or keeping their passwords at their workstations in plain view. Passwords can also be "sniffed" if transmitted over a network or stolen through social engineering.

New authentication technologies, such as tokens, smart cards, and biometric authentication, overcome some of these problems. A **token** is a physical device, similar to an identification card, that is designed to prove the identity of a single user. Tokens are small gadgets that typically fit on key rings and display passcodes that change frequently. A **smart card** is a device about the size of a credit card that contains a chip formatted with access permission and other data. (Smart cards are also used in electronic payment systems.) A reader device interprets the data on the smart card and allows or denies access.
Biometric authentication uses systems that read and interpret individual human traits, such as fingerprints, irises, and voices, in order to grant or deny access. Biometric authentication is based on the measurement of a physical or behavioral trait that makes each individual unique. It compares a person’s unique characteristics, such as the fingerprints, face, or retinal image, against a stored profile of these characteristics to determine whether there are any differences between these characteristics and the stored profile. If the two profiles match, access is granted. Fingerprint and facial recognition technologies are just beginning to be used for security applications, with many PC laptops (and some smartphones) equipped with fingerprint identification devices and several models with built-in webcams and face recognition software.

The steady stream of incidents in which hackers have been able to access traditional passwords highlights the need for more secure means of authentication. Two-factor authentication increases security by validating users with a multi-step process. To be authenticated, a user must provide two means of identification, one of which is typically a physical token, such as a smartcard or chip-enabled bank card, and the other of which is typically data, such as a password or PIN (personal identification number). Biometric data, such as fingerprints, iris prints, or voice prints, can also be used as one of the authenticating mechanisms. A common example of two-factor authentication is a bank card: the card itself is the physical item and the PIN is the data that go with it.

FIREWALLS, INTRUSION DETECTION SYSTEMS, AND ANTIVIRUS SOFTWARE

Without protection against malware and intruders, connecting to the Internet would be very dangerous. Firewalls, intrusion detection systems, and antivirus software have become essential business tools.
Firewalls

Firewalls prevent unauthorized users from accessing private networks. A firewall is a combination of hardware and software that controls the flow of incoming and outgoing network traffic. It is generally placed between the organization's private internal networks and distrusted external networks, such as the Internet, although firewalls can also be used to protect one part of a company’s network from the rest of the network (see Figure 8.5).

The firewall acts like a gatekeeper who examines each user's credentials before access is granted to a network. The firewall identifies names, IP addresses, applications, and other characteristics of incoming traffic. It checks this information against the access rules that have been programmed into the system by the network administrator. The firewall prevents unauthorized communication into and out of the network.

In large organizations, the firewall often resides on a specially designated computer separate from the rest of the network, so no incoming request directly accesses private network resources. There are a number of firewall screening technologies, including static packet filtering, stateful inspection, Network Address Translation, and application proxy filtering. They are frequently used in combination to provide firewall protection.

Packet filtering examines selected fields in the headers of data packets flowing back and forth between the trusted network and the Internet, examining individual packets in isolation. This filtering technology can miss many types of attacks. Stateful inspection provides additional security by determining whether

---

**FIGURE 8.5 A CORPORATE FIREWALL**

The firewall is placed between the firm’s private network and the public Internet or another distrusted network to protect against unauthorized traffic.
packets are part of an ongoing dialogue between a sender and a receiver. It sets up state tables to track information over multiple packets. Packets are accepted or rejected based on whether they are part of an approved conversation or whether they are attempting to establish a legitimate connection.

Network Address Translation (NAT) can provide another layer of protection when static packet filtering and stateful inspection are employed. NAT conceals the IP addresses of the organization’s internal host computer(s) to prevent sniffer programs outside the firewall from ascertaining them and using that information to penetrate internal systems.

Application proxy filtering examines the application content of packets. A proxy server stops data packets originating outside the organization, inspects them, and passes a proxy to the other side of the firewall. If a user outside the company wants to communicate with a user inside the organization, the outside user first “talks” to the proxy application and the proxy application communicates with the firm’s internal computer. Likewise, a computer user inside the organization goes through the proxy to talk with computers on the outside.

To create a good firewall, an administrator must maintain detailed internal rules identifying the people, applications, or addresses that are allowed or rejected. Firewalls can deter, but not completely prevent, network penetration by outsiders and should be viewed as one element in an overall security plan.

Intrusion Detection Systems
In addition to firewalls, commercial security vendors now provide intrusion detection tools and services to protect against suspicious network traffic and attempts to access files and databases. Intrusion detection systems feature full-time monitoring tools placed at the most vulnerable points or “hot spots” of corporate networks to detect and deter intruders continually. The system generates an alarm if it finds a suspicious or anomalous event. Scanning software looks for patterns indicative of known methods of computer attacks, such as bad passwords, checks to see if important files have been removed or modified, and sends warnings of vandalism or system administration errors. Monitoring software examines events as they are happening to discover security attacks in progress. The intrusion detection tool can also be customized to shut down a particularly sensitive part of a network if it receives unauthorized traffic.

Antivirus and Antispyware Software
Defensive technology plans for both individuals and businesses must include anti-malware protection for every computer. Antivirus software prevents, detects, and removes malware, including computer viruses, computer worms, Trojan horses, spyware, and adware. However, most antivirus software is effective only against malware already known when the software was written. To remain effective, the antivirus software must be continually updated, and even then it is not always effective. According to a report by Solutionary Security Engineering Research Team (SERT), 54 percent of malware evades anti-virus detection. Organizations need to use additional malware detection tools for better protection (Solutionary, 2013).

Unified Threat Management Systems
To help businesses reduce costs and improve manageability, security vendors have combined into a single appliance various security tools, including firewalls, virtual private networks, intrusion detection systems, and Web content
filtering and antispam software. These comprehensive security management products are called **unified threat management (UTM)** systems. Although initially aimed at small and medium-sized businesses, UTM products are available for all sizes of networks. Leading UTM vendors include Blue Coat, Fortinet, and Check Point, and networking vendors such as Cisco Systems and Juniper Networks provide some UTM capabilities in their products.

### SECURING WIRELESS NETWORKS

The initial security standard developed for Wi-Fi, called Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP), is not very effective because its encryption keys are relatively easy to crack. WEP provides some margin of security, however, if users remember to enable it. Corporations can further improve Wi-Fi security by using it in conjunction with virtual private network (VPN) technology when accessing internal corporate data.

In June 2004, the Wi-Fi Alliance industry trade group finalized the 802.11i specification (also referred to as Wi-Fi Protected Access 2 or WPA2) that replaces WEP with stronger security standards. Instead of the static encryption keys used in WEP, the new standard uses much longer keys that continually change, making them harder to crack. It also employs an encrypted authentication system with a central authentication server to ensure that only authorized users access the network.

### ENCRYPTION AND PUBLIC KEY INFRASTRUCTURE

Many businesses use encryption to protect digital information that they store, physically transfer, or send over the Internet. **Encryption** is the process of transforming plain text or data into cipher text that cannot be read by anyone other than the sender and the intended receiver. Data are encrypted by using a secret numerical code, called an encryption key, that transforms plain data into cipher text. The message must be decrypted by the receiver.

Two methods for encrypting network traffic on the Web are SSL and S-HTTP. **Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)** and its successor Transport Layer Security (TLS) enable client and server computers to manage encryption and decryption activities as they communicate with each other during a secure Web session. **Secure Hypertext Transfer Protocol (S-HTTP)** is another protocol used for encrypting data flowing over the Internet, but it is limited to individual messages, whereas SSL and TLS are designed to establish a secure connection between two computers.

The capability to generate secure sessions is built into Internet client browser software and servers. The client and the server negotiate what key and what level of security to use. Once a secure session is established between the client and the server, all messages in that session are encrypted.

Two methods of encryption are symmetric key encryption and public key encryption. In symmetric key encryption, the sender and receiver establish a secure Internet session by creating a single encryption key and sending it to the receiver so both the sender and receiver share the same key. The strength of the encryption key is measured by its bit length. Today, a typical key will be 128 bits long (a string of 128 binary digits).

The problem with all symmetric encryption schemes is that the key itself must be shared somehow among the senders and receivers, which exposes the key to outsiders who might just be able to intercept and decrypt the key.
A more secure form of encryption called public key encryption uses two keys: one shared (or public) and one totally private as shown in Figure 8.6. The keys are mathematically related so that data encrypted with one key can be decrypted using only the other key. To send and receive messages, communicators first create separate pairs of private and public keys. The public key is kept in a directory and the private key must be kept secret. The sender encrypts a message with the recipient's public key. On receiving the message, the recipient uses his or her private key to decrypt the data and read the message.

Digital certificates are data files used to establish the identity of users and electronic assets for protection of online transactions (see Figure 8.7). A digital certificate system uses a trusted third party, known as a certificate authority.
(CA, or certification authority), to validate a user's identity. There are many CAs in the United States and around the world, including Symantec, GoDaddy, and Comodo.

The CA verifies a digital certificate user's identity offline. This information is put into a CA server, which generates an encrypted digital certificate containing owner identification information and a copy of the owner's public key. The certificate authenticates that the public key belongs to the designated owner. The CA makes its own public key available either in print or perhaps on the Internet. The recipient of an encrypted message uses the CA's public key to decode the digital certificate attached to the message, verifies it was issued by the CA, and then obtains the sender's public key and identification information contained in the certificate. Using this information, the recipient can send an encrypted reply. The digital certificate system would enable, for example, a credit card user and a merchant to validate that their digital certificates were issued by an authorized and trusted third party before they exchange data. Public key infrastructure (PKI), the use of public key cryptography working with a CA, is now widely used in e-commerce.

ENSURING SYSTEM AVAILABILITY

As companies increasingly rely on digital networks for revenue and operations, they need to take additional steps to ensure that their systems and applications are always available. Firms such as those in the airline and financial services industries with critical applications requiring online transaction processing have traditionally used fault-tolerant computer systems for many years to ensure 100 percent availability. In online transaction processing, transactions entered online are immediately processed by the computer. Multitudinous changes to databases, reporting, and requests for information occur each instant.

Fault-tolerant computer systems contain redundant hardware, software, and power supply components that create an environment that provides continuous, uninterrupted service. Fault-tolerant computers use special software routines or self-checking logic built into their circuitry to detect hardware failures and automatically switch to a backup device. Parts from these computers can be removed and repaired without disruption to the computer or downtime. Downtime refers to periods of time in which a system is not operational.

Controlling Network Traffic: Deep Packet Inspection

Have you ever tried to use your campus network and found it was very slow? It may be because your fellow students are using the network to download music or watch YouTube. Bandwidth-consuming applications such as file-sharing programs, Internet phone service, and online video are able to clog and slow down corporate networks, degrading performance. For example, Ball State University in Muncie, Indiana, found its network had slowed because a small minority of students were using P2P file-sharing programs to download movies and music.

A technology called deep packet inspection (DPI) helps solve this problem. DPI examines data files and sorts out low-priority online material while assigning higher priority to business-critical files. Based on the priorities established by a network's operators, it decides whether a specific data packet can continue to its destination or should be blocked or delayed while more important traffic
proceeds. Using a DPI system from Allot Communications, Ball State was able to cap the amount of file-sharing traffic and assign it a much lower priority. Ball State's preferred network traffic speeded up.

**Security Outsourcing**

Many companies, especially small businesses, lack the resources or expertise to provide a secure high-availability computing environment on their own. They can outsource many security functions to managed security service providers (MSSPs) that monitor network activity and perform vulnerability testing and intrusion detection. SecureWorks, BT Managed Security Solutions Group, and Symantec are leading providers of MSSP services.

**SECURITY ISSUES FOR CLOUD COMPUTING AND THE MOBILE DIGITAL PLATFORM**

Although cloud computing and the emerging mobile digital platform have the potential to deliver powerful benefits, they pose new challenges to system security and reliability. We now describe some of these challenges and how they should be addressed.

**Security in the Cloud**

When processing takes place in the cloud, accountability and responsibility for protection of sensitive data still reside with the company owning that data. Understanding how the cloud computing provider organizes its services and manages the data is critical.

Cloud computing is highly distributed. Cloud applications reside in large remote data centers and server farms that supply business services and data management for multiple corporate clients. To save money and keep costs low, cloud computing providers often distribute work to data centers around the globe where work can be accomplished most efficiently. When you use the cloud, you may not know precisely where your data are being hosted.

The dispersed nature of cloud computing makes it difficult to track unauthorized activity. Virtually all cloud providers use encryption, such as Secure Sockets Layer, to secure the data they handle while the data are being transmitted. But if the data are stored on devices that also store other companies' data, it's important to ensure these stored data are encrypted as well.

Companies expect their systems to be running 24/7, but cloud providers haven't always been able to provide this level of service. On several occasions over the past few years, the cloud services of Amazon.com and Salesforce.com experienced outages that disrupted business operations for millions of users.

Cloud users need to confirm that regardless of where their data are stored, they are protected at a level that meets their corporate requirements. They should stipulate that the cloud provider store and process data in specific jurisdictions according to the privacy rules of those jurisdictions. Cloud clients should find how the cloud provider segregates their corporate data from those of other companies and ask for proof that encryption mechanisms are sound. It's also important to know how the cloud provider will respond if a disaster strikes, whether the provider will be able to completely restore your data, and how long this should take. Cloud users should also ask whether cloud providers will submit to external audits and security certifications. These kinds of controls
can be written into the service level agreement (SLA) before signing with a cloud provider.

**Securing Mobile Platforms**

If mobile devices are performing many of the functions of computers, they need to be secured like desktops and laptops against malware, theft, accidental loss, unauthorized access, and hacking attempts. The Interactive Session on Technology describes these mobile vulnerabilities in greater detail and their implications for both individuals and businesses.

Mobile devices accessing corporate systems and data require special protection. Companies should make sure that their corporate security policy includes mobile devices, with additional details on how mobile devices should be supported, protected, and used. They will need mobile device management tools to authorize all devices in use; to maintain accurate inventory records on all mobile devices, users, and applications; to control updates to applications; and to lock down or erase lost or stolen devices so they can’t be compromised. Data loss prevention technology can identify where critical data are saved, who is accessing the data, how data are leaving the company, and where the data are going. Firms should develop guidelines stipulating approved mobile platforms and software applications as well as the required software and procedures for remote access of corporate systems. The organization’s mobile security policy should forbid employees from using unsecure, consumer-based applications for transferring and storing corporate documents and files, or sending such documents and files to oneself via e-mail without encryption.

Companies should encrypt communication whenever possible. All mobile device users should be required to use the password feature found in every smartphone. Mobile security products are available from Kaspersky, Symantec, Trend Micro, and McAfee.

Some companies insist that employees use only company-issued smartphones. BlackBerry devices are considered the most secure because they run within their own secure system. But, increasingly, companies are allowing employees to use their own devices, including iPhones, iPads, and Android phones, for work, to make employees more available and productive (see the Chapter 5 discussion of BYOD). Protective software products, such as the tools from Good Technology, are now available for segregating corporate data housed within personally owned mobile devices from the device’s personal content.

**ENSURING SOFTWARE QUALITY**

In addition to implementing effective security and controls, organizations can improve system quality and reliability by employing software metrics and rigorous software testing. Software metrics are objective assessments of the system in the form of quantified measurements. Ongoing use of metrics allows the information systems department and end users to jointly measure the performance of the system and identify problems as they occur. Examples of software metrics include the number of transactions that can be processed in a specified unit of time, online response time, the number of payroll checks printed per hour, and the number of known bugs per hundred lines of program code. For metrics to be successful, they must be carefully designed, formal, objective, and used consistently.
BYOD: IT’S NOT SO SAFE

Bring Your Own Device has become a huge trend, with nearly one-third of employees using personal devices at workplaces worldwide. This figure is expected to increase even more in the years to come. But while use of the iPhone, iPad and other mobile computing devices in the workplace is growing, so are security problems.

Whether these devices are company-assigned or employee-owned, they are opening up new avenues for accessing corporate data that need to be closely monitored and protected. Sensitive data on mobile devices travels, both physically and electronically, from the office to home and possibly other off-site locations. According to a 2012 survey of 400 technology professionals by researchers at Decisive Analytics, nearly half of companies that allow personally-owned devices to connect to the corporate network have experienced a data breach, either because of employees’ unwitting mistakes or intentional wrongdoing. Quite a few security experts believe that smartphones and other mobile devices now pose one of the most serious security threats for organizations today.

One of the biggest security dangers of smartphones is that the devices could become lost. That puts all of the personal and corporate data stored on the device, as well as access to corporate data on remote servers, at risk. According to a Ponemon Institute study of 116 organizations, 62 percent of mobile devices housing data that were lost or stolen contained sensitive or confidential information. Information Week’s 2014 State of Mobile Security report stated that 72 percent of responding companies said their top mobile security concern was lost or stolen devices.

Physical access to mobile devices may be a greater threat than hacking into a network because less effort is required to gain entry. Experienced attackers can easily circumvent passwords or locks on mobile devices or access encrypted data. This may include not only corporate data found on the device but also passwords residing in insecure places such as iPhone Keychain, which could grant access to corporate services such as email or the virtual private network. Moreover, many smartphone users leave their phones totally unprotected to begin with. In the Websense and the Ponemon Institute’s Global Study on Mobility Risks, 59 percent of respondents reported that employees circumvented or disabled security features such as passwords and key locks. Intruders can also gain physical access to mobile devices by plugging into a device using a USB connection or SD card slot. Even leaving a device alone for a minute on a desk or chair can lead to serious theft of data in a few minutes.

Another worry today is large scale data leakage caused by use of cloud computing services. Employees are increasingly using public cloud services such as Google Drive or Dropbox for file-sharing and collaboration. For example, Mashery, a 170-employee company that helps other companies build apps, allows employees with iPhones to use Dropbox, Box, Teambox, and Google Drive to store memos, spreadsheets, and customer information. These services are vulnerable. In July 2012, Dropbox reported a loss of login names and passwords from a large number of customers, and in 2011, Chinese hackers obtained access to hundreds of U.S. government accounts on Google Gmail. There’s very little a company can do to prevent employees who are allowed to use their smartphones from downloading corporate data so they can work on that data remotely.

Although deliberate hacker attacks on mobile devices have been limited in scope and impact, this situation is worsening, especially among Android devices vulnerable to rogue apps. According to McAfee, a leading computer security software firm, malware in Android mobile operating systems alone grew by 33 percent in 2013. Android is now the world’s most popular operating system for mobile devices.

Security on the Android platform is much less under Google’s control than Apple devices running iOS because Google has an open app model. Google does not review any Android apps (as Apple does for its apps), but instead relies on technical hurdles to limit the impact of malicious code, as well as user and security expert feedback. Google apps run in a “sandbox,” where they cannot affect one another or manipulate device features without user permission. Google removes from its official Android Market any apps that break its rules against malicious activity. Google also vets the backgrounds of developers, and requires develop-
ers to register with its Checkout payment service both to encourage users to pay for apps using their service and to force developers to reveal their identities and financial information. Recent Android security enhancements include assigning varying levels of trust to each app, dictating what kind of data an app can access inside its confined domain, and providing a more robust way to store cryptographic credentials used to access sensitive information and resources. Still, from a corporate standpoint, it is almost impossible to prevent employees from downloading apps that might track critical information when people use their own devices in the workplace.

Beyond the threat of rogue apps, smartphones of all stripes are susceptible to browser-based malware that takes advantage of vulnerabilities in all browsers.

Mobile security breaches carry a hefty price tag for data loss, damage to the brand, productivity loss, and loss of customer trust. According to a 2013 study commissioned by Check Point Technologies, 52 percent of large companies reported the cost of mobile security incidents exceeded $500,000.

Forty-five percent of businesses with less than 1,000 employees reported costs exceeding $100,000. These security breaches can also cause huge intangible losses to a company’s reputation. The Securities and Exchange Commission requires unauthorized disclosure of confidential information, whether from unsecured devices, untrusted apps, or weak cloud security, must be publicly reported if the information could affect a company’s stock price.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. It has been said that a smartphone is a computer in your hand. Discuss the security implications of this statement.

2. What management, organizational, and technology issues must be addressed by smartphone security?

3. What problems do smartphone security weaknesses cause for businesses?

4. What steps can individuals and businesses take to make their smartphones more secure?

Early, regular, and thorough testing will contribute significantly to system quality. Many view testing as a way to prove the correctness of work they have done. In fact, we know that all sizable software is riddled with errors, and we must test to uncover these errors.

Good testing begins before a software program is even written by using a walkthrough—a review of a specification or design document by a small group of people carefully selected based on the skills needed for the particular objectives being tested. Once developers start writing software programs, coding walkthroughs can also be used to review program code. However, code must be tested by computer runs. When errors are discovered, the source is found and eliminated through a process called debugging. You can find out more about the various stages of testing required to put an information system into operation in Chapter 13. Our Learning Tracks also contain descriptions of methodologies for developing software programs that also contribute to software quality.
1. **Why are information systems vulnerable to destruction, error, and abuse?**

   Digital data are vulnerable to destruction, misuse, error, fraud, and hardware or software failures. The Internet is designed to be an open system and makes internal corporate systems more vulnerable to actions from outsiders. Hackers can unleash denial-of-service (DoS) attacks or penetrate corporate networks, causing serious system disruptions. Wi-Fi networks can easily be penetrated by intruders using sniffer programs to obtain an address to access the resources of the network. Computer viruses and worms can disable systems and Web sites. The dispersed nature of cloud computing makes it difficult to track unauthorized activity or to apply controls from afar. Software presents problems because software bugs may be impossible to eliminate and because software vulnerabilities can be exploited by hackers and malicious software. End users often introduce errors.

2. **What is the business value of security and control?**

   Lack of sound security and control can cause firms relying on computer systems for their core business functions to lose sales and productivity. Information assets, such as confidential employee records, trade secrets, or business plans, lose much of their value if they are revealed to outsiders or if they expose the firm to legal liability. New laws, such as HIPAA, the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, and the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, require companies to practice stringent electronic records management and adhere to strict standards for security, privacy, and control. Legal actions requiring electronic evidence and computer forensics also require firms to pay more attention to security and electronic records management.

3. **What are the components of an organizational framework for security and control?**

   What are the components of an organizational framework for security and control? Firms need to establish a good set of both general and application controls for their information systems. A risk assessment evaluates information assets, identifies control points and control weaknesses, and determines the most cost-effective set of controls. Firms must also develop a coherent corporate security policy and plans for continuing business operations in the event of disaster or disruption. The security policy includes policies for acceptable use and identity management. Comprehensive and systematic information systems auditing helps organizations determine the effectiveness of security and controls for their information systems.

4. **What are the most important tools and technologies for safeguarding information resources?**

   Firewalls prevent unauthorized users from accessing a private network when it is linked to the Internet. Intrusion detection systems monitor private networks from suspicious network traffic and attempts to access corporate systems. Passwords, tokens, smart cards, and biometric authentication are used to authenticate system users. Antivirus software checks computer systems for infections by viruses and worms and often eliminates the malicious software, while antispyware software combats intrusive and harmful spyware programs. Encryption, the coding and scrambling of messages, is a widely used technology for securing electronic transmissions over unprotected networks. Digital certificates combined with public key encryption provide further protection of electronic transactions by authenticating a user's identity. Companies can use fault-tolerant computer systems to make sure that their information systems are always available. Use of software metrics and rigorous software testing help improve software quality and reliability.

---

**Key Terms**

Acceptable use policy (AUP), 323  
Antivirus software, 329  
Application controls, 321  
Authentication, 326  
Biometric authentication, 327  
Botnet, 312  
Bugs, 318  
Business continuity planning, 324  
Click fraud, 316  
Computer crime, 312  
Computer forensics, 320  
Computer virus, 308  
Controls, 306  
Cybervandalism, 311
Review Questions

8-1 Why are information systems vulnerable to destruction, error, and abuse?

- List and describe the most common threats against contemporary information systems.
- Define malware and distinguish among a virus, a worm, and a Trojan horse.
- Define a hacker and explain how hackers create security problems and damage systems.
- Define computer crime. Provide two examples of crime in which computers are targets and two examples in which computers are used as instruments of crime.
- Define identity theft and phishing and explain why identity theft is such a big problem today.
- Describe the security and system reliability problems created by employees.
- Explain how software defects affect system reliability and security.

8-2 What is the business value of security and control?

- Explain how security and control provide value for businesses.
- Describe the relationship between security and control and recent U.S. government regulatory requirements and computer forensics.

8-3 What are the components of an organizational framework for security and control?

- Define general controls and describe each type of general control.
- Define application controls and describe each type of application control.
- Describe the function of risk assessment and explain how it is conducted for information systems.
- Define and describe the following: security policy, acceptable use policy, and identity management.
• Explain how information systems auditing promotes security and control.

What are the most important tools and technologies for safeguarding information resources?
• Name and describe three authentication methods.
• Describe the roles of firewalls, intrusion detection systems, and antivirus software in promoting security.

Discussion Questions

8-5 Security isn’t simply a technology issue, it’s a business issue. Discuss.

8-6 If you were developing a business continuity plan for your company, where would you start? What aspects of the business would the plan address?

8-7 Suppose your business had an e-commerce Web site where it sold goods and accepted credit card payments. Discuss the major security threats to this Web site and their potential impact. What can be done to minimize these threats?

Hands-On MIS Projects

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience analyzing security vulnerabilities, using spreadsheet software for risk analysis, and using Web tools to research security outsourcing services.

Management Decision Problems

8-8 Reloaded Games is an online games platform which powers leading massively multiplayer online games. The Reloaded platform serves more than 30 million users. The games can accommodate millions of players at once and are played simultaneously by people all over the world. Prepare a security analysis for this Internet-based business. What kinds of threats should it anticipate? What would be their impact on the business? What steps can it take to prevent damage to its Web sites and continuing operations?

8-9 A survey of your firm’s IT infrastructure has identified a number of security vulnerabilities. Review the data on these vulnerabilities, which can be found in a table in MyMISLab™. Use the table to answer the following questions:
• Calculate the total number of vulnerabilities for each platform. What is the potential impact of the security problems for each computing platform on the organization?
• If you only have one information systems specialist in charge of security, which platforms should you address first in trying to eliminate these vulnerabilities? Second? Third? Last? Why?
• Identify the types of control problems illustrated by these vulnerabilities and explain the measures that should be taken to solve them.
• What does your firm risk by ignoring the security vulnerabilities identified?
Improving Decision Making: Using Spreadsheet Software to Perform a Security Risk Assessment

Software skills: Spreadsheet formulas and charts
Business skills: Risk assessment

8-10 This project uses spreadsheet software to calculate anticipated annual losses from various security threats identified for a small company.

Mercer Paints is a paint manufacturing company located in Alabama that uses a network to link its business operations. A security risk assessment requested by management identified a number of potential exposures. Exposures, their associated probabilities, and average losses are summarized in a table, which can be found in MyMISLab. Use the table to answer the following questions:

- In addition to the potential exposures listed, identify at least three other potential threats to Mercer Paints, assign probabilities, and estimate a loss range.
- Use spreadsheet software and the risk assessment data to calculate the expected annual loss for each exposure.
- Present your findings in the form of a chart. Which control points have the greatest vulnerability? What recommendations would you make to Mercer Paints? Prepare a written report that summarizes your findings and recommendations.

Improving Decision Making: Evaluating Security Outsourcing Services

Software skills: Web browser and presentation software
Business skills: Evaluating business outsourcing services

8-11 This project will help develop your Internet skills in using the Web to research and evaluate security outsourcing services.

You have been asked to help your company’s management decide whether to outsource security or keep the security function within the firm. Search the Web to find information to help you decide whether to outsource security and to locate security outsourcing services.

- Present a brief summary of the arguments for and against outsourcing computer security for your company.
- Select two firms that offer computer security outsourcing services, and compare them and their services.
- Prepare an electronic presentation for management summarizing your findings. Your presentation should make the case on whether or not your company should outsource computer security. If you believe your company should outsource, the presentation should identify which security outsourcing service you selected and justify your decision.

Collaboration and Teamwork Project

8-12 In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Docs, Google Sites, Google+, or other open source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.
The Looming Threat of Cyberwarfare
CASE STUDY

“Now our enemies are also seeking the ability to sabotage our power grid, our financial institutions, and our air traffic control systems. We cannot look back years from now and wonder why we did nothing in the face of real threats to our security and our economy.”

With these words in his 2013 State of the Union address, Barack Obama officially became the first U.S. cyberwarfare president. Obama was about to sign the Improving Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity executive order, which allows companies associated with the supervision of electrical grids, dams, and financial institutions to voluntarily join a program to receive classified and other cyber security threat information previously available only to government contractors. The main drawback is that legislation can only enforce minimum security requirements for private sector companies, which operate most U.S. critical infrastructure. Unfortunately, Congress, in 2012, had failed to pass two cyber security bills that were much stronger, bowing to pressures from business worried about stepped-up security costs and concerns raised by privacy advocates.

Cyberwarfare is more complex than conventional warfare. Although many potential targets are military, a country’s power grids, financial systems, and communications networks can also be crippled. Non-state actors such as terrorists or criminal groups can mount attacks, and it is often difficult to tell who is responsible. Nations must constantly be on the alert for new malware and other technologies that could be used against them, and some of these technologies developed by skilled hacker groups are openly for sale to interested governments.

The scale and speed of cyber attacks has escalated in the United States and other parts of the world. From September 2012 through March 2013, at least twelve U.S. financial institutions—Bank of America, Citigroup, Wells Fargo, U.S. Bancorp, PNC, Capital One, Fifth Third Bank, BB&T, HSBC, J.P. Morgan Chase, and American Express—were targeted in attacks that slowed their servers to a crawl and then shut them down. The severity of the attacks dwarfed previous distributed denial of service (DDoS) attacks. The data centers of these organizations had been infected with a long-available malware agent named Itsoknoproblembro, which creates botnets of slave servers, dubbed bRobots because they are so difficult to trace back to a command and control (C&C) server. The bRobots inundated the bank Web sites with encrypted data. A flood of encryption requests immensely intensifies attack effectiveness, enabling the attackers to take down a site with fewer requests.

The goal of the attacks was to inflict an unprecedented level of strain on as many financial institutions as possible. No account information was stolen and no financial gain sought, leading experts to think it was a state-sponsored attack. The hacker group Izzad-Din al-Qassam Cyber Fighters claimed responsibility, stating that it was retaliating for an anti-Islam video. U.S. government officials believe the perpetrator is actually Iran, retaliating for economic sanctions imposed to halt its nuclear program and for what it believes were U.S. cyber attacks.

In August 2012, the Shamoon virus infected 30,000 machines at Saudi Arabian oil company, Aramco. It destroyed workstations by overwriting the master boot record (MBR), which stores key information about a hard disk drive to help a computer system start up. Shamoon also deleted data on servers, and overwrote certain files with an image of a burning American flag. U.S. officials attributed the attack to Iran.

Less than two weeks later, Qatari natural gas company, Rasgas, was forced to shut down its Web site and e-mail systems in an attack initially also attributed to Shamoon. An investigative team concluded it was likely a copycat attack trying to look like the same perpetrator. U.S. government officials blamed Iranian hackers. Israeli officials attributed both attacks to Iran’s Cyber Corps, formed after Stuxnet.

Believed to have been developed by a secret joint United States-Israel operation, the Stuxnet worm was discovered in June 2010. It was designed to disable the software that controls Seimen centrifuges to
enrich uranium, and it reportedly delayed Iran's ability to make nuclear arms by as much as five years. Iran has also been the target of other malware. The Duqu worm, discovered in September 2011, steals digital certificates used for authentication to help future viruses appear as secure software. In April 2012, other espionage malware closely related to Stuxnet and Duqu called Flame was discovered when hard drives at the Iranian Oil Ministry and National Iranian Oil Company were wiped clean. Four months later, investigators found that the data deletion agent they had been looking for when they discovered Flame was a separate malware agent they named Wiper. Investigators believe that Wiper's first objective is to eradicate the malware created by this group.

Cyber offensives come with a considerable downside. Previously released malware is recoverable and can be adapted and reused by both nation-state foes and unaffiliated cyber criminals. Stuxnet code has been adapted for use in financial cybercrime. Another drawback is uncontrollability. About 60 percent of known Stuxnet infections were in Iran, but 18 percent were in Indonesia, 8 percent in India, and the remaining 15 percent scattered around the world. In November 2012, Chevron admitted that its network had been infected with Stuxnet shortly after it spread beyond Iran.

To U.S. officials, these recent Iranian attacks signaled a shift in Iranian policy from cyber defense to cyber offense. After investing approximately $1 billion in its Cyber Corps in 2012 (still just a third of United States expenditures), Iran may have arrived as a first-tier cyber power.

China has been a first-tier cyber power for years. U.S. targets of suspected Chinese cyber attacks include federal departments (Homeland Security, State, Energy, Commerce); senior officials (Hillary Clinton, Adm. Mike Mullen); nuclear-weapons labs (Los Alamos, Oak Ridge); defense contractors (Northrup Grumman, Lockheed Martin); news organizations (the Wall Street Journal, the New York Times, Bloomberg), technology firms (Google, Adobe, Yahoo), multinationals (Coca-Cola, Dow Chemical), and just about every other node of American commerce, infrastructure or authority. Hackers have obtained sensitive information such as negotiation strategies of major corporations; designs of more than two dozen major U.S. weapons systems, including the advanced Patriot missile system, the Navy's Aegis ballistic missile defense systems, the F/A-18 fighter jet, the V-22 Osprey, the Black Hawk helicopter and the F-35 Joint Strike Fighter; and the workings of America's power grid, possibly laying groundwork for acts of sabotage. Cyberattacks from China and other nations have persisted because the U.S. has difficulty defending its information systems, cyberspace is not yet subject to international norms, and years of intrusions have provoked little American response.

Investigators believe that in September 2012, one of the elite hacking groups from China's People's Liberation Army (P.L.A.) attacked Telvent, a company that monitors utility companies, water treatment plants, and over half the oil and gas pipelines in North America. Six months later, Telvent and government investigators still didn't know if the motive was espionage or sabotage. U.S. intelligence experts believe that China's U.S. investments, particularly new, substantial investments in oil and gas, deter China from infrastructure attacks. China's economy could not escape the negative consequences from a significant shutdown of U.S. transportation systems or financial markets. Iran, with no U.S. investments, is a much greater threat. Moreover, diplomatic channels are open with China.

Less than a week after Obama's State of the Union address, security firm Mandiant released details on a group it dubbed "APT1." Mandiant traced APT1 to a building in Shanghai that documents from China Telecom indicate was built at the same time as the General Staff Department's 3rd Department, 2nd Bureau—the military hacking unit, P.L.A. Unit 61398. Outfitted with a high-tech fiber optic infrastructure, this 12-story white office tower was said to be the origin of a six year offensive that infiltrated 141 companies across 20 industries.

The Obama administration's mounting concern with the economic and national security risks posed by cyber-intrusions has repeatedly been expressed to top Chinese officials. In May 2013, the Pentagon's annual report to Congress for the first time directly accused the Chinese government and P.L.A. of attacking U.S. government and defense contractor networks. In May 2014, the U.S. charged five Chinese military officials with hacking into six U.S. steel, solar and nuclear companies and a labor organization for trade secrets and other information.

Two months earlier, however, North Korea, another budding cyberwarfare adversary, was accused of launching its most damaging attack to date. Despite obstacles limiting its ability to develop expertise, including sanctions, which restrict its access to technology, and a limited talent pool due to meager Internet penetration and restrictive access policies, North Korea is believed to have perpetrated...
attacks on both South Korean and American commercial, educational, governmental, and military institutions. In March 2013, 32,000 computers at three major South Korean banks and the two largest television broadcasters were affected. Internet banking sites were temporarily blocked, computer screens went blank, ATM machines failed, and commerce was disrupted.

The attackers used the Chinese-written Gondad exploit kit to infect PCs with a Trojan horse that provides an entryway for an attacker to take control of the machine, creating a bot or zombie computer. Once the digital backdoor is created, the controller can deposit a malware payload, in this case, a wiper agent named Dark Seoul. Like Shamoon, Dark Seoul overwrites the master boot record (MBR). There is no conclusive evidence implicating North Korea, but tensions had been escalating between the two countries. The Kim Jong-un administration had expressed fury in the days leading up to the attack over ongoing, routine joint Korea/United States military training exercises, exacerbated by South Korea’s participation in U.S.-spearheaded United Nations sanctions against North Korea for its nuclear test the month before. Seoul contends that Pyongyang has committed six previous cyber attacks since 2009. Security experts at South Korea’s newly formed cyber security command center believe that North Korea has been assembling and training a cyberwarrior team of thousands, and the United States agrees. For North Korea, the threat of cyber retaliation is negligible. Internet access is only now extending beyond a privileged few, businesses are just beginning to adopt online banking, and while targets are virtually nonexistent.

The Obama administration has begun helping Asian and Middle Eastern allies build up their computer network defenses against Iran and North Korea, including supplying advanced hardware and software and training programs. Future joint war games would include simulated cyber attacks. But deterring cyber attacks is a far more complex problem than conventional warfare, and U.S. officials concede that this effort is an experiment.

While increased diplomatic pressure and the intertwined nature of the world’s two largest economies may yield a practicable agreement between China and the United States, how to deal with the so-called “irrational actors,” Iran and North Korea, is thornier. Since China is North Korea’s biggest trading partner and most important ally, hammering out an agreement with China may be the first step towards managing North Korea. While Iran is diplomatically isolated, China depends on it to meet its energy needs. China walks a tightrope between exploiting the sanctioned Iranian economy and following the U.N. sanctions for which it voted. It just may be that the road to agreements with both Pyongyang and Tehran runs through Beijing. Meanwhile, the military command responsible for most U.S. cyber war efforts, U.S. Cyber Command (CYBERCOM), is slated for a 500 percent manpower increase between 2014 and 2016 and all of the major combat commands in the United States military will share dedicated forces to conduct cyberattacks alongside their air, naval and ground capabilities.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

8-13 Is cyberwarfare a serious problem? Why or why not?

8-14 Assess the management, organization, and technology factors responsible for this problem.

8-15 What solutions are available for this problem? Do you think they will be effective? Why or why not?
Go to mymislab.com for Auto-graded writing questions as well as the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

8-16  Describe three spoofing tactics employed in identity theft using information systems.
8-17  Describe four reasons why mobile devices used in business are difficult to secure.

Chapter 8 References

“Devastating Downtime: The Surprising Cost of Human Error and Unforeseen Events.” Focus Research (October 2010).
Breedon, John II. “Trojans Horses Gain Inside Track as Top Form of Malware.” GCN (May 6, 2013).

Part Three examines the core information system applications businesses are using today to improve operational excellence and decision making. These applications include enterprise systems; systems for supply chain management, customer relationship management, and knowledge management; e-commerce applications; and business-intelligence systems. This part answers questions such as: How can enterprise applications improve business performance? How do firms use e-commerce to extend the reach of their businesses? How can systems improve decision making and help companies make better use of their knowledge assets?
LEARNING OBJECTIVES
After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. How do enterprise systems help businesses achieve operational excellence?
2. How do supply chain management systems coordinate planning, production, and logistics with suppliers?
3. How do customer relationship management systems help firms achieve customer intimacy?
4. What are the challenges posed by enterprise applications and how are enterprise applications taking advantage of new technologies?

MyMISLab™
Visit mymislab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.

CHAPTER CASES
ACH Food Companies Transforms Its Business with Enterprise Systems
Scotts Miracle-Gro Cultivates Supply Chain Proficiency
Graybar Goes for Customer Analytics
Vodafone: A Giant Global ERP Implementation

VIDEO CASES
Workday: Enterprise Cloud Software-as-a-Service (SaaS)
Evolution Homecare Manages Patients with Microsoft Dynamics CRM
Instructional Video:
GSMS Protects Patients By Serializing Every Bottle of Drugs
You may not have heard of ACH Food Companies, but you can probably find their products in your pantry—Mazola, Fleischmann’s, Argo-Spice Islands, Karo’s, and Durkee’s, to name a few. ACH is headquartered in Cordova, Tennessee, has about one thousand employees, and generates about $1 billion in revenue. Until recently, ACH had done business primarily as a commercial food manufacturer for the food services and food ingredients markets. Now its primary focus is on the retail consumer and the consumer products food market. Becoming more consumer-oriented has created new opportunities for expansion, but this move required the company to become much more agile and flexible to accommodate new product launches and movement into new markets.

ACH’s information systems had to change to support its new strategy and methods of doing business. ACH had been running on a series of legacy systems that were designed primarily for its old business model as a food ingredients maker. Many applications were 20 to 30 years old and had been cobbled together, with too many point-to-point interfaces. It was difficult for them to exchange data or to supply the data required for a company-wide view of firm performance. These systems also lacked the functionality required for a consumer-branded company that hoped to grow by acquiring more companies. ACH was not operating as efficiently as it could, nor could it move forward strategically as a consumer-branded company.

In 2007, the company began implementing SAP’s Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) system, using its software application modules for finance, order management, procure-to-pay, and business intelligence. ERP applications
are integrated, and the software enforces a single set of transactional and master data. According to CIO Donnie Steward, ACH very much wanted the ability to enforce application integration across all modules, and to break down the old functional “silos” that made it difficult for business functions to coordinate in its old legacy systems. SAP had developed industry-specific ERP software for consumer food products, based on industry best practices, and this appealed to ACH as well.

At that point, the company hadn't fully transitioned to a consumer products company. So, the software required a great deal of customization to provide functionality for ACH's food ingredients and food service businesses as well as its new consumer business. Shortly after this ERP system went live, ACH decided to divest the commercial side of its business and focus solely on the consumer side. That move required the company to eliminate much of the customization work it had done to bring its old food ingredients and food service systems onto the SAP ERP platform. ACH’s information systems team then focused on creating a “vanilla” ERP system where no customization was required.

In late 2009, ACH implemented additional SAP ERP functionality for product costing and quality management as well as other applications in the SAP suite—SAP Manufacturing, SAP Product Lifecycle Management, SAP Advanced Planning & Optimization, and SAP Recipe Management — with extensive business intelligence capabilities.

How have the all the new systems worked out? Very well, according to ACH management. Managers are able to make better decisions across the company because there is a consistent set of data for the entire enterprise. All business units use the same terminology. ACH has been able to develop its first set of company-wide Key Performance Indicators (KPIs) that span multiple functions and its first capabilities for customer and product profitability analysis and reporting. In the past, it took an excessive amount of time to obtain that information or it was impossible. The company operates much more efficiently: There has been a 20 percent reduction in finished goods inventory, a 25 percent reduction of the close process, from eight days down to six, and it takes 75 percent less time for internal new-product initiation.


ACH Food Companies's problems with legacy systems and its need to find integrated systems to support its new consumer-products business model illustrate why companies need enterprise applications that integrate different business functions and provide consistent information throughout the company. Enterprise resource planning (ERP) systems as well as those for supply chain management and customer relationship management can dramatically improve operational effectiveness and decision making.

The chapter-opening case calls attention to important points raised by this case and this chapter. ACH's business performance was impeded because it was saddled with a set of outdated systems designed primarily for its old business model as a commercial food-ingredients business. These systems supported outdated business processes that made it difficult for different parts of the company to work together and respond to new market opportunities. Trying to work around these systems raised costs and still left the company operating too inefficiently to pursue its new business goals.
By implementing SAP's ERP system along with related SAP applications, the company was able to implement more efficient business processes for its new business model, including forecasting, planning, profitability analysis, and new-product development. And it could support its strategic growth plan based on new acquisitions.

ACH's new systems made it possible to execute its business processes more efficiently and effectively, and also made possible new processes such as customer and product profitability analysis. However, in order to obtain these benefits from the enterprise software, ACH had to change some of its outdated business processes as well as its old legacy systems. This business process change was reflected in the company's ability to back away from customizing the enterprise software, which had been undertaken to support a business model that the company was discarding.

Here are some questions to think about: What problems did ACH Food Companies solve by implementing an ERP system? How did the new system change the way ACH ran its business?

## 9.1 How Do Enterprise Systems Help Businesses Achieve Operational Excellence?

Around the globe, companies are increasingly becoming more connected, both internally and with other companies. If you run a business, you'll want to be able to react instantaneously when a customer places a large order or when a shipment from a supplier is delayed. You may also want to know the impact of these events on every part of the business and how the business is performing at any point in time, especially if you’re running a large company. Enterprise systems provide the integration to make this possible. Let's look at how they work and what they can do for the firm.
WHAT ARE ENTERPRISE SYSTEMS?

Imagine that you had to run a business based on information from tens or even hundreds of different databases and systems, none of which could speak to one another? Imagine your company had 10 different major product lines, each produced in separate factories, and each with separate and incompatible sets of systems controlling production, warehousing, and distribution.

At the very least, your decision making would often be based on manual hard-copy reports, often out of date, and it would be difficult to really understand what is happening in the business as a whole. Sales personnel might not be able to tell at the time they place an order whether the ordered items are in inventory, and manufacturing could not easily use sales data to plan for new production. You now have a good idea of why firms need a special enterprise system to integrate information.

Chapter 2 introduced enterprise systems, also known as enterprise resource planning (ERP) systems, which are based on a suite of integrated software modules and a common central database. The database collects data from many different divisions and departments in a firm, and from a large number of key business processes in manufacturing and production, finance and accounting, sales and marketing, and human resources, making the data available for applications that support nearly all of an organization's internal business activities. When new information is entered by one process, the information is made immediately available to other business processes (see Figure 9.1).

If a sales representative places an order for tire rims, for example, the system verifies the customer's credit limit, schedules the shipment, identifies the best shipping route, and reserves the necessary items from inventory. If inventory

---

**FIGURE 9.1** HOW ENTERPRISE SYSTEMS WORK

Enterprise systems feature a set of integrated software modules and a central database that enables data to be shared by many different business processes and functional areas throughout the enterprise.
stock is insufficient to fill the order, the system schedules the manufacture of more rims, ordering the needed materials and components from suppliers. Sales and production forecasts are immediately updated. General ledger and corporate cash levels are automatically updated with the revenue and cost information from the order. Users could tap into the system and find out where that particular order was at any minute. Management could obtain information at any point in time about how the business was operating. The system could also generate enterprise-wide data for management analyses of product cost and profitability.

**ENTERPRISE SOFTWARE**

*Enterprise software* is built around thousands of predefined business processes that reflect best practices. Table 9.1 describes some of the major business processes supported by enterprise software.

Companies implementing this software would have to first select the functions of the system they wished to use and then map their business processes to the predefined business processes in the software. (One of our Learning Tracks shows how SAP enterprise software handles the procurement process for a new piece of equipment.) A firm would use configuration tables provided by the software manufacturer to tailor a particular aspect of the system to the way it does business. For example, the firm could use these tables to select whether it wants to track revenue by product line, geographical unit, or distribution channel.

If the enterprise software does not support the way the organization does business, companies can rewrite some of the software to support the way their business processes work. However, enterprise software is unusually complex, and extensive customization may degrade system performance, compromising the information and process integration that are the main benefits of the system. If companies want to reap the maximum benefits from enterprise software, they must change the way they work to conform to the business processes defined by the software.

To implement a new enterprise system, Tasty Baking Company identified its existing business processes and then translated them into the business processes built into the SAP ERP software it had selected. To ensure it obtained the maximum benefits from the enterprise software, Tasty Baking Company deliberately planned for customizing less than 5 percent of the system and made very few changes to the SAP software itself. It used as many tools and

---

**TABLE 9.1 BUSINESS PROCESSES SUPPORTED BY ENTERPRISE SYSTEMS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Processes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Financial and accounting processes</strong>, including general ledger, accounts payable, accounts receivable, fixed assets, cash management and forecasting, product-cost accounting, cost-center accounting, asset accounting, tax accounting, credit management, and financial reporting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Human resources processes</strong>, including personnel administration, time accounting, payroll, personnel planning and development, benefits accounting, applicant tracking, time management, compensation, workforce planning, performance management, and travel expense reporting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Manufacturing and production processes</strong>, including procurement, inventory management, purchasing, shipping, production planning, production scheduling, material requirements planning, quality control, distribution, transportation execution, and plant and equipment maintenance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sales and marketing processes</strong>, including order processing, quotations, contracts, product configuration, pricing, billing, credit checking, incentive and commission management, and sales planning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
features that were already built into the SAP software as it could. SAP has more than 3,000 configuration tables for its enterprise software.

Leading enterprise software vendors include SAP, Oracle, IBM, Infor Global Solutions, and Microsoft. There are versions of enterprise software packages designed for small and medium-sized businesses and on-demand versions, including software services running in the cloud (see Section 9.4).

**BUSINESS VALUE OF ENTERPRISE SYSTEMS**

Enterprise systems provide value both by increasing operational efficiency and by providing firmwide information to help managers make better decisions. Large companies with many operating units in different locations have used enterprise systems to enforce standard practices and data so that everyone does business the same way worldwide.

Coca-Cola, for instance, implemented a SAP enterprise system to standardize and coordinate important business processes in 200 countries. Lack of standard, company-wide business processes prevented the company from leveraging its worldwide buying power to obtain lower prices for raw materials and from reacting rapidly to market changes.

Enterprise systems help firms respond rapidly to customer requests for information or products. Because the system integrates order, manufacturing, and delivery data, manufacturing is better informed about producing only what customers have ordered, procuring exactly the right amount of components or raw materials to fill actual orders, staging production, and minimizing the time that components or finished products are in inventory.

Alcoa, the world’s leading producer of aluminum and aluminum products with operations spanning 31 countries and over 200 locations, had initially been organized around lines of business, each of which had its own set of information systems. Many of these systems were redundant and inefficient. Alcoa’s costs for executing requisition-to-pay and financial processes were much higher and its cycle times were longer than those of other companies in its industry. (Cycle time refers to the total elapsed time from the beginning to the end of a process.) The company could not operate as a single worldwide entity.

After implementing enterprise software from Oracle, Alcoa eliminated many redundant processes and systems. The enterprise system helped Alcoa reduce requisition-to-pay cycle time by verifying receipt of goods and automatically generating receipts for payment. Alcoa’s accounts payable transaction processing dropped 89 percent. Alcoa was able to centralize financial and procurement activities, which helped the company reduce nearly 20 percent of its worldwide costs.

Enterprise systems provide much valuable information for improving management decision making. Corporate headquarters has access to up-to-the-minute data on sales, inventory, and production, and uses this information to create more accurate sales and production forecasts. Enterprise software includes analytical tools for using data captured by the system to evaluate overall organizational performance. Enterprise system data have common standardized definitions and formats that are accepted by the entire organization. Performance figures mean the same thing across the company. Enterprise systems allow senior management to easily find out at any moment how a particular organizational unit is performing, determine which products are most or least profitable, and calculate costs for the company as a whole.

For example, Alcoa’s enterprise system includes functionality for global human resources management that shows correlations between investment in
employee training and quality, measures the company-wide costs of delivering services to employees, and measures the effectiveness of employee recruitment, compensation, and training.

9.2 How do supply chain management systems coordinate planning, production, and logistics with suppliers?

If you manage a small firm that makes a few products or sells a few services, chances are you will have a small number of suppliers. You could coordinate your supplier orders and deliveries using a telephone and fax machine. But if you manage a firm that produces more complex products and services, then you will have hundreds of suppliers, and each of your suppliers will have its own set of suppliers. Suddenly, you are in a situation where you will need to coordinate the activities of hundreds or even thousands of other firms in order to produce your products and services. Supply chain management (SCM) systems, which we introduced in Chapter 2, are an answer to the problems of supply chain complexity and scale.

THE SUPPLY CHAIN

A firm's supply chain is a network of organizations and business processes for procuring raw materials, transforming these materials into intermediate and finished products, and distributing the finished products to customers. It links suppliers, manufacturing plants, distribution centers, retail outlets, and customers to supply goods and services from source through consumption. Materials, information, and payments flow through the supply chain in both directions.

Goods start out as raw materials and, as they move through the supply chain, are transformed into intermediate products (also referred to as components or parts), and finally, into finished products. The finished products are shipped to distribution centers and from there to retailers and customers. Returned items flow in the reverse direction from the buyer back to the seller.

Let's look at the supply chain for Nike sneakers as an example. Nike designs, markets, and sells sneakers, socks, athletic clothing, and accessories throughout the world. Its primary suppliers are contract manufacturers with factories in China, Thailand, Indonesia, Brazil, and other countries. These companies fashion Nike's finished products.

Nike's contract suppliers do not manufacture sneakers from scratch. They obtain components for the sneakers—the laces, eyelets, uppers, and soles—from other suppliers and then assemble them into finished sneakers. These suppliers in turn have their own suppliers. For example, the suppliers of soles have suppliers for synthetic rubber, suppliers for chemicals used to melt the rubber for molding, and suppliers for the molds into which to pour the rubber. Suppliers of laces have suppliers for their thread, for dyes, and for the plastic lace tips.

Figure 9.2 provides a simplified illustration of Nike's supply chain for sneakers; it shows the flow of information and materials among suppliers, Nike, Nike's distributors, retailers, and customers. Nike's contract manufacturers are its primary suppliers. The suppliers of soles, eyelets, uppers, and laces are the secondary (Tier 2) suppliers. Suppliers to these suppliers are the tertiary (Tier 3) suppliers.
The upstream portion of the supply chain includes the company's suppliers, the suppliers' suppliers, and the processes for managing relationships with them. The downstream portion consists of the organizations and processes for distributing and delivering products to the final customers. Companies doing manufacturing, such as Nike's contract suppliers of sneakers, also manage their own internal supply chain processes for transforming materials, components, and services furnished by their suppliers into finished products or intermediate products (components or parts) for their customers and for managing materials and inventory.

The supply chain illustrated in Figure 9.2 has been simplified. It only shows two contract manufacturers for sneakers and only the upstream supply chain for sneaker soles. Nike has hundreds of contract manufacturers turning out finished sneakers, socks, and athletic clothing, each with its own set of suppliers. The upstream portion of Nike's supply chain would actually comprise thousands of entities. Nike also has numerous distributors and many thousands of retail stores where its shoes are sold, so the downstream portion of its supply chain is also large and complex.

**INFORMATION SYSTEMS AND SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT**

Inefficiencies in the supply chain, such as parts shortages, underutilized plant capacity, excessive finished goods inventory, or high transportation costs, are caused by inaccurate or untimely information. For example, manufacturers
may keep too many parts in inventory because they do not know exactly when they will receive their next shipments from their suppliers. Suppliers may order too few raw materials because they do not have precise information on demand. These supply chain inefficiencies waste as much as 25 percent of a company's operating costs.

If a manufacturer had perfect information about exactly how many units of product customers wanted, when they wanted them, and when they could be produced, it would be possible to implement a highly efficient just-in-time strategy. Components would arrive exactly at the moment they were needed and finished goods would be shipped as they left the assembly line.

In a supply chain, however, uncertainties arise because many events cannot be foreseen—uncertain product demand, late shipments from suppliers, defective parts or raw materials, or production process breakdowns. To satisfy customers, manufacturers often deal with such uncertainties and unforeseen events by keeping more material or products in inventory than what they think they may actually need. The safety stock acts as a buffer for the lack of flexibility in the supply chain. Although excess inventory is expensive, low fill rates are also costly because business may be lost from canceled orders.

One recurring problem in supply chain management is the bullwhip effect, in which information about the demand for a product gets distorted as it passes from one entity to the next across the supply chain. A slight rise in demand for an item might cause different members in the supply chain—distributors, manufacturers, suppliers, secondary suppliers (suppliers' suppliers), and tertiary suppliers (suppliers' suppliers' suppliers)—to stockpile inventory so each has enough “just in case.” These changes ripple throughout the supply chain, magnifying what started out as a small change from planned orders, creating excess inventory, production, warehousing, and shipping costs (see Figure 9.3).

For example, Procter & Gamble (P&G) found it had excessively high inventories of its Pampers disposable diapers at various points along its supply chain because of such distorted information. Although customer purchases in stores were fairly stable, orders from distributors would spike when P&G offered aggressive price promotions. Pampers and Pampers’ components accumulated in warehouses along the supply chain to meet demand that did not actually exist. To eliminate this problem, P&G revised its marketing, sales, and supply chain processes and used more accurate demand forecasting.

The bullwhip effect is tamed by reducing uncertainties about demand and supply when all members of the supply chain have accurate and up-to-date information. If all supply chain members share dynamic information about inventory levels, schedules, forecasts, and shipments, they have more precise knowledge about how to adjust their sourcing, manufacturing, and distribution plans. Supply chain management systems provide the kind of information that helps members of the supply chain make better purchasing and scheduling decisions.

**SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE**

Supply chain software is classified as either software to help businesses plan their supply chains (supply chain planning) or software to help them execute the supply chain steps (supply chain execution). Supply chain planning systems enable the firm to model its existing supply chain, generate demand forecasts for products, and develop optimal sourcing and manufacturing plans.
Such systems help companies make better decisions such as determining how much of a specific product to manufacture in a given time period; establishing inventory levels for raw materials, intermediate products, and finished goods; determining where to store finished goods; and identifying the transportation mode to use for product delivery.

For example, if a large customer places a larger order than usual or changes that order on short notice, it can have a widespread impact throughout the supply chain. Additional raw materials or a different mix of raw materials may need to be ordered from suppliers. Manufacturing may have to change job scheduling. A transportation carrier may have to reschedule deliveries. Supply chain planning software makes the necessary adjustments to production and distribution plans. Information about changes is shared among the relevant supply chain members so that their work can be coordinated. One of the most important—and complex—supply chain planning functions is demand planning, which determines how much product a business needs to make to satisfy all of its customers’ demands (see the Interactive Session on Management). JDA Software, SAP, and Oracle all offer supply chain management solutions.

Inaccurate information can cause minor fluctuations in demand for a product to be amplified as one moves further back in the supply chain. Minor fluctuations in retail sales for a product can create excess inventory for distributors, manufacturers, and suppliers.
When you have to make nearly all of your annual sales of 10 billion pounds of lawn fertilizer and other gardening products in a 10- to 14-week seasonal window, you realize the importance of an optimized supply chain. As the world's principal supplier of lawn and garden care products, the Scotts Miracle-Gro Company, headquartered in Marysville, Ohio, needed to optimize its entire supply chain—from shelf to supplier—in order to meet the needs of its seasonal, weather-dependent business.

When lawn care company, Scotts, and top gardening brand, Miracle-Gro, merged in 1995, a number of challenges arose. Customer lists overlapped, causing duplication of sales force efforts. Multiple supply chain designs conflicted, incompatible invoicing systems clashed, and multiple IT systems could not be coordinated to resolve the discord. The result was that despite holding the leading gardening and lawn care brands in the United States (Roundup and Ortho) in addition to the two that comprise its masthead, the Scotts Miracle-Gro Company suffered declining productivity and deteriorating customer service.

With execution during its peak-demand season suffering, the company embarked on an initiative dubbed “One Face to the Customer,” that included $100 million to upgrade its IT systems. It adopted SAP’s enterprise resource planning (ERP) system buttressed with supply chain and replenishment planning tools from JDA Software. The company wanted to leverage its point-of-sale (POS) data so that customer purchases would automatically trigger orders to replenish stock. The new software included tools for better demand planning, fulfillment, space and category management, production planning, collaboration, and transportation and logistics management.

These improvements, instituted between 2000 and 2005, resulted in an increase in the fill rate (the percentage of orders satisfied from stock at hand) from 92 to 99 percent, significantly decreasing the impact of stockouts on consumers. Inventory turns doubled, and average annual supply chain savings between 2 percent and 3 percent were realized. Two key factors enabled Scotts Miracle-Gro to better respond to rapid changes in market conditions: the ability to create POS forecasts and an increased adaptability at responding to weather events.

POS forecasts at the store level are the basis for Scott's demand planning, which then incorporates promotions, media and advertising campaigns, and stockout planning. These plans are further honed by integrating safety-stock settings, on-hand quantities, and on-order quantities for each store. Scotts Miracle-Gro's supply chain is segmented by warehouse. The individualized store replenishment plans are aggregated for each warehouse so that enough product is produced to properly stock them.

Weather-related impacts are translated into plans of action for each zip code on a day-by-day and weekly basis. JDA Demand is integrated with business weather intelligence pioneer Planalytics’ database of regional and seasonal weather patterns and analytical program. The improved ability to anticipate weather patterns and make sound inventory decisions also ensures that promotions are properly timed to maximize revenue increases for the company’s retail partners and market share for the company.

In addition to supply chain segmentation by warehouse, Scotts Miracle-Gro also segments by product. Multiple product-centered supply chains are customized to meet the needs of its retail accounts. Scotts has over 40 production facilities as well as a number of contract manufacturers, 18 of its own distribution centers, and over 10 more third-party distribution centers. Depending on the product and the volume driving it, shipments can go to one of the distribution centers or directly to retailers. Maximizing supply chain efficiency has enhanced customer service and reduced costs, a particularly important consideration for its top three customers—Walmart, Home Depot, and Lowe’s. Approximately two-thirds of Scotts Miracle-Gro’s annual revenues come from these companies. Regional distribution networks complement direct shipments to these crucial customers.

For grain media and wild bird food, 26 production facilities in the United States have been strategically located close to Scotts Miracle-Gro’s highest-volume purchasers. If necessary, products from the main distribution network can be shipped to one of these production points for joint delivery. For example, a shipment of a grain product can be combined with a fertilizer delivery. An assortment of supply chain possibilities is essential to the company's business model due to the abbreviated timeframe in which most shipments occur.
With the new system in place, Scotts Miracle-Gro concentrated on strengthening its collaborative practices. Supply chain managers, sales teams, and customers needed to be working together so that the 100-day peak season could be optimally supplied. A business development team in the corporate office works with business development teams for each of the big three customers as well as with a channel accounts team. Pre-season inventory planning includes previous year POS data analysis and forecasting, setting inventory targets, and creating promotional lists. Forecasts are generated both internally and externally, with consensus meetings resolving any inconsistencies. Inventory buildups and reductions are likewise determined collaboratively with calendars constructed for each customer and consensus established for system settings such as buffer stocks and minimum order quantities.

In many cases, replenishment orders are prearranged, and Scotts Miracle-Gro also reports and tracks inventory, POS data, and forecasts for its customers, particularly during the peak season. By taking charge of customer data, Scotts has improved its insight into customer needs and gained greater flexibility in meeting those needs. A channel account and JDA Marketplace Replenish are used to place orders directly within customers’ systems, even the big three. At all times, the goal is to ensure that POS and inventory targets are aligned. If Scott’s JDA or POS forecasts differ from what the customer believes is going to happen, the demand signals are reevaluated and a consensus reached. This mindset guides internal discussions as well, for example, between the sales team and the financial forecasters, so that sufficient inventory maximizes sales and excess inventory does not clog shelves when the season ends.

JDA Software solutions, including JDA Demand, JDA Fulfillment, JDA Inventory Policy Optimization, and JDA Marketplace Replenish, have enabled Scotts Miracle-Gro to develop consumer-driven demand planning that reduces new item introduction uncertainty and overcomes unrealistic forecasts by retailers. Continued attentiveness to its supply chain served both the company and its customers well during the Great Recession of 2009 and its aftermath. Retail challenges during tough economic times have been mitigated by Scotts Miracle-Gro’s ability to keep costs down and improve margins. By incorporating weather-driven demand into its demand planning, strategically segmenting its supply chain, and focusing on customer collaboration programs, the company has been able to capitalize on shelf-level demand signals to improve manufacturing and distribution plans. It is now concentrating on developing commodity management tools to reduce the risk involved in its many products affected by fluctuations in commodity prices. Continuing to squeeze operating costs out of its products and distribution network will also support Scotts Miracle-Gro’s exploration of emerging markets in China and Mexico, where it has already prepared the ground for a highly efficient supply chain.


Supply chain execution systems manage the flow of products through distribution centers and warehouses to ensure that products are delivered to the right locations in the most efficient manner. They track the physical status of goods, the management of materials, warehouse and transportation operations, and financial information involving all parties. An example is

**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. Identify the supply chain management problems faced by Scotts Miracle-Gro. What was the business impact of not being able to manage the company’s supply chain well?
2. What management, organization, and technology factors contributed to Scotts Miracle-Gro’s supply chain problems?
3. How did implementing JDA Software solutions change the way Scotts Miracle-Gro ran its business?
4. How did the new supply chain systems improve management decision making? Describe two decisions that were improved by the new system solution.
the Warehouse Management System (WMS) used by Haworth Incorporated. Haworth is a world-leading manufacturer and designer of office furniture, with distribution centers in four different states. The WMS tracks and controls the flow of finished goods from Haworth’s distribution centers to its customers. Acting on shipping plans for customer orders, the WMS directs the movement of goods based on immediate conditions for space, equipment, inventory, and personnel.

**GLOBAL SUPPLY CHAINS AND THE INTERNET**

Before the Internet, supply chain coordination was hampered by the difficulties of making information flow smoothly among disparate internal supply chain systems for purchasing, materials management, manufacturing, and distribution. It was also difficult to share information with external supply chain partners because the systems of suppliers, distributors, or logistics providers were based on incompatible technology platforms and standards. Enterprise and supply chain management systems enhanced with Internet technology supply some of this integration.

A manager uses a Web interface to tap into suppliers’ systems to determine whether inventory and production capabilities match demand for the firm’s products. Business partners use Web-based supply chain management tools to collaborate online on forecasts. Sales representatives access suppliers’ production schedules and logistics information to monitor customers’ order status.

**Global Supply Chain Issues**

More and more companies are entering international markets, outsourcing manufacturing operations, and obtaining supplies from other countries as well as selling abroad. Their supply chains extend across multiple countries and regions. There are additional complexities and challenges to managing a global supply chain.

Global supply chains typically span greater geographic distances and time differences than domestic supply chains, and have participants from a number of different countries. Performance standards may vary from region to region or from nation to nation. Supply chain management may need to reflect foreign government regulations and cultural differences.

The Internet helps companies manage many aspects of their global supply chains, including sourcing, transportation, communications, and international finance. Today’s apparel industry, for example, relies heavily on outsourcing to contract manufacturers in China and other low-wage countries. Apparel companies are starting to use the Web to manage their global supply chain and production issues. (Review the discussion of Li & Fung in Chapter 3.)

In addition to contract manufacturing, globalization has encouraged outsourcing warehouse management, transportation management, and related operations to third-party logistics providers, such as UPS Supply Chain Solutions and Schneider Logistics Services. These logistics services offer Web-based software to give their customers a better view of their global supply chains. Customers are able to check a secure Web site to monitor inventory and shipments, helping them run their global supply chains more efficiently.

**Demand-Driven Supply Chains: From Push to Pull Manufacturing and Efficient Customer Response**

In addition to reducing costs, supply chain management systems facilitate efficient customer response, enabling the workings of the business to be
driven more by customer demand. (We introduced efficient customer response systems in Chapter 3.)

Earlier supply chain management systems were driven by a push-based model (also known as build-to-stock). In a push-based model, production master schedules are based on forecasts or best guesses of demand for products, and products are “pushed” to customers. With new flows of information made possible by Web-based tools, supply chain management more easily follows a pull-based model. In a pull-based model, also known as a demand-driven or build-to-order model, actual customer orders or purchases trigger events in the supply chain. Transactions to produce and deliver only what customers have ordered move up the supply chain from retailers to distributors to manufacturers and eventually to suppliers. Only products to fulfill these orders move back down the supply chain to the retailer. Manufacturers use only actual order demand information to drive their production schedules and the procurement of components or raw materials, as illustrated in Figure 9.4. Walmart's continuous replenishment system described in Chapter 3 is an example of the pull-based model.

The Internet and Internet technology make it possible to move from sequential supply chains, where information and materials flow sequentially from company to company, to concurrent supply chains, where information flows in many directions simultaneously among members of a supply chain network. Complex supply networks of manufacturers, logistics suppliers, outsourced manufacturers, retailers, and distributors are able to adjust immediately to changes in schedules or orders. Ultimately, the Internet could create a “digital logistics nervous system” throughout the supply chain (see Figure 9.5).

**BUSINESS VALUE OF SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS**

You have just seen how supply chain management systems enable firms to streamline both their internal and external supply chain processes and provide management with more accurate information about what to produce, store, and sell, not sell what we make."

---

**FIGURE 9.4  PUSH-VERSUS PULL-BASED SUPPLY CHAIN MODELS**

| Push-Based Model |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Supplier         | Manufacturer     | Distributor      | Retailer         |
| Supply to forecast| Production based on forecasts | Inventory based on forecasts | Stock based on forecasts |
|                  |                  |                  | Purchase what is on shelves |

| Pull-Based Model |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Supplier         | Manufacturer     | Distributor      | Retailer         |
| Supply to order  | Produce to order | Automatically replenish warehouse | Automatically replenish stock |
|                  |                  |                  | Customer orders  |

The difference between push- and pull-based models is summarized by the slogan "Make what we sell, not sell what we make."
move. By implementing a networked and integrated supply chain management system, companies match supply to demand, reduce inventory levels, improve delivery service, speed product time to market, and use assets more effectively.

Total supply chain costs represent the majority of operating expenses for many businesses and in some industries approach 75 percent of the total operating budget. Reducing supply chain costs has a major impact on firm profitability.

In addition to reducing costs, supply chain management systems help increase sales. If a product is not available when a customer wants it, customers often try to purchase it from someone else. More precise control of the supply chain enhances the firm’s ability to have the right product available for customer purchases at the right time.

**9.3 How do customer relationship management systems help firms achieve customer intimacy?**

You’ve probably heard phrases such as “the customer is always right” or “the customer comes first.” Today these words ring truer than ever. Because competitive advantage based on an innovative new product or service is often very short lived, companies are realizing that their most enduring competitive strength may be their relationships with their customers. Some say that the basis of competition has switched from who sells the most products and services to who “owns” the customer, and that customer relationships represent a firm’s most valuable asset.
WHAT IS CUSTOMER RELATIONSHIP MANAGEMENT?

What kinds of information would you need to build and nurture strong, long-lasting relationships with customers? You'd want to know exactly who your customers are, how to contact them, whether they are costly to service and sell to, what kinds of products and services they are interested in, and how much money they spend on your company. If you could, you'd want to make sure you knew each of your customers well, as if you were running a small-town store. And you'd want to make your good customers feel special.

In a small business operating in a neighborhood, it is possible for business owners and managers to really know their customers on a personal, face-to-face basis. But in a large business operating on a metropolitan, regional, national, or even global basis, it is impossible to “know your customer” in this intimate way. In these kinds of businesses there are too many customers and too many different ways that customers interact with the firm (over the Web, the phone, e-mail, blogs, and in person). It becomes especially difficult to integrate information from all these sources and to deal with the large numbers of customers.

A large business's processes for sales, service, and marketing tend to be highly compartmentalized, and these departments do not share much essential customer information. Some information on a specific customer might be stored and organized in terms of that person's account with the company. Other pieces of information about the same customer might be organized by products that were purchased. There is no way to consolidate all of this information to provide a unified view of a customer across the company.

This is where customer relationship management systems help. Customer relationship management (CRM) systems, which we introduced in Chapter 2, capture and integrate customer data from all over the organization, consolidate the data, analyze the data, and then distribute the results to various systems and customer touch points across the enterprise. A touch point (also known as a contact point) is a method of interaction with the customer, such as telephone, e-mail, customer service desk, conventional mail, Facebook, Twitter, Web site, wireless device, or retail store. Well-designed CRM systems provide a single enterprise view of customers that is useful for improving both sales and customer service (see Figure 9.6.)

Good CRM systems provide data and analytical tools for answering questions such as these: What is the value of a particular customer to the firm over his or her lifetime? Who are our most loyal customers? It can cost six times more to sell to a new customer than to an existing customer. Who are our most profitable customers? What do these profitable customers want to buy? Firms use the answers to these questions to acquire new customers, provide better service and support to existing customers, customize their offerings more precisely to customer preferences, and provide ongoing value to retain profitable customers.

CUSTOMER RELATIONSHIP MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE

Commercial CRM software packages range from niche tools that perform limited functions, such as personalizing Web sites for specific customers, to large-scale enterprise applications that capture myriad interactions with customers, analyze them with sophisticated reporting tools, and link to other major enterprise applications, such as supply chain management and enterprise systems. The more comprehensive CRM packages contain modules for partner relationship management (PRM) and employee relationship management (ERM).
PRM uses many of the same data, tools, and systems as customer relationship management to enhance collaboration between a company and its selling partners. If a company does not sell directly to customers but rather works through distributors or retailers, PRM helps these channels sell to customers directly. It provides a company and its selling partners with the ability to trade information and distribute leads and data about customers, integrating lead generation, pricing, promotions, order configurations, and availability. It also provides a firm with tools to assess its partners' performances so it can make sure its best partners receive the support they need to close more business.

ERM software deals with employee issues that are closely related to CRM, such as setting objectives, employee performance management, performance-based compensation, and employee training. Major CRM application software vendors include Oracle, SAP, Salesforce.com, and Microsoft Dynamics CRM.

Customer relationship management systems typically provide software and online tools for sales, customer service, and marketing. We briefly describe some of these capabilities.

**Sales Force Automation (SFA)**
Sales force automation modules in CRM systems help sales staff increase their productivity by focusing sales efforts on the most profitable customers, those who are good candidates for sales and services. CRM systems provide sales prospect and contact information, product information, product configuration capabilities, and sales quote generation capabilities. Such software can assemble information about a particular customer's past purchases to help the salesperson make personalized recommendations. CRM software enables sales, marketing, and delivery departments to easily share customer and prospect information. It increases each salesperson's efficiency by reducing the cost per sale as well as the cost of acquiring new customers and retaining old ones. CRM software also has capabilities for sales forecasting, territory management, and team selling.
Customer Service

Customer service modules in CRM systems provide information and tools to increase the efficiency of call centers, help desks, and customer support staff. They have capabilities for assigning and managing customer service requests.

One such capability is an appointment or advice telephone line: When a customer calls a standard phone number, the system routes the call to the correct service person, who inputs information about that customer into the system only once. Once the customer's data are in the system, any service representative can handle the customer relationship. Improved access to consistent and accurate customer information helps call centers handle more calls per day and decrease the duration of each call. Thus, call centers and customer service groups achieve greater productivity, reduced transaction time, and higher quality of service at lower cost. The customer is happier because he or she spends less time on the phone restating his or her problem to customer service representatives.

CRM systems may also include Web-based self-service capabilities: The company Web site can be set up to provide inquiring customers personalized support information as well as the option to contact customer service staff by phone for additional assistance.

Marketing

CRM systems support direct-marketing campaigns by providing capabilities for capturing prospect and customer data, for providing product and service information, for qualifying leads for targeted marketing, and for scheduling and tracking direct-marketing mailings or e-mail (see Figure 9.7). Marketing modules also include tools for analyzing marketing and customer data, identifying profitable and unprofitable customers, designing products and services to

---

**FIGURE 9.7 HOW CRM SYSTEMS SUPPORT MARKETING**

Responses by Channel for January 2015 Promotional Campaign

- Direct Mail: 29.2%
- Telephone: 30.8%
- Web: 17.3%
- E-mail: 16.0%
- Social Media: 6.7%

Customer relationship management software provides a single point for users to manage and evaluate marketing campaigns across multiple channels, including e-mail, direct mail, telephone, the Web, and social media.
satisfy specific customer needs and interests, and identifying opportunities for cross-selling.

**Cross-selling** is the marketing of complementary products to customers. (For example, in financial services, a customer with a checking account might be sold a money market account or a home improvement loan.) CRM tools also help firms manage and execute marketing campaigns at all stages, from planning to determining the rate of success for each campaign.

Figure 9.8 illustrates the most important capabilities for sales, service, and marketing processes that would be found in major CRM software products. Like enterprise software, this software is business-process driven, incorporating hundreds of business processes thought to represent best practices in each of these areas. To achieve maximum benefit, companies need to revise and model their business processes to conform to the best-practice business processes in the CRM software.

Figure 9.9 illustrates how a best practice for increasing customer loyalty through customer service might be modeled by CRM software. Directly servicing customers provides firms with opportunities to increase customer retention by singling out profitable long-term customers for preferential treatment. CRM software can assign each customer a score based on that person’s value and loyalty to the company and provide that information to help call centers route each customer’s service request to agents who can best

**FIGURE 9.8 CRM SOFTWARE CAPABILITIES**

![Diagram of CRM software capabilities](image)

The major CRM software products support business processes in sales, service, and marketing, integrating customer information from many different sources. Included is support for both the operational and analytical aspects of CRM.
handle that customer's needs. The system would automatically provide the service agent with a detailed profile of that customer that includes his or her score for value and loyalty. The service agent would use this information to present special offers or additional service to the customer to encourage the customer to keep transacting business with the company. You will find more information on other best-practice business processes in CRM systems in our Learning Tracks.

**OPERATIONAL AND ANALYTICAL CRM**

All of the applications we have just described support either the operational or analytical aspects of customer relationship management. **Operational CRM** includes customer-facing applications, such as tools for sales force automation, call center and customer service support, and marketing automation. **Analytical CRM** includes applications that analyze customer data generated by operational CRM applications to provide information for improving business performance.

Analytical CRM applications are based on data from operational CRM systems, customer touch points, and other sources that have been organized in data warehouses or analytic platforms for use in online analytical processing (OLAP), data mining, and other data analysis techniques (see Chapter 6). Customer data collected by the organization might be combined with data from other sources, such as customer lists for direct-marketing campaigns purchased from other companies or demographic data. Such data are analyzed to identify buying patterns, to create segments for targeted marketing, and to pinpoint profitable and unprofitable customers (see Figure 9.10 and the Interactive Session on Organizations).

Another important output of analytical CRM is the customer's lifetime value to the firm. **Customer lifetime value (CLTV)** is based on the relationship between the revenue produced by a specific customer, the expenses incurred in acquiring and servicing that customer, and the expected life of the relationship between the customer and the company.
Analytical CRM uses a customer data warehouse or analytic platform and tools to analyze customer data collected from the firm’s customer touch points and from other sources.

**BUSINESS VALUE OF CUSTOMER RELATIONSHIP MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS**

Companies with effective customer relationship management systems realize many benefits, including increased customer satisfaction, reduced direct-marketing costs, more effective marketing, and lower costs for customer acquisition and retention. Information from CRM systems increases sales revenue by identifying the most profitable customers and segments for focused marketing and cross-selling.

Customer churn is reduced as sales, service, and marketing better respond to customer needs. The **churn rate** measures the number of customers who stop using or purchasing products or services from a company. It is an important indicator of the growth or decline of a firm’s customer base.

**9.4 WHAT ARE THE CHALLENGES POSED BY ENTERPRISE APPLICATIONS AND HOW ARE ENTERPRISE APPLICATIONS TAKING ADVANTAGE OF NEW TECHNOLOGIES?**

Many firms have implemented enterprise systems and systems for supply chain and customer relationship management because they are such powerful instruments for achieving operational excellence and enhancing decision making. But precisely because they are so powerful in changing the way the organization works, they are challenging to implement. Let's briefly examine some of these challenges, as well as new ways of obtaining value from these systems.
Graybar, a Fortune 500 corporation headquartered in St. Louis, Missouri, is one of the largest employee-owned companies in North America and a leader in the distribution of high-quality electrical, communications, and networking products. The company also provides related supply chain management and logistics services. With more than $5.7 billion in revenue, Graybar procures, warehouses, and delivers approximately 1 million products from 4,100 manufacturers to 117,000 customers. It has 7,400 employees and more than 250 North American distribution centers in the U.S., Canada, and Puerto Rico. Graybar is a wholesale distributor and does not sell to retail customers directly.

Despite many years of success, Graybar could do better. For instance, it was not following best practices for analyzing and understanding its customers. These practices were becoming essential for wholesale distributors as well as for retail companies. Traditionally, distributors have acted as middlemen in their supply chains, but they are starting to face pricing pressure from customers. The customers expect reduced lead times and better services, but at the same time, refuse to pay for the additional services. As a result, distributors’ profit margins are being squeezed.

A study of the distributor pricing problem by researchers at Texas A&M University recommended that distributors such as Graybar embrace a strategy of customer stratification. Customer stratification measures how much business a customer does with a company (sales), the profitability of that customer in gross margins, how loyal the customer is to the company, and how costly that customer is to serve. Using these dimensions, the study identified four types of customers: core, opportunistic, marginal, and service drain. Core customers are profitable customers who transact in high volume on a regular basis. Opportunistic customers tend to buy infrequently when their regular supplier stocks out, so they are less profitable. Marginal customers buy infrequently in low sales volumes and require either low prices or high service levels, so that serving them may lose money. Service-drain customers are high-volume customers who consistently require higher levels of service while demanding low prices, and often have a high-volume of returns. A different strategy for salesforce deployment, pricing, marketing, and salesforce compensation is required to handle each of these customer segments.

Like many other firms in the industry, Graybar sales representatives had been focusing their attention primarily on customers that spent the most money. Graybar’s business is very transactional, processing 21,000 orders with 90,000 line items each day. About 97 percent of Graybar’s 117,000 customers do less than $25,000 worth of business annually. Graybar had been focusing primarily on the small percentage of customers with large accounts. Graybar needed to find a way to determine which of these customers it should cultivate and which it should ignore.

The sales reps needed to be able to identify which customers required the most attention to determine whether they could be transformed from a drain on resources into more profitable customers. The company needed to find out if a geographic or product-line strategy for allocating customers to salespeople was appropriate because these approaches might give some sales reps a disproportionate share of either profitable or unprofitable customers. Graybar collected a great deal of customer data, but some pieces of data were missing, and it lacked the analytical tools to segment customers along the recommended lines.

In July 2011, Graybar’s vice president of business development started a project to create a data-driven customer stratification model that would incorporate best practices and enhance profitability. He assembled a cross-functional team with members representing marketing, operations, finance, and information systems. Having team members come from field operations helped ensure that the project paid sufficient attention to field-level customer needs.

The team spent the following year analyzing best practices from industry research and tailoring them to Graybar’s business. It identified the data fields from the company’s existing ERP system that would be required for customer stratification and wrote queries to extract the data from the company’s SAP NetWeaver data warehouse. The specific factors that were most important for Graybar’s customer analysis, such as revenue, customer buying power, and product line penetration, had to be assigned.
weightings based on its business needs. Graybar was already maintaining 95 percent of the customer data it needed.

Initially, Graybar’s customer stratification application was based on a spreadsheet with many rows of data, assigning letter grades for final results and recommendations. Graybar’s project team wanted the information to be delivered in a more visual, understandable format and built a dashboard using SAP BusinessObjects Dashboards software. Graybar further enhanced the application by partnering with SAP in the development of a new analytics software product called SAP Customer Value Intelligence. This software is part of the SAP Customer Analytics suite and it provides recommendations on improving customer value. It uses real-time customer revenue, margins, and behavior to stratify customers into each of the four categories described earlier. It can show the category to which each individual Graybar customer belongs and supply information about the customer’s transactions with the company to explain why the customer received that classification. If a customer is identified as an opportunistic customer, the dashboard might display numbers showing the customer does place orders but does not have many orders and may have problems with the consistency of those orders. A service-drain customer might have a profile showing orders but a large number of returns. The dashboard can also display for each sales rep a visual “map” showing the distribution of all of his or her customers—how many are core, opportunistic, marginal, or service drains to help that rep allocate his or her time and resources.

SAP Customer Value Intelligence is based on HANA, SAP’s in-memory computing platform, which dramatically speeds up the process of analyzing large data sets (see Chapter 6). When Graybar salespeople were given customer stratification data during the testing phase of the project, almost all of them wanted to quickly stratify customers in their specific geographic markets and do other analyses in real time. SAP HANA made it possible for Graybar to do this work using high volumes of transactional data and to handle customer data in much greater detail than before.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. What was the problem at Graybar described in this case? How did this problem affect Graybar’s business performance?
2. What management, organization, and technology issues had to be addressed by Graybar to develop a customer analytics solution?
3. How did analytical CRM change the way Graybar ran its business? Compare the way Graybar handled its customer relationships before and after it implemented analytical CRM.
4. Give examples of three decisions that were improved by Graybar’s new customer analytics system.

**ENTERPRISE APPLICATION CHALLENGES**

Promises of dramatic reductions in inventory costs, order-to-delivery time, more efficient customer response, and higher product and customer profitability make enterprise systems and systems for supply chain management and customer relationship management very alluring. But to obtain this value, you must clearly understand how your business has to change to use these systems effectively.

Enterprise applications involve complex pieces of software that are very expensive to purchase and implement. It might take a large Fortune 500 company several years to complete a large-scale implementation of an enterprise system or a system for SCM or CRM. According to a 2014 survey
of 192 companies conducted by Panorama Consulting Solutions, the average cost of an ERP project was $2.8 million. Projects took a little over 16 months to complete, and 66 percent of the projects delivered 50 percent or less of the expected benefits (Panorama, 2014). Changes in project scope and additional customization work add to implementation delays and costs.

Enterprise applications require not only deep-seated technological changes but also fundamental changes in the way the business operates. Companies must make sweeping changes to their business processes to work with the software. Employees must accept new job functions and responsibilities. They must learn how to perform a new set of work activities and understand how the information they enter into the system can affect other parts of the company. This requires new organizational learning and should also be factored into ERP implementation costs.

Supply chain management systems require multiple organizations to share information and business processes. Each participant in the system may have to change some of its processes and the way it uses information to create a system that best serves the supply chain as a whole.

Some firms experienced enormous operating problems and losses when they first implemented enterprise applications because they didn’t understand how much organizational change was required. For example, Kmart had trouble getting products to store shelves when it first implemented i2 Technologies supply chain management software. The i2 software did not work well with Kmart’s promotion-driven business model, which created sharp downward spikes in demand for products. Overstock.com’s order tracking system went down for a full week when the company replaced a homegrown system with an Oracle enterprise system. The company rushed to implement the software, and did not properly synchronize the Oracle software’s process for recording customer refunds with its accounts receivable system. These problems contributed to a third-quarter loss of $14.5 million that year.

Enterprise applications also introduce “switching costs.” Once you adopt an enterprise application from a single vendor, such as SAP, Oracle, or others, it is very costly to switch vendors, and your firm becomes dependent on the vendor to upgrade its product and maintain your installation.

Enterprise applications are based on organization-wide definitions of data. You’ll need to understand exactly how your business uses its data and how the data would be organized in a customer relationship management, supply chain management, or enterprise system. CRM systems typically require some data cleansing work.

Enterprise software vendors are addressing these problems by offering pared-down versions of their software and “fast-start” programs for small and medium-sized businesses and best-practice guidelines for larger companies. Companies are also achieving more flexibility by using cloud applications for functions not addressed by the basic enterprise software so that they are not constrained by a single “do-it-all” type of system (Drobik and Rayner, 2013).

Companies adopting enterprise applications can also save time and money by keeping customizations to a minimum. For example, Kennametal, a $2 billion metal-cutting tools company in Pennsylvania, had spent $10 million over 13 years maintaining an ERP system with over 6,400 customizations. The company has now replaced it with a “plain vanilla,” noncustomized version of SAP enterprise software and changed its business processes to conform to the software. ACH Food Companies, described in the chapter-opening case, moved to a “vanilla” ERP system as it simplified its business model.
**NEXT-GENERATION ENTERPRISE APPLICATIONS**

Today, enterprise application vendors are delivering more value by becoming more flexible, Web-enabled mobile, and capable of integration with other systems. Stand-alone enterprise systems, customer relationship management systems, and supply chain management systems are becoming a thing of the past. The major enterprise software vendors have created what they call *enterprise solutions*, *enterprise suites*, or *e-business suites* to make their customer relationship management, supply chain management, and enterprise systems work closely with each other, and link to systems of customers and suppliers. SAP Business Suite, Oracle E-Business Suite, and Microsoft Dynamics Suite (aimed at mid-sized companies) are examples, and they now utilize Web services and service-oriented architecture (SOA) (see Chapter 5).

SAP’s next-generation enterprise applications incorporate SOA standards and are able to link SAP’s own applications and Web services developed by independent software vendors. Oracle also has included SOA and business process management capabilities in its Fusion middleware products. Businesses can use these tools to create platforms for new or improved business processes that integrate information from multiple applications.

Next-generation enterprise applications also include open source and cloud solutions, as well as more functionality available on mobile platforms. Open source products such as Compiere, Apache Open for Business (OFBiz), and Openbravo do not offer as many capabilities as large commercial enterprise software, but are attractive to companies such as small manufacturers because of their low cost.

For small- and medium-sized businesses in selected countries, SAP offers cloud-based versions of its Business One Cloud and Business ByDesign enterprise software solutions. Cloud-based enterprise systems are also offered by smaller vendors such as NetSuite and Plex Systems, but they are not as popular as cloud-based CRM products. The undisputed global market leader in cloud-based CRM systems is Salesforce.com, with over 100,000 customers. Salesforce.com delivers its service through Internet-connected computers or mobile devices and it is widely used by small, medium, and large enterprises. As cloud-based products mature, more companies will be choosing to run all or part of their enterprise applications in the cloud on an as-needed basis.

**Social CRM and Business Intelligence**

CRM software vendors are enhancing their products to take advantage of social networking technologies. These social enhancements help firms identify new ideas more rapidly, improve team productivity, and deepen interactions with customers (see the Chapter 10 ending case study).

Employees who interact with customers via social networking sites such as Facebook and Twitter are often able to provide customer service functions much faster and at lower cost than by using telephone conversations or e-mail. Customers who are active social media users increasingly want—and expect—businesses to respond to their questions and complaints through this channel.

**Social CRM** tools enable a business to connect customer conversations and relationships from social networking sites to CRM processes. The leading CRM vendors now offer such tools to link data from social networks into their CRM software. SAP, Salesforce.com, and Oracle CRM products now feature technology to monitor, track, and analyze social media activity in Facebook, LinkedIn, Twitter, YouTube, and other sites. Business intelligence and analytics software vendors such as SAS also have capabilities for social media analytics (with
several measures of customer engagement across a variety of social networks), along with campaign management tools for testing and optimizing both social and traditional Web-based campaigns.

Salesforce.com connected its system for tracking leads in the sales process with social-listening and social-media marketing tools, enabling users to tailor their social-marketing dollars to core customers and observe the resulting comments. If an ad agency wants to run a targeted Facebook or Twitter ad, these capabilities make it possible to aim the ad specifically at people in the client's lead pipeline, who are already being tracked in the CRM system. Users will be able to view tweets as they take place in real time and perhaps uncover new leads. They can also manage multiple campaigns and compare them all to figure out which ones generate the highest click-through rates and cost per click.

**Business Intelligence in Enterprise Applications** Enterprise application vendors have added business intelligence features to help managers obtain more meaningful information from the massive amounts of data generated by these systems. Included are tools for flexible reporting, ad hoc analysis, interactive dashboards, what-if scenario analysis, and data visualization. Rather than requiring users to leave an application and launch separate reporting and analytics tools, the vendors are starting to embed analytics within the context of the application itself. They are also offering complementary stand-alone analytics products, such as SAP BusinessObjects and Oracle Business Intelligence Enterprise Edition.

The major enterprise application vendors also offer portions of their products that work on mobile handhelds. You can find out more about this topic in our Chapter 7 Learning Track on Wireless Applications for Customer Relationship Management, Supply Chain Management, and Healthcare.

**Review Summary**

1. **How do enterprise systems help businesses achieve operational excellence?**

   Enterprise software is based on a suite of integrated software modules and a common central database. The database collects data from and feeds the data into numerous applications that can support nearly all of an organization's internal business activities. When new information is entered by one process, the information is made available immediately to other business processes.

   Enterprise systems support organizational centralization by enforcing uniform data standards and business processes throughout the company and a single unified technology platform. The firmwide data generated by enterprise systems helps managers evaluate organizational performance.

2. **How do supply chain management systems coordinate planning, production, and logistics with suppliers?**

   Supply chain management (SCM) systems automate the flow of information among members of the supply chain so they can use it to make better decisions about when and how much to purchase, produce, or ship. More accurate information from supply chain management systems reduces uncertainty and the impact of the bullwhip effect.

   Supply chain management software includes software for supply chain planning and for supply chain execution. Internet technology facilitates the management of global supply chains by providing the connectivity for organizations in different countries to share supply chain information. Improved communication among supply chain members also facilitates efficient customer response and movement toward a demand-driven model.
3. How do customer relationship management systems help firms achieve customer intimacy?

Customer relationship management (CRM) systems integrate and automate customer-facing processes in sales, marketing, and customer service, providing an enterprise-wide view of customers. Companies can use this customer knowledge when they interact with customers to provide them with better service or to sell new products and services. These systems also identify profitable or nonprofitable customers or opportunities to reduce the churn rate.

The major customer relationship management software packages provide capabilities for both operational CRM and analytical CRM. They often include modules for managing relationships with selling partners (partner relationship management) and for employee relationship management.

4. What are the challenges posed by enterprise applications and how are enterprise applications taking advantage of new technologies?

Enterprise applications are difficult to implement. They require extensive organizational change, large new software investments, and careful assessment of how these systems will enhance organizational performance. Enterprise applications cannot provide value if they are implemented atop flawed processes or if firms do not know how to use these systems to measure performance improvements. Employees require training to prepare for new procedures and roles. Attention to data management is essential.

Enterprise applications are now more flexible, Web-enabled, and capable of integration with other systems, using Web services and service-oriented architecture (SOA). They also have open source and on-demand versions and are able to run in cloud infrastructures or on mobile platforms. CRM software has added social networking capabilities to enhance internal collaboration, deepen interactions with customers, and utilize data from social networking sites. Open source, mobile, and cloud versions of some of these products are becoming available.

Key Terms

Analytical CRM, 366
Bullwhip effect, 355
Churn rate, 367
Cross-selling, 365
Customer lifetime value (CLTV), 366
Demand planning, 356
Employee relationship management (ERM), 362
Enterprise software, 351
Just-in-time strategy, 355
Operational CRM, 366
Partner relationship management (PRM), 362
Pull-based model, 360
Push-based model, 360
Social CRM, 371
Supply chain, 353
Supply chain execution systems, 358
Supply chain planning systems, 355
Touch point, 362

MyMISLab

Go to mymislab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

Review Questions

9-1 How do enterprise systems help businesses achieve operational excellence?

- Define an enterprise system and explain how enterprise software works.
- Describe how enterprise systems provide value for a business.

9-2 How do supply chain management systems coordinate planning, production, and logistics with suppliers?

- Define a supply chain and identify each of its components.
- Explain how supply chain management systems help reduce the bullwhip effect and how they provide value for a business.
- Define and compare supply chain planning systems and supply chain execution systems.
• Describe the challenges of global supply chains and how Internet technology can help companies manage them better.
• Distinguish between a push-based and a pull-based model of supply chain management and explain how contemporary supply chain management systems facilitate a pull-based model.

9-3 How do customer relationship management systems help firms achieve customer intimacy?
• Define customer relationship management and explain why customer relationships are so important today.
• Describe how partner relationship management (PRM) and employee relationship management (ERM) are related to customer relationship management (CRM).

9-4 What are the challenges posed by enterprise applications and how are enterprise applications taking advantage of new technologies?
• List and describe the challenges posed by enterprise applications.
• Explain how these challenges can be addressed.
• How are enterprise applications taking advantage of SOA, Web services, open source software, and wireless technology?
• Define social CRM and explain how customer relationship management systems are using social networking.

Discussion Questions

9-5 Supply chain management is less about managing the physical movement of goods and more about managing information. Discuss the implications of this statement.

9-6 If a company wants to implement an enterprise application, it had better do its homework. Discuss the implications of this statement.

Hands-On MIS Projects

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience analyzing business process integration, suggesting supply chain management and customer relationship management applications, using database software to manage customer service requests, and evaluating supply chain management business services.

Management Decision Problems

9-8 Toronto-based Mercedes-Benz Canada, with a network of 55 dealers, did not know enough about its customers. Dealers provided customer data to the company on an ad hoc basis. Mercedes did not force dealers to report this information. There was no real incentive for dealers to share information with the company. How could CRM and PRM systems help solve this problem?

9-9 Office Depot sells a wide range of office supply products and services in the United States and internationally. The company tries to offer a wider range of office supplies at lower cost than other retailers by using just-in-time replenishment and tight inventory control systems. It uses information from a demand forecasting system and point-of-sale data to replenish its inventory in its 1,600 retail stores. Explain how these systems help Office Depot minimize costs and any other benefits they provide. Identify and describe other supply chain management applications that would be especially helpful to Office Depot.
Improving Decision Making: Using Database Software to Manage Customer Service Requests

Software skills: Database design; querying and reporting
Business skills: Customer service analysis

9-10 In this exercise, you’ll use database software to develop an application that tracks customer service requests and analyzes customer data to identify customers meriting priority treatment.

Prime Service is a large service company that provides maintenance and repair services for close to 1,200 commercial businesses in New York, New Jersey, and Connecticut. Its customers include businesses of all sizes. Customers with service needs call into its customer service department with requests for repairing heating ducts, broken windows, leaky roofs, broken water pipes, and other problems. The company assigns each request a number and writes down the service request number, the identification number of the customer account, the date of the request, the type of equipment requiring repair, and a brief description of the problem. The service requests are handled on a first-come-first-served basis. After the service work has been completed, Prime calculates the cost of the work, enters the price on the service request form, and bills the client. This arrangement treats the most important and profitable clients—those with accounts of more than $70,000—no differently from its clients with small accounts. Management would like to find a way to provide its best customers with better service. Management would also like to know which types of service problems occur most frequently so that it can make sure it has adequate resources to address them.

Prime Service has a small database with client account information, which can be found in MyMISLab™. Use database software to design a solution that would enable Prime’s customer service representatives to identify the most important customers so that they could receive priority service. Your solution will require more than one table. Populate your database with at least 10 service requests. Create several reports that would be of interest to management, such as a list of the highest—and lowest—priority accounts and a report showing the most frequently occurring service problems. Create a report listing service calls that customer service representatives should respond to first on a specific date.

Achieving Operational Excellence: Evaluating Supply Chain Management Services

Software skills: Web browser and presentation software
Business skills: Evaluating supply chain management services

9-11 In addition to carrying goods from one place to another, some trucking companies provide supply chain management services and help their customers manage their information. In this project, you'll use the Web to research and evaluate two of these business services. Investigate the Web sites of two companies, UPS Logistics and Schneider Logistics, to see how these companies’ services can be used for supply chain management. Then respond to the following questions:

- What supply chain processes can each of these companies support for their clients?
- How can customers use the Web sites of each company to help them with supply chain management?
- Compare the supply chain management services provided by these companies. Which company would you select to help your firm manage its supply chain? Why?

Collaboration and Teamwork Project

9-12 In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Docs, Google Sites, Google +, or other open-source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.
Vodafone: A Giant Global ERP Implementation
CASE STUDY

Vodafone Group PLC is the largest mobile service provider by revenue in the world, with 400 million customers across Europe, the Middle East, Africa, Asia Pacific, and the United States. In 2013, it had revenues of $64.6 billion and more than 86,000 employees working in over 30 countries. Since its founding nearly 30 years ago, the business has experienced phenomenal growth, largely by establishing local operating companies that provide products and services to their local markets.

As a result, the company was very decentralized, lacking common practices, centralized operations, and data sharing among its various operating companies. Most of Vodafone’s mobile subsidiaries operated as independent companies with their own business processes. Vodafone was a network of individual businesses, but it wanted to function more like a single global firm to better deal with competitive pressures. Management called for a major business transformation to make this happen.

In 2006, Vodafone’s board of directors approved the “Evolution Vodafone” Business Transformation Program (EVO) designed to refashion Vodafone into a truly global company, with a centralized shared services organization and common worldwide business processes in finances, human resources, and supply chain management for all of the operating companies. (Shared services refers to the consolidation of business operations that are used by multiple parts of the same organization in order to reduce costs and redundancy.) A common SAP ERP system would provide the technology platform for these changes by supporting information-sharing and common business processes that would simplify and speed up work throughout the company. Additional software tools from Informatica, OpenText, Readsoft, Sabrix, Redwood, HP, and Remedy that could integrate with SAP were added to the mix.

Vodafone’s system turned out to be one of the biggest SAP ERP implementations in the world. The company spent a year identifying and designing its new business processes and establishing the scope of this project. The management team wanted to limit risks to non-customer-facing processes that were nevertheless important sources of value for the firm. Customer-facing front-end processes were excluded from the first phase of the rollout to keep the transformation more manageable.

Procurement was targeted as the first set of processes to be transformed using the new ERP system. Vodafone had been allowing each of its local companies to manage its own procurement, which prevented it from leveraging the massive purchasing power the company could obtain by managing relationships with material and service suppliers from a single entity. By generating savings from centralized procurement, the transformation project would be able to quickly show a return on investment and win further support. Vodafone did not establish a centralized procurement department but instead created a centralized procurement company based in Luxembourg that uses the SAP ERP platform. Most of the company’s spending goes through this central organization. Suppliers benefit because the system helps them plan their sales to Vodafone and they only need to work with a single purchaser instead of many. This new way of doing business included a new purchase-to-pay process in which invoices are approved automatically for payment by matching them with purchase orders and receipts.

Once the new procurement process and organization were running, Vodafone started creating a centralized shared services organization based on the SAP ERP system. It selected Budapest, Hungary as the pilot location for this new arrangement. Vodafone Hungary is a mid-sized company with 2,000 employees with a small IT platform based on Oracle software. This made Vodafone Hungary more receptive to changing its information system and business processes than Vodafone organizations in larger countries, and Hungary had already been using Oracle systems. There, Vodafone built an entire shared services organization from scratch while simultaneously implementing the SAP ERP system. Vodafone then set up two more shared services organizations in India running on SAP.

After Hungary, Vodafone implemented the new procurement process and SAP software for its
German operating company. Germany is Vodafone’s largest market, and accounts for more than 20 percent of Vodafone’s total revenue. Vodafone Germany is a much larger organization than Vodafone Hungary, with 13,000 employees, over 130 local legacy systems, and many customized business processes to replace. Work habits were more deeply entrenched, and Vodafone encountered some employee resistance as it tried to implement the new systems and processes. To minimize risk, Vodafone used a phased, incremental implementation, did a tremendous amount of testing, and made all the necessary system modifications before the system went live. Special support teams were dispatched to work with all the employees affected by the transition. These efforts helped address problems and employee resistance before they got out of hand.

Once the German implementation was deemed successful, Vodafone rolled out the new system at many more operating companies, prioritizing the implementations based on each operating company’s size, complexity, and willingness to change.

No two rollouts proceeded the same way because each operating company had unique challenges and demands. Many of these companies had grown rapidly, and had numerous legacy systems based on local requirements. There were large numbers of users, interfaces, and legal requirements to deal with. Vodafone’s project team had to balance the need to proceed rapidly with the need to ensure that the system was implemented carefully.

Vodafone’s implementation plan called for a core project team to visit each individual operating company and implement the new processes locally, assisted by a systems integrator and local resources. Local teams and senior management met with the global teams, IT consultants, and local IT vendors in a friendly environment to encourage knowledge-sharing and openness to change. The success of each rollout was based on multiple factors, including the number and complexity of each unit’s legacy systems, the skills of each local project team, and the willingness of each local organization to embrace change. Vodafone enlisted the services of the global consulting firm Accenture to provide skills where needed and assist with change management in the local companies. Over time, the Vodafone project team and the Accenture consultants learned how to tailor their activities to the needs of each operating company. For example, if no representatives from an operating company showed up for the project launch meeting or they attended but showed little interest, the project team knew that company might be less cooperative. In such cases, the project would require more resources and attention.

The project team also had to be sensitive to local trends as system rollouts took place. For instance, if an operating company was located in a country experiencing economic downturn, its employees might be more resistant to the rollout. Some might see a major business and technology change as an improvement in their situation, while others might see it as another thing to cope with during a very stressful time.

As it finished rolling out the system to its remaining operating companies, the Vodafone project team used what it had learned to make improvements to its earlier ERP implementations. For example, testing and employee feedback revealed that more attention should be paid to usability. So, the project team enhanced the system’s interfaces to make them more user-friendly.

Given the nature of the business, Vodafone’s management wants about 80% of the company’s internal transactions to take place on a mobile device. According to Niall O’Sullivan, Vodafone’s Global Finance Transformation Director, management believes mobile apps will be a major advantage in driving compliance, increasing ease of use, and reducing resistance to the actual processes themselves. The goal is to have the vast majority of user interactions with the system take place on a mobile phone. According to O’Sullivan, mobility provides easy access for employees who don’t typically engage with the SAP system, so more employees are using the system. The more people use the system, the greater the return on investment. Over 60,000 employees around the world now use the new system, with 80,000 expected by the end of 2014.

Vodafone is now rolling out some of its enterprise applications for mobile devices, and so far, four have been selected. The first to go mobile was a travel and expense reporting application. Employees are able to take a photo of their receipts and get reimbursed without using any paper, and they can issue or approve requests for leave on their mobile phones all at once. This application has reduced the time required to file travel expenses from 30 minutes to 10 minutes, with 7,500 expense claims filed each week, resulting in 300 person-days’ potential savings per week. Vodafone’s future mobile plans call for the development of a mobility portal and the integration of approval applications with finance, HR, and electronic sourcing.
Vodafone’s business process transformation and ERP system have increased business efficiency and produced annual cost savings of $719 million. The total cost of ownership (TCO) of information technology has been lowered. Throughout the world, Vodafone has a consistent way of working and a more unified organizational structure. Getting the various operating companies to think and act more uniformly and to adopt a shared service model has produced benefits that are not immediately quantifiable, but should lead to further profitability in the long run.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

9-13 Identify and describe the problem discussed in this case. What management, organization, and technology factors contributed to the problem?

9-14 Why did Vodafone have to spend so much time dealing with change during its business transformation?

9-15 Why was an ERP system required for Vodafone’s global business transformation?

9-16 What management, organization, and technology issues had to be addressed by the Vodafone project team to ensure the transformation would be successful?

9-17 What were the business benefits of Vodafone’s global business transformation? How did it change decision making and the way the company operated?

---

**MyMISLab**

Go to mymislabs.com for Auto-graded writing questions as well as the following Assisted-graded writing questions.

9-18 What are 3 reasons why a company would want to implement an enterprise resource planning (ERP) system and two reasons why it might not want to do so.

9-19 What are the sources of data for analytical CRM systems? Provide three examples of outputs from analytical CRM systems.
Chapter 9 References


Carew, Joanne. “Most Companies Failing at CRM.” IT Web Business (February 14, 2013).


Drobik, Alexander and Nigel Rayner. “Develop a Strategic Road Map for Postmodern ERP in 2013 and Beyond.” Gartner Inc. (July 2013).


Seldon, Peter B., Cheryl Calvert, and Song Yang. “A Multi-Project Model of Key Factors Affecting Organizational Benefits from Enterprise Systems.” MIS Quarterly 34, No. 2 (June 2010).


LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. What are the unique features of e-commerce, digital markets, and digital goods?
2. What are the principal e-commerce business and revenue models?
3. How has e-commerce transformed marketing?
4. How has e-commerce affected business-to-business transactions?
5. What is the role of m-commerce in business and what are the most important m-commerce applications?
6. What issues must be addressed when building an e-commerce presence?

MyMISLab™
Visit mymislab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.

CHAPTER CASES
Pinterest: How Much Is a Picture Worth?
Can Pandora Succeed with Freemium?
Will Mobile Technology Put Orbitz in the Lead?
Cultivating Customers the Social Way

VIDEO CASES
Groupon: Deals Galore
Etsy: A Marketplace and Community
Ford AutoXchange B2B Marketplace
If you love looking at pictures, you’ll love Pinterest. Pinterest is a social media site launched in March 2010 that allows its users to communicate through vibrant images. You can create virtual scrapbooks of images, video, and other content that you “pin” to a virtual pin board on this Web site and also search for other visually-related content.

Many brides-to-be or women imagining their “dream wedding” have set up Pinterest boards with photos of dresses, flowers, reception dinners, and wedding locations. People pin decorating ideas for their homes or photos of an ideal vacation. Artists use Pinterest to organize inspiring images for their work. Cooks keep Pinterest recipe books. The uses are endless.

Find something you really like? In addition to “liking” and perhaps commenting on it, you can re-pin it to your own board or follow a link back to the original source. Do you see someone who shares your taste or interests? You can follow one or more of that pinner’s boards and keep track of everything she or he pins. You can also share your pins and boards on Facebook and Twitter.

Pinterest is the fastest-growing site in Web history. In 2010, Pinterest had 10,000 users, then 12 million by the end of 2011, and 50 million in June 2014, with 40 million unique monthly visitors by that time. An estimated 80 percent are women. Pinterest is now the third-largest social network in the United States, behind Facebook and Twitter, and it’s also one of the “stickiest” sites on the Web. According to comScore, users spend an average of 80 minutes per session on Pinterest and almost 60 percent of users with accounts visit once or more per week.
Pinterest is becoming an important business tool for building brand image and driving traffic to a company Web site. For instance, Lands’ End has several brand pages on Pinterest, one of which is Lands End Canvas, where Lands’ End has pinned some of its catalog photos for Lands’ End Canvas products. When you click on a photo, you get a larger version of the photo and the chance to link to the Web site (canvas.landsend.com/) where you can purchase the product and find similar ones. Whole Foods does not advertise sales using Pinterest, but instead has theme-based boards like Edible Celebrations, How Does Your Garden Grow, Super HOT Kitchens, and Sweet Tooth. These boards depict a lifestyle that can be obtained by visiting its online store. Brides magazine has nearly 80 Pinterest boards with topics like hair styles, dresses, bouquets, and wedding cakes, using Pinterest to push some of the images that are on the Brides site across the Internet and to drive traffic back to the site.

About 3 percent of referrals to retail Web sites came from Pinterest in 2013, compared to fractions of a percent from YouTube, Reddit, Google+ and other social sites. This is a long way from Facebook's 26 percent of referrals. But according to one marketing study, when Pinterest users follow an image back to its source (a referral from Pinterest) they end up purchasing on average $180 worth of goods. This reflects both the wealth of Pinterest consumers, and the high ticket prices for the goods they end up purchasing, mostly women's fashion. In comparison, Facebook users generate $80 and Twitter users $70.

The hope for marketers, and Pinterest, is that its "referral capacity" (the ability to direct users to retail Web sites where they can purchase something) will rapidly increase as its audience and intensity of use grow. Pinterest is starting to roll out paid advertising in the form of "promoted pins" from companies such as Kraft, General Mills and the Gap. For example, Kraft will be running promoted pins—mostly recipes—in four categories: dessert plays that incorporate products like Jell-O and Cool Whip; Kraft cheese brands; Philadelphia Cream Cheese; and content from Kraft Recipes. Pinterest will charge fees each time a user clicks on one of the promoted pins and is transported to the Kraft Web site. Will promoted pins generate enough revenue to turn Pinterest into a viable business?


Pinterest exemplifies two major trends in e-commerce: It is a social networking site linking people to each other through their shared interests and fascination with images; and its social features are also used by companies for promoting goods and services. Pinterest is also an outstanding example of how e-commerce is becoming more visual, with photos and videos playing a much larger role in communicating products and ideas and more searches based on images. It’s a poster child for the visual Web.

The chapter-opening diagram calls attention to important points raised by this case and this chapter. Pinterest’s primary business challenge is how to wring profits from the hundreds of millions of images and social comments it stores and displays on its Web site. Pinterest’s management decided to base its business on social networking tools and technology for visual display.
10.1 **What are the unique features of e-commerce, digital markets, and digital goods?**

Bought an iTunes track lately, streamed a Netflix movie to your home TV, purchased a book at Amazon, or a diamond at Blue Nile? If so, you’ve engaged in e-commerce. In 2014, an estimated 196 million Americans went shopping online, and 163 million purchased something online as did millions of others worldwide. And although most purchases still take place through traditional channels, e-commerce continues to grow rapidly and to transform the way many companies do business. In 2014, e-commerce consumer sales of goods, services, and content will reach 470 billion, about 6.5 percent of all retail sales, and they are growing at 12 percent annually (compared to 3.5 percent for traditional retailers) (eMarketer, 2014a). In just the past two years, e-commerce has expanded from the desktop and home computer to mobile devices, from an isolated activity to a new social commerce, and from a Fortune 1000 commerce with a national audience to local merchants and consumers whose location is known to mobile devices. At the top 100 e-commerce retail sites, more than half of online shoppers arrive from their smartphones, although most continue to purchase using a PC or tablet. The key words for understanding this new e-commerce in 2014 are “social, mobile, local.”
E-COMMERCE TODAY

E-commerce refers to the use of the Internet and the Web to transact business. More formally, e-commerce is about digitally enabled commercial transactions between and among organizations and individuals. For the most part, this means transactions that occur over the Internet and the Web. Commercial transactions involve the exchange of value (e.g., money) across organizational or individual boundaries in return for products and services.

E-commerce began in 1995 when one of the first Internet portals, Netscape.com, accepted the first ads from major corporations and popularized the idea that the Web could be used as a new medium for advertising and sales. No one envisioned at the time what would turn out to be an exponential growth curve for e-commerce retail sales, which doubled and tripled in the early years. E-commerce grew at double-digit rates until the recession of 2008–2009 when growth slowed to a crawl. In 2009, e-commerce revenues were flat (Figure 10.1), not bad considering that traditional retail sales were shrinking by 5 percent annually. In fact, e-commerce during the recession was the only stable segment in retail. Some online retailers forged ahead at a record pace: Amazon’s 2009 revenues were up 25 percent over 2008 sales. Despite the continuing slow growth in 2013, the number of online buyers increased by 5 percent to 155 million, and the number of online retail transactions was up 8 percent. Amazon’s sales grew to $74 billion in 2013, up an incredible 24 percent from 2012!

Mirroring the history of many technological innovations, such as the telephone, radio, and television, the very rapid growth in e-commerce in the early years created a market bubble in e-commerce stocks. Like all bubbles, the “dot-com” bubble burst (in March 2001). A large number of e-commerce companies failed during this process. Yet for many others, such as Amazon, eBay, Expedia, and Google, the results have been more positive: soaring revenues,
fine-tuned business models that produce profits, and rising stock prices. By 2006, e-commerce revenues returned to solid growth, and have continued to be the fastest growing form of retail trade in the United States, Europe, and Asia.

- Online consumer sales grew to an estimated $414 billion in 2014, an increase of more than 12 percent over 2013 (including travel services and digital downloads), with 163 million people purchasing online and an additional 39 million shopping and gathering information but not purchasing (eMarketer, 2014a).

- The number of individuals of all ages online in the United States expanded to 251 million in 2014, up from 147 million in 2004. In the world, over 2.8 billion people are now connected to the Internet. Growth in the overall Internet population has spurred growth in e-commerce (Internet World Stats, 2014).

- Approximately 90 million households have broadband access to the Internet in 2014, representing about 74 percent of all households.

- About 167 million Americans now access the Internet using a smartphone such as an iPhone, Android, or BlackBerry. Mobile e-commerce has begun a rapid growth based on apps, ringtones, downloaded entertainment, and location-based services. Mobile commerce will add up to about $84 billion in 2014 (roughly triple 2010’s revenue). Amazon sold an estimated $11 billion in retail goods to mobile users in 2013. In a few years, mobile phones will be the most common Internet access device. Currently half of all mobile phone users access the Internet using their phones.

- On an average day, an estimated 212 million adult U.S. Internet users go online. About 152 million send e-mail, 152 million use a search engine, and 117 million get news. Around 124 million use a social network, 62 million do online banking, 73 million watch an online video, and 44 million look for information on Wikipedia (Pew Internet & American Life Project, 2014).

- B2B e-commerce (use of the Internet for business-to-business commerce and collaboration among business partners) expanded to more than $5.7 trillion. Table 10.1 highlights these new e-commerce developments.

**THE NEW E-COMMERCE: SOCIAL, MOBILE, LOCAL**

One of the biggest changes is the extent to which e-commerce has become more social, mobile, and local. Online marketing consisted largely of creating a corporate Web site, buying display ads on Yahoo, purchasing ad words on Google, and sending e-mails. The workhorse of online marketing was the display ad. It still is. But it's increasingly being replaced by video ads which are far more effective. Display ads from the very beginning of the Internet were based on television ads where brand messages were flashed before millions of users who were not expected to respond immediately, ask questions, or make observations. If the ads did not work, the solution was often to repeat the ad. The primary measure of success was how many “eyeballs” (unique visitors) a Web site produced, and how many “impressions” a marketing campaign generated. (An impression was one ad shown to one person.) Both of these measures were carry overs from the world of television, which measures marketing in terms of audience size and ad views.

**From Eyeballs to Conversations**

After 2007, all this changed with the rapid growth of Facebook and other social sites, the explosive growth of smartphones beginning with Apple iPhone, and the growing interest in local marketing. What's different about the new world of
### TABLE 10.1  THE GROWTH OF E-COMMERCE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BUSINESS TRANSFORMATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E-commerce remains the fastest growing form of commerce when compared to physical retail stores, services, and entertainment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social, mobile, and local commerce have become the fastest growing forms of e-commerce.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The first wave of e-commerce transformed the business world of books, music, and air travel. In the second wave, nine new industries are facing a similar transformation scenario: marketing and advertising, telecommunications, movies, television, jewelry and luxury goods, real estate, online travel, bill payments, and software.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The breadth of e-commerce offerings grows, especially in the services economy of social networking, travel, entertainment, retail apparel, jewelry, appliances, and home furnishings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The online demographics of shoppers broaden to match that of ordinary shoppers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pure e-commerce business models are refined further to achieve higher levels of profitability, whereas traditional retail brands, such as Sears, JCPenney, L.L.Bean, and Walmart, use e-commerce to retain their dominant retail positions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small businesses and entrepreneurs continue to flood the e-commerce marketplace, often riding on the infrastructures created by industry giants, such as Amazon, Apple, and Google, and increasingly taking advantage of cloud-based computing resources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile e-commerce begins to take off in the United States with location-based services and entertainment downloads including e-books, movies, music and television shows.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TECHNOLOGY FOUNDATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wireless Internet connections (Wi-Fi, WiMax, and 3G/4G smartphones) grow rapidly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powerful smartphones, and tablet computers, music, Web surfing, and entertainment as well as voice communication. Podcasting and streaming take off as mediums for distribution of video, radio, and user-generated content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile devices expand to include Apple Watch, Google Glass, and wearable computers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Internet broadband foundation becomes stronger in households and businesses as transmission prices fall. More than 89 million households had broadband cable or DSL access to the Internet in 2014, about 74 percent of all households in the United States (eMarketer, 2014c).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social networking software and sites such as Facebook, Google +, Twitter, LinkedIn, and others become a major new platform for e-commerce, marketing, and advertising. Facebook hits 1.2 billion users worldwide, and 151 million in the United States (Facebook, 2014).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Internet-based models of computing, such as smartphone apps, cloud computing, software as a service (SaaS), and Web 2.0 software greatly reduce the cost of e-commerce Web sites.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NEW BUSINESS MODELS EMERGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>More than half the Internet user population have joined an online social network, contribute to social bookmarking sites, create blogs, and share photos. Together these sites create a massive online audience as large as television that is attractive to marketers. In 2014, social networking accounts for an estimated 25 percent of online time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The traditional advertising industry is disrupted as online advertising grows twice as fast as TV and print advertising; Google, Yahoo, and Facebook display nearly 1 trillion ads a year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social sharing e-commerce sites like Uber and Airbnb extend the the market creator business model to new areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newspapers and other traditional media adopt online, interactive models but are losing advertising revenues to the online players despite gaining online readers. The New York Times adopts a paywall for its online edition and succeeds in capturing 850,000 subscribers. Book publishing thrives because of the growth in e-books, and the appeal of traditional books.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Online entertainment business models offering television, movies, music, and games with cooperation among the major copyright owners in Hollywood and New York and with Internet distributors like Apple, Amazon, Google, YouTube, and Facebook.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
social-mobile-local e-commerce are the dual and related concepts of "conversations" and "engagement." Marketing in this new period is based on firms engaging in multiple online conversations with their customers, potential customers, and even critics. Your brand is being talked about on the Web and social media (that's the conversation part), and marketing your firm, building and restoring your brands, requires you to locate, identify, and participate in these conversations. Social marketing means all things social like listening, discussing, interacting, empathizing, and engaging. The emphasis in online marketing has shifted from a focus on eyeballs to a focus on participating in customer-oriented conversations. In this sense, social marketing is not simply a "new ad channel," but a collection of technology-based tools for communicating with shoppers.

In the past, firms could tightly control their brand messaging, and lead consumers down a funnel of cues that ended in a purchase. That is not true of social marketing. Consumer purchase decisions are increasingly driven by the conversations, choices, tastes, and opinions of their social network. Social marketing is all about firms participating in and shaping this social process.

From the Desktop to the Smartphone

Traditional online marketing (browser-based, search and display ads, e-mail, and games) still constitutes the majority (65 percent) of all online marketing ($51 billion), but it's growing much more slowly than social-mobile-local marketing. The marketing dollars are following customers and shoppers from the PC to mobile devices.

Social, mobile, and local e-commerce are connected. As mobile devices become more powerful, they are more useful for accessing Facebook and other social sites. As mobile devices become more widely adopted, they can be used by customers to find local merchants, and by merchants to alert customers in their neighborhood of special offers.

WHY E-COMMERCE IS DIFFERENT

Why has e-commerce grown so rapidly? The answer lies in the unique nature of the Internet and the Web. Simply put, the Internet and e-commerce technologies are much richer and more powerful than previous technology revolutions like radio, television, and the telephone. Table 10.2 describes the unique features of the Internet and Web as a commercial medium. Let's explore each of these unique features in more detail.

Ubiquity

In traditional commerce, a marketplace is a physical place, such as a retail store, that you visit to transact business. E-commerce is ubiquitous, meaning that it is available just about everywhere, at all times. It makes it possible to shop from your desktop, at home, at work, or even from your car, using smartphones. The result is called a marketspace—a marketplace extended beyond traditional boundaries and removed from a temporal and geographic location.

From a consumer point of view, ubiquity reduces transaction costs—the costs of participating in a market. To transact business, it is no longer necessary that you spend time or money traveling to a market, and much less mental effort is required to make a purchase.

Global Reach

E-commerce technology permits commercial transactions to cross cultural and national boundaries far more conveniently and cost effectively than is true in
traditional commerce. As a result, the potential market size for e-commerce merchants is roughly equal to the size of the world’s online population (estimated to be more than 2 billion).

In contrast, most traditional commerce is local or regional—it involves local merchants or national merchants with local outlets. Television, radio stations and newspapers, for instance, are primarily local and regional institutions with limited, but powerful, national networks that can attract a national audience but not easily cross national boundaries to a global audience.

**Universal Standards**

One strikingly unusual feature of e-commerce technologies is that the technical standards of the Internet and, therefore, the technical standards for conducting e-commerce are universal standards. They are shared by all nations around the world and enable any computer to link with any other computer regardless of the technology platform each is using. In contrast, most traditional commerce technologies differ from one nation to the next. For instance, television and radio standards differ around the world, as does cellular telephone technology.
The universal technical standards of the Internet and e-commerce greatly lower market entry costs—the cost merchants must pay simply to bring their goods to market. At the same time, for consumers, universal standards reduce search costs—the effort required to find suitable products.

**Richness**
Information richness refers to the complexity and content of a message. Traditional markets, national sales forces, and small retail stores have great richness: They are able to provide personal, face-to-face service using aural and visual cues when making a sale. The richness of traditional markets makes them powerful selling or commercial environments. Prior to the development of the Web, there was a trade-off between richness and reach: The larger the audience reached, the less rich the message. The Web makes it possible to deliver rich messages with text, audio, and video simultaneously to large numbers of people.

**Interactivity**
Unlike any of the commercial technologies of the twentieth century, with the possible exception of the telephone, e-commerce technologies are interactive, meaning they allow for two-way communication between merchant and consumer. Television, for instance, cannot ask viewers any questions or enter into conversations with them, and it cannot request that customer information be entered into a form. In contrast, all of these activities are possible on an e-commerce Web site. Interactivity allows an online merchant to engage a consumer in ways similar to a face-to-face experience but on a massive, global scale.

**Information Density**
The Internet and the Web vastly increase information density—the total amount and quality of information available to all market participants, consumers, and merchants alike. E-commerce technologies reduce information collection, storage, processing, and communication costs while greatly increasing the currency, accuracy, and timeliness of information.

Information density in e-commerce markets make prices and costs more transparent. *Price transparency* refers to the ease with which consumers can find out the variety of prices in a market; *cost transparency* refers to the ability of consumers to discover the actual costs merchants pay for products.

There are advantages for merchants as well. Online merchants can discover much more about consumers than in the past. This allows merchants to segment the market into groups that are willing to pay different prices and permits the merchants to engage in price discrimination—selling the same goods, or nearly the same goods, to different targeted groups at different prices. For instance, an online merchant can discover a consumer's avid interest in expensive, exotic vacations and then pitch high-end vacation plans to that consumer at a premium price, knowing this person is willing to pay extra for such a vacation. At the same time, the online merchant can pitch the same vacation plan at a lower price to a more price-sensitive consumer. Information density also helps merchants differentiate their products in terms of cost, brand, and quality.

**Personalization/Customization**
E-commerce technologies permit personalization: Merchants can target their marketing messages to specific individuals by adjusting the message
to a person’s clickstream behavior, name, interests, and past purchases. The technology also permits customization—changing the delivered product or service based on a user’s preferences or prior behavior. Given the interactive nature of e-commerce technology, much information about the consumer can be gathered in the marketplace at the moment of purchase. With the increase in information density, a great deal of information about the consumer’s past purchases and behavior can be stored and used by online merchants.

The result is a level of personalization and customization unthinkable with traditional commerce technologies. For instance, you may be able to shape what you see on television by selecting a channel, but you cannot change the content of the channel you have chosen. In contrast, the Wall Street Journal Online allows you to select the type of news stories you want to see first and gives you the opportunity to be alerted when certain events happen.

Social Technology: User Content Generation and Social Networking

In contrast to previous technologies, the Internet and e-commerce technologies have evolved to be much more social by allowing users to create and share with their personal friends (and a larger worldwide community) content in the form of text, videos, music, or photos. Using these forms of communication, users are able to create new social networks and strengthen existing ones.

All previous mass media in modern history, including the printing press, use a broadcast model (one-to-many) where content is created in a central location by experts (professional writers, editors, directors, and producers) and audiences are concentrated in huge numbers to consume a standardized product. The new Internet and e-commerce empower users to create and distribute content on a large scale, and permit users to program their own content consumption. The Internet provides a unique many-to-many model of mass communications.

KEY CONCEPTS IN E-COMMERCE: DIGITAL MARKETS AND DIGITAL GOODS IN A GLOBAL MARKETPLACE

The location, timing, and revenue models of business are based in some part on the cost and distribution of information. The Internet has created a digital marketplace where millions of people all over the world are able to exchange massive amounts of information directly, instantly, and for free. As a result, the Internet has changed the way companies conduct business and increased their global reach.

The Internet reduces information asymmetry. An information asymmetry exists when one party in a transaction has more information that is important for the transaction than the other party. That information helps determine their relative bargaining power. In digital markets, consumers and suppliers can “see” the prices being charged for goods, and in that sense digital markets are said to be more “transparent” than traditional markets.

For example, before auto retailing sites appeared on the Web, there was a significant information asymmetry between auto dealers and customers. Only the auto dealers knew the manufacturers’ prices, and it was difficult for consumers to shop around for the best price. Auto dealers’ profit margins depended on this asymmetry of information. Today’s consumers have access to a legion of Web sites providing competitive pricing information, and three-fourths of U.S. auto buyers use the Internet to shop around for the best deal. Thus, the Web has reduced the information asymmetry surrounding an
auto purchase. The Internet has also helped businesses seeking to purchase from other businesses reduce information asymmetries and locate better prices and terms.

Digital markets are very flexible and efficient because they operate with reduced search and transaction costs, lower menu costs (merchants’ costs of changing prices), greater price discrimination, and the ability to change prices dynamically based on market conditions. In dynamic pricing, the price of a product varies depending on the demand characteristics of the customer or the supply situation of the seller. For instance, online retailers from Amazon to Walmart change prices on many products based on time of day, demand for the product, and users’ prior visits to their sites. Using big data analytics, some online firms can adjust prices at the individual level based on behavioral targeting parameters, such as whether the consumer is a price haggler (who will receive a lower price offer) versus a person who accepts offered prices and does not search for lower prices. Prices can also vary by zip code, with higher prices set for poor sections of a community.

These new digital markets may either reduce or increase switching costs, depending on the nature of the product or service being sold, and they may cause some extra delay in gratification. Unlike a physical market, you can’t immediately consume a product such as clothing purchased over the Web (although immediate consumption is possible with digital music downloads and other digital products.)

Digital markets provide many opportunities to sell directly to the consumer, bypassing intermediaries, such as distributors or retail outlets. Eliminating intermediaries in the distribution channel can significantly lower purchase transaction costs. To pay for all the steps in a traditional distribution channel, a product may have to be priced as high as 135 percent of its original cost to manufacture.

Figure 10.2 illustrates how much savings result from eliminating each of these layers in the distribution process. By selling directly to consumers or reducing the number of intermediaries, companies are able to raise profits while charging lower prices. The removal of organizations or business process layers responsible for intermediary steps in a value chain is called disintermediation.

**FIGURE 10.2** THE BENEFITS OF DISINTERMEDIATION TO THE CONSUMER

![Diagram of disintermediation](image)

The typical distribution channel has several intermediary layers, each of which adds to the final cost of a product, such as a sweater. Removing layers lowers the final cost to the customer.
Disintermediation is affecting the market for services. Airlines and hotels operating their own reservation sites online earn more per ticket because they have eliminated travel agents as intermediaries. Table 10.3 summarizes the differences between digital markets and traditional markets.

**Digital Goods**

The Internet digital marketplace has greatly expanded sales of **digital goods**. Digital goods are goods that can be delivered over a digital network. Music tracks, video, Hollywood movies, software, newspapers, magazines, and books can all be expressed, stored, delivered, and sold as purely digital products. For the most part, digital goods are “intellectual property” which is defined as “works of the mind.” Intellectual property is protected from misappropriation by copyright, patent, and trade secret laws (see Chapter 4). Today, all these products are delivered as digital streams or downloads, while their physical counterparts decline in sales.

In general, for digital goods, the marginal cost of producing another unit is about zero (it costs nothing to make a copy of a music file). However, the cost of producing the original first unit is relatively high—in fact, it is nearly the total cost of the product because there are few other costs of inventory and distribution. Costs of delivery over the Internet are very low, marketing costs often remain the same, and pricing can be highly variable. (On the Internet, the merchant can change prices as often as desired because of low menu costs.)

The impact of the Internet on the market for these kinds of digital goods is nothing short of revolutionary, and we see the results around us every day. Businesses dependent on physical products for sales—such as bookstores, music stores, book publishers, music labels, and film studios—face the possibility of declining sales and even destruction of their businesses. Newspapers and magazines subscriptions to hard copies are declining, while online readership and subscriptions are expanding.

Total record label industry revenues have fallen from $14 billion in 1999, to $7.1 billion estimated in 2013, a drop of 50 percent, due almost entirely to the decline in CD album sales, and the growth of digital music services (both legal

---

### TABLE 10.3 DIGITAL MARKETS COMPARED TO TRADITIONAL MARKETS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Digital Markets</th>
<th>Traditional Markets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Information asymmetry</td>
<td>Asymmetry reduced</td>
<td>Asymmetry high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search costs</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transaction costs</td>
<td>Low (sometimes virtually nothing)</td>
<td>High (time, travel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delayed gratification</td>
<td>High (or lower in the case of a digital good)</td>
<td>Lower: purchase now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu costs</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic pricing</td>
<td>Low cost, instant</td>
<td>High cost, delayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price discrimination</td>
<td>Low cost, instant</td>
<td>High cost, delayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Market segmentation</td>
<td>Low cost, moderate precision</td>
<td>High cost, less precision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching costs</td>
<td>Higher/lower (depending on product characteristics)</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network effects</td>
<td>Strong</td>
<td>Weaker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disintermediation</td>
<td>More possible/likely</td>
<td>Less possible/unlikely</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and illegal music piracy). On the plus side, the Apple iTunes Store has sold 35 billion songs for 99 cents each since opening in 2003, providing the industry with a digital distribution model that has restored some of the revenues lost to digital music channels. Since iTunes, illegal downloading has been cut in half, and legitimate online music sales are estimated to be approximately $4 billion in 2014. As cloud streaming services expand, illegal downloading will decline further. In that sense, Apple, along with other Internet distributors, saved the record labels from extinction. In 2013, digital music sales accounted for over 64 percent of all music revenues. Yet the music labels make only about 32 cents from a single track download and only .003 cents for a streamed track (with the hope that sales of tracks or CDs will result).

Hollywood has not been similarly disrupted by digital distribution platforms, in part because it is more difficult to download high-quality, pirated copies of full-length movies. To avoid the fate of the music industry, Hollywood has struck lucrative distribution deals with Netflix, Google, Amazon, and Apple, making it convenient to download and pay for high quality movies. Content is still king. Google and Apple may own the pipes and the devices, but without compelling content, they are not very profitable. Nevertheless, these arrangements are not enough to compensate entirely for the loss in DVD sales, which fell 50 percent from 2006 to 2013, although this is changing rapidly as the online distributors like Netflix pay billions for high-quality Hollywood content. In 2014, for the first time, consumers will view more and pay more for Web-based movie downloads, rentals, and streams than for DVDs or related physical products. As with television, the demand for feature-length Hollywood movies appears to be expanding in part because of the growth of smartphones and tablets making it easier to watch movies in more locations. In addition, the surprising resurgence of music videos, led by the Web site VEVO, is attracting millions of younger viewers on smartphones and tablets. Online movies began a growth spurt in 2010 as broadband services spread throughout the country. In 2011, movie viewing doubled in a single year. In 2014, about 73 million Internet users are expected to view movies, about one-third of the adult Internet audience. While this rapid growth will not continue forever, there is little doubt that the Internet is becoming a movie distribution and television channel that rivals cable television, and someday may replace cable television entirely. Table 10.4 describes digital goods and how they differ from traditional physical goods.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 10.4</th>
<th>HOW THE INTERNET CHANGES THE MARKETS FOR DIGITAL GOODS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DIGITAL GOODS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marginal cost/unit</td>
<td>Zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost of production</td>
<td>High (most of the cost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copying cost</td>
<td>Approximately zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distributed delivery cost</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inventory cost</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marketing cost</td>
<td>Variable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pricing</td>
<td>More variable (bundling, random pricing games)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What are the principal e-commerce business and revenue models?

E-commerce has grown from a few advertisements on early Web portals in 1995 to over 9 percent of all retail sales in 2014 (an estimated $470 billion), surpassing the mail order catalog business. E-commerce is a fascinating combination of business models and new information technologies. Let’s start with a basic understanding of the types of e-commerce, and then describe e-commerce business and revenue models.

Types of e-commerce

There are many ways to classify electronic commerce transactions—one is by looking at the nature of the participants. The three major electronic commerce categories are business-to-consumer (B2C) e-commerce, business-to-business (B2B) e-commerce, and consumer-to-consumer (C2C) e-commerce.

- **Business-to-consumer (B2C)** electronic commerce involves retailing products and services to individual shoppers. BarnesandNoble.com, which sells books, software, and music to individual consumers, is an example of B2C e-commerce.

- **Business-to-business (B2B)** electronic commerce involves sales of goods and services among businesses. ChemConnect’s Web site for buying and selling chemicals and plastics is an example of B2B e-commerce.

- **Consumer-to-consumer (C2C)** electronic commerce involves consumers selling directly to consumers. For example, eBay, the giant Web auction site, enables people to sell their goods to other consumers by auctioning their merchandise off to the highest bidder, or for a fixed price. Craigslist is the most widely used platform used by consumers to buy from and sell directly to others.

Another way of classifying electronic commerce transactions is in terms of the platforms used by participants in a transaction. Until recently, most e-commerce transactions took place using a personal computer connected to the Internet over wired networks. Several wireless mobile alternatives have emerged: smartphones, tablet computers like iPads, dedicated e-readers like the Kindle, and smartphones and small tablet computers using Wi-Fi wireless networks. The use of handheld wireless devices for purchasing goods and services from any location is termed mobile commerce or m-commerce. Both business-to-business and business-to-consumer e-commerce transactions can take place using m-commerce technology, which we discuss in detail in Section 10.3.

E-commerce business models

Changes in the economics of information described earlier have created the conditions for entirely new business models to appear, while destroying older business models. Table 10.5 describes some of the most important Internet business models that have emerged. All, in one way or another, use the Internet to add extra value to existing products and services or to provide the foundation for new products and services.

Portal

Portals are gateways to the Web, and are often defined as those sites which users set as their home page. Some definitions of a portal include search engines
like Google and Bing even if few make these sites their home page. Portals such as Yahoo, Facebook, MSN, and AOL offer powerful Web search tools as well as an integrated package of content and services, such as news, e-mail, instant messaging, maps, calendars, shopping, music downloads, video streaming, and more, all in one place. Initially, portals were primarily “gateways” to the Internet. Today, however, the portal business model provides a destination site where users start their Web searching and linger to read news, find entertainment, meet other people, and, of course, be exposed to advertising which provides the revenues to support the portal. Portals generate revenue primarily by attracting very large audiences, charging advertisers for display ad placement (similar to traditional newspapers), collecting referral fees for steering customers to other sites, and charging for premium services. In 2014, portals (not including Google or Bing) generated an estimated $14.2 billion in display ad revenues. For comparison, search ads generated $13.8 billion, and video ads generated $4.5 billion. Although there are hundreds of portal/search engine sites, the top four portals (Yahoo, Facebook, MSN, and AOL) gather more than 95 percent of the Internet portal traffic because of their superior brand recognition (comScore, 2014a; eMarketer, 2014b).

**E-tailer**

Online retail stores, often called *e-tailers*, come in all sizes, from giant Amazon with 2013 revenues of more than $74.5 billion, to tiny local stores that have Web sites. An e-tailer is similar to the typical bricks-and-mortar storefront, except that customers only need to connect to the Internet to check their inventory

### Table 10.5  Internet Business Models

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E-tailer</td>
<td>Sells physical products directly to consumers or to</td>
<td>Amazon, RedEnvelope.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>individual businesses.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transaction broker</td>
<td>Saves users money and time by processing online sales</td>
<td>ETrade.com, Expedia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>transactions and generating a fee each time a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>transaction occurs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Market creator</td>
<td>Provides a digital environment where buyers and sellers</td>
<td>eBay, Priceline.com, Exostar,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>can meet, search for products, display products, and</td>
<td>Elemica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>establish prices for those products. Can serve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>consumers or B2B e-commerce, generating revenue from</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>transaction fees.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content provider</td>
<td>Creates revenue by providing digital content, such</td>
<td>WSJ.com, Gettyimages.com, iTunes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>as news, music, photos, or video, over the Web. The</td>
<td>Games.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>customer may pay to access the content, or revenue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>may be generated by selling advertising space.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community provider</td>
<td>Provides an online meeting place where people with</td>
<td>Facebook, Google+, iVillage, Twitter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>similar interests can communicate and find useful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>information.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portal</td>
<td>Provides initial point of entry to the Web along with</td>
<td>Yahoo, Bing, Google</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>specialized content and other services.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service provider</td>
<td>Provides Web 2.0 applications such as photo sharing,</td>
<td>Google Apps, Photobucket.com,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>video sharing, and user-generated content as services.</td>
<td>Dropbox</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and place an order. Altogether, online retail will generate about $304 billion in revenues for 2014. The value proposition of e-tailers is to provide convenient, low-cost shopping 24/7, offering large selections and consumer choice. Some e-tailers, such as Walmart.com or Staples.com, referred to as "bricks-and-clicks," are subsidiaries or divisions of existing physical stores and carry the same products. Others, however, operate only in the virtual world, without any ties to physical locations. Amazon, BlueNile.com, and Drugstore.com are examples of this type of e-tailer. Several other variations of e-tailers—such as online versions of direct mail catalogs, online malls, and manufacturer-direct online sales—also exist.

**Content Provider**

While e-commerce began as a retail product channel, it has increasingly turned into a global content channel. "Content" is defined broadly to include all forms of intellectual property. Intellectual property refers to all forms of human expression that can be put into a tangible medium such as text, CDs, or DVDs, or stored on any digital (or other) media, including the Web. Content providers distribute information content—such as digital video, music, photos, text, and artwork—over the Web. The value proposition of online content providers is that consumers can conveniently find a wide range of content online and purchase this content inexpensively, to be played or viewed on multiple computer devices or smartphones.

Providers do not have to be the creators of the content (although sometimes they are, like Disney.com), and are more likely to be Internet-based distributors of content produced and created by others. For example, Apple sells music tracks at its iTunes Store, but it does not create or commission new music.

The phenomenal popularity of the iTunes Store, and Apple's Internet-connected devices like the iPhone, iPod, and iPad, have enabled new forms of digital content delivery from podcasting to mobile streaming. Podcasting is a method of publishing audio or video broadcasts via the Internet, allowing subscribing users to download audio or video files onto their personal computers or portable music players. Streaming is a publishing method for music and video files that flows a continuous stream of content to a user's device without being stored locally on the device.

Estimates vary, but total online media is the fastest growing segment within e-commerce, growing at an estimated 20 percent annual rate.

**Transaction Broker**

Sites that process transactions for consumers normally handled in person, by phone, or by mail are transaction brokers. The largest industries using this model are financial services and travel services. The online transaction broker's primary value propositions are savings of money and time, as well as providing an extraordinary inventory of financial products and travel packages, in a single location. Online stock brokers and travel booking services charge fees that are considerably less than traditional versions of these services. Fidelity Financial Services, and Expedia, are the largest online financial and travel service firms based on a transaction broker model.

**Market Creator**

Market creators build a digital environment in which buyers and sellers can meet, display products, search for products, and establish prices. The value proposition of online market creators is that they provide a platform where sellers can easily display their wares and where purchasers can buy directly
from sellers. Online auction markets like eBay and Priceline are good examples of the market creator business model. Another example is Amazon's Merchants platform (and similar programs at eBay) where merchants are allowed to set up stores on Amazon's Web site and sell goods at fixed prices to consumers. This is reminiscent of open air markets where the market creator operates a facility (a town square) where merchants and consumers meet. The so-called sharing economy, and Web sites like Uber and Airbnb, is based on the idea of a market creator building a digital platform where supply meets demand, e.g. spare auto capacity finds individuals who want transportation. Uber and Airbnb are clearly not sharing anything (sharing does not involve a transfer of cash), but the moniker is popular nevertheless. Crowdsourcing funding markets like Kickstarter.com and Mosaic Inc. bring together private equity investors and entrepreneurs in a funding marketplace (Cardwell, 2013). Both are examples of B2B financial market places.

**Service Provider**
While e-tailers sell products online, service providers offer services online. There's been an explosion in online services. Web 2.0 applications, photo sharing, and online sites for data backup and storage all use a service provider business model. Software is no longer a physical product with a CD in a box, but increasingly software as a service (SaaS) that you subscribe to online rather than purchase from a retailer, or an app that you download. Google has led the way in developing online software service applications such as Google Apps, Google Sites, Gmail, and online data storage services. Salesforce.com is a major provider of cloud-based software for customer management.

**Community Provider (Social Networks)**
Community providers are sites that create a digital online environment where people with similar interests can transact (buy and sell goods); share interests, photos, videos; communicate with like-minded people; receive interest-related information; and even play out fantasies by adopting online personalities called avatars. The social networking sites Facebook, Google+, Tumblr, LinkedIn, and Twitter; online communities such as iVillage; and hundreds of other smaller, niche sites such as Doostang and Sportsvite all offer users community-building tools and services. Social networking sites have been the fastest growing Web sites in recent years, often doubling their audience size in a year.

### E-Commerce Revenue Models
A firm's revenue model describes how the firm will earn revenue, generate profits, and produce a superior return on investment. Although there are many different e-commerce revenue models that have been developed, most companies rely on one, or some combination, of the following six revenue models: advertising, sales, subscription, free/freemium, transaction fee, and affiliate.

**Advertising Revenue Model**
In the advertising revenue model, a Web site generates revenue by attracting a large audience of visitors who can then be exposed to advertisements. The advertising model is the most widely used revenue model in e-commerce, and arguably, without advertising revenues, the Web would be a vastly different experience from what it is now. Content on the Web—everything from news to videos and opinions—is “free” to visitors because advertisers pay the production and distribution costs in return for the right to expose visitors to ads. Companies
will spend an estimated $51 billion on online advertising in 2014, (in the form of a paid message on a Web site, paid search listing, video, app, game, or other online medium, such as instant messaging). About $18 billion of this will involve spending for mobile ads, the fastest growing ad platform. In the last five years, advertisers have increased online spending and cut outlays on traditional channels such as radio and newspapers. In 2014, online advertising will grow at 18 percent and constitute about 28 percent of all advertising in the United States. Television advertising has also expanded along with online advertising revenues and remains the largest advertising platform with about $68 billion in ad revenues in 2014 (eMarketer, 2014b).

Web sites with the largest viewership or that attract a highly specialized, differentiated viewership and are able to retain user attention (“stickiness”) are able to charge higher advertising rates. Yahoo, for instance, derives nearly all its revenue from display ads (banner ads), and video ads, and to a lesser extent search engine text ads. Ninety-five percent of Google’s revenue derives from advertising, including selling keywords (AdWord), selling ad spaces (AdSense), and selling display ad spaces to advertisers (DoubleClick). Facebook will display one-third of the trillion display ads shown on all sites in 2014. Facebook’s users spend an average of over 6 hours a week on the site, far longer than any of the other portal sites.

Sales Revenue Model
In the sales revenue model, companies derive revenue by selling goods, information, or services to customers. Companies such as Amazon (which sells books, music, and other products), LLBean.com, and Gap.com, all have sales revenue models. Content providers make money by charging for downloads of entire files such as music tracks (iTunes Store) or books or for downloading music and/or video streams (Hulu.com TV shows). Apple has pioneered and strengthened the acceptance of micropayments. Micropayment systems provide content providers with a cost-effective method for processing high volumes of very small monetary transactions (anywhere from 25 cents to $5.00 per transaction). The largest micropayment system on the Web is Apple’s iTunes Store, which has more than 500 million credit customers who frequently purchase individual music tracks for 99 cents. There is a Learning Track with more detail on micropayment and other e-commerce payment systems, including Bitcoin.

Subscription Revenue Model
In the subscription revenue model, a Web site offering content or services charges a subscription fee for access to some or all of its offerings on an ongoing basis. Content providers often use this revenue model. For instance, the online version of Consumer Reports provides access to premium content, such as detailed ratings, reviews, and recommendations, only to subscribers, who have a choice of paying a $6.95 monthly subscription fee or a $30.00 annual fee. Netflix is one of the most successful subscriber sites with more that 44 million customers by the end of 2013. The New York Times has about 1.1 million online paid subscribers, and the Wall Street Journal about 900,000 in 2014. To be successful, the subscription model requires that the content be perceived as having high added value, differentiated, and not readily available elsewhere nor easily replicated. Companies successfully offering content or services online on a subscription basis include Match.com and eHarmony (dating services), Ancestry.com and Genealogy.com (genealogy research), Microsoft’s Xbox Live, and Pandora.com (music).
Free/Freemium Revenue Model
In the free/freemium revenue model, firms offer basic services or content for free, while charging a premium for advanced or special features. For example, Google offers free applications but charges for premium services. Pandora, the subscription radio service, offers a free service with limited play time and advertising, and a premium service with unlimited play (see the Interactive Session on Organizations). The Flickr photo-sharing service offers free basic services for sharing photos with friends and family, and also sells a $24.95 "premium" package that provides users unlimited storage, high-definition video storage and playback, and freedom from display advertising. Spotify music service also uses a freemium business model. The idea is to attract very large audiences with free services, and then to convert some of this audience to pay a subscription for premium services. One problem with this model is converting people from being “free loaders” into paying customers. "Free" can be a powerful model for losing money. None of the freemium music streaming sites have earned a profit to date. In fact they are finding the free service with ad revenue is more profitable than the paid subscriber part of their business.

Transaction Fee Revenue Model
In the transaction fee revenue model, a company receives a fee for enabling or executing a transaction. For example, eBay provides an online auction marketplace and receives a small transaction fee from a seller if the seller is successful in selling an item. E*Trade, an online stockbroker, receives transaction fees each time it executes a stock transaction on behalf of a customer. The transaction revenue model enjoys wide acceptance in part because the true cost of using the platform is not immediately apparent to the user.

Affiliate Revenue Model
In the affiliate revenue model, Web sites (called “affiliate Web sites”) send visitors to other Web sites in return for a referral fee or percentage of the revenue from any resulting sales. Referral fees are also referred to as “lead generation fees.” For example, MyPoints makes money by connecting companies to potential customers by offering special deals to its members. When members take advantage of an offer and make a purchase, they earn "points" they can redeem for free products and services, and MyPoints receives a referral fee. Community feedback sites such as Epinions and Yelp receive much of their revenue from steering potential customers to Web sites where they make a purchase. Amazon uses affiliates who steer business to the Amazon Web site by placing the Amazon logo on their blogs. Personal blogs often contain display ads as a part of affiliate programs. Some bloggers are paid directly by manufacturers, or receive free products, for speaking highly of products and providing links to sales channels. Commercial bloggers are in essence affiliates paid to send customers to retail sites.

10.3 How has e-commerce transformed marketing?
While e-commerce and the Internet have changed entire industries and enabled new business models, no industry has been more affected than marketing and marketing communications.
Pandora is the Internet's most successful subscription radio service. In May 2014, Pandora had 77 million registered users. Pandora accounts for over 9 percent of total U.S. radio listening hours. The music is delivered to users from a cloud server, and is not stored on user devices.

It's easy to see why Pandora is so popular. Users are able to hear only the music they like. Each user selects a genre of music based on a favorite musician or vocalist, and a computer algorithm puts together a "personal radio station" that plays the music of the selected artist plus closely related music by different artists. The algorithm uses more than 450 factors to classify songs, such as the tempo and number of vocalists. These classifications, in conjunction with other signals from users, help Pandora's algorithms select the next song to play. Users do not control what they hear.

People love Pandora, but the question is whether this popularity can be translated into profits. How can Pandora compete with other online music subscription services and online stations that have been making music available for free, sometimes without advertising? “Free” illegally downloaded music has also been a significant factor, as has been iTunes, charging 99 cents per song with no ad support. At the time of Pandora's founding (2005), iTunes was already a roaring success.

Pandora's first business model was to give away 10 hours of free music and then ask subscribers to pay $36 per month for a year once they used up their 10 free hours. Result: 100,000 people listened to their 10 hours for free and then refused to pay for the annual service. Facing financial collapse, in November 2005 Pandora introduced an ad-supported option. In 2006, Pandora added a "Buy" button to each song being played and struck deals with Amazon, iTunes, and other online retail sites. Pandora now gets an affiliate fee for directing listeners to sites where users can buy the music. In 2008, Pandora added an iPhone app to allow users to sign up from their smartphones and listen all day if they wanted. Today, 70 percent of Pandora's advertising revenue comes from mobile.

In late 2009 the company launched Pandora One, a premium service that offered no advertising, higher quality streaming music, a desktop app, and fewer usage limits. The service costs $4.99 per month. A very small percentage of Pandora listeners have opted to pay for music subscriptions, with the vast majority opting for the free service with ads. In fiscal 2013 Pandora's total revenue was $427.1 million, of which $375.2 million (88 percent) came from advertising.

Pandora has been touted as a leading example of the "freemium" revenue business model, in which a business gives away some services for free and relies on a small percentage of customers to pay for premium versions of the same service. If a market is very large, getting just 1 percent of that market to pay could be very lucrative—under certain circumstances. Although freemium is an efficient way of amassing a large group of potential customers, companies, including Pandora, have found that it challenging to convert people enjoying the free service into customers willing to pay. A freemium model works best when a business incurs very low marginal cost, approaching zero, for each free user of its services, when a business can be supported by the percentage of customers willing to pay, and when there are other revenues like advertising fees that can make up for shortfalls in subscriber revenues.

In Pandora's case, it appears that revenues will continue to come overwhelmingly from advertising, and management is not worried. For the past few years, management has considered ads as having much more revenue-generating potential than paid subscriptions and is not pushing the ad-free service. By continually refining its algorithms, Pandora is able to increase user listening hours substantially. The more time people spend with Pandora, the more opportunities there are for Pandora to deliver ads and generate ad revenue. The average Pandora user listens to 19 hours of music per month.

Pandora is now intensively mining the data collected about its users for clues about the kinds of ads most likely to engage them. Pandora collects data about listener preferences from direct feedback such as likes and dislikes (indicated by thumbs up or down on the Pandora site) and "skip this song" requests, as well as data about which device people are using to listen to Pandora music, such as mobile phones or desktop computers. Pandora uses these inputs to select songs people will want to stick around for, and listen to. Pandora has honed its algorithms so they can analyze billions more sig-
nals from users generated over billions of listening minutes per month. Pandora is also trying to figure out when people are listening in groups such as car pools and dinner parties, which might justify Pandora charging higher prices for songs heard by groups rather than single individuals.

The company is looking for correlations between users’ listening habits and the kinds of ads that would appeal to these users. People’s music, movie, or book choices may provide insight into their political belief, religious faith, or other personal issues. Pandora has developed a political ad-targeting system that has been used in presidential, congressional, and gubernatorial campaigns that can use users’ song preferences to predict their political party of choice.

As impressive as these numbers are, Pandora (along with other streaming subscription services) is still struggling to show a profit. There are infrastructure costs and royalties to pay for content from the music labels. Pandora’s royalty rates are less flexible than those of its competitor Spotify, which signed individual song royalty agreements with each record label. Pandora could be paying even higher rates when its current royalty contracts expire in 2015. About 61 percent of Pandora’s revenue is currently allocated to paying royalties. Advertising can only be leveraged so far, because users who opt for free ad-supported services generally do not tolerate heavy ad loads. Apple launched its iTunes radio service for the Fall of 2013 that will compete directly with Pandora. iTunes radio has both free ad-supported options, and a subscription service for $25 per year, undercutting Pandora’s annual subscription fee of $60. Can Pandora’s business model succeed?

The Internet provides marketers with new ways of identifying and communicating with millions of potential customers at costs far lower than traditional media, including search engine marketing, data mining, recommender systems, and targeted e-mail. The Internet enables long tail marketing. Before the Internet, reaching a large audience was very expensive, and marketers had to focus on attracting the largest number of consumers with popular hit products, whether music, Hollywood movies, books, or cars. In contrast, the Internet allows marketers to inexpensively find potential customers for products where demand is very low. For instance, the Internet makes it possible to sell independent music profitably to very small audiences. There’s always some demand for almost any product. Put a string of such long tail sales together and you have a profitable business.

The Internet also provides new ways—often instantaneous and spontaneous—to gather information from customers, adjust product offerings, and increase customer value. Table 10.6 describes the leading marketing and advertising formats used in e-commerce.

---

**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. Analyze Pandora using the value chain and competitive forces models. What competitive forces does the company have to deal with? What is its customer value proposition?
2. Explain how Pandora’s “freemium” business model works. How does the company generate revenue?
3. Can Pandora succeed with its “freemium” model? Why or why not? What people, organization, and technology factors affect its success with this business model?
Many e-commerce marketing firms use behavioral targeting techniques to increase the effectiveness of banners, rich media, and video ads. Behavioral targeting refers to tracking the clickstreams (history of clicking behavior) of individuals on thousands of Web sites for the purpose of understanding their interests and intentions, and exposing them to advertisements that are uniquely suited to their behavior. Proponents believe this more precise understanding of the customer leads to more efficient marketing (the firm pays for ads only to those shoppers who are most interested in their products) and larger sales and revenues. Unfortunately, behavioral targeting of millions of Web users also leads to the invasion of personal privacy without user consent. When consumers lose trust in their Web experience, they tend not to purchase anything. There is a growing backlash against the aggressive uses of personal information as consumers seek out safer havens for purchasing and messaging. SnapChat offers disappearing messages, and even Facebook has retreated by making its default for new posts to be “for friends only.” (Wood, 2014).

Popular Web sites have hundreds of beacon programs on their home pages which collect data on visitors behavior, and report that behavior to their databases. There the information is often sold to data brokers, firms who collect billions of data elements on every U.S. consumer and household, frequently combining online with off-line purchase information. The data brokers in turn

---

**TABLE 10.6 ONLINE MARKETING AND ADVERTISING FORMATS (BILLIONS)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MARKETING FORMAT</th>
<th>2013 REVENUE</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Search engine</td>
<td>$22.8</td>
<td>Text ads targeted at precisely what the customer is looking for at the moment of shopping and purchasing. Sales oriented.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display ads</td>
<td>$22.3</td>
<td>Banner ads (pop-ups and leave-behinds) with interactive features; increasingly behaviorally targeted to individual Web activity. Brand development and sales. Includes blog display ads.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video</td>
<td>$6</td>
<td>Fastest-growing format, engaging and entertaining: behaviorally targeted, interactive. Branding and sales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classified</td>
<td>$2.9</td>
<td>Job, real estate, and services ads; interactive, rich media, and personalized to user searches. Sales and branding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead generation</td>
<td>$2</td>
<td>Marketing firms that gather sales and marketing leads online, and then sell them to online marketers for a variety of campaign types. Sales or branding orientation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sponsorships</td>
<td>$1.9</td>
<td>Online games, puzzles, contests, and coupon sites sponsored by firms to promote products. Sales orientation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-mail</td>
<td>$.25</td>
<td>Effective, targeted marketing tool with interactive and rich media potential. Sales oriented.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
sell this information to advertisers who want to place ads on Web pages. A recent Federal Trade Commission report on nine data brokers found that one data broker’s database had information on 1.4 billion consumer transactions and over 700 billion aggregated data elements. Another data broker had 3,000 data measures for nearly every consumer in the U.S. (FTC, 2014).

Behavioral targeting takes place at two levels: at individual Web sites or from within apps, and on various advertising networks that track users across thousands of Web sites. All Web sites collect data on visitor browser activity and store it in a database. They have tools to record the site that users visited prior to coming to the Web site, where these users go when they leave that site, the type of operating system they use, browser information, and even some location data. They also record the specific pages visited on the particular site, the time spent on each page of the site, the types of pages visited, and what the visitors purchased (see Figure 10.3). Firms analyze this information about customer interests and behavior to develop precise profiles of existing and potential customers. In addition, most major Web sites have hundreds of tracking programs on their home pages, which track your clickstream behavior across the Web by following you from site to site and re-target ads to you by showing you the same ads on different sites. The leading online advertising networks are Google’s DoubleClick, Yahoo’s RightMedia, and AOL’s Ad Network. Ad networks represent publishers who have space to sell, and advertisers who want to market online. The lubricant of this trade is information on millions of Web shoppers, which helps advertisers target their ads to precisely the groups and individuals they desire.

This information enables firms to understand how well their Web site is working, create unique personalized Web pages that display content or ads for products or services of special interest to each user, improve the customer’s

**Figure 10.3 Web Site Visitor Tracking**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Click 1</th>
<th>The shopper clicks on the home page. The store can tell that the shopper arrived from the Yahoo portal at 2:30 PM (which might help determine staffing for customer service centers) and how long she lingered on the home page (which might indicate trouble navigating the site). Tracking beacons load cookies on the shopper’s browser to follow her across the Web.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Click 2</td>
<td>The shopper clicks on blouses, clicks to select a woman’s white blouse, then clicks to view the same item in pink. The shopper clicks to select this item in a size 10 in pink and clicks to place it in her shopping cart. This information can help the store determine which sizes and colors are most popular. If the visitor moves to a different site, ads for pink blouses will appear from the same or different vendor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click 6</td>
<td>From the shopping cart page, the shopper clicks to close the browser to leave the Web site without purchasing the blouse. This action could indicate the shopper changed her mind or that she had a problem with the Web site’s checkout and payment process. Such behavior might signal that the Web site was not well designed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E-commerce Web sites and advertising platforms like Google’s DoubleClick have tools to track a shopper’s every step through an online store and then across the Web as shoppers move from site to site. Close examination of customer behavior at a Web site selling women’s clothing shows what the store might learn at each step and what actions it could take to increase sales.
experience, and create additional value through a better understanding of the shopper (see Figure 10.4). By using personalization technology to modify the Web pages presented to each customer, marketers achieve some of the benefits of using individual salespeople at dramatically lower costs. For instance, General Motors will show a Chevrolet banner ad to women emphasizing safety and utility, while men will receive different ads emphasizing power and ruggedness.

What if you are a large national advertising company with many different clients trying to reach millions of consumers? What if you were a large global manufacturer trying to reach potential consumers for your products? With millions of Web sites, working with each one would be impractical. Advertising networks solve this problem by creating a network of several thousand of the most popular Web sites visited by millions of people, tracking the behavior of these users across the entire network, building profiles of each user, and then selling these profiles to advertisers. Popular Web sites download dozens of Web tracking cookies, bugs, and beacons, which report user online behavior to remote servers without the users' knowledge. Looking for young, single consumers, with college degrees, living in the Northeast, in the 18–34 age range who are interested in purchasing a European car? Not a problem. Advertising networks can identify and deliver hundreds of thousands of people who fit this profile and expose them to ads for European cars as they move from one Web site to another. Estimates vary, but behaviorally targeted ads are generally 10 times more likely to produce a consumer response than a randomly chosen banner or video ad (see Figure 10.5). So-called advertising exchanges use this same technology to auction access to people with very specific profiles to
advertisers in a few milliseconds. In 2014, about 25 percent of online display ads are targeted, and the rest depend on the context of the pages shoppers visit, the estimated demographics of visitors, or so-called “blast and scatter” advertising, which is placed randomly on any available page with minimal targeting, such as time of day or season. Several surveys have reported that over 75 percent of American consumers do not approve of behaviorally targeted ads.

Two-thirds (68 percent) of Internet users disapprove of search engines and Web sites tracking their online behavior in order to aim targeted ads at them. Twenty-eight percent of those surveyed approve of behavioral targeting because they believe it produces more relevant ads and information (Pew Internet, 2012). A majority of Americans want a “Do Not Track” option in browsers that will stop Web sites from collecting information about their online behavior (Hoofnagle, et. al., 2012). According to a recent survey, Americans’ privacy concerns about online invasions of privacy are growing stronger, leading to people taking concrete actions to protect themselves (Pew Research Center, 2013). Over 50 percent are very concerned about the wealth of personal data online; 86 percent have taken steps to mask their online behavior; 25 percent of Web users use ad-blocking software. Next to hackers, Americans try to avoid advertisers pursuing them while online, and 64 percent block cookies to make tracking more difficult.

**SOCIAL E-COMMERCE AND SOCIAL NETWORK MARKETING**

Social e-commerce is commerce based on the idea of the digital social graph. The digital social graph is a mapping of all significant online social relationships. The social graph is synonymous with the idea of a “social network” used to describe offline relationships. You can map your own social graph (network) by drawing lines from yourself to the 10 closest people you know. If they know
one another, draw lines between these people. If you are ambitious, ask these 10 friends to list and draw in the names of the 10 people closest to them. What emerges from this exercise is a preliminary map of your social network. Now imagine if everyone on the Internet did the same, and posted the results to a very large database with a Web site. Ultimately, you would end up with Facebook or a site like it. The collection of all these personal social networks is called “the social graph.”

According to small world theory, you are only six links away from any other person on earth. If you entered your personal address book, which has, say, 100 names in it, on to a list and sent it to your friends, and they in turn entered 50 new names of their friends, and so on, five times, the social network created would encompass 31 billion people! The social graph is therefore a collection of millions of personal social graphs (and all the people in them). So, it's a small world indeed, and we are all more closely linked than we ever thought. Ultimately, you will find that you are directly connected to many friends and relatives, and indirectly connected to an even larger universe of indirect friends and relatives (your distant second and third cousins, and their friends). Theoretically, it takes six links for any one person to find another person anywhere on earth.

If you understand the inter-connectedness of people, you will see just how important this concept is to e-commerce: The products and services you buy will influence the decisions of your friends, and their decisions will in turn influence you. If you are a marketer trying to build and strengthen a brand, the implication is clear: Take advantage of the fact that people are enmeshed in social networks, share interests and values, and communicate and influence one another. As a marketer, your target audience is not a million isolated people watching a TV show, but the social network of people who watch the show, and the viewers' personal networks. Table 10.7 describes the features of social commerce that are driving its growth.

In 2014, one of the fastest growing media for branding and marketing is social media. In 2014, companies will spend $6.7 billion using social networks like Facebook to reach millions of consumers who spend hours a day on the Facebook site. Facebook accounts for 90 percent of all social marketing in the United States. Expenditures for social media marketing are much smaller than television, magazines, and even newspapers, but this will change in the future. Social networks in the offline world are collections of people who voluntarily communicate with one another over an extended period of time. Online social networks, such as Facebook, LinkedIn, Twitter, Tumblr, and Google+, along with other sites with social components, are Web sites that enable users to communicate with one another, form group and individual relationships, and share interests, values, and ideas. Individuals establish online profiles with text and photos, creating an online profile of how they want others to see them, and then invite their friends to link to their profile. The network grows by word of mouth and through e-mail links. One of the most ubiquitous graphical elements on Web sites is Facebook's Like button, which allows users to tell their friends they like a product, service, or content. Facebook processes around 50 million Likes a day, or 1.5 billion a year.

While Facebook, with 137 million U.S. monthly visitors, receives most of the public attention given to social networking, the other top four social sites are also growing, but at slower rates than in the past. Facebook user growth has slowed in the United States. LinkedIn growth slowed in 2013 to 40 percent, and it has 48 million visitors a month in 2014. Twitter grew only 11 percent in 2013 to reach 37 million; the social blogging site Tumblr reached 23 million people a month; and
Pinterest hit the top 50 Web sites with 26 million. MySpace, in contrast, has been shrinking for years, and attracted only 5.4 million visitors monthly. According to ComScore, about 30 percent of the total time spent online in the United States was spent on social network sites, and it is the most common online activity. (ComScore, 2014). The fastest growing smartphone applications are social network apps: nearly half of smartphone users visit social sites daily. More than 58 percent of all visits to Facebook in 2014 come from smartphones.

At social shopping sites like Pinterest, Kaboodle, ThisNext, and Stylehive, you can swap shopping ideas with friends. Facebook offers the Like button and Google the +1 button to let your friends know you admire something, and in some cases, purchased something online. Online communities are also ideal venues to employ viral marketing techniques. Online viral marketing is like traditional word-of-mouth marketing except that the word can spread across an online community at the speed of light, and go much further geographically than a small network of friends.

**The Wisdom of Crowds**

Creating sites where thousands, even millions, of people can interact offers business firms new ways to market and advertise, and to discover who likes (or hates) their products. In a phenomenon called “the wisdom of crowds,” some argue that large numbers of people can make better decisions about a wide range of topics or products than a single person or even a small committee of experts.
Obviously this is not always the case, but it can happen in interesting ways. In marketing, the wisdom of crowds concept suggests that firms should consult with thousands of their customers first as a way of establishing a relationship with them, and second, to better understand how their products and services are used and appreciated (or rejected). Actively soliciting the comments of your customers builds trust and sends the message to your customers that you care what they are thinking, and that you need their advice.

Beyond merely soliciting advice, firms can be actively helped in solving some business problems using what is called *crowdsourcing*. For instance, in 2006, Netflix announced a contest in which it offered to pay $1 million to the person or team who comes up with a method for improving by 10 percent Netflix’s prediction of what movies customers would like as measured against their actual choices. By 2009, Netflix received 44,014 entries from 5,169 teams in 186 countries. The winning team improved a key part of Netflix’s business: a recommender system that recommends to its customers what new movies to order based on their personal past movie choices and the choices of millions of other customers who are like them. In 2012, BMW launched a crowdsourcing project to enlist the aid of customers in designing an urban vehicle for 2025. Kickstarter.com is arguably one of the most famous e-commerce crowdfunding sites where visitors invest in start-up companies. Other examples include Caterpillar working with customers to design better machinery, and Pepsico using Super Bowl 2013 viewers to build an online video (Boulton, 2013).

Firms can also use the wisdom of crowds in the form of prediction markets. **Prediction Markets** are established as peer-to-peer betting markets where participants make bets on specific outcomes of, say, quarterly sales of a new product, designs for new products, or political elections. The world’s largest commercial prediction market is Betfair, where you bet for or against specific outcomes on football games, horse races, and whether or not the Dow Jones will go up or down in a single day. Iowa Electronic Markets (IEM) is an academic market focused on elections. You can place bets on the outcome of local and national elections. In the United States, the largest prediction market is Intrade.com, where users can buy or sell shares in predictions.

Marketing via social media is still in its early stages, and companies are experimenting in hopes of finding a winning formula. Social interactions and customer sentiment are not always easy to manage, presenting new challenges for companies eager to protect their brands. The chapter-ending case study provides specific examples of companies’ social marketing efforts using Facebook and Twitter.

### 10.4 How Has E-commerce Affected Business-to-business Transactions?

The trade between business firms (business-to-business commerce or B2B) represents a huge marketplace. The total amount of B2B trade in the United States in 2014 is estimated to be about $13.8 trillion, with B2B e-commerce (online B2B) contributing about $5.7 trillion of that amount (U.S. Census Bureau, 2013; authors’ estimates). By 2017, B2B e-commerce is expected to grow to about $7.8 trillion in the United States. The process of conducting trade among business firms is complex and requires significant human intervention, and therefore, it consumes significant resources. Some firms estimate that each corporate purchase order for support products costs them,
on average, at least $100 in administrative overhead. Administrative overhead includes processing paper, approving purchase decisions, spending time using the telephone and fax machines to search for products and arrange for purchases, arranging for shipping, and receiving the goods. Across the economy, this adds up to trillions of dollars annually being spent for procurement processes that could potentially be automated. If even just a portion of inter-firm trade were automated, and parts of the entire procurement process assisted by the Internet, literally trillions of dollars might be released for more productive uses, consumer prices potentially would fall, productivity would increase, and the economic wealth of the nation would expand. This is the promise of B2B e-commerce. The challenge of B2B e-commerce is changing existing patterns and systems of procurement, and designing and implementing new Internet-based B2B solutions.

**ELECTRONIC DATA INTERCHANGE (EDI)**

Business-to-business e-commerce refers to the commercial transactions that occur among business firms. Increasingly, these transactions are flowing through a variety of different Internet-enabled mechanisms. About 80 percent of online B2B e-commerce is still based on proprietary systems for *electronic data interchange (EDI).* Electronic data interchange enables the computer-to-computer exchange between two organizations of standard transactions such as invoices, bills of lading, shipment schedules, or purchase orders. Transactions are automatically transmitted from one information system to another through a network, eliminating the printing and handling of paper at one end and the inputting of data at the other. Each major industry in the United States and much of the rest of the world has EDI standards that define the structure and information fields of electronic documents for that industry.

EDI originally automated the exchange of documents such as purchase orders, invoices, and shipping notices. Although many companies still use EDI for document automation, firms engaged in just-in-time inventory replenishment and continuous production use EDI as a system for continuous replenishment. Suppliers have online access to selected parts of the purchasing firm’s production and delivery schedules and automatically ship materials and goods to meet prespecified targets without intervention by firm purchasing agents (see Figure 10.6).

Although many organizations still use private networks for EDI, they are increasingly Web-enabled because Internet technology provides a much more
flexible and low-cost platform for linking to other firms. Businesses are able to extend digital technology to a wider range of activities and broaden their circle of trading partners.

Take procurement, for example. Procurement involves not only purchasing goods and materials but also sourcing, negotiating with suppliers, paying for goods, and making delivery arrangements. Businesses can now use the Internet to locate the lowest-cost supplier, search online catalogs of supplier products, negotiate with suppliers, place orders, make payments, and arrange transportation. They are not limited to partners linked by traditional EDI networks.

**NEW WAYS OF B2B BUYING AND SELLING**

The Internet and Web technology enable businesses to create new electronic storefronts for selling to other businesses with multimedia graphic displays and interactive features similar to those for B2C commerce. Alternatively, businesses can use Internet technology to create extranets or electronic marketplaces for linking to other businesses for purchase and sale transactions.

Private industrial networks typically consist of a large firm using a secure Web site to link to its suppliers and other key business partners (see Figure 10.7). The network is owned by the buyer, and it permits the firm and designated suppliers, distributors, and other business partners to share product design and development, marketing, production scheduling, inventory management, and unstructured communication, including graphics and e-mail. Another term for a private industrial network is a private exchange.

An example is VW Group Supply, which links the Volkswagen Group and its suppliers. VW Group Supply handles 90 percent of all global purchasing for Volkswagen, including all automotive and parts components.

**FIGURE 10.7 A PRIVATE INDUSTRIAL NETWORK**

A private industrial network, also known as a private exchange, links a firm to its suppliers, distributors, and other key business partners for efficient supply chain management and other collaborative commerce activities.
Net marketplaces, which are sometimes called e-hubs, provide a single, digital marketplace based on Internet technology for many different buyers and sellers (see Figure 10.8). They are industry-owned or operate as independent intermediaries between buyers and sellers. Net marketplaces generate revenue from purchase and sale transactions and other services provided to clients. Participants in Net marketplaces can establish prices through online negotiations, auctions, or requests for quotations, or they can use fixed prices.

There are many different types of Net marketplaces and ways of classifying them. Some Net marketplaces sell direct goods and some sell indirect goods. Direct goods are goods used in a production process, such as sheet steel for auto body production. Indirect goods are all other goods not directly involved in the production process, such as office supplies or products for maintenance and repair. Some Net marketplaces support contractual purchasing based on long-term relationships with designated suppliers, and others support short-term spot purchasing, where goods are purchased based on immediate needs, often from many different suppliers.

Some Net marketplaces serve vertical markets for specific industries, such as automobiles, telecommunications, or machine tools, whereas others serve horizontal markets for goods and services that can be found in many different industries, such as office equipment or transportation.

Exostar is an example of an industry-owned Net marketplace, focusing on long-term contract purchasing relationships and on providing common networks and computing platforms for reducing supply chain inefficiencies. This aerospace and defense industry-sponsored Net marketplace was founded jointly by BAE Systems, Boeing, Lockheed Martin, Raytheon, and Rolls-Royce PLC to connect these companies to their suppliers and facilitate collaboration. More than 70,000 trading partners in the commercial, military, and government sectors use Exostar's sourcing, e-procurement, and collaboration tools for both direct and indirect goods.

Exchanges are independently owned third-party Net marketplaces that connect thousands of suppliers and buyers for spot purchasing. Many exchanges

**FIGURE 10.8 A NET MARKETPLACE**

Net marketplaces are online marketplaces where multiple buyers can purchase from multiple sellers.
provide vertical markets for a single industry, such as food, electronics, or industrial equipment, and they primarily deal with direct inputs. For example, Go2Paper enables a spot market for paper, board, and craft among buyers and sellers in the paper industries from over 75 countries.

Exchanges proliferated during the early years of e-commerce but many have failed. Suppliers were reluctant to participate because the exchanges encouraged competitive bidding that drove prices down and did not offer any long-term relationships with buyers or services to make lowering prices worthwhile. Many essential direct purchases are not conducted on a spot basis because they require contracts and consideration of issues such as delivery timing, customization, and quality of products.

10.5 What is the role of m-commerce in business and what are the most important m-commerce applications?

Walk down the street in any major metropolitan area and count how many people are pecking away at their iPhones, Samsungs or BlackBerrys. Ride the trains, fly the planes, and you'll see your fellow travelers reading an online newspaper, watching a video on their phone, or reading a novel on their Kindle. In five years, the majority of Internet users in the United States will rely on mobile devices as their primary device for accessing the Internet. As the mobile audience expands in leaps and bounds, mobile advertising and m-commerce have taken off.

In 2014, m-commerce constitute about 19 percent of all e-commerce, with about $57 billion in annual revenues generated by retail goods and services, apps, advertising, music, videos, ring tones, applications, movies, television, and location-based services like local restaurant locators and traffic updates. However, m-commerce is the fastest growing form of e-commerce, with some areas expanding at a rate of 50 percent or more per year, and is estimated to grow to $132 billion in 2018 (see Figure 10.9) (eMarketer, 2014d). It is becoming especially popular in the online travel industry, as discussed in the Interactive Session on Technology.

The main areas of growth in mobile e-commerce are retail sales at the top Mobile 400 companies, including Amazon ($4 billion) and Apple (about $1.1 billion); and sales of digital content music, TV shows and movies (about $4 billion) (Internet Retailer, 2013). These estimates do not include mobile advertising or location-based services.

M-commerce applications have taken off for services that are time-critical, that appeal to people on the move, or that accomplish a task more efficiently than other methods. The Interactive Session on Technology describes how m-commerce is benefiting the online travel industry and the following sections provide other examples.

**LOCATION-BASED SERVICES AND APPLICATIONS**

Location-based services include geosocial services, geoadvertising, and geoinformation services. Seventy-four percent of smartphone owners use location-based services. What ties these activities together and is the foundation for mobile commerce is the global positioning system (GPS) enabled map services available on smartphones. A geosocial service can tell you where
Mobile e-commerce is the fastest growing type of B2C e-commerce and represents about 19 percent of all e-commerce in 2014.

Your friends are meeting. Geoadvertising services can tell you where to find the nearest Italian restaurant, and geoinformation services can tell you the price of a house you are looking at, or about special exhibits at a museum you are passing.

Wikitude.me is an example of a geoinformation service. Wikitude.me provides a special kind of browser for smartphones equipped with a built-in GPS and compass that can identify your precise location and where the phone is pointed. Using information from over 800,000 points of interest available on Wikipedia, plus thousands of other local sites, the browser overlays information about points of interest you are viewing, and displays that information on your smartphone screen, superimposed on a map or photograph that you just snapped. For example, users can point their smartphone cameras towards mountains from a tour bus and see the names and heights of the mountains displayed on the screen. Wikitude.me also allows users to geo-tag the world around them, and then submit the tags to Wikitude in order to share content with other users.

Foursquare, Loopt, and new offerings by Facebook and Google are examples of geosocial services. Geosocial services help you find friends, or be found by your friends, by “checking in” to the service, announcing your presence in a restaurant or other place. Your friends are instantly notified. About 20 percent of smartphone owners use geosocial services. The popularity of specialized sites like Foursquare has waned as Facebook and Google+ have moved into geosocial services and turned them into extensions of their larger social networks.

Loopt claimed more than 5 million users in 2014. The service doesn’t sell information to advertisers, but does post ads based on user location. Loopt’s target is to deal with advertisers at the walking level (within 200 to 250 meters). Foursquare provides a similar location-based social networking service to 22 million registered users, who may connect with friends and update their location. Points are awarded for checking in at designated venues. Users choose to have their check-ins posted on their accounts on Twitter, Facebook, or both. Users also earn badges by checking in at locations with certain tags, for check-in frequency, or for the time of check-in. More than 500,000 local merchants worldwide use the merchant platform for marketing.
Interactive Session: Technology

Will Mobile Technology Put Orbitz in the Lead?

When it comes to mobile apps and gauging their impact on consumers and business, the online travel industry and its airline and hotel reservation systems are probably the best place to look. And there’s no better company in this industry in developing mobile apps than Orbitz Worldwide Inc. Orbitz connects consumers to plane tickets from 400 airlines, hotel rooms from 80,000 hotels worldwide, as well as rental cars, cruises, and vacation packages.

Orbitz was launched in 2001 by five major airlines—Delta, United, Continental, Northwest, and American, to compete with Internet travel companies such as Priceline, Travelocity, and Expedia, which were upending the travel industry. These companies have remained formidable competitors.

From its very beginning, Orbitz distinguished itself as a leader in mobile technology. In 2006, it became the first Internet travel company to offer a mobile Web site where users could check flight status for 27 airlines, search for hotels in the United States and Cancun, Mexico, and access a personal page with itineraries for Orbitz-booked trips.

During the years that followed, Orbitz made many enhancements to its mobile services. It enabled mobile users to view average wait times for airport security lines, locate available Wi-Fi services at airports, compute check-in delays and taxi line wait times, and view weather and traffic conditions. In 2010, Orbitz redesigned its mobile Web site so that users of any Web-enabled device could access capabilities similar to any full-screen e-commerce site, including the ability to purchase flight tickets, book car rentals, and obtain hotel reservations. Like the standard Orbitz Web site, the redesigned mobile site offers a Price Assurance service, which guarantees customers an automatic refund if another Orbitz customer books the same service for less. Orbitz also developed apps that ran on iPhones, iPads and later Android devices that could perform the same functions.

Orbitz was first-to-market with an m-commerce site designed specifically for business users. The opportunity was huge, since most business travelers carry smartphones or tablets. Corporate travelers typically must adhere to company rules specifying preferred vendors, cost limits, mandatory services, and expense documentation. Since each company has its own business “rules” for travel, the Orbitz m-commerce platform needed to be customized for each firm. Orbitz constructed a mobile Web site that could be accessed from any Web-enabled device.

The Orbitz for Business mobile Web site delivers the same set of tools enjoyed by the consumer market while incorporating features that enable business travelers to adhere to company guidelines—the ability to enter and modify the purpose of the trip, search results that give precedence to preferred vendors, and access to company-specific reference data.

In 2011, the m-commerce site was again upgraded to respond to swiping gestures, expedite touch screen transactions, and accommodate the small screen size of any Web-enabled mobile device. Orbitz’s new proprietary global online travel agency platform creates mobile HTML5 Web pages on the fly from standard e-commerce Web pages. Mobile users can book vacation packages, view the savings from simultaneously booking a flight and hotel room, and create an online profile linked to their credit card to expedite the checkout process. GPS and improved search capabilities enable consumers to locate nearby hotels and conduct price, distance, and rating comparisons; to compare flights and car rentals based on various criteria, including traveler type; and to access customer reviews. Orbitz also instituted mobile exclusive same-day deals, called Mobile Steals, available both on the m-commerce site and through the Hotels by Orbitz app available for iPhone and Android devices. Proprietors are able to fill rooms that might otherwise remain vacant, and consumers save up to 50 percent of the standard rate. While only 12–14 percent of traditional e-commerce Web site shoppers want to reserve a room for the day on which they are searching, smartphone and other mobile users book for the same night between 50 to 60 percent of the time because they are more likely to be traveling and need a room at the last minute.

Orbitz touts the ability to book a hotel room in just three taps. The new mobile Web site has produced a 110 percent increase in visits, a 145 percent increase in the conversion rate, and four times the number of transactions compared to the original Orbitz m-commerce site. Orbitz has been focusing on lodging because hotel bookings are more profitable than airline reservations. Priceline.com, the largest and most profitable online travel agency, generates approximately 90 percent of its sales from hotels. Orbitz receives only 27 percent of revenue from hotels.
Orbitz further enhanced its iOS and Android apps to cut down the number of steps required to search for and make reservations so that the entire process can take place on the mobile device without redirecting the user to hotel, airline, or car rental Web sites to complete the transaction. Orbitz now has apps for the iPhone, iPad, iPod Touch, Kindle Fire, and Android devices.

Does all this investment in mobile technology make a difference? Chris Brown, Orbitz vice president in charge of product strategy, believes that the ability to be a major player in the rapidly escalating m-commerce market will pay off. Increased transaction speed provided by Orbitz mobile apps will attract new customers, especially those trying to book same-day reservations, which account for about 50 percent of Orbitz’s mobile car rental purchases. Consumers who book with mobile devices tend to book closer to when they travel and are more certain to buy than just shop. By the end of 2013, mobile apps accounted for about 30 percent of Orbitz hotel transactions.

But the other online travel players also believe consumers will increasingly move to mobile to make their travel plans, and they also have been making large investments in mobile Web sites, search tools, and apps. Priceline and TripAdvisor have rated highest in providing an engaging, enjoyable experience on their sites, and both continue to enjoy much stronger growth in unique visitors and visits than Expedia and Orbitz. Travelers are increasingly planning trips on sites such as TripAdvisor, which aggregate offerings from a number of different online sources in one place. TripAdvisor offers more than 100 million traveler reviews and obtains most of its revenue from ads and referrals to other travel sites. TripAdvisor recently redesigned its Web site to show customers all the rates offered by online agents like Expedia, Priceline, and Travelocity in a single list on its site. By using this “metasearch” capability, customers are able to find the lowest prices on a single screen without having to click on several links.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. How important is mobile technology in Orbitz’s business strategy? Why?

2. What management, organization, and technology issues did Orbitz need to address in its mobile strategy?

3. Why are mobile phone users much more likely to book same-day hotel room or airline reservations?

4. What role does Orbitz for Business play in the company’s business strategy?

5. How successful is Orbitz’s mobile strategy? Explain your answer.

Connecting people to local merchants in the form of geoadvertising is the economic foundation for mobile commerce. Mobile advertising will reach $17.7 billion in 2014, up 83 percent from 2013. Geoadvertising sends ads to users based on their GPS locations. Smartphones report their locations back to Google and Apple. Merchants buy access to these consumers when they come within range of a merchant. For instance, Kiehl Stores, a cosmetics retailer, sent special offers and announcements to customers who came within 100 yards of their store.

**OTHER MOBILE COMMERCE SERVICES**

Banks and credit card companies are rolling out services that let customers manage their accounts from their mobile devices. JPMorgan Chase and Bank of America customers can use their cell phones to check account balances,
transfer funds, and pay bills. Apple Pay for the iPhone 6 and Apple Watch, along with other Android and Windows smartphone models, allows users to charge items to their credit card accounts with a swipe of their phone. (See our Learning Track on mobile payment systems.)

Although the mobile advertising market is currently small, it is rapidly growing (up 75 percent from last year and expected to grow to over $47 billion by 2017), as more and more companies seek ways to exploit new databases of location-specific information. The largest providers of mobile display advertising are Apple's iAd platform and Google's AdMob platform (both with a 21 percent market share) followed by Millenial Media. Facebook is a distant fourth but moving rapidly to catch up. Alcatel-Lucent offers a new service to be managed by Placecast that will identify cell phone users within a specified distance of an advertiser's nearest outlet and notify them about the outlet's address and phone number, perhaps including a link to a coupon or other promotion. Placecast's clients include Hyatt, FedEx, and Avis Rent-A-Car.

Yahoo displays ads on its mobile home page for companies such as Pepsi, Procter & Gamble, Hilton, Nissan, and Intel. Google is displaying ads linked to cell phone searches by users of the mobile version of its search engine, while Microsoft offers banner and text advertising on its MSN Mobile portal in the United States. Ads are embedded in games, videos, and other mobile applications.

Shopkick is a mobile application that enables retailers such as Best Buy, Sports Authority, and Macy's to offer coupons to people when they walk into their stores. The Shopkick app automatically recognizes when the user has entered a partner retail store and offers a new virtual currency called "kickbucks," which can be redeemed for Facebook credits, iTunes Gift Cards, travel vouchers, DVDs, or immediate cash-back rewards at any of the partner stores.

Fifty-five percent of online retailers now have m-commerce Web sites—simplified versions of their Web sites that make it possible for shoppers to use cell phones to place orders. Clothing retailers Lilly Pulitzer and Armani Exchange, Home Depot, Amazon, Walmart, and 1–800-Flowers are among those companies with apps for m-commerce sales.

### 10.6 What issues must be addressed when building an e-commerce presence?

Building a successful e-commerce presence requires a keen understanding of business, technology, and social issues, as well as a systematic approach. Today, an e-commerce presence is not just a corporate Web site, but may also include a social network site on Facebook, a Twitter feed, and smartphone apps where customers can access your services. Developing and coordinating all these different customer venues can be difficult. A complete treatment of the topic is beyond the scope of this text, and students should consult books devoted to just this topic (Laudon and Traver, 2015). The two most important management challenges in building a successful e-commerce presence are (1) developing a clear understanding of your business objectives and (2) knowing how to choose the right technology to achieve those objectives.

### Develop an e-commerce presence map

E-commerce has moved from being a PC-centric activity on the Web to a mobile and tablet-based activity. While 80 percent or more of e-commerce today is
conducted using PCs, increasingly smartphones and tablets will be used for purchasing. Currently, smartphones and tablets are used by a majority of Internet users in the United States to shop for goods and services, look up prices, enjoy entertainment, and access social sites, less so to make purchases. Your potential customers use these various devices at different times during the day, and involve themselves in different conversations depending what they are doing—touching base with friends, tweeting, or reading a blog. Each of these are “touch points” where you can meet the customer, and you have to think about how you develop a presence in these different virtual places. Figure 10.10 provides a roadmap to the platforms and related activities you will need to think about when developing your e-commerce presence.

Figure 10.10 illustrates four different kinds of e-commerce presence: Web sites, e-mail, social media, and offline media. For each of these types there are different platforms that you will need to address. For instance, in the case of Web site presence, there are three different platforms: traditional desktop, tablets, and smartphones, each with different capabilities. And for each type of e-commerce presence there are related activities you will need to consider. For instance, in the case of Web sites, you will want to engage in search engine marketing, display ads, affiliate programs, and sponsorships. Offline media, the fourth type of e-commerce presence, is included here because many firms use multiplatform or integrated marketing where print ads refer customers to Web sites.

DEVELOP A TIMELINE: MILESTONES

Where would you like to be a year from now? It’s a good idea for you to have a rough idea of the time frame for developing your e-commerce presence when
TABLE 10.8 E-COMMERCE PRESENCE TIMELINE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHASE</th>
<th>ACTIVITY</th>
<th>MILESTONE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 1: Planning</td>
<td>Envision Web presence; determine personnel</td>
<td>Web mission statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase 2: Web site development</td>
<td>Acquire content; develop a site design; arrange for hosting the site</td>
<td>Web site plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase 3: Web Implementation</td>
<td>Develop keywords and metatags; focus on search engine optimization; identify potential sponsors</td>
<td>A functional Web site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase 4: Social media plan</td>
<td>Identify appropriate social platforms and content for your products and services</td>
<td>A social media plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase 5: Social media implementation</td>
<td>Develop Facebook, Twitter, and Pinterest presence</td>
<td>Functioning social media presence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase 6: Mobile plan</td>
<td>Develop a mobile plan; consider options for porting your Web site to smartphones</td>
<td>A mobile media plan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

you begin. You should break your project down into a small number of phases that could be completed within a specified time. Table 10.8 illustrates a one-year timeline for the development of an e-commerce presence for a start-up company devoted to teenage fashions. You can also find more detail about developing an e-commerce Web site in the Learning Tracks for this chapter.

Review Summary

1. **What are the unique features of e-commerce, digital markets, and digital goods?**
   
   E-commerce involves digitally enabled commercial transactions between and among organizations and individuals. Unique features of e-commerce technology include ubiquity, global reach, universal technology standards, richness, interactivity, information density, capabilities for personalization and customization, and social technology. E-commerce is becoming increasingly social, mobile, and local.
   
   Digital markets are said to be more “transparent” than traditional markets, with reduced information asymmetry, search costs, transaction costs, and menu costs, along with the ability to change prices dynamically based on market conditions. Digital goods, such as music, video, software, and books, can be delivered over a digital network. Once a digital product has been produced, the cost of delivering that product digitally is extremely low.

2. **What are the principal e-commerce business and revenue models?**
   
   E-commerce business models are e-tailers, transaction brokers, market creators, content providers, community providers, service providers, and portals. The principal e-commerce revenue models are advertising, sales, subscription, free/freemium, transaction fee, and affiliate.

3. **How has e-commerce transformed marketing?**
   
   The Internet provides marketers with new ways of identifying and communicating with millions of potential customers at costs far lower than traditional media. Crowdsourcing utilizing the “wisdom of crowds” helps companies learn from customers in order to improve product offerings and increase customer value. Behavioral targeting techniques increase the effectiveness of banner, rich media, and video ads. Social commerce uses social networks and social network sites to improve targeting of products and services.
4. How has e-commerce affected business-to-business transactions?

B2B e-commerce generates efficiencies by enabling companies to locate suppliers, solicit bids, place orders, and track shipments in transit electronically. Net marketplaces provide a single, digital marketplace for many buyers and sellers. Private industrial networks link a firm with its suppliers and other strategic business partners to develop highly efficient and responsive supply chains.

5. What is the role of m-commerce in business, and what are the most important m-commerce applications?

M-commerce is especially well suited for location-based applications, such as finding local hotels and restaurants, monitoring local traffic and weather, and providing personalized location-based marketing. Mobile phones and handhelds are being used for mobile bill payment, banking, securities trading, transportation schedule updates, and downloads of digital content, such as music, games, and video clips. M-commerce requires wireless portals and special digital payment systems that can handle micropayments. The GPS capabilities of smartphones make possible geoadvertising, geosocial, and geoinformation services.

6. What issues must be addressed when building an e-commerce presence?

Building a successful e-commerce presence requires a clear understanding of the business objectives to be achieved and selection of the right platforms, activities, and timeline to achieve those objectives. An e-commerce presence includes not only a corporate Web site but also a presence on Facebook, Twitter, and other social networking sites and smartphone apps.

Key Terms

Advertising revenue model, 397
Affiliate revenue model, 399
Behavioral targeting, 402
Business-to-business (B2B), 394
Business-to-consumer (B2C), 394
Community providers, 397
Consumer-to-consumer (C2C), 394
Cost transparency, 389
Crowdsourcing, 406
Customization, 390
Digital goods, 392
Direct goods, 411
Disintermediation, 391
Dynamic pricing, 391
Electronic data interchange (EDI), 409
E-tailer, 395
Exchanges, 411
Free/freemium revenue model, 399
Geoadvertising services, 413
Geoinformation services, 413
Geosocial services, 412
Indirect goods, 411
Information asymmetry, 390
Information density, 389
Intellectual property, 396
Location-based services, 412
Long tail marketing, 401

Market creator, 396
Market entry costs, 389
Marketspace, 387
Menu costs, 391
Micropayment systems, 398
Mobile commerce (m-commerce), 394
Net marketplaces, 411
Personalization, 389
Podcasting, 396
Prediction market, 408
Price discrimination, 389
Price transparency, 389
Private exchange, 410
Private industrial networks, 410
Revenue model, 397
Richness, 389
Sharing economy, 397
Sales revenue model, 398
Search costs, 389
Social graph, 405
Social shopping, 407
Streaming, 396
Subscription revenue model, 398
Transaction costs, 387
Transaction fee revenue model, 399
Wisdom of crowds, 407
Review Questions

10-1 What are the unique features of e-commerce, digital markets, and digital goods?
- Name and describe four business trends and three technology trends shaping e-commerce today.
- List and describe the eight unique features of e-commerce.
- Define a digital market and digital goods and describe their distinguishing features.

10-2 What are the principal e-commerce business and revenue models?
- Name and describe the principal e-commerce business models.
- Name and describe the e-commerce revenue models.

10-3 How has e-commerce transformed marketing?
- Explain how social networking and the “wisdom of crowds” help companies improve their marketing.
- Define behavioral targeting and explain how it works at individual Web sites and on advertising networks.
- Define the social graph and explain how it is used in e-commerce marketing.

10-4 How has e-commerce affected business-to-business transactions?
- Explain how Internet technology supports business-to-business electronic commerce.
- Define and describe Net marketplaces and explain how they differ from private industrial networks (private exchanges).

10-5 What is the role of m-commerce in business, and what are the most important m-commerce applications?
- List and describe important types of m-commerce services and applications.

10-6 What issues must be addressed when building an e-commerce presence?
- List and describe the four types of e-commerce presence.

Discussion Questions

10-7 How does the Internet change consumer and supplier relationships?
10-8 The Internet may not make corporations obsolete, but the corporations will have to change their business models. Do you agree? Why or why not?
10-9 How have social technologies changed e-commerce?

Hands-On MIS Projects

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience developing e-commerce strategies for businesses, using spreadsheet software to research the profitability of an e-commerce company, and using Web tools to research and evaluate e-commerce hosting services.

Management Decision Problems

10-10 Columbiana is a small, independent island in the Caribbean that has many historical buildings, forts, and other sites, along with rain forests and striking mountains. A few first-class hotels and several dozen less expensive accommodations can be found along its beautiful white sand beaches. The major airlines have regular flights to Columbiana, as do several small airlines. Columbiana’s government wants to increase
tourism and develop new markets for the country's tropical agricultural products. How can a Web presence help? What Internet business model would be appropriate? What functions should the Web site perform?

10-11 Explore the Web sites of the following companies: Blue Nile, Swatch, Lowe's, and Priceline. Determine which of these Web sites would benefit most from adding a company-sponsored blog to the Web site. List the business benefits of the blog. Specify the intended audience for the blog. Decide who in the company should author the blog, and select some topics for the blog.

Improving Decision Making: Using Spreadsheet Software to Analyze a Dot-Com Business

Software skills: Spreadsheet downloading, formatting, and formulas
Business skills: Financial statement analysis

10-12 Pick one e-commerce company on the Internet—for example, Ashford, Buy.com, Yahoo, or Priceline. Study the Web pages that describe the company and explain its purpose and structure. Use the Web to find articles that comment on the company. Then visit the Securities and Exchange Commission's Web site at www.sec.gov to access the company's 10-K (annual report) form showing income statements and balance sheets. Select only the sections of the 10-K form containing the desired portions of financial statements that you need to examine, and download them into your spreadsheet. (MyMISLab provides more detailed instructions on how to download this 10-K data into a spreadsheet.) Create simplified spreadsheets of the company's balance sheets and income statements for the past three years.

- Is the company a dot-com success, borderline business, or failure? What information provides the basis of your decision? Why? When answering these questions, pay special attention to the company's three-year trends in revenues, costs of sales, gross margins, operating expenses, and net margins.
- Prepare an overhead presentation (with a minimum of five slides), including appropriate spreadsheets or charts, and present your work to your professor and classmates.

Achieving Operational Excellence: Evaluating E-Commerce Hosting Services

Software skills: Web browser software
Business skills: Evaluating e-commerce hosting services

10-13 This project will help develop your Internet skills in commercial services for hosting an e-commerce site for a small start-up company.

You would like to set up a Web site to sell towels, linens, pottery, and tableware from Portugal and are examining services for hosting small business Internet storefronts. Your Web site should be able to take secure credit card payments and to calculate shipping costs and taxes. Initially, you would like to display photos and descriptions of 40 different products. Visit Yahoo! Small Business, GoDaddy, and iPage and compare the range of e-commerce hosting services they offer to small businesses, their capabilities, and costs. Also examine the tools they provide for creating an e-commerce site. Compare these services and decide which you would use if you were actually establishing a Web store. Write a brief report indicating your choice and explaining the strengths and weaknesses of each.

Collaboration and Teamwork Project

10-14 In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Docs, Google Sites, Google +, or other open source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.
To most people, Facebook and Twitter are ways to keep in touch with friends and to let them know what they are doing. For companies of all shapes and sizes, however, Facebook, Twitter, and other social media have become powerful tools for engaging customers, amplifying product messages, discovering trends and influencers, building brand awareness, and taking action on customer requests and recommendations. Half of all Twitter users recommend products in their tweets. It has been said that social media are the world’s largest focus group, with consumers telling you what they want every single day.

About 1.3 billion people use Facebook, and more than 30 million businesses have active Brand Pages to develop “fans” of the brand by enabling users to interact with the brand through blogs, comment pages, contests, and offerings on the brand page. The Like button gives users a chance to share with their social network their feelings about content and other objects they are viewing and Web sites they are visiting. With Like buttons on millions of Web sites, Facebook can track user behavior on other sites and then sell this information to marketers. Facebook also sells display ads to firms that show up in the right column of users’ Homepages, and most other pages in the Facebook interface such as Photos and Apps.

New Haven Connecticut’s Karaoke Heroes bar was started in 2012 and half of its new customers come through Facebook. Karaoke Heroes is the only karaoke bar in the state of Connecticut, and the only superhero-themed karaoke bar in North America. Its customers include college students from the New Haven area, as well as hardcore karaoke and superhero fans, middle-aged couples out for a date night, and Korean and Chinese families that come in to do karaoke in the bar’s private rooms.

Owner Andrew Lebwohl and his wife design Facebook ads to appeal to people most interested in karaoke and superheroes and are able to experiment with different Facebook ads for different audiences without spending a great deal of money. For example, ads can target Connecticut residents who are interested in superheroes, mothers of young children interested in hosting parties during the weekend, or people who speak Cantonese, or Mandarin or Spanish, to let them know about the bar’s music in those languages. When Karaoke Heroes runs special events, it can advertise the bar as an event space.

Twitter has developed many new offerings to interested advertisers, like “Promoted Tweets” and “Promoted Trends”. These features give advertisers the ability to have their tweets displayed more prominently when Twitter users search for certain keywords.

In addition to monitoring people’s chatter on Twitter, Facebook and other social media, some companies are using sentiment analysis (see Chapter 6) to probe more deeply into their likes and dislikes. For example, during the 2014 Golden Globe Awards, thousands of women watching the ceremony tweeted detailed comments about Hayden Panettiere and Kelly Osborne’s slicked-back hairdos. Almost instantaneously, the Twitter feeds of these women received instructions from L’Oréal Paris showing them how to capture various red-carpet looks at home, along with promotions and special deals for L’Oréal products. L’Oréal had worked with Poptip, a real-time market research company to analyze what conversations about hairstyling connected to Golden Globe hashtags and other key phrases were appearing on Twitter. When the Golden Globe red-carpet events began, Poptip’s software looked for similar chatter and analyzed which conversations were genuine discussions from the appropriate demographic.

Poptip determined that the target audience was captivated by slicked-back hairdos, and L’Oréal sponsored tweets to land in those Twitter conversations.

Best Western International, the world’s largest hotel chain, worked with Medallia, Inc., a Palo Alto, California-based provider of customer experience management software to create a tool that allows hotels to manage and respond to social feedback and to perform sentiment analysis. For example, a hotel’s Internet speed might elicit the most comments, but the software can show that this has a limited impact on guest likelihood to recommend that hotel compared to the cleanliness of guest rooms. These findings help Best Western focus its resources on areas that have the greatest impact on recommendations.

Best Western has both a mobile and desktop Web site with social tools. Both sites pull in ratings from TripAdvisor to let users see what others are saying about a hotel. TripAdvisor, with 200 million monthly visitors worldwide, provides a place for people...
to share their experiences about hotels, flights, restaurants and rentals. It is a leading example of social feedback driving customer buying decisions. Additionally, visitors to the Best Western sites can “Like” specific hotel pages on the site.

In addition to talking about themselves, companies have gained from posting good comments about their competitors. General Mills has a 30.1 percent share of the cold cereal market and maintains a strong social presence on Facebook, Twitter, Instagram, and Tumblr. Its Facebook group Hello, Cereal Lovers, has more than 366,000 followers. Although General Mills primarily uses these channels to discuss its own brands like Cheerios and Lucky Charms, it occasionally highlights rival cereals. For example, Hello, Cereal Lovers featured a recipe suggested by a user made with Post Honey Bunches of Oats, while on Twitter General Mills reposted a recipe made with Post Fruity Pebbles and Kelloggs Rice Krispies. Carla Vernón, marketing director for General Mills cereal, believes this “brand agnostic” approach makes the company appear more authentic and inspires better conversations with the people who buy and enjoy its products.

With cold cereal consumed by 92 percent of American households, the market for cold cereal is saturated. A common growth strategy for General Mills and other cereal companies is to increase what marketers call “usage occasions” by promoting how the cereals can be used in recipes, craft projects, or weight-loss programs. General Mills has been using its Web site and social network presence to encourage cereal consumption on these multiple fronts.

TomTom, a company that offers digital navigation and mapping products and services, has been using social media to enhance its product-development process. Like other companies, TomTom closely monitors social media conversations as part of its effort to evaluate performance in marketing and customer service. During this process, a company analyst discovered that users posting on a UK forum were focused on connectivity problems and channeled this information to TomTom’s product-development teams. The product-development teams then worked directly and in real time with customers to resolve these problems. Social media helped TomTom improve its processes for research and development (R&D) and product development. TomTom now interacts directly with its driving community for ideas on design and product features, as well as to quickly troubleshoot new offerings.

Still, the results of a social presence can be unpredictable, and not always beneficial, as a number of companies have learned. Businesses do not have much control in the placement of their Facebook ads, which are largely based on computer algorithms. In late May of 2013, after failing to get Facebook to remove pages glorifying violence against women, feminist activists waged a digital media campaign highlighting companies whose ads appeared alongside the offensive pages. Nissan and a number of small companies temporarily removed their ads from the site and Facebook removed the pages in question.

In November 2013, JPMorgan Chase asked Twitter followers to send questions to an executive using the hashtag #AskJPM. The company believed it was creating an opportunity for college students to communicate with company executives. Instead, JPM was bombarded with a torrent of angry and sarcastic posts, such as “Can I have my house back?” JPMorgan Chase wound up canceling the question-and-answer session.

Companies everywhere have rushed to create Facebook pages and Twitter accounts, but many still don’t understand how to make effective use of these social media tools. Traditional marketing is all about creating and delivering a message using communication that is primarily one-way. Social media marketing is all about two-way communication and interaction. It enables businesses to receive an immediate response to a message—and to react and change the message, if necessary. Many companies still don’t understand that difference. They flood social media sites with sales and marketing pitches touting themselves and don’t engage in conversations with customers where they could collect customer feedback and input. According to Vala Afshar, Chief Customer Officer at Enterasys Networks, most companies are missing the mark with social media because they’re too impatient. They want to bombard potential customers with “me, me, me” marketing and sales pitches instead of using social media slowly over time to have conversations and build relationships.

Vistaprint, a Netherlands-based online graphic design and printing firm with U.S. headquarters in Lexington, Massachusetts joined Twitter in 2008 but initially did not get the hang of how to use social media to reach customers. When Vistaprint’s first tweets went out, the company learned that its message and tone were wrong. Vistaprint had thought social media were supposed to be used for public relations. The company gradually learned how to use social media to communicate with customers by creating conversations. Now Vistaprint poses marketing advice for small businesses. It does
not expect that the people reading the posts will buy one of its products, such as business cards, right away, only that they will remember Vistaprint when they are ready to buy. Vistaprint is able to demonstrate that using Twitter and Facebook has directly increased profits because it keeps track of sales that come through links from social media sites.

Some companies have not been taking advantage of social media capabilities for capturing customer data for analysis. Even when they have the software tools for social media analytics, they might not know how to ask the right questions. According to Jill Dyche of Baseline Consulting, the problem with social media is when you get it to work, what do you do with it? A social community is buzzing about your flagship product? Great! But now what?

Companies may need to experiment. Pradeep Kumar, vice president and customer intelligence director at advertising firm DraftFCB, believes his social media analytics program will pay off eventually, though he’s unsure of how or when. Kumar believes analyzing social media data requires multiple tools and the flexibility to experiment with those tools to see what works and what doesn’t. Kumar and others warn that existing tools for sentiment analysis aren’t always accurate, often failing to pick up on sarcastic or colloquial language.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

10-15 Assess the management, organization, and technology issues for using social media to engage with customers.

10-16 What are the advantages and disadvantages of using social media for advertising, brand building, market research, and customer service?

10-17 Give some examples of management decisions that were facilitated by using social media to interact with customers.

10-18 Should all companies use Facebook and Twitter for customer service and marketing? Why or why not? What kinds of companies are best suited to use these platforms?

MyMISLab

Go to mymislab.com for Auto-graded writing questions as well as the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

10-19 Describe the six features of social commerce. Provide an example for each feature describing how a business could use that feature for selling to consumers on line.

10-20 What are the main factors that mediate the relationship between information technology and organizations, and that managers need to take into account when developing new information systems? Give a business example of how each factor would influence the development of new information systems.
Chapter 10 References


Kumar, V. and Rohan Mirchandan "Increasing the ROI of Social Media Marketing." MIT Sloan Management Review 54, No. 1 (Fall 2012).


Lin, Mei, Ke, Xuqing and Whinston, Andrew B. "Vertical Differentiation and a Comparison of Online Advertising Models." Journal of Management Information Systems 29, No. 1 (Summer 2012).


Pew Internet and American Life Project. "Daily Internet Activities." (January 6, 2014.)


LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. What is the role of knowledge management systems in business?
2. What types of systems are used for enterprise-wide knowledge management and how do they provide value for businesses?
3. What are the major types of knowledge work systems and how do they provide value for firms?
4. What are the business benefits of using intelligent techniques for knowledge management?

MyMISLab™

Visit mymislab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.

CHAPTER CASES

Jaguar Land Rover Transforms with New Design and Manufacturing Technology
Is 3-D Printing a Game-Changer?
Facial Recognition Systems: Another Threat to Privacy?
What’s Up with IBM’s Watson?

VIDEO CASES

How IBM’s Watson Became a Jeopardy Champion
Alfresco: Open Source Document Management and Collaboration
Instructional Videos:
Analyzing Big Data: IBM Watson
Teamwork and Collaboration: John Chambers on Collaboration vs. Command and Control
UK-based Jaguar Land Rover (JLR) brings together two highly prestigious British car brands that design, engineer, and manufacture some of the world’s most iconic cars, including the Jaguar E-Type and the Land Rover Defender. After Tata Motors acquired Jaguar and Land Rover from Ford in 2008, it merged the two brands into a single company and JLR started to revamp its business systems. JLR had inherited a complex mixture of auto industry software from its previous owners, which did not support the new company’s aggressive business plan. Over the years JLR had generated over 600 islands of isolated legacy systems that were not compatible with each other and could not easily exchange data.

JLR’s success continues to depend on advanced design, engineering and technology. The company invests more in research and development than any other manufacturing company in the UK. JLR tries to equip its designers, engineers, and production specialists with the most advanced tools for building cars with cutting-edge technologies, including sophisticated systems for computer-aided design (CAD), computer-aided manufacturing (CAM), and computer-aided engineering (CAE). These technologies automate much of the work involved in designing a car model, testing the design, and providing design specifications to drive the manufacturing process, dramatically reducing the time and expense involved in making new vehicles.

However, car design and manufacturing applications are generally semi-integrated, with information often passed clumsily from one application to another. This was true of Jaguar’s legacy systems. What the company needed most at this point in its history was integrated technology that could
provide a single source of data for designing and developing new cars that would make it easier for the designers, engineers, and production staff working on cars to absorb and exchange information as well as drive the manufacturing process. Jaguar Land Rover wanted the data to reside in a single location, within the application that created it and from which it would be accessed by other applications.

Jaguar Land Rover teamed up with Dassault Systèmes and IBM to implement a new product lifecycle management system (PLM) as a solution. PLM is the process of managing the entire lifecycle of a product from inception, through engineering design and manufacture, to service and disposal of manufactured products. Dassault produces specialized software for 3-D design and product lifecycle management, with tools for design collaboration and production support. Dassault's ENOVIA PLM software provides an online 3-D collaborative environment enabling everyone in the product lifecycle to visualize and experience a product virtually throughout the stages of product development and production.

The software facilitates the use of live 3-D digital models and product simulations by JLR and its suppliers, including 3-D digital factory overviews. As design progresses, the software simulates and validates JLR production environments virtually, including buildings, production cells, and technicians. The Dassault software reduces errors by providing more accurate timely design and production information.

Jaguar Land Rover is also using Dassault's 3-D Live, a suite of products designed to help individuals across the enterprise search, navigate and collaborate in real-time 3-D over the Internet. 3-D Live is a Web client application that connects to an external data source using a secure Internet connection. 3-D Live presents computerized design and production data in a 3-D graphics format that can be displayed on low-end devices rather than expensive and high-powered CAD workstations. Before product design and development became so highly digital, designers worked more with physical models and prototypes of new car designs. Company management used to be able to see how the physical car was being developed, and the move to digital 3-D CAD/CAE systems had made it harder for managers to see a new car's progress. 3-D Live will help Jaguar Land Rover's product development team present 3-D vehicle visualization to executive management using tools that enable them to understand where there may be issues with a product.


The experience of Jaguar Land Rover (JLR) described in this case shows how business performance can benefit by using technology to facilitate the acquisition and application of knowledge. Facilitating access to knowledge, improving the quality and currency of knowledge, and using that knowledge to improve business processes are vital to success and survival in all areas of business.

The chapter-opening diagram calls attention to important points raised by this case and this chapter. Computer-aided design (CAD), engineering (CAE), and manufacturing (CAM) technology are essential tools for designing and producing automobiles today. However, JLR's designers, engineers, and production teams were not able to make optimum use of these tools because the company was saddled with many legacy systems that could not easily exchange data with each other, or support coordinated, enterprise-wide, efficient business
processes for product lifecycle management. Designing and producing a new automobile is a complex and often lengthy process, and it has become very technology-intensive.

JLR needed to use this technology in a better way so it could manage product design and development on an enterprise level while improving employees' ability to access, share, and use knowledge. Management selected Dassault Systèmes's PLM tools to provide the company's data users and managers with more capabilities for 3-D visualization of design and production data. The new PLM system provides a single source of data for designing and developing new cars, and there are tools to make the data more easily available to managers and employees on client computers. Implementing new technology made it possible for JLR to rethink and redesign its design and product development processes. Thanks to better systems for capturing and creating knowledge, JLR has much more accurate and efficient processes for designing and developing new car models.

Here are some questions to think about: Why is visualization so important in automobile development and design? How does JLR's new PLM system make it easier for employees and managers to use and share knowledge?

### 11.1 WHAT IS THE ROLE OF KNOWLEDGE MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS IN BUSINESS?

Knowledge management and collaboration systems are among the fastest growing areas of corporate and government software investment. The past decade has shown an explosive growth in research on knowledge and knowledge management in the economics, management, and information systems fields.

Knowledge management and collaboration are closely related. Knowledge that cannot be communicated and shared with others is nearly useless. Knowledge becomes useful and actionable when shared throughout the firm.
We have already described the major tools for collaboration and social business in Chapter 2. In this chapter, we will focus on knowledge management systems, and be mindful that communicating and sharing knowledge are becoming increasingly important.

We live in an information economy in which the major source of wealth and prosperity is the production and distribution of information and knowledge. An estimated 37 percent of the U.S. labor force consists of knowledge and information workers, the largest single segment of the labor force. About 45 percent of the gross domestic product (GDP) of the United States is generated by the knowledge and information sectors (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2012).

Knowledge management has become an important theme at many large business firms as managers realize that much of their firm's value depends on the firm's ability to create and manage knowledge. Studies have found that a substantial part of a firm's stock market value is related to its intangible assets, of which knowledge is one important component, along with brands, reputations, and unique business processes. Well-executed knowledge-based projects have been known to produce extraordinary returns on investment, although the impacts of knowledge-based investments are difficult to measure (Gu and Lev, 2001).

**IMPORTANT DIMENSIONS OF KNOWLEDGE**

There is an important distinction between data, information, knowledge, and wisdom. Chapter 1 defines data as a flow of events or transactions captured by an organization's systems that, by itself, is useful for transacting but little else. To turn data into useful information, a firm must expend resources to organize data into categories of understanding, such as monthly, daily, regional, or store-based reports of total sales. To transform information into knowledge, a firm must expend additional resources to discover patterns, rules, and contexts where the knowledge works. Finally, wisdom is thought to be the collective and individual experience of applying knowledge to the solution of problems. Wisdom involves where, when, and how to apply knowledge.

Knowledge is both an individual attribute and a collective attribute of the firm. Knowledge is a cognitive, even a physiological, event that takes place inside people's heads. It is also stored in libraries and records, shared in lectures, and stored by firms in the form of business processes and employee know-how. Knowledge residing in the minds of employees that has not been documented is called tacit knowledge, whereas knowledge that has been documented is called explicit knowledge. Knowledge can reside in e-mail, voice mail, graphics, and unstructured documents as well as structured documents. Knowledge is generally believed to have a location, either in the minds of humans or in specific business processes. Knowledge is "sticky" and not universally applicable or easily moved. Finally, knowledge is thought to be situational and contextual. For example, you must know when to perform a procedure as well as how to perform it. Table 11.1 reviews these dimensions of knowledge.

We can see that knowledge is a different kind of firm asset from, say, buildings and financial assets; that knowledge is a complex phenomenon; and that there are many aspects to the process of managing knowledge. We can also recognize that knowledge-based core competencies of firms—the two or three things that an organization does best—are key organizational assets. Knowing how to do things effectively and efficiently in ways that other organizations cannot duplicate is a primary source of profit and competitive advantage that cannot be purchased easily by competitors in the marketplace.
For instance, having a unique build-to-order production system constitutes a form of knowledge and perhaps a unique asset that other firms cannot copy easily. With knowledge, firms become more efficient and effective in their use of scarce resources. Without knowledge, firms become less efficient and less effective in their use of resources and ultimately fail.

**Organizational Learning and Knowledge Management**

Like humans, organizations create and gather knowledge using a variety of organizational learning mechanisms. Through collection of data, careful measurement of planned activities, trial and error (experiment), and feedback from customers and the environment in general, organizations gain experience. Organizations that learn adjust their behavior to reflect that learning by creating new business processes and by changing patterns of management decision making. This process of change is called **organizational learning**. Arguably, organizations that can sense and respond to their environments rapidly will survive longer than organizations that have poor learning mechanisms.

**THE KNOWLEDGE MANAGEMENT VALUE CHAIN**

**Knowledge management** refers to the set of business processes developed in an organization to create, store, transfer, and apply knowledge. Knowledge management increases the ability of the organization to learn from its environment and to incorporate knowledge into its business processes. Figure 11.1 illustrates the five value-adding steps in the knowledge management value chain. Each stage in the value chain adds value to raw data and information as they are transformed into usable knowledge.
In Figure 11.1, information systems activities are separated from related management and organizational activities, with information systems activities on the top of the graphic and organizational and management activities below. One apt slogan of the knowledge management field is, “Effective knowledge management is 80 percent managerial and organizational, and 20 percent technology.”

In Chapter 1, we define organizational and management capital as the set of business processes, culture, and behavior required to obtain value from investments in information systems. In the case of knowledge management, as with other information systems investments, supportive values, structures, and behavior patterns must be built to maximize the return on investment in knowledge management projects. In Figure 11.1, the management and organizational activities in the lower half of the diagram represent the investment in organizational capital required to obtain substantial returns on the information technology (IT) investments and systems shown in the top half of the diagram.

**Knowledge Acquisition**

Organizations acquire knowledge in a number of ways, depending on the type of knowledge they seek. The first knowledge management systems sought to build corporate repositories of documents, reports, presentations, and best practices. These efforts have been extended to include unstructured documents (such as e-mail). In other cases, organizations acquire knowledge by developing online expert networks so that employees can “find the expert” in the company who is personally knowledgeable.

In still other cases, firms must create new knowledge by discovering patterns in corporate data or by using knowledge workstations where engineers can discover new knowledge. These various efforts are described throughout this

---

**FIGURE 11.1 THE KNOWLEDGE MANAGEMENT VALUE CHAIN**

Knowledge management today involves both information systems activities and a host of enabling management and organizational activities.
A coherent and organized knowledge system also requires systematic data from the firm’s transaction processing systems that track sales, payments, inventory, customers, and other vital data, as well as data from external sources such as news feeds, industry reports, legal opinions, scientific research, and government statistics.

**Knowledge Storage**

Once they are discovered, documents, patterns, and expert rules must be stored so they can be retrieved and used by employees. Knowledge storage generally involves the creation of a database. Document management systems that digitize, index, and tag documents according to a coherent framework are large databases adept at storing collections of documents. Expert systems also help corporations preserve the knowledge that is acquired by incorporating that knowledge into organizational processes and culture. Each of these is discussed later in this chapter and in the following chapter.

Management must support the development of planned knowledge storage systems, encourage the development of corporate-wide schemas for indexing documents, and reward employees for taking the time to update and store documents properly. For instance, it would reward the sales force for submitting names of prospects to a shared corporate database of prospects where all sales personnel can identify each prospect and review the stored knowledge.

**Knowledge Dissemination**

Portals, e-mail, instant messaging, wikis, social business tools, and search engines technology have added to an existing array of collaboration tools for sharing calendars, documents, data, and graphics (see Chapter 2). Contemporary technology seems to have created a deluge of information and knowledge. How can managers and employees discover, in a sea of information and knowledge, that which is really important for their decisions and their work? Here, training programs, informal networks, and shared management experience communicated through a supportive culture help managers focus their attention on the important knowledge and information.

**Knowledge Application**

Regardless of what type of knowledge management system is involved, knowledge that is not shared and applied to the practical problems facing firms and managers does not add business value. To provide a return on investment, organizational knowledge must become a systematic part of management decision making and become situated in systems for decision support (described in Chapter 12). Ultimately, new knowledge must be built into a firm’s business processes and key application systems, including enterprise applications for managing key internal business processes and relationships with customers and suppliers. Management supports this process by creating—based on new knowledge—new business practices, new products and services, and new markets for the firm.

**Building Organizational and Management Capital: Collaboration, Communities of Practice, and Office Environments**

In addition to the activities we have just described, managers can help by developing new organizational roles and responsibilities for the acquisition of knowledge, including the creation of chief knowledge officer executive positions, dedicated staff positions (knowledge managers), and communities
of practice. **Communities of practice (COPs)** are informal social networks of professionals and employees within and outside the firm who have similar work-related activities and interests. The activities of these communities include self-education and group education, conferences, online newsletters, and day-to-day sharing of experiences and techniques to solve specific work problems. Many organizations, such as IBM, the U.S. Federal Highway Administration, and the World Bank have encouraged the development of thousands of online communities of practice. These communities of practice depend greatly on software environments that enable collaboration and communication.

COPs can make it easier for people to reuse knowledge by pointing community members to useful documents, creating document repositories, and filtering information for newcomers. COPs members act as facilitators, encouraging contributions and discussion. COPs can also reduce the learning curve for new employees by providing contacts with subject matter experts and access to a community’s established methods and tools. Finally, COPs can act as a spawning ground for new ideas, techniques, and decision-making behavior.

**TYPES OF KNOWLEDGE MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS**

There are essentially three major types of knowledge management systems: enterprise-wide knowledge management systems, knowledge work systems, and intelligent techniques. Figure 11.2 shows the knowledge management system applications for each of these major categories.

**Enterprise-wide knowledge management systems** are general-purpose firmwide efforts to collect, store, distribute, and apply digital content and knowledge. These systems include capabilities for searching for information, storing both structured and unstructured data, and locating employee expertise within the firm. They also include supporting technologies such as portals, search engines, collaboration and social business tools, and learning management systems.

---

**FIGURE 11.2 MAJOR TYPES OF KNOWLEDGE MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enterprise-Wide Knowledge Management Systems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General-purpose, integrated, firmwide efforts to collect, store, disseminate, and use digital content and knowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise content management systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collaboration and social tools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Learning management systems</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Knowledge Work Systems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specialized workstations and systems that enable scientists, engineers, and other knowledge workers to create and discover new knowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer-aided design (CAD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-D virtualization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual reality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investment workstations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intelligent Techniques</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tools for discovering patterns and applying knowledge to discrete decisions and knowledge domains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data mining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neural networks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expert systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case-based reasoning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuzzy logic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genetic algorithms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intelligent agents</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are three major categories of knowledge management systems, and each can be broken down further into more specialized types of knowledge management systems.
The development of powerful networked workstations and software for assisting engineers and scientists in the discovery of new knowledge has led to the creation of knowledge work systems such as computer-aided design (CAD), visualization, simulation, and virtual reality systems. **Knowledge work systems (KWS)** are specialized systems built for engineers, scientists, and other knowledge workers charged with discovering and creating new knowledge for a company. We discuss knowledge work applications in detail in Section 11.3.

Knowledge management also includes a diverse group of **intelligent techniques**, such as data mining, expert systems, neural networks, fuzzy logic, genetic algorithms, and intelligent agents. These techniques have different objectives, from a focus on discovering knowledge (data mining and neural networks), to distilling knowledge in the form of rules for a computer program (expert systems and fuzzy logic), to discovering optimal solutions for problems (genetic algorithms). Section 11.4 provides more detail about these intelligent techniques.

**11.2 What types of systems are used for enterprise-wide knowledge management and how do they provide value for businesses?**

Firms must deal with at least three kinds of knowledge. Some knowledge exists within the firm in the form of structured text documents (reports and presentations). Decision makers also need knowledge that is semistructured, such as e-mail, voice mail, chat room exchanges, videos, digital pictures, brochures, or bulletin board postings. In still other cases, there is no formal or digital information of any kind, and the knowledge resides in the heads of employees. Much of this knowledge is tacit knowledge that is rarely written down. Enterprise-wide knowledge management systems deal with all three types of knowledge.

**Enterprise content management systems**

Businesses today need to organize and manage both structured and semistructured knowledge assets. **Structured knowledge** is explicit knowledge that exists in formal documents, as well as in formal rules that organizations derive by observing experts and their decision-making behaviors. But, according to experts, at least 80 percent of an organization’s business content is semistructured or unstructured—information in folders, messages, memos, proposals, e-mails, graphics, electronic slide presentations, and even videos created in different formats and stored in many locations.

**Enterprise content management systems** help organizations manage both types of information. They have capabilities for knowledge capture, storage, retrieval, distribution, and preservation to help firms improve their business processes and decisions. Such systems include corporate repositories of documents, reports, presentations, and best practices, as well as capabilities for collecting and organizing semistructured knowledge such as e-mail (see Figure 11.3). Major enterprise content management systems also enable users to access external sources of information, such as news feeds and research, and to communicate via e-mail, chat/instant messaging, discussion groups, and videoconferencing. They are starting to incorporate blogs, wikis, and other enterprise social networking tools. Open Text Corporation, EMC
An enterprise content management system has capabilities for classifying, organizing, and managing structured and semistructured knowledge and making it available throughout the enterprise.

(Documentum), IBM, and Oracle Corporation are leading vendors of enterprise content management software.

Calgary is the largest city in Alberta and the third largest municipality in Canada, with a population exceeding 1.1 million. Its 15,000 employees use OpenText Content Suite Platform to manage and share many different kinds of documents to provide essential services to citizens. Content Suite helps the city capture content it can actually track. Once a workspace is established in Content Server, the system automatically classifies documents, including graphic content, according to record type, retention requirements, and who in the organization is responsible for the document. Content created by one workgroup is easily accessible by other workgroups. Content Suite helped the city establish a strong records management program that supports groups with different needs. For example, Calgary's legal department and Freedom of Information Group places top priority on control and governance. Its Security team and City Council are more concerned with the separation between public documents and maintenance of confidential content. Business units with users in the field need an easy way to access the information they need while they are on the go. Content Suite is able to manage Calgary's content to meet each group's most important information requirements (OpenText 2013–2014).

A key problem in managing knowledge is the creation of an appropriate classification scheme, or taxonomy, to organize information into meaningful categories so that it can be easily accessed. Once the categories for classifying knowledge have been created, each knowledge object needs to be “tagged,” or classified, so that it can be easily retrieved. Enterprise content management systems have capabilities for tagging, interfacing with corporate databases and content repositories, and creating enterprise knowledge portals that provide a single point of access to information resources.

Firms in publishing, advertising, broadcasting, and entertainment have special needs for storing and managing unstructured digital data such as photographs, graphic images, video, and audio content. For example, Coca-Cola must...
keep track of all the images of the Coca-Cola brand that have been created in the past at all of the company's worldwide offices, to prevent both redundant work and variation from a standard brand image. **Digital asset management systems** help companies classify, store, and distribute these digital objects.

**LOCATING AND SHARING EXPERTISE**

Some of the knowledge businesses need is not in the form of a digital document but instead resides in the memory of individual experts in the firm. Contemporary enterprise content management systems, along with the systems for collaboration and social business introduced in Chapter 2, have capabilities for locating experts and tapping their knowledge. These include online directories of corporate experts and their profiles, with details about their job experience, projects, publications, and educational degrees, and repositories of expert-generated content. Specialized search tools make it easier for employees to find the appropriate expert in a company.

For knowledge resources outside the firm, social networking and social business tools enable users to bookmark Web pages of interest, tag these bookmarks with keywords, and share the tags and Web page links with other people. These bookmarks are often public on sites such as Delicious and Reddit, but some can be saved privately and shared only with specified people or groups.

**LEARNING MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS**

Companies need ways to keep track of and manage employee learning and to integrate it more fully into their knowledge management and other corporate systems. A **learning management system (LMS)** provides tools for the management, delivery, tracking, and assessment of various types of employee learning and training.

Contemporary LMS support multiple modes of learning, including CD-ROM, downloadable videos, Web-based classes, live instruction in classes or online, and group learning in online forums and chat sessions. The LMS consolidates mixed-media training, automates the selection and administration of courses, assembles and delivers learning content, and measures learning effectiveness.

CVM Solutions, LLC (CVM) uses Digitec's Knowledge Direct learning management system to provide training about how to manage suppliers for clients such as Procter & Gamble, Colgate-Palmolive, and Delta Airlines. Knowledge Direct provides a portal for accessing course content online, along with hands-free administration features such as student registration and assessment tools, built-in Help and Contact Support, automatic e-mail triggers to remind users of courses or deadlines, automatic e-mail acknowledgement of course completions, and Web-based reporting for courses accessed.

Businesses run their own learning management systems, but they are also turning to publicly-available **massive open online courses (MOOCs)** to educate their employees. A MOOC is an online course made available via the Web to very large numbers of participants. For example, in March 2013 employees from General Electric, Johnson & Johnson, Samsung, and Walmart were among over 90,000 learners from 143 countries enrolled in Foundations for Business Strategy, a MOOC offered through the Coursera online learning platform by the University of Virginia's Darden School of Business (Nurmohamed, Gillani, and Lenox, 2013).
11.3 WHAT ARE THE MAJOR TYPES OF KNOWLEDGE WORK SYSTEMS AND HOW DO THEY PROVIDE VALUE FOR FIRMS?

The enterprise-wide knowledge systems we have just described provide a wide range of capabilities that can be used by many if not all the workers and groups in an organization. Firms also have specialized systems for knowledge workers to help them create new knowledge and to ensure that this knowledge is properly integrated into the business.

KNOWLEDGE WORKERS AND KNOWLEDGE WORK

Knowledge workers, which we introduced in Chapter 1, include researchers, designers, architects, scientists, and engineers who primarily create knowledge and information for the organization. Knowledge workers usually have high levels of education and memberships in professional organizations and are often asked to exercise independent judgment as a routine aspect of their work. For example, knowledge workers create new products or find ways of improving existing ones. Knowledge workers perform three key roles that are critical to the organization and to the managers who work within the organization:

- Keeping the organization current in knowledge as it develops in the external world—in technology, science, social thought, and the arts
- Serving as internal consultants regarding the areas of their knowledge, the changes taking place, and opportunities
- Acting as change agents, evaluating, initiating, and promoting change projects

REQUIREMENTS OF KNOWLEDGE WORK SYSTEMS

Most knowledge workers rely on office systems, such as word processors, voice mail, e-mail, videoconferencing, and scheduling systems, which are designed to increase worker productivity in the office. However, knowledge workers also require highly specialized knowledge work systems with powerful graphics, analytical tools, and communications and document management capabilities.

These systems require sufficient computing power to handle the sophisticated graphics or complex calculations necessary for such knowledge workers as scientific researchers, product designers, and financial analysts. Because knowledge workers are so focused on knowledge in the external world, these systems also must give the worker quick and easy access to external databases. They typically feature user-friendly interfaces that enable users to perform needed tasks without having to spend a great deal of time learning how to use the system. Knowledge workers are highly paid—wasting a knowledge worker's time is simply too expensive. Figure 11.4 summarizes the requirements of knowledge work systems.

Knowledge workstations often are designed and optimized for the specific tasks to be performed; so, for example, a design engineer requires a different workstation setup than a financial analyst. Design engineers need graphics with enough power to handle three-dimensional (3-D) CAD systems. However, financial analysts are more interested in access to a myriad number of external databases and large databases for efficiently storing and accessing massive amounts of financial data.
EXAMPLES OF KNOWLEDGE WORK SYSTEMS

Major knowledge work applications include CAD systems, virtual reality systems for simulation and modeling, and financial workstations. **Computer-aided design (CAD)** automates the creation and revision of designs, using computers and sophisticated graphics software. Using a more traditional physical design methodology, each design modification requires a mold to be made and a prototype to be tested physically. That process must be repeated many times, which is a very expensive and time-consuming process. Using a CAD workstation, the designer need only make a physical prototype toward the end of the design process because the design can be easily tested and changed on the computer. The ability of CAD software to provide design specifications for the tooling and manufacturing processes also saves a great deal of time and money while producing a manufacturing process with far fewer problems.

For example, Ford Motor Company used a computer simulation to create an engine cylinder that came up with the most efficient design possible. Engineers altered that design to account for manufacturing constraints and tested the revised design virtually in models that used decades of data on material properties and engine performance. Ford then created the mold to make a real part that could be bolted onto an engine for further testing. The entire process took days instead of months and cost thousands of dollars instead of millions. CAD systems have provided similar benefits to Jaguar Land Rover, as described in the chapter-opening case.

CAD systems are able to supply data for **3-D printing**, also known as additive manufacturing, which uses machines to make solid objects, layer by layer, from specifications in a digital file. 3-D printing is currently being used for producing prototypes and customized manufacturing work (see the Interactive Session on Technology).

**Virtual reality systems** have visualization, rendering, and simulation capabilities that go far beyond those of conventional CAD systems. They
There's a lot of talk about 3-D printing and it is one of today's hottest new technologies. 3-D printing, or additive manufacturing, is a process for making three-dimensional solid objects from a digital file. The creation of a 3-D printed object is achieved using additive processes in which an object is created by laying down successive layers of materials. Each of these layers can be seen as a thinly sliced horizontal cross-section of the eventual object.

A virtual design of the object is made in a CAD (Computer Aided Design) file using a 3-D modeling program. The software slices the model of the object into hundreds or thousands of horizontal layers, each of which is a thinly-sliced horizontal cross-section of the final object. The software creates a digital file that instructs a 3-D printer how to create the object layer by layer, with no sign of the layering visible. The output is a single three-dimensional object.

There are several different ways in which 3-D printers build layers to create the final object. Some methods use melting or softening material to produce the layers (selective laser sintering and fused deposition modeling), while others lay liquid materials that are cured with different technologies (stereolithography).

Today's 3-D printers can handle materials including plastic, titanium, and human cartilage, and produce fully functional components, including batteries, transistors, LEDs, and other complex mechanisms. Costs have dropped dramatically, with basic 3-D printers for hobbyists selling as low as $250, although industrial 3-D printers may run up to $800,000.

Need a part for your washing machine? Right now, you'd order it from your repairman, who would get it from a distributor, who would have it shipped from China, where thousands of these parts were mass-produced at the same time, probably injection-molded from a very expensive mold. In the future, you might be able to 3-D print the part in your home, using a CAD file you downloaded. If you didn't have a 3-D printer, you could print it out at a local 3-D printing facility similar to Kinko's or transmit the CAD file over the Internet for printing by a cloud-based 3-D printing service such as Shapeways.

3-D printing eliminates the need for expensive customized tooling, using less material per object. With injection molding, companies must create a different physical mold for every different part they want to produce. If the specifications for a part change, they must create a new mold for the part. With 3-D printing there's no mold, just a computer model of the part that can be updated any time.

This was an advantage for Chris Milnes, who manufactures the Square Helper—a plastic clip the size of a quarter that holds a credit card reader in place on an iPhone or iPad. If Mr. Milnes had the clip made in China, it would have cost $6,000 for the tooling to build an injection mold, plus 25 to 30 cents per unit. Instead, he uses a MakerBot Replicator 2 purchased for $2,000, and the plastic for 3-D printing the reader costs 3 cents apiece. Using a 3-D printer also makes it much easier to adjust the part when Apple updates the iPhone. All Milnes has to do is to change a few lines of software. So far, Milnes has sold about 2,000 clips for $7.95 each.

Some say 3-D printing has potential to reshape manufacturing and even usher in a Third Industrial Revolution in which customizable one-off production supplants mass production. For some types of manufacturing work, this could be true, and there will be profound changes in some companies' business models and production locations. Don't expect a seismic shift, however.

It takes much more than pressing a button to create a part using 3-D printing. A 3-D printer is much more complicated to use than a desktop printer, with much more technical know-how required to operate the device and software. The outputs are much more specialized. A printer for metal can't print plastic and a printer for ABS plastic, for example, may not print any other type of plastic. Plastics are relatively straightforward to work with, but metals are more difficult.

Fashioning something using 3-D printing is extremely slow and cumbersome. It can take an entire day or longer for printouts to cool. 3-D printing doesn't scale well if you have to churn out thousands of items in a short time. A startup called Rest Devices was using 3-D printing to design and manufacture the Mimo, an infant’s one piece outfit with a built-in sensor that lets parents monitor their newborns’ breathing. When Babies “R” Us ordered 7,000 pieces, their MakerBot 3-D printer simply couldn't produce the items fast enough. Rest Devices then turned to traditional injection molding to make key plastic parts. A part comes out of injection molding every 20-30 seconds, whereas the 3-D printer could only produce one in 15-20 minutes.
1. Describe the technologies used in 3-D printing. How does 3-D printing differ from CAD?

2. What are the advantages and disadvantages of using 3-D printing?

It looks like 3-D printing is better suited for jobs involving complex designs or limited production runs. 3-D printing is very useful for helping designers test ideas and speed product development, not replacing large-scale manufacturing. For example, Ford Motor Company is using 3-D printing to test parts of new cars. An engine prototype printed from sand-based material cost $3000 to make and is available in 4 days. A traditional prototype used to require months to create and cost half-million dollars. Nike uses 3-D printers to create multi-colored prototypes of shoes. The company used to spend thousands of dollars on a physical prototype and wait weeks for it to be produced. Now, the prototype cost is only in the hundreds of dollars. Changes can be made instantly on the computer and the prototype reprinted on the same day.

Some companies are using 3-D printers for short-run or custom manufacturing, where the printed objects are not prototypes, but the actual end user product. GE Aviation using 3-D printers to manufacture more than 85,000 fuel nozzles for its Leap jet engines. (There are 19 nozzles per engine.) Rather than assembling finely-honed metal parts, GE printed the engine’s fuel nozzles layer by layer. Earlier fuel nozzles had 20 different parts, whereas the 3-D printed version is a single piece optimized to spray fuel into engines. The new version is 25 percent lighter than current models, and is capable of lasting five times longer before servicing. Transforming multiple parts into a single part results in a final assembly that is less susceptible to errors.


3. What kinds of businesses are most likely to benefit from 3-D printing? Why? Give 2 examples.

4. How could 3-D printing impact companies’ supply chains and business models?

CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. Describe the technologies used in 3-D printing. How does 3-D printing differ from CAD?

2. What are the advantages and disadvantages of using 3-D printing?

3. What kinds of businesses are most likely to benefit from 3-D printing? Why? Give 2 examples.

4. How could 3-D printing impact companies’ supply chains and business models?

use interactive graphics software to create computer-generated simulations that are so close to reality that users almost believe they are participating in a real-world situation. In many virtual reality systems, the user dons special clothing, headgear, and equipment, depending on the application. The clothing contains sensors that record the user’s movements and immediately transmit that information back to the computer. For instance, to walk through a virtual reality simulation of a house, you would need garb that monitors the movement of your feet, hands, and head. You also would need goggles containing video screens and sometimes audio attachments and feeling gloves so that you can be immersed in the computer feedback.

At NYU Langone Medical Center in New York City, students wearing 3-D glasses are able to “dissect” a virtual cadaver projected on a screen. With the help of a computer, they can move through the virtual body, scrutinizing layers of muscles or watching a close-up of a pumping heart along with bright red arteries and deep blue veins. The virtual human body was created by BioDigital Systems, a New York City medical visualization firm. The virtual cadaver being used at Langone is a beta version that BioDigital plans to develop into a searchable, customizable map of the human body for medical educators and physicians. NYU medical school has no current plans to phase out dissection, but the 3-D virtual cadaver is a valuable complementary teaching tool (Singer, 2012).

Ford Motor Company has been using virtual reality to help design its vehicles. In one example of Ford’s Immersive Virtual Environment, a designer
was presented with a car seat, steering wheel, and blank dashboard. Wearing virtual reality glasses and gloves with sensors, the designer was able to “sit” in the seat surrounded by the vehicle's 3-D design to experience how a proposed interior would look and feel. The designer would be able to identify blind spots or see if knobs were in an awkward place. Ford's designers could also use this technology to see the impact of a design on manufacturing. For example, is a bolt that assembly line workers need to tighten too hard to reach?

**Augmented reality (AR)** is a related technology for enhancing visualization. AR provides a live direct or indirect view of a physical real-world environment whose elements are augmented by virtual computer-generated imagery. The user is grounded in the real physical world, and the virtual images are merged with the real view to create the augmented display. The digital technology provides additional information to enhance the perception of reality, making the surrounding real world of the user more interactive and meaningful. The yellow first-down markers shown on televised football games are examples of augmented reality as are medical procedures like image-guided surgery, where data acquired from computerized tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scans or from ultrasound imaging are superimposed on the patient in the operating room. Other industries where AR has caught on include military training, engineering design, robotics, and consumer design.

Virtual reality applications developed for the Web use a standard called **Virtual Reality Modeling Language (VRML)**. VRML is a set of specifications for interactive, 3-D modeling on the World Wide Web that can organize multiple media types, including animation, images, and audio to put users in a simulated real-world environment. VRML is platform independent, operates over a desktop computer, and requires little bandwidth.

DuPont, the Wilmington, Delaware, chemical company, created a VRML application called HyperPlant, which enables users to access 3-D data over the Internet using Web browser software. Engineers can go through 3-D models as if they were physically walking through a plant, viewing objects at eye level. This level of detail reduces the number of mistakes they make during construction of oil rigs, oil plants, and other structures.

The financial industry is using specialized **investment workstations** such as Bloomberg Terminals to leverage the knowledge and time of its brokers, traders, and portfolio managers. Firms such as Merrill Lynch and UBS Financial Services have installed investment workstations that integrate a wide range of data from both internal and external sources, including contact management data, real-time and historical market data, and research reports. Previously, financial professionals had to spend considerable time accessing data from separate systems and piecing together the information they needed. By providing one-stop information faster and with fewer errors, the workstations streamline the entire investment process from stock selection to updating client records. Table 11.2 summarizes the major types of knowledge work systems.

### 11.4 What are the Business Benefits of Using Intelligent Techniques for Knowledge Management?

Artificial intelligence and database technology provide a number of intelligent techniques that organizations can use to capture individual and collective knowledge and to extend their knowledge base. Expert systems, case-based
reasoning, and fuzzy logic are used for capturing tacit knowledge. Neural networks and data mining are used for knowledge discovery. They can discover underlying patterns, categories, and behaviors in large data sets that could not be discovered by managers alone or simply through experience. Genetic algorithms are used for generating solutions to problems that are too large and complex for human beings to analyze on their own. Intelligent agents can automate routine tasks to help firms search for and filter information for use in electronic commerce, supply chain management, and other activities.

Data mining, which we introduced in Chapter 6, helps organizations capture undiscovered knowledge residing in large databases, providing managers with new insight for improving business performance. It has become an important tool for management decision making, and we provide a detailed discussion of data mining for management decision support in Chapter 12.

The other intelligent techniques discussed in this section are based on artificial intelligence (AI) technology, which consists of computer-based systems (both hardware and software) that attempt to emulate human behavior. Such systems would be able to learn languages, accomplish physical tasks, use a perceptual apparatus, and emulate human expertise and decision making. Although AI applications do not exhibit the breadth, complexity, originality, and generality of human intelligence, they play an important role in contemporary knowledge management.

**CAPTURING KNOWLEDGE: EXPERT SYSTEMS**

Expert systems are an intelligent technique for capturing tacit knowledge in a very specific and limited domain of human expertise. These systems capture the knowledge of skilled employees in the form of a set of rules in a software system that can be used by others in the organization. The set of rules in the expert system adds to the memory, or stored learning, of the firm.

Expert systems lack the breadth of knowledge and the understanding of fundamental principles of a human expert. They typically perform very limited tasks that can be performed by professionals in a few minutes or hours, such as diagnosing a malfunctioning machine or determining whether to grant credit for a loan. Problems that cannot be solved by human experts in the same short period of time are far too difficult for an expert system. However, by capturing human expertise in limited areas, expert systems can provide benefits, helping organizations make high-quality decisions with fewer people. Today, expert systems are widely used in business in discrete, highly structured decision-making situations.
**How Expert Systems Work**

Human knowledge must be modeled or represented in a way that a computer can process. Expert systems model human knowledge as a set of rules that collectively are called the **knowledge base**. The rules are obtained by carefully interviewing one or several “experts” who have a thorough command of the knowledge base for the system or by documenting business rules found in manuals, books, or reports. Expert systems have from 200 to many thousands of these rules, depending on the complexity of the problem. These rules are much more interconnected and nested than in a traditional software program (see Figure 11.5).

The strategy used to search through the knowledge base is called the **inference engine**. Two strategies are commonly used: forward chaining and backward chaining (see Figure 11.6).

In **forward chaining**, the inference engine begins with the information entered by the user and searches the rule base to arrive at a conclusion. The strategy is to fire, or carry out, the action of the rule when a condition is true. In Figure 11.6, beginning on the left, if the user enters a client's name with income greater than $100,000, the engine will fire all rules in sequence from left to right. If the user then enters information indicating that the same client

---

**Figure 11.5 Rules in an Expert System**

An expert system contains a number of rules to be followed. The rules are interconnected; the number of outcomes is known in advance and is limited; there are multiple paths to the same outcome; and the system can consider multiple rules at a single time. The rules illustrated are for simple credit-granting expert systems.
owns real estate, another pass of the rule base will occur and more rules will fire. Processing continues until no more rules can be fired.

In **backward chaining**, the strategy for searching the rule base starts with a hypothesis and proceeds by asking the user questions about selected facts until the hypothesis is either confirmed or disproved. In our example, in Figure 11.6, ask the question, “Should we add this person to the prospect database?” Begin on the right of the diagram and work toward the left. You can see that the person should be added to the database if a sales representative is sent, term insurance is granted, or a financial adviser visits the client.

### Examples of Successful Expert Systems

Expert systems provide businesses with an array of benefits including improved decisions, reduced errors, reduced costs, reduced training time, and higher levels of quality and service. Con-Way Transportation built an expert system called Line-haul to automate and optimize planning of overnight shipment routes for its nationwide freight-trucking business. The expert system captures the business rules that dispatchers follow when assigning drivers, trucks, and trailers to transport 50,000 shipments of heavy freight each night across 25 states and Canada and then plots their routes. Line-haul runs on a Sun computer platform and uses data on daily customer shipment requests, available drivers, trucks, trailer space, and weight stored in an Oracle database. The expert system uses thousands of rules and 100,000 lines of program code written in C++ to crunch the numbers and create optimum routing plans for 95 percent of daily freight shipments. Con-Way dispatchers tweak the routing plan provided by the expert system and relay final routing specifications to field personnel responsible for packing the trailers for their nighttime runs. Con-Way recouped its $3 million investment in the system within two years by reducing the number of drivers, packing more freight per trailer, and reducing damage from rehandling. The system also reduces dispatchers’ arduous nightly tasks.
Although expert systems lack the robust and general intelligence of human beings, they can provide benefits to organizations if their limitations are well understood. Only certain classes of problems can be solved using expert systems. Virtually all successful expert systems deal with problems of classification in limited domains of knowledge where there are relatively few alternative outcomes and these possible outcomes are all known in advance. Expert systems are much less useful for dealing with unstructured problems typically encountered by managers.

Many expert systems require large, lengthy, and expensive development efforts. Hiring or training more experts may be less expensive than building an expert system. Typically, the environment in which an expert system operates is continually changing so that the expert system must also continually change. Some expert systems, especially large ones, are so complex that in a few years the maintenance costs equal the development costs.

**ORGANIZATIONAL INTELLIGENCE: CASE-BASED REASONING**

Expert systems primarily capture the tacit knowledge of individual experts, but organizations also have collective knowledge and expertise that they have built up over the years. This organizational knowledge can be captured and stored using case-based reasoning. In case-based reasoning (CBR), descriptions of past experiences of human specialists, represented as cases, are documented and stored in a database for later retrieval when the user encounters a new case with similar parameters. The system searches for stored cases with problem characteristics similar to the new one, finds the closest fit, and applies the solutions of the old case to the new case. Successful solutions are tagged to the new case and both are stored together with the other cases in the knowledge base. Unsuccessful solutions also are appended to the case database along with explanations as to why the solutions did not work (see Figure 11.7).

Expert systems work by applying a set of IF-THEN-ELSE rules extracted from human experts. Case-based reasoning, in contrast, represents knowledge as a series of cases, and this knowledge base is continuously expanded and refined by users. You'll find case-based reasoning in diagnostic systems in medicine or customer support where users can retrieve past cases whose characteristics are similar to the new case. The system suggests a solution or diagnosis based on the best-matching retrieved case.

**FUZZY LOGIC SYSTEMS**

Most people do not think in terms of traditional IF-THEN rules or precise numbers. Humans tend to categorize things imprecisely using rules for making decisions that may have many shades of meaning. For example, a man or a woman can be strong or intelligent. A company can be large, medium, or small in size. Temperature can be hot, cold, cool, or warm. These categories represent a range of values.

**Fuzzy logic** is a rule-based technology that can represent such imprecision by creating rules that use approximate or subjective values. It can describe a particular phenomenon or process linguistically and then represent that description in a small number of flexible rules. Organizations can use fuzzy logic to create software systems that capture tacit knowledge where there is linguistic ambiguity.
Let’s look at the way fuzzy logic would represent various temperatures in a computer application to control room temperature automatically. The terms (known as membership functions) are imprecisely defined so that, for example, in Figure 11.8, cool is between 45 degrees and 70 degrees, although the temperature is most clearly cool between about 60 degrees and 67 degrees. Note that cool is overlapped by cold or norm. To control the room environment using this logic, the programmer would develop similarly imprecise definitions for humidity and other factors, such as outdoor wind and temperature. The rules might include one that says: “If the temperature is cool or cold and the humidity is low while the outdoor wind is high and the outdoor temperature is low, raise the heat and humidity in the room.” The computer would combine the membership function readings in a weighted manner and, using all the rules, raise and lower the temperature and humidity.

Fuzzy logic provides solutions to problems requiring expertise that is difficult to represent in the form of crisp IF-THEN rules. In Japan, Sendai’s subway system uses fuzzy logic controls to accelerate so smoothly that standing passengers need not hold on. Mitsubishi Heavy Industries in Tokyo has been able to reduce the power consumption of its air conditioners by 20 percent by implementing control programs in fuzzy logic. The autofocus device in cameras is only possible because of fuzzy logic. In these instances, fuzzy logic allows
incremental changes in inputs to produce smooth changes in outputs instead of discontinuous ones, making it useful for consumer electronics and engineering applications.

Management also has found fuzzy logic useful for decision making and organizational control. A Wall Street firm created a system that selects companies for potential acquisition, using the language stock traders understand. A fuzzy logic system has been developed to detect possible fraud in medical claims submitted by health care providers anywhere in the United States.

**MACHINE LEARNING**

Machine learning is the study of how computer programs can improve their performance without explicit programming. Why does this constitute learning? A machine that learns is a machine that, like a human being, can recognize patterns in data, and change its behavior based on its recognition of patterns, experience, or prior learnings (a database). For instance, a car-driving robot should be able to recognize the presence of other cars and objects (people), and change its behavior accordingly (stop, go, slow down, speed up, or turn). The idea of a self-taught, self-correcting, computer program is not new, and has been a part of the artificial intelligence field at least since the 1970s. Up until the 1990s, however, machine learning was not very capable of producing useful devices or solving interesting, business problems.

Machine learning has expanded greatly in the last ten years because of the growth in computing power available to scientists and firms and its falling cost, along with advances in the design of algorithms, databases, and robots (see the chapter-ending case on IBM’s Watson). The Internet and the big data (see Chapter 6) made available on the Internet have proved to be very useful testing and proving grounds for machine learning.

We use machine learning every day but don’t recognize it. Every Google search is resolved using algorithms that rank the billions of Web pages based on your query, and change the results based on any changes you make in your
search, all in a few milliseconds. Search results also vary according to your prior searches and the items you clicked on. Every time you buy something on Amazon, its recommender engine will suggest other items you might be interested in based on patterns in your prior consumption, behavior on other Web sites, and the purchases of others who are “similar” to you. Every time you visit Netflix, a recommender system will come up with movies you might be interested in based on a similar set of factors.

**Neural Networks**

Neural networks are used for solving complex, poorly understood problems for which large amounts of data have been collected. They find patterns and relationships in massive amounts of data that would be too complicated and difficult for a human being to analyze. Neural networks discover this knowledge by using hardware and software that parallel the processing patterns of the biological or human brain. Neural networks “learn” patterns from large quantities of data by sifting through data, searching for relationships, building models, and correcting over and over again the model’s own mistakes.

A neural network has a large number of sensing and processing nodes that continuously interact with each other. Figure 11.9 represents one type of neural network comprising an input layer, an output layer, and a hidden processing layer. Humans “train” the network by feeding it a set of training data for which the inputs produce a known set of outputs or conclusions. This helps the computer learn the correct solution by example. As the computer is fed more data, each case is compared with the known outcome. If it differs, a correction is calculated and applied to the nodes in the hidden processing layer. These steps are repeated until a condition, such as corrections being less than a certain amount, is reached. The neural network in Figure 11.9 has learned how to identify a fraudulent credit card purchase. Also, self-organizing neural networks can be trained by exposing them to large amounts of data and allowing them to discover the patterns and relationships in the data.

A Google research team headed by Stanford University computer scientist Andrew Y. Ng and Google fellow Jeff Dean recently created a neural network

---

**FIGURE 11.9 HOW A NEURAL NETWORK WORKS**

A neural network uses rules it “learns” from patterns in data to construct a hidden layer of logic. The hidden layer then processes inputs, classifying them based on the experience of the model. In this example, the neural network has been trained to distinguish between valid and fraudulent credit card purchases.
with more than one billion connections that could identify cats. The network used an array of 16,000 processors and was fed random thumbnails of images, each extracted from a collection of 10 million YouTube videos. The neural network taught itself to recognize cats, without human help in identifying specific features during the learning process. Google believes this neural network has promising applications in image search, speech recognition, and machine language translation (Markoff, 2013). IBM has developed an energy-efficient processor chip that relies on a dense web of transistors similar to the brain's neural network. It is still in experimental mode, with great promise for pattern recognition (Markoff, 2014). The Interactive Session on Organizations describes neural network applications for facial recognition and their potential impact on individual privacy.

Whereas expert systems seek to emulate or model a human expert's way of solving problems, neural network builders claim that they do not program solutions and do not aim to solve specific problems. Instead, neural network designers seek to put intelligence into the hardware in the form of a generalized capability to learn. In contrast, the expert system is highly specific to a given problem and cannot be retrained easily.

Neural network applications in medicine, science, and business address problems in pattern classification, prediction, financial analysis, and control and optimization. In medicine, neural network applications are used for screening patients for coronary artery disease, for diagnosing patients with epilepsy and Alzheimer's disease, and for performing pattern recognition of pathology images. The financial industry uses neural networks to discern patterns in vast pools of data that might help predict the performance of equities, corporate bond ratings, or corporate bankruptcies. Visa International uses a neural network to help detect credit card fraud by monitoring all Visa transactions for sudden changes in the buying patterns of cardholders.

There are many puzzling aspects of neural networks. Unlike expert systems, which typically provide explanations for their solutions, neural networks cannot always explain why they arrived at a particular solution. Moreover, they cannot always guarantee a completely certain solution, arrive at the same solution again with the same input data, or always guarantee the best solution. They are very sensitive and may not perform well if their training covers too little or too much data. In most current applications, neural networks are best used as aids to human decision makers instead of substitutes for them.

**Genetic Algorithms**

Genetic algorithms are useful for finding the optimal solution for a specific problem by examining a very large number of possible solutions for that problem. They are based on techniques inspired by evolutionary biology, such as inheritance, mutation, selection, and crossover (recombination).

A genetic algorithm works by representing information as a string of 0s and 1s. The genetic algorithm searches a population of randomly generated strings of binary digits to identify the right string representing the best possible solution for the problem. As solutions alter and combine, the worst ones are discarded and the better ones survive to go on to produce even better solutions.

In Figure 11.10, each string corresponds to one of the variables in the problem. One applies a test for fitness, ranking the strings in the population according to their level of desirability as possible solutions. After the initial population is evaluated for fitness, the algorithm then produces the next generation of strings, consisting of strings that survived the fitness test plus offspring.
INTERACTIVE SESSION: ORGANIZATIONS

FACIAL RECOGNITION SYSTEMS: ANOTHER THREAT TO PRIVACY?

Are you on Facebook? Do you worry about how much Facebook knows about you? Well, as much as it knows now, it's about to know much more. Facebook has been investing heavily in artificial intelligence technology to uniquely identify your face and to track your behavior more precisely.

Facebook's facial recognition tool, called DeepFace, is nearly as accurate as the human brain in recognizing a face. DeepFace can compare two photos and state with 97.25% accuracy whether the photos show the same face. Humans are able to perform the same task with 97.53% accuracy.

DeepFace was developed by Facebook's AI research group in Menlo Park, California and is based on an advanced deep-learning neural network. Deep learning looks at a large body of data, including human faces, and tries to develop a high-level abstraction of a human face by looking for recurring patterns (cheeks, eyebrows, etc). The DeepFace neural network consists of nine layers of "neurons." Its learning process has created 120 million connections (synapses) between those neurons using four million photos of faces.

Once the learning process is complete, every image fed into the system passes through the synapses in a different way, producing a unique fingerprint among the layers of neurons. For example, a neuron might ask if a particular face has a heavy brow. If so, one synapse would be followed, if not, another path would be taken.

DeepFace soon will be ready for commercial use, most likely to help Facebook improve the accuracy of its existing facial recognition capabilities to ensure that every photo of you on Facebook is connected to your account. (Facebook has one of the largest facial databases in the world for its photo tagging service.) DeepFace might also be used for real-world facial tracking, for example monitoring someone's shopping habits as that person moves from physical store to store. Facebook could profit handsomely from the detailed behavioral tracking data collected via DeepFace.

Facebook is one of many organizations using facial recognition systems, and neural networks are one of several techniques for this purpose. The Oregon Department of Motor Vehicles (DMV) uses facial recognition software to ensure that driver’s licenses, instruction permits, and ID cards are not issued under false names. In Pinellas County, Florida, police can capture a 3-D video and upload it to an image gallery for comparison to identify people with prior criminal records or outstanding warrants.

Whatever the technology foundation, facial recognition systems are raising alarm among privacy advocates, who are worried about the far-reaching use of people’s facial photos without their knowledge or consent. Although police departments and DMVs have strict limits on the use of their facial recognition software, casinos are beginning to faceprint their visitors to identify high rollers to pamper, and some Japanese grocery stores now use face-matching to identify shoplifters.

Dr. Joseph J. Atick, one of the pioneers of facial recognition technology, is at the forefront of these concerns. Atick is in favor of facial recognition for specific purposes such as law and immigration enforcement, motor vehicle department authentication, and airport entry, but he warns about its use for mass surveillance. Atick has been encouraging companies to adopt policies that safeguard the retention and reuse of facial data, stipulating that it cannot be matched, shared, or sold without permission.

Another concern is the lack of a legal framework for complying with requests for facial matching from government agencies.

The impending release of a Google Glass app (glassware) called NameTag underscores Atick’s concerns about unregulated facial recognition software. The name, occupation, and public Facebook profile of any passerby on the street can be obtained by momentarily focusing on his or her face. Google announced that it would not authorize any facial recognition apps, but an alternative operating system that bypasses Glass’s swiping and voice commands allows a picture to be snapped with a wink. A facial recognition app records the names of people to whom you have been introduced, and a beta version of NameTag has been released.

Facial analysis has progressed beyond scrutinizing static features. Frame-by-frame analysis can isolate involuntary millisecond-long expressions, revealing private sentiments. While these insights can drive productive endeavors, they are fraught with privacy implications. For example, do you want the person conducting your job interview to be able to review a videotape, identify fleeting moments of confusion or indecision, and decide against hiring you?

Psychologist Paul Eckman studied these fleeting microexpressions that surface when people are
Would you like DeepFace to track your activities on Facebook and in the physical world? Why or why not?

1. What are some of the benefits of using facial recognition technology? Describe some current and future applications of this technology.

2. How does facial recognition technology threaten the protection of individual privacy? Give several examples.

3. Would you like DeepFace to track your activities on Facebook and in the physical world? Why or why not?
Chain management software from i2 Technologies uses genetic algorithms to optimize production-scheduling models incorporating hundreds of thousands of details about customer orders, material and resource availability, manufacturing and distribution capability, and delivery dates.

**INTELLIGENT AGENTS**

Intelligent agent technology helps businesses navigate through large amounts of data to locate and act on information that is considered important. Intelligent agents are software programs that work without direct human intervention to carry out specific tasks for an individual user, business process, or software application. The agent uses a built-in or learned knowledge base to accomplish tasks or make decisions on the user’s behalf, such as deleting junk e-mail, scheduling appointments, or traveling over interconnected networks to find the cheapest airfare to California.

There are many intelligent agent applications today in operating systems, application software, e-mail systems, mobile computing software, and network tools. For example, the wizards found in Microsoft Office software tools have built-in capabilities to show users how to accomplish various tasks, such as formatting documents or creating graphs, and to anticipate when users need assistance. Chapter 10 describes how intelligent agent shopping bots can help consumers find products they want and assist them in comparing prices and other features.

Although some intelligent agents are programmed to follow a simple set of rules, others are capable of learning from experience and adjusting their behavior. Siri, an application on Apple’s iOS operating system for the iPhone and iPad, is an example. Siri is an intelligent personal assistant that uses voice recognition technology to answer questions, make recommendations, and perform actions. The software adapts to the user’s individual preferences over time and
personalizes results, performing tasks such as finding nearby restaurants, purchasing movie tickets, getting directions, scheduling appointments, and sending messages. Siri understands natural speech, and it asks the user questions if it needs more information to complete a task. Siri does not process speech input locally on the user's device. Instead, it sends commands through a remote server, so users have to be connected to Wi-Fi or a 3G signal.

Many complex phenomena can be modeled as systems of autonomous agents that follow relatively simple rules for interaction. Agent-based modeling applications have been developed to model the behavior of consumers, stock markets, and supply chains and to predict the spread of epidemics.

Procter & Gamble (P&G) used agent-based modeling to improve coordination among different members of its supply chain in response to changing business conditions (see Figure 11.11). It modeled a complex supply chain as a group of semiautonomous “agents” representing individual supply chain components, such as trucks, production facilities, distributors, and retail stores. The behavior of each agent is programmed to follow rules that mimic actual behavior, such as “order an item when it is out of stock.” Simulations using the agents enable the company to perform what-if analyses on inventory levels, in-store stockouts, and transportation costs.

Using intelligent agent models, P&G discovered that trucks should often be dispatched before being fully loaded. Although transportation costs would be higher using partially loaded trucks, the simulation showed that retail store stockouts would occur less often, thus reducing the amount of lost sales, which would more than make up for the higher distribution costs. Agent-based modeling has saved P&G $300 million annually on an investment of less than 1 percent of that amount.

**FIGURE 11.11 INTELLIGENT AGENTS IN P&G’S SUPPLY CHAIN NETWORK**

1. Software agents schedule deliveries from suppliers. If a supplier can’t deliver on time, agents negotiate with other suppliers to create an alternative delivery schedule.

2. Software agents collect real-time sales data on each P&G product from multiple retail stores. They relay the data to P&G production for replenishing orders and to sales and marketing for trend analysis.

3. Software agents schedule shipments from distributors to retailers, giving priority to retailers whose inventories are low. If a shipment to a retailer is delayed, agents find an alternative trucker.

Intelligent agents are helping P&G shorten the replenishment cycles for products such as a box of Tide.
HYBRID AI SYSTEMS

Genetic algorithms, fuzzy logic, neural networks, and expert systems can be integrated into a single application to take advantage of the best features of these technologies. Such systems are called hybrid AI systems. Hybrid applications in business are growing. In Japan, Hitachi, Mitsubishi, Ricoh, Sanyo, and others are starting to incorporate hybrid AI in products such as home appliances, factory machinery, and office equipment. Matsushita has developed a “neurofuzzy” washing machine that combines fuzzy logic with neural networks. Nikko Securities has been working on a neurofuzzy system to forecast convertible-bond ratings.

Review Summary

1. What is the role of knowledge management systems in business?

Knowledge management is a set of processes to create, store, transfer, and apply knowledge in the organization. Much of a firm’s value depends on its ability to create and manage knowledge. Knowledge management promotes organizational learning by increasing the ability of the organization to learn from its environment and to incorporate knowledge into its business processes. There are three major types of knowledge management systems: enterprise-wide knowledge management systems, knowledge work systems, and intelligent techniques.

2. What types of systems are used for enterprise-wide knowledge management and how do they provide value for businesses?

Enterprise-wide knowledge management systems are firmwide efforts to collect, store, distribute, and apply digital content and knowledge. Enterprise content management systems provide databases and tools for organizing and storing structured documents and tools for organizing and storing semistructured knowledge, such as e-mail or rich media. Knowledge network systems provide directories and tools for locating firm employees with special expertise who are important sources of tacit knowledge. Often these systems include group collaboration tools (including wikis and social bookmarking), portals to simplify information access, search tools, and tools for classifying information based on a taxonomy that is appropriate for the organization. Enterprise-wide knowledge management systems can provide considerable value if they are well designed and enable employees to locate, share, and use knowledge more efficiently.

3. What are the major types of knowledge work systems and how do they provide value for firms?

Knowledge work systems (KWS) support the creation of new knowledge and its integration into the organization. KWS require easy access to an external knowledge base; powerful computer hardware that can support software with intensive graphics, analysis, document management, and communications capabilities; and a user-friendly interface. Computer-aided design (CAD) systems, augmented reality applications, and virtual reality systems, which create interactive simulations that behave like the real world, require graphics and powerful modeling capabilities. KWS for financial professionals provide access to external databases and the ability to analyze massive amounts of financial data very quickly.

4. What are the business benefits of using intelligent techniques for knowledge management?

Artificial intelligence lacks the flexibility, breadth, and generality of human intelligence, but it can be used to capture, codify, and extend organizational knowledge. Expert systems capture tacit knowledge from a limited domain of human expertise and express that knowledge in the form of rules. Expert systems are most useful for problems of classification or diagnosis. Case-based reasoning represents organizational knowledge as a database of cases that can be continually expanded and refined.

Fuzzy logic is a software technology for expressing knowledge in the form of rules that use approximate or subjective values. Fuzzy logic has been used for controlling physical devices and is starting to be used for limited decision-making applications.
Machine learning refers to the ability of computer programs to automatically learn and improve with experience. Neural networks consist of hardware and software that attempt to mimic the thought processes of the human brain. Neural networks are notable for their ability to learn without programming and to recognize patterns that cannot be easily described by humans. They are being used in science, medicine, and business to discriminate patterns in massive amounts of data.

Genetic algorithms develop solutions to particular problems using genetically based processes such as fitness, crossover, and mutation. Genetic algorithms are beginning to be applied to problems involving optimization, product design, and monitoring industrial systems where many alternatives or variables must be evaluated to generate an optimal solution.

Intelligent agents are software programs with built-in or learned knowledge bases that carry out specific tasks for an individual user, business process, or software application. Intelligent agents can be programmed to navigate through large amounts of data to locate useful information and in some cases act on that information on behalf of the user.

**Key Terms**

- 3-D printing, 439
- Agent-based modeling, 454
- Artificial intelligence (AI), 443
- Augmented reality (AR), 442
- Backward chaining, 445
- Case-based reasoning (CBR), 446
- Communities of practice (COPs), 434
- Computer-aided design (CAD), 439
- Data, 430
- Digital asset management systems, 437
- Enterprise content management systems, 435
- Enterprise-wide knowledge management systems, 434
- Expert systems, 443
- Explicit knowledge, 430
- Forward chaining, 444
- Fuzzy logic, 446
- Genetic algorithms, 450
- Hybrid AI systems, 455
- Inference engine, 444
- Intelligent agents, 453
- Intelligent techniques, 435
- Investment workstations, 442
- Knowledge, 430
- Knowledge base, 444
- Knowledge discovery, 443
- Knowledge management, 431
- Knowledge work systems (KWS), 435
- Learning management system (LMS), 437
- Machine learning, 448
- Massive open online course (MOOC), 437
- Neural networks, 449
- Organizational learning, 431
- Structured knowledge, 435
- Tacit knowledge, 430
- Taxonomy, 436
- Virtual Reality Modeling Language (VRML), 442
- Virtual reality systems, 439
- Wisdom, 430

**MyMISLab**

Go to mymislab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

**Review Questions**

**11-1** What is the role of knowledge management systems in business?
- Define knowledge management and explain its value to businesses.
- Describe the important dimensions of knowledge.
- Distinguish between data, knowledge, and wisdom and between tacit knowledge and explicit knowledge.

**11-2** What types of systems are used for enterprise-wide knowledge management and how do they provide value for businesses?
- Define and describe the various types of enterprise-wide knowledge management systems and explain how they provide value for businesses.
11-3 Describe the role of the following in facilitating knowledge management: taxonomies, MOOCs, and learning management systems.

11-4 What are the business benefits of using intelligent techniques for knowledge management?

- Define an expert system, describe how it works, and explain its value to business.
- Define case-based reasoning and explain how it differs from an expert system.
- Define machine learning and give some examples.
- Define a neural network, and describe how it works and how it benefits businesses.
- Define and describe fuzzy logic, genetic algorithms, and intelligent agents. Explain how each works and the kinds of problems for which each is suited.

Discussion Questions

11-5 Knowledge management is a business process, not a technology. Discuss.

11-6 Describe various ways that knowledge management systems could help firms with sales and marketing or with manufacturing and production.

11-7 Your company wants to do more with knowledge management. Describe the steps it should take to develop a knowledge management program and select knowledge management applications.

Hands-On MIS Projects

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience designing a knowledge portal, identifying opportunities for knowledge management, creating a simple expert system, and using intelligent agents to research products for sale on the Web.

Management Decision Problems

11-8 U.S. Pharma Corporation is headquartered in New Jersey but has research sites in Germany, France, the United Kingdom, Switzerland, and Australia. Research and development of new pharmaceuticals is key to ongoing profits, and U.S. Pharma researches and tests thousands of possible drugs. The company's researchers need to share information with others within and outside the company, including the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, the World Health Organization, and the International Federation of Pharmaceutical Manufacturers & Associations. Also critical is access to health information sites, such as the U.S. National Library of Medicine, and to industry conferences and professional journals. Design a knowledge portal for U.S. Pharma's researchers. Include in your design specifications relevant internal systems and databases, external sources of information, and internal and external communication and collaboration tools. Design a home page for your portal.

11-9 Canadian Tire is one of Canada's largest companies, with 57,000 employees and 1,200 stores and gas bars (gas stations) across Canada selling sports, leisure, home products, apparel, and financial services as well as automotive and petroleum products. The retail outlets are independently owned and operated. Canadian Tire has been using daily mailings and thick product catalogs to inform its dealers about new products, merchandise setups, best practices, product ordering, and problem resolution and it is looking for a better way to provide employees with human resources and administrative documents. Describe the problems created by this way of doing business and how knowledge management systems might help.

Software skills: Spreadsheet formulas and IF function or expert system tool
Business skills: Benefits eligibility determination

11-10 Expert systems typically use a large number of rules. This project has been simplified to reduce the number of rules, but it will give you experience working with a series of rules to develop an application.

When employees at your company retire, they are given cash bonuses. These cash bonuses are based on the length of employment and the retiree’s age. To receive a bonus, an employee must be at least 50 years of age and have worked for the company for more than five years. The following table summarizes the criteria for determining bonuses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LENGTH OF EMPLOYMENT</th>
<th>BONUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;5 years</td>
<td>No bonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5–10 years</td>
<td>20 percent of current annual salary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11–15 years</td>
<td>30 percent of current annual salary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16–20 years</td>
<td>40 percent of current annual salary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20–25 years</td>
<td>50 percent of current annual salary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 or more years</td>
<td>100 percent of current annual salary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using the information provided, build a simple expert system. Find a demonstration copy of an expert system software tool on the Web that you can download. Alternatively, use your spreadsheet software to build the expert system. (If you are using spreadsheet software, we suggest using the IF function so you can see how rules are created.)

Improving Decision Making: Using Intelligent Agents for Comparison Shopping

Software skills: Web browser and shopping bot software
Business skills: Product evaluation and selection

11-11 This project will give you experience using shopping bots to search online for products, find product information, and find the best prices and vendors. Select a digital camera you might want to purchase, such as the Canon PowerShot S110 or the Olympus Tough TG-3. Visit MySimon (www.mysimon.com), BizRate.com (www.bizrate.com), and Google Shopping to do price comparisons for you. Evaluate these shopping sites in terms of their ease of use, number of offerings, speed in obtaining information, thoroughness of information offered about the product and seller, and price selection. Which site or sites would you use and why? Which camera would you select and why? How helpful were these sites for making your decision?

Collaboration and Teamwork Project

11-12 In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Docs, Google Sites, Google+, or other open source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.
What’s Up with IBM’s Watson?

In February, 2011 an IBM computer named Watson made history by handily defeating the two most decorated champions of the game show Jeopardy, Ken Jennings and Brad Rutter. Watson was named after IBM’s founder, Thomas J. Watson, and its achievement marked a milestone in the ability of computers to process and interpret human language.

IBM had been working on Watson for years. The project’s goal was to develop a more effective set of techniques that computers can use to process natural language – language that human beings instinctively use, not language specially formatted to be understood by computers. Watson had to be able to register the intent of a question, search through millions of lines of text and data, pick up nuances of meaning and context, and rank potential responses for a user to select, all in less than three seconds.

The hardware for Watson used in Jeopardy consisted of 10 racks of IBM POWER 750 servers running Linux, with 15 terabytes of RAM and 2,880 processor cores (equivalent to 6,000 top-end home computers), and operated at 80 teraflops. Watson needed this amount of power to quickly scan its enormous database of information, including information from the Internet. To prepare for Jeopardy, the IBM researchers downloaded over 10 million documents, including encyclopedias and Wikipedia, the Internet Movie Database (IMDB), and the entire archive of The New York Times. All of the data sat in Watson’s primary memory, as opposed to a much slower hard drive, so that Watson could find the data it needed within three seconds.

Watson is able to learn from its mistakes as well as its successes. To solve a typical problem, Watson tries many of the thousands of algorithms that the team has programmed it to use. The algorithms evaluate the language used in each clue, gather information about the important people and places mentioned in the clue, and generate hundreds of solutions. Human beings don’t need to take such a formal approach to generate the solutions that fit a question best, but Watson compensates for this with superior computing power and speed. If a certain algorithm works to solve a problem, Watson remembers what type of question it was and the algorithm it used to get the right answer. In this way, Watson improves at answering questions over time. Watson also learns another way — the team gave Watson thousands of old Jeopardy questions to process. Watson analyzed both questions and answers to determine patterns or similarities between clues, and using these patterns, it assigns varying degrees of confidence to the answers it gives.

Although Watson was only able to correctly answer a small fraction of the questions it was initially given, machine learning allowed the system to continue to improve until it reached Jeopardy champion level. IBM term cognitive computing to refer to Watson’s ability to interpret speech and text, rapidly mine large volumes of data, answer questions, draw conclusions, and learn from its mistakes.

The Watson version used in Jeopardy took 20 IBM engineers three years to build at an $18 million labor cost, and an estimated $1 million in equipment. IBM saw the investment as a stepping stone to broader commercial uses of its AI technology, including applications for health care, financial services, or any industry where sifting through large amounts of data (including unstructured data) to answer questions is important. Watson is expected to become more useful and powerful by learning from new sets of experts in new fields of knowledge. In January 2014 the company created a new division, the Watson Business Group, which will have 2500 employees working largely in New York City’s Silicon Alley. IBM has invested more than $1 billion in this Group, and has allocated one-third of its overall research efforts to Watson.

In September 2011, WellPoint Inc., the largest U.S. health care provider, with 34.2 million members, enlisted Watson for utilization management. The WellPoint Interactive Care Reviewer application is designed to determine if physicians’ requested treatment meets the guidelines of the company and a patient’s insurance policy. The Watson WellPoint application combines data from three sources: a patient’s chart and electronic records maintained by a physician or hospital, the insurance company’s history of medicines and treatments, and Watson’s huge library of textbooks and medical journals. According to WellPoint vice president Elizabeth Bingham, Watson initially took too long to “learn” WellPoint’s policies. IBM was able to improve the system by revising the Watson training routine for
WellPoint, and the Interactive Care Reviewer is being adopted by 1,600 health care providers.

Cancer treatment appears to be an especially promising application for Watson. Current guidelines aren’t precise enough to determine treatments that are most appropriate for a specific patient. For example, the recommended treatment may be chemotherapy, but how do you pick among ten or more possible chemotherapy options? How do you choose the dosage? What treatment frequency would work best? Oncologists also can’t keep pace with the torrent of cancer research findings and therapies, genomic techniques, and patient record data. It is just too much for even a highly-trained scientist to manage.

In 2012 Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center began work on a Watson application to recommend cancer treatments, using data from Sloan-Kettering’s clinical database of over one million patients along with treatment guidelines and published research to help Sloan-Kettering researchers to recommend personalized treatment options for lung cancer patients. The Watson application needs to pass a series of tests in order to be used on cancer patients, and actually being able to use Watson is more complex than originally envisioned. For instance, Sloan-Kettering oncologist Dr. Mark Kris displayed a screen from Watson that listed three potential treatments, but Watson was less than 32 percent confident that any of them were correct. Ari Caroline, director of Sloan Kettering’s quantitative analysis and strategic initiatives group has tutored Watson and has said that system was still in pilot mode. But progress is genuine, and Caroline believes Watson will soon be able to guide oncologists in selecting treatment options and tackling new research. A final version of the system has not yet been released.

Researchers at the University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center worked with IBM for a year to build a version of Watson called Oncology Expert Advisor (OEA) to recommend cancer treatments by mining medical literature, with an initial focus on acute leukemia. Watson learned from a variety of data about which cancer treatments worked best and which should be avoided for specific patients. OEA “reads” the medical records of patients to generate case summaries. It then weights the patient profile against its knowledge base to suggest treatment options relevant to that particular patient, based on literature, guidelines and expert recommendations. When asked by a doctor about a patient, Watson’s algorithms search for possible treatments and rank them according to levels of confidence up to 100%, with each option linked to supporting evidence.

The project initially stumbled because IBM engineers and Anderson doctors couldn’t understand each other. IBM developers worked elsewhere and only visited Anderson every few weeks to talk to doctors. When IBM developers and doctors started meeting several times a week, the application became much better and the leukemia advisor is nearly ready for use. However, it might take two more years before Watson could handle other types of cancer. And although Watson might help oncology specialists at M.D. Anderson identify leukemia treatment options, it can’t substitute for the expertise of an experienced doctor, according to Lynda Chin, chairperson of the M.D. Anderson genomic department. The cancer experts have seen patients a thousand times, and sometimes their decisions are based on intuition that’s difficult to explain. The Anderson project was valued at nearly $15 million, and IBM management is hoping it could grow to $100 million. The Anderson project plans to expand to other cancer types once the prototype becomes more developed.

In November 2013 IBM announced it would make Watson technology available via the Internet as a cloud service that could be used by many different industries. IBM will open parts of the system to outside developers to create businesses and mobile applications based on cognitive computing. A Watson Developer Cloud provides tools and methodologies for developers to work with a Watson system, a content store supplying both free and fee-based data for new applications, and about five hundred subject matter experts from IBM and third parties. Welltok used these tools to create a mobile Watson app called CareWell Concierge for Intelligent Health Itineraries for consumers. Users will be able to participate with Watson in conversations about their health. Fluid Retail is developing a personalized shopping assistant. MD Buyline is developing a Watson app to advise hospital managers about procurement of medical equipment and supplies.

IBM will deliver three new cloud-based products based on Watson’s cognitive intelligence and capabilities. IBM Watson Discovery Advisor is aimed at the pharmaceutical, publishing, and education industries, and will wade through search results to deliver data faster and help researchers formulate conclusions. IBM Watson Analytics is a cloud-based service that provides insights, including visual representations, based on raw big data enterprises send to Watson. IBM Watson Explorer is a cloud service that will provide a unified view of a user’s information, facilitating the revelation and sharing of data-driven insights.
IBM has also made Watson easier and less expensive to use. The latest version of Watson is 24 times faster than the version used in the 2011 Jeopardy contest, using only 10 percent of the hardware used in the Jeopardy version.

Nevertheless, Watson thus far has not produced much revenue for IBM—only about $100 million from commercialization efforts between 2011 and 2014. IBM CEO Virginia Rometty is hoping Watson will be able to produce $10 billion in annual revenue within a decade, and that Watson will bring in $1 billion in revenue per year by 2018.

In order to effectively commercialize the technology, IBM will need to expand Watson’s knowledge domains, and this is its greatest challenge. Turning Watson into a useful business tool requires an enormous amount of work. Watson has to learn the terminology and master the domains of expertise in many different areas, including health care and scientific research, understand the context of how that language is used, and how to correlate questions with the correct answers. Watson doesn’t work yet with data from audio, video, and animations and with languages other than English. It can’t come up yet with its own ideas.

IBM will have to be careful not to oversell what Watson can do, so that Watson does not end up like other artificial intelligence systems where expectations were way overblown. Making machines that beat humans at chess or a TV game show is much easier than solving problems in the real world.

According to Curt Monash, president of Monash Research, Watson hasn’t yet overcome the hurdle that derailed AI in the 1980s, which was that AI was only able to capture small pieces of a limited knowledge domain for a single-purpose use. Watson is having more trouble solving real-life problems than Jeopardy questions. Watson’s basic learning process requiring IBM engineers to master the technicalities of a customer’s business and translate those requirements into usable software has been very arduous.

It remains to be seen whether the complexity of establishing a body of knowledge and training an intelligent system is repeatable and scalable for other types of work and whether it creates an opportunities for differentiation and competitive advantage. Watson is very much a work in progress.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

11-13  How powerful is Watson? Describe its technology. Why does it require so much powerful hardware?

11-14  How “intelligent” is Watson? What can it do? What can’t it do?

11-15  What kinds of problems is Watson able to solve? How useful a tool is it for knowledge management and decision making?

11-16  Do you think Watson will be as useful in other industries and disciplines as IBM hopes? Will it be beneficial to everyone? Explain your answer.

**MyMISLab**

Go to [mymislab.com](http://mymislab.com) for Auto-graded writing questions as well as the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

11-17  How do each of the following types of systems acquire and represent knowledge: Expert system, case-based reasoning, neural network?

11-18  How do enterprise content management systems help organizations manage structured and semistructured knowledge? What are two examples of each type of knowledge handled by these systems?
Chapter 11 References


This page intentionally left blank
LEARNING OBJECTIVES
After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. What are the different types of decisions and how does the decision-making process work? How do information systems support the activities of managers and management decision making?
2. How do business intelligence and business analytics support decision making?
3. How do different decision-making constituencies in an organization use business intelligence? What is the role of information systems in helping people working in a group make decisions more efficiently?

MyMISLab™
Visit mymislab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.

CHAPTER CASES
Germany Wins the World Cup with Big Data at Its Side
Big Data Make Cities Smarter
America’s Cup: The Tension between Technology and Human Decision Makers
How Much Does Data-Driven Planting Help Farmers?

VIDEO CASES
FreshDirect Uses Business Intelligence to Manage Its Online Grocery
Business Intelligence: Intelligence Helps the Cincinnati Zoo
Instructional Video: FreshDirect’s Secret Sauce
Oracle’s Business Intelligence App
In a stunning display of talent, resilience, and teamwork, Germany won the 2014 World Cup, defeating Argentina 1–0. Argentina had Lionel Messi, the 2014 World Cup’s best player. Brazil, whom the Germans defeated 7–1 in the semi-finals, was considered the overwhelming favorite. Exactly how did Germany pull this off?

The German team sparkled with individual talent in every position, and was praised for playing brilliantly as a team. But the winners had another behind-the-scenes advantage: Big data was at their side. The German team was able to use information technology to analyze massive amounts of data about teams’ performance and then use what it had learned to improve how it played. Each of the 32 competing 2014 World Cup teams had a dedicated video and performance analyst, but Germany appears to have been the only one that employed a special database and software to measure and analyze individual and team performance and strategies.

In 2012, the German Football Association partnered with German software giant SAP AG to create a custom match analysis tool called Match Insights that collects and analyzes massive amounts of player performance data. Match Insights analyzes video data from on-field cameras that capture thousands of data points per second, including player speed and position. These data are organized and stored in an SAP database. Match Insights uses SAP HANA in-memory computing and analytic software to analyze vast quantities of data in real time (see Chapter 6). Match Insights allows coaches to target performance metrics for specific players and give them feedback via their mobile devices.
About 50 students at Deutsche Sporthochschule Köln (a sports university in Cologne) started compiling data about the teams and players that would be competing for the next World Cup, including every play they had run, and input the data into the Match Insights database. These data included video from eight on-field cameras that surround the area where the match is played, which the database views as a grid. The system assigns each German and opposing soccer player a unique identifier, so that their movements can be tracked digitally. Match Insights analyzes these data to measure key performance indicators, such as possession time (the percentage of time a team has the ball in a match), the number of touches controlling the ball, and movement speeds.

Improving speed was a major objective for the German team in 2014. Match Insights enabled the team to analyze statistics about average possession time and reduce it from 3.4 seconds to about 1.1 seconds. Better possession time enabled the German team to improve on their aggressive, fast-paced style of playing that brought them to World Cup victory.

Match Insights can show the team virtual “defensive shadows” that indicate how much area a player can protect with his own body. This information helps the team visualize and exploit weak links in an opponent’s setup.

The German team also used Match Insights to evaluate the performance of its competitors. For example, the Germans were able to see before playing against the French that this team was very concentrated in the middle but left spaces on the flanks because their full-backs did not push up properly. The German team also reviewed extensive data about how Brazil’s players reacted in pressure situations, their preferred routes, and how they responded when fouled.

Match Insights was able to make its vast trove of performance data available to team members’ mobile phones or tablets. With help from SAP, the team developed a mobile app that sends short clips of analysis to individual players or groups of players. Right after a game, every player receives several visual examples of him doing things well and poorly and may also receive visual data about the opposition. Players can also view their performance data in the players’ lounge.

Some commentators have described Match Insights as Germany’s 12th man. SAP plans to offering Match Insights to other clubs and soccer federations.


Soccer is one of a growing number of sports being transformed by big data. Others include baseball (think Moneyball), basketball, and tennis. Data analytics are just starting to be used in soccer, and the German team appears to have been in the forefront for the 2014 World Cup soccer competition. The chapter-opening case shows how advanced analytics helped this team come out on top by providing very detailed information about individual player and team performance that could help the team make better decisions about how to improve its game. The opening case has important lessons for other organizations and businesses as well: You can be more efficient and competitive if, like the German World Cup team, you know how to use data to drive your decisions.
The chapter-opening diagram calls attention to important points raised by this case and this chapter. World Cup Soccer is one of the globe's most competitive and highly-charged sports, and the German team was not favored to win the 2014 competition. However, it appears to be the first World Cup team to take advantage of new opportunities from information technology, including tools for capturing, storing, and analyzing big data regarding player and team performance. Other teams were hamstrung by earlier models of decision making that didn't take advantage of available technology. The German World Cup team collected vast quantities of detailed statistical and visual data and was able to devise a better set of metrics for analyzing player and team performance. Match Insights helped World Cup managers, coaches, and players make more precise, fine-grained decisions on how to best play the game.

Here are some questions to think about: How did using Match Insights change the way the German World Cup team made decisions? Give examples of two decisions that were improved by using Match Insights. What can businesses learn from the German 2014 World Cup victory?

12.1 What are the different types of decisions and how does the decision-making process work? How do information systems support the activities of managers and management decision making?

Decision making in businesses used to be limited to management. Today, lower-level employees are responsible for some of these decisions, as information systems make information available to lower levels of the business. But what do we mean by better decision making? How does decision making take place in businesses and other organizations? Let's take a closer look.
BUSINESS VALUE OF IMPROVED DECISION MAKING

What does it mean to the business to make better decisions? What is the monetary value of improved decision making? Table 12.1 attempts to measure the monetary value of improved decision making for a small U.S. manufacturing firm with $280 million in annual revenue and 140 employees. The firm has identified a number of key decisions where new system investments might improve the quality of decision making. The table provides selected estimates of annual value (in the form of cost savings or increased revenue) from improved decision making in selected areas of the business.

We can see from Table 12.1 that decisions are made at all levels of the firm and that some of these decisions are common, routine, and numerous. Although the value of improving any single decision may be small, improving hundreds of thousands of “small” decisions adds up to a large annual value for the business.

TYPES OF DECISIONS

Chapters 1 and 2 showed that there are different levels in an organization. Each of these levels has different information requirements for decision support and responsibility for different types of decisions (see Figure 12.1). Decisions are classified as structured, semistructured, and unstructured.

Unstructured decisions are those in which the decision maker must provide judgment, evaluation, and insight to solve the problem. Each of these decisions is novel, important, and nonroutine, and there is no well-understood or agreed-on procedure for making them.

Structured decisions, by contrast, are repetitive and routine, and they involve a definite procedure for handling them so that they do not have to be treated each time as if they were new. Many decisions have elements of both types of decisions and are semistructured, where only part of the problem has a clear-cut answer provided by an accepted procedure. In general, structured decisions are more prevalent at lower organizational levels, whereas unstructured problems are more common at higher levels of the firm.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 12.1 BUSINESS VALUE OF ENHANCED DECISION MAKING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE DECISION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allocate support to most valuable customers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predict call center daily demand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decide parts inventory levels daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify competitive bids from major suppliers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule production to fill orders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allocate labor to complete a job</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Senior executives face many unstructured decision situations, such as establishing the firm’s 5- or 10-year goals or deciding new markets to enter. Answering the question “Should we enter a new market?” would require access to news, government reports, and industry views as well as high-level summaries of firm performance. However, the answer would also require senior managers to use their own best judgment and poll other managers for their opinions.

Middle management faces more structured decision scenarios but their decisions may include unstructured components. A typical middle-level management decision might be “Why is the reported order fulfillment report showing a decline over the past six months at a distribution center in Minneapolis?” This middle manager will obtain a report from the firm’s enterprise system or distribution management system on order activity and operational efficiency at the Minneapolis distribution center. This is the structured part of the decision. But before arriving at an answer, this middle manager will have to interview employees and gather more unstructured information from external sources about local economic conditions or sales trends.

Operational management and rank-and-file employees tend to make more structured decisions. For example, a supervisor on an assembly line has to decide whether an hourly paid worker is entitled to overtime pay. If the employee worked more than eight hours on a particular day, the supervisor would routinely grant overtime pay for any time beyond eight hours that was clocked on that day.

A sales account representative often has to make decisions about extending credit to customers by consulting the firm’s customer database that contains credit information. If the customer met the firm’s prespecified criteria for granting credit, the account representative would grant that customer credit to make a purchase. In both instances, the decisions are highly structured and are

---

**Figure 12.1** Information Requirements of Key Decision-Making Groups in a Firm

Senior managers, middle managers, operational managers, and employees have different types of decisions and information requirements.
routinely made thousands of times each day in most large firms. The answer has been preprogrammed into the firm's payroll and accounts receivable systems.

THE DECISION-MAKING PROCESS

Making a decision is a multistep process. Simon (1960) described four different stages in decision making: intelligence, design, choice, and implementation (see Figure 12.2).

**Intelligence** consists of discovering, identifying, and understanding the problems occurring in the organization—why a problem exists, where, and what effects it is having on the firm.

**Design** involves identifying and exploring various solutions to the problem.

**Choice** consists of choosing among solution alternatives.

**Implementation** involves making the chosen alternative work and continuing to monitor how well the solution is working.

What happens if the solution you have chosen doesn’t work? Figure 12.2 shows that you can return to an earlier stage in the decision-making process and repeat it if necessary. For instance, in the face of declining sales, a sales management team may decide to pay the sales force a higher commission for making more sales to spur on the sales effort. If this does not produce sales increases, managers would need to investigate whether the problem stems from

**Figure 12.2 Stages in Decision Making**

- **Intelligence**: Problem discovery; What is the problem?
- **Design**: Solution discovery; What are the possible solutions?
- **Choice**: Choosing solutions; What is the best solution?
- **Implementation**: Solution testing; Is the solution working? Can we make it work better?

The decision-making process is broken down into four stages.
poor product design, inadequate customer support, or a host of other causes that call for a different solution.

**MANAGERS AND DECISION MAKING IN THE REAL WORLD**

The premise of this book and this chapter is that systems to support decision making produce better decision making by managers and employees, above average returns on investment for the firm, and ultimately higher profitability. However, information systems cannot improve all the different kinds of decisions taking place in an organization. Let's examine the role of managers and decision making in organizations to see why this is so.

**Managerial Roles**

Managers play key roles in organizations. Their responsibilities range from making decisions, to writing reports, to attending meetings, to arranging birthday parties. We are able to better understand managerial functions and roles by examining classical and contemporary models of managerial behavior.

The classical model of management, which describes what managers do, was largely unquestioned for the more than 70 years since the 1920s. Henri Fayol and other early writers first described the five classical functions of managers as planning, organizing, coordinating, deciding, and controlling. This description of management activities dominated management thought for a long time, and it is still popular today.

The classical model describes formal managerial functions but does not address exactly what managers do when they plan, decide things, and control the work of others. For this, we must turn to the work of contemporary behavioral scientists who have studied managers in daily action. Behavioral models state that the actual behavior of managers appears to be less systematic, more informal, less reflective, more reactive, and less well organized than the classical model would have us believe.

Observers find that managerial behavior actually has five attributes that differ greatly from the classical description. First, managers perform a great deal of work at an unrelenting pace—studies have found that managers engage in more than 600 different activities each day, with no break in their pace. Second, managerial activities are fragmented; most activities last for less than nine minutes, and only 10 percent of the activities exceed one hour in duration. Third, managers prefer current, specific, and ad hoc information (printed information often will be too old). Fourth, they prefer oral forms of communication to written forms because oral media provide greater flexibility, require less effort, and bring a faster response. Fifth, managers give high priority to maintaining a diverse and complex web of contacts that act as an informal information system and helps them execute their personal agendas and short-and long-term goals.

Analyzing managers’ day-to-day behavior, Henry Mintzberg found that it could be classified into 10 managerial roles. Managerial roles are expectations of the activities that managers should perform in an organization. Mintzberg found that these managerial roles fell into three categories: interpersonal, informational, and decisional.

**Interpersonal Roles.** Managers act as figureheads for the organization when they represent their companies to the outside world and perform symbolic duties, such as giving out employee awards, in their interpersonal role.
Managers act as leaders, attempting to motivate, counsel, and support subordinates. Managers also act as liaisons between various organizational levels; within each of these levels, they serve as liaisons among the members of the management team. Managers provide time and favors, which they expect to be returned.

**Informational Roles.** In their informational role, managers act as the nerve centers of their organizations, receiving the most concrete, up-to-date information and redistributing it to those who need to be aware of it. Managers are therefore information disseminators and spokespersons for their organizations.

**Decisional Roles.** Managers make decisions. In their decisional role, they act as entrepreneurs by initiating new kinds of activities; they handle disturbances arising in the organization; they allocate resources to staff members who need them; and they negotiate conflicts and mediate between conflicting groups.

Table 12.2, based on Mintzberg's role classifications, is one look at where systems can and cannot help managers. The table shows that information systems are now capable of supporting most, but not all, areas of managerial life.

**Real-World Decision Making**
We now see that information systems are not helpful for all managerial roles. And in those managerial roles where information systems might improve decisions, investments in information technology do not always produce positive results. There are three main reasons: information quality, management filters, and organizational culture (see Chapter 3).

**Information Quality.** High-quality decisions require high-quality information. Table 12.3 describes information quality dimensions that affect the quality of decisions.

---

**TABLE 12.2 MANAGERIAL ROLES AND SUPPORTING INFORMATION SYSTEMS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROLE</th>
<th>BEHAVIOR</th>
<th>SUPPORT SYSTEMS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interpersonal Roles</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figurehead</td>
<td></td>
<td>Telepresence systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leader</td>
<td>Interpersonal</td>
<td>Telepresence, social networks, Twitter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liaison</td>
<td></td>
<td>Smartphones, social networks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Informational Roles</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nerve center</td>
<td></td>
<td>Management information systems, executive support system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disseminator</td>
<td>Information</td>
<td>E-mail, social networks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spokesperson</td>
<td>processing</td>
<td>Webinars, telepresence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Decisional Roles</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entrepreneur</td>
<td>Decision</td>
<td>None exist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disturbance handler</td>
<td>making</td>
<td>None exist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource allocator</td>
<td></td>
<td>Business intelligence, decision-support system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negotiator</td>
<td></td>
<td>None exist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sources: Kenneth C. Laudon and Jane P. Laudon; and Mintzberg, 1971.
If the output of information systems does not meet these quality criteria, decision making will suffer. Chapter 6 has shown that corporate databases and files have varying levels of inaccuracy and incompleteness, which in turn will degrade the quality of decision making.

Management Filters. Even with timely, accurate information, some managers make bad decisions. Managers (like all human beings) absorb information through a series of filters to make sense of the world around them. Managers have selective attention, focus on certain kinds of problems and solutions, and have a variety of biases that reject information that does not conform to their prior conceptions.

For instance, Wall Street firms such as Bear Stearns and Lehman Brothers imploded in 2008 because they underestimated the risk of their investments in complex mortgage securities, many of which were based on subprime loans that were more likely to default. The computer models they and other financial institutions used to manage risk were based on overly optimistic assumptions and overly simplistic data about what might go wrong. Management wanted to make sure that their firms’ capital was not all tied up as a cushion against defaults from risky investments, preventing them from investing it to generate profits. So the designers of these risk management systems were encouraged to measure risks in a way that minimized their importance. Some trading desks also oversimplified the information maintained about the mortgage securities to make them appear as simple bonds with higher ratings than were warranted by their underlying components.

Organizational Inertia and Politics. Organizations are bureaucracies with limited capabilities and competencies for acting decisively. When environments change and businesses need to adopt new business models to survive, strong forces within organizations resist making decisions calling for major change. Decisions taken by a firm often represent a balancing of the firm’s various interest groups rather than the best solution to the problem.

Studies of business restructuring find that firms tend to ignore poor performance until threatened by outside takeovers, and they systematically blame poor performance on external forces beyond their control—such as economic conditions (the economy), foreign competition, and rising prices—rather than blaming senior or middle management for poor business judgment.

### Table 12.3 Information Quality Dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quality Dimension</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accuracy</td>
<td>Do the data represent reality?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integrity</td>
<td>Are the structure of data and relationships among the entities and attributes consistent?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consistency</td>
<td>Are data elements consistently defined?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completeness</td>
<td>Are all the necessary data present?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validity</td>
<td>Do data values fall within defined ranges?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timeliness</td>
<td>Are data available when needed?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessibility</td>
<td>Are the data accessible, comprehensible, and usable?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
High-Velocity Automated Decision Making

Today, many decisions made by organizations are not made by managers, or any humans. For instance, when you enter a query into Google’s search engine, Google has to decide which URLs to display in about half a second on average (500 milliseconds). The New York Stock Exchange spent over $450 million in 2010–2011 to build a trading platform that executes incoming orders in less than 50 milliseconds. High frequency traders at electronic stock exchanges execute their trades in under 30 milliseconds.

The class of decisions that are highly structured and automated is growing rapidly. What makes this kind of automated high-speed decision making possible are computer algorithms that precisely define the steps to be followed to produce a decision, very large databases, very high-speed processors, and software optimized to the task. In these situations, humans (including managers) are eliminated from the decision chain because they are too slow.

This also means organizations in these areas are making decisions faster than what managers can monitor or control. Inability to control automated decisions was a major factor in the “Flash Crash” experienced by U.S. stock markets on May 6, 2010, when the Dow Jones Industrial Average fell over 600 points in a matter of minutes before rebounding later that day. The stock market was overwhelmed by a huge wave of sell orders triggered primarily by high-speed computerized trading programs within a few seconds, causing shares of some companies like Procter & Gamble to sell for pennies. The past few years have seen a series of similar breakdowns in computerized trading systems, including one on August 1, 2012 when a software error caused Knight Capital to enter millions of faulty trades in less than an hour. The trading glitch created wild surges and plunges in nearly 150 stocks and left Knight with $440 million in losses.

How does the Simon framework of intelligence-design-choice-implementation work in high-velocity decision environments? Essentially, the intelligence, design, choice, and implementation parts of the decision-making process are captured by the software’s algorithms. The humans who wrote the software have already identified the problem, designed a method for finding a solution, defined a range of acceptable solutions, and implemented the solution. Obviously, with humans out of the loop, great care needs to be taken to ensure the proper operation of these systems lest they do significant harm to organizations and humans.

12.2 How do business intelligence and business analytics support decision making?

Chapter 2 introduced you to the different types of systems used for supporting management decision making. At the foundation of all of these decision support systems are a business intelligence and business analytics infrastructure that supplies the data and the analytic tools for supporting decision making. In this section, we want to answer the following questions:

- What are business intelligence (BI) and business analytics (BA)?
- Who makes business intelligence and business analytics hardware and software?
- Who are the users of business intelligence?
What kinds of analytical tools come with a BI/BA suite?
What do managers use these tools?
What are some examples of firms who have used these tools?
What management strategies are used for developing BI/BA capabilities?

WHAT IS BUSINESS INTELLIGENCE?

“Business intelligence (BI)” is a term used by hardware and software vendors and information technology consultants to describe the infrastructure for warehousing, integrating, reporting, and analyzing data that come from the business environment, including big data. The foundation infrastructure collects, stores, cleans, and makes relevant information available to managers. Think databases, data warehouses, data marts, Hadoop, and analytic platforms, which we described in Chapter 6. “Business analytics (BA)” is also a vendor-defined term that focuses more on tools and techniques for analyzing and understanding data. Think online analytical processing (OLAP), statistics, models, and data mining, which we also introduced in Chapter 6.

Business intelligence and analytics are essentially about integrating all the information streams produced by a firm into a single, coherent enterprise-wide set of data, and then, using modeling, statistical analysis tools (like normal distributions, correlation and regression analysis, Chi square analysis, forecasting, and cluster analysis), and data mining tools to make sense out of all these data so managers can make better decisions and plans. The German World Cup soccer team described in the chapter-opening case is using business intelligence and analytics to make some very fine-grained decisions about how to improve team and player performance.

Business Intelligence Vendors

It is important to remember that business intelligence and analytics are products defined by technology vendors and consulting firms. They consist of hardware and software suites sold primarily by large system vendors to very large Fortune 500 firms. The largest five providers of these products are Oracle, SAP, IBM, Microsoft, and SAS. Microsoft’s products are aimed at small to medium-sized firms, and they are based on desktop tools familiar to employees (such as Excel spreadsheet software), Microsoft SharePoint collaboration tools, and Microsoft SQL Server database software. According to Gartner Inc., the global business intelligence and analytics market was $14.4 billion in 2013 (Gartner, 2014). This makes business intelligence and business analytics one of the fastest growing and largest segments in the U.S. software market.

THE BUSINESS INTELLIGENCE ENVIRONMENT

Figure 12.3 gives an overview of a business intelligence environment, highlighting the kinds of hardware, software, and management capabilities that the major vendors offer and that firms develop over time. There are six elements in this business intelligence environment:

- **Data from the business environment**: Businesses must deal with both structured and unstructured data from many different sources, including big data. The data need to be integrated and organized so that they can be analyzed and used by human decision makers.

- **Business intelligence infrastructure**: The underlying foundation of business intelligence is a powerful database system that captures all the
relevant data to operate the business. The data may be stored in transactional databases or combined and integrated into an enterprise-data warehouse or series of interrelated data marts.

- **Business analytics toolset**: A set of software tools are used to analyze data and produce reports, respond to questions posed by managers, and track the progress of the business using key indicators of performance.

- **Managerial users and methods**: Business intelligence hardware and software are only as intelligent as the human beings who use them. Managers impose order on the analysis of data using a variety of managerial methods that define strategic business goals and specify how progress will be measured. These include business performance management and balanced scorecard approaches focusing on key performance indicators and industry strategic analyses focusing on changes in the general business environment, with special attention to competitors. Without strong senior management oversight, business analytics can produce a great deal of information, reports, and online screens that focus on the wrong matters and divert attention from the real issues. You need to remember that, so far, only humans can ask intelligent questions.

- **Delivery platform—MIS, DSS, ESS**: The results from business intelligence and analytics are delivered to managers and employees in a variety of ways, depending on what they need to know to perform their jobs. MIS, DSS, and ESS, which we introduced in Chapter 2, deliver information and knowledge to different people and levels in the firm—operational employees, middle managers, and senior executives. In the past, these systems could not share data and operated as independent systems. Today, one suite of hardware and software tools in the form of a business intelligence and analytics package is able to integrate all this information and bring it to managers’ desktop or mobile platforms.
• **User interface:** Business people are no longer tied to their desks and desktops. They often learn quicker from a visual representation of data than from a dry report with columns and rows of information. Today’s business analytics software suites feature **data visualization** tools, such as rich graphs, charts, dashboards, and maps. They also are able to deliver reports on BlackBerrys, iPhones, iPads, and other mobile handhelds as well as on the firm’s Web portal. BA software is adding capabilities to post information on Twitter, Facebook, or internal social media to support decision making in an online group setting rather than in a face-to-face meeting.

### BUSINESS INTELLIGENCE AND ANALYTICS CAPABILITIES

Business intelligence and analytics promise to deliver correct, nearly real-time information to decision makers, and the analytic tools help them quickly understand the information and take action. There are six analytic functionalities that BI systems deliver to achieve these ends:

- **Production reports:** These are predefined reports based on industry-specific requirements (see Table 12.4).
- **Parameterized reports:** Users enter several parameters as in a pivot table to filter data and isolate impacts of parameters. For instance, you might want to enter region and time of day to understand how sales of a product vary by region and time. If you were Starbucks, you might find that customers in the East buy most of their coffee in the morning, whereas in the Northwest customers buy coffee throughout the day. This finding might lead to different marketing and ad campaigns in each region. (See the discussion of pivot tables in Section 12.3.)
- **Dashboards/scorecards:** These are visual tools for presenting performance data defined by users.
- **Ad hoc query/search/report creation:** These allow users to create their own reports based on queries and searches.
- **Drill down:** This is the ability to move from a high-level summary to a more detailed view.

#### TABLE 12.4 EXAM PLES OF BUSINESS INTELLIGENCE PREDEFINED PRODUCTION REPORTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BUSINESS FUNCTIONAL AREA</th>
<th>PRODUCTION REPORTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sales</td>
<td>Forecast sales; sales team performance; cross-selling; sales cycle times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service/Call Center</td>
<td>Customer satisfaction; service cost; resolution rates; churn rates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marketing</td>
<td>Campaign effectiveness; loyalty and attrition; market basket analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procurement and Support</td>
<td>Direct and indirect spending; off-contract purchases; supplier performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Chain</td>
<td>Backlog; fulfillment status; order cycle time; bill of materials analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financials</td>
<td>General ledger; accounts receivable and payable; cash flow; profitability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human Resources</td>
<td>Employee productivity; compensation; workforce demographics; retention</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Forecasts, scenarios, models: These include the ability to perform linear forecasting, what-if scenario analysis, and analyze data using standard statistical tools.

**Who Uses Business Intelligence and Business Analytics?**

In previous chapters, we have described the different information constituencies in business firms—from senior managers to middle managers, analysts, and operational employees. This also holds true for BI and BA systems (see Figure 12.4). Over 80 percent of the audience for BI consists of casual users who rely largely on production reports. Senior executives tend to use BI to monitor firm activities using visual interfaces like dashboards and scorecards. Middle managers and analysts are much more likely to be immersed in the data and software, entering queries and slicing and dicing the data along different dimensions. Operational employees will, along with customers and suppliers, be looking mostly at prepackaged reports.

**Predictive Analytics**

An important capability of business intelligence analytics is the ability to model future events and behaviors, such as the probability that a customer will respond to an offer to purchase a product. **Predictive analytics** use statistical analysis, data mining techniques, historical data, and assumptions about future conditions to predict future trends and behavior patterns. Variables that can be measured to predict future behavior are identified. For example, an insurance company might use variables such as age, gender, and driving record as predictors of driving safety when issuing auto insurance policies. A collection of such predictors is combined into a predictive model for forecasting future probabilities with an acceptable level of reliability.

FedEx has been using predictive analytics to develop models that predict how customers will respond to price changes and new services, which customers are most at risk of switching to competitors, and how much revenue will be

---

**Figure 12.4 Business Intelligence Users**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Power Users: Producers (20% of employees)</th>
<th>Casual Users: Consumers (80% of employees)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IT developers</td>
<td>Customers/Suppliers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameterized Reports</td>
<td>Operational employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dashboards/Scorecards</td>
<td>Senior managers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ad hoc queries; Drill down Search/OLAP</td>
<td>Managers/Staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forecasts; What if Analysis; statistical models</td>
<td>Business analysts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Casual users are consumers of BI output, while intense power users are the producers of reports, new analyses, models, and forecasts.
generated by new storefront or drop-box locations. The accuracy rate of FedEx’s predictive analytics system ranges from 65 to 90 percent.

Predictive analytics are being incorporated into numerous business intelligence applications for sales, marketing, finance, fraud detection, and health care. One of the most well-known applications is credit scoring, which is used throughout the financial services industry. When you apply for a new credit card, scoring models process your credit history, loan application, and purchase data to determine your likelihood of making future credit payments on time. Telecommunications companies use predictive analytics to identify which customers are most profitable, which are most likely to leave, and which new services and plans will be most likely to retain customers. Health care insurers have been analyzing data for years to identify which patients are most likely to generate high costs.

Many companies employ predictive analytics to predict response to direct marketing campaigns. By identifying customers less likely to respond, companies are able to lower their marketing and sales costs by bypassing this group and focusing their resources on customers who have been identified as more promising. For instance, the U.S. division of The Body Shop PLC used predictive analytics and its database of catalog, Web, and retail store customers to identify customers who were more likely to make catalog purchases. That information helped the company build a more precise and targeted mailing list for its catalogs, improving the response rate for catalog mailings and catalog revenues.

**Big Data Analytics**

Predictive analytics are starting to use big data from both private and public sectors, including data from social media, customer transactions, and output from sensors and machines. In e-commerce, many online retailers have capabilities for making personalized online product recommendations to their Web site visitors to help stimulate purchases and guide their decisions about what merchandise to stock. However, most of these product recommendations have been based on the behaviors of similar groups of customers, such as those with incomes under $50,000 or whose ages are between 18–25 years. Now some retailers are starting to analyze the tremendous quantities of online and in-store customer data they collect along with social media data to make these recommendations more individualized. These efforts are translating into higher customer spending and customer retention rates. Table 12.5 provides examples of companies using big data analytics.

In the public sector, big-data analytics has been driving the movement toward “smart cities,” which make intensive use of digital technology to make better decisions about running cities and serving their residents. Public recordkeeping has produced warehouses full of property transfers, tax records, corporate filings, environmental compliance audits, restaurant inspections, building maintenance reports, mass transit appraisals, crime data, health department stats, public education records, utility reviews, and more. Municipalities are adding more data captured through sensors, location data from mobile phones, and targeted smartphone apps. Predictive modeling programs now inform public policy decisions on utility management, transportation operation, healthcare delivery, and public safety. What’s more, the ability to evaluate how changes in one service impact the operation and delivery of other services enables holistic problem-solving that could only be dreamed of a generation ago. The Interactive Session on Technology describes how big-data analytics are helping New York City and Barcelona become “smarter.”
New York City wants very much to be a “smart city.” In the fall of 2013, New York University, with support from city government, opened the Center for Urban Science and Progress under the direction of Steven E. Koonin, a former Obama administration undersecretary for science in the Department of Energy. Koonin foresees work on a broad range of quality of life and urban efficiency projects ranging from traffic management to reducing water and electricity consumption by 30 to 50 percent in ten years’ time.

The first target for a 10-member team of graduate students, music professors, and computer scientists is noise pollution. Starting with data from 311 (the non-emergency line for citizen complaints on a range of issues including noise disturbances), the researchers will gather additional data from wireless sensors on windows and buildings and noise meters on traffic lights and street corners. A smartphone app may also be employed in a crowd-sourcing effort to encourage citizen participation and gather even more comprehensive statistics. One possible outcome is a noise limit ordinance for vehicles. Using a combination of incentives and violation fees, citizens will be persuaded to replace or repair malfunctioning mufflers. Computer simulations will inform decision-makers about the optimum combination of enforcement mechanisms and sequence of steps to maximize compliance.

Zoning, building classification, and traffic flow data, along with Department of Sanitation routes and pickup times will be used to optimize garbage collection. The goal will be to service as many commercial districts as possible in the middle of the night when traffic is lightest and the fewest residents will be disturbed. Next up is a plan to assemble thermal images of buildings across the city that will serve as the basis for energy use studies.

A terabyte of information (equivalent to 143 million printed pages) flows daily to New York’s Office of Policy and Strategic Initiatives from every corner of the city, from death certificates to minutiae such as the type of boilers and sprinklers installed in the city’s 900,000 buildings. The Office was tasked with reducing the number of illegal conversions—the creation of additional dwelling units in buildings that lack legally required infrastructure, such as adequate means of egress and electrical wiring. The team combined data from 19 agencies and created a model to optimize building inspections. Building age, repair permits, foreclosure notices, late tax payments, and other similar data fed a program that fueled an increase from 13 percent to 70 percent of building inspections identifying a hazardous dwelling. Previously, the city’s 200 building inspectors had futilely attempted to respond to the more than 20,000 annual complaints based solely on sketchy grievance descriptions.

Michael Flowers is the analytics director for the Office. When the Department of Environmental Protection wanted to improve its efficiency in locating restaurants that illegally dump cooking oil into sewers—the primary cause of clogged city pipes—it turned to Flowers’s team. Using restaurant location, geospatial sewer location, and certificates on file with the Business Integrity Commission, a data sieving program easily pinpointed restaurants that had not contracted with a grease-hauling service and their nearest storm drain. Health department inspectors sent to these locations registered a stunning 95 percent success rate in catching culprits.

Participants in a Big Apps competition, begun in 2009, use the more than 1,000 data sets now publicly available on the NYC Open Data Portal as their primary resource. In the 2013 Best Jobs and Economic Mobility category, the ChildCareDesk app garnered first place. Maps, Yelp reviews, and detailed reports from various city accreditation agencies assist parental decision making, and an alert system notifies them when a vacancy has arisen. Other winning apps in previous years provide the locations of public restrooms and the safest routes for bicyclists.

Flowers sees even more data that can be mined—the hundreds of thousands of daily posts to Twitter, Facebook and other social media sites. Complaints that do not make it to city agencies concerning unhygienic restaurants, uncollected garbage, and unsafe streets can be gleaned from these sources to further the cause of enhancing New Yorker’s quality of life. This may be a bridge too far for privacy advocates who have been watching the Big Data/Smart City movement with a wary eye. While recognizing Smart City potential for improving services and helping citizens, groups such as the New York Civil Liberties Union worry about possible privacy abuses. Undoubtedly, the release of public data, even absent any surveillance intent, must include safeguards.
Europe remains a step ahead of the United States in the move toward smart cities. Barcelona is among the European cities in the forefront. Its investments include neighborhood-wide high-speed Internet connections and electricity charge points for cars and motorbikes, which cut energy use and generate income. Sensors attached to trash cans alert workers when they need to be emptied. Drivers can use a smartphone application to find the nearest available parking spot on city streets. Irrigation systems built into Barcelona's parks monitor soil moisture and turn on sprinklers when water is needed. The city expects to reduce its water bill by 25 percent per year after installing sensors in local parks, producing estimated annual savings of almost $60 million. Barcelona was wasting a lot of water and now it can control the system directly from an iPad.

Intel research scientists foresee smart cities with drivers who not only know the velocity of the car in front of them, but can simultaneously see three cars to the right, left, and behind. What's more, cameras can detect if surrounding drivers are looking up, down, or forward, and if one of them is balancing a cup along with the steering wheel. These “driver states” will feed predictive modeling programs to calculate the odds of an accident occurring and which vehicles are best-positioned to avert calamity. Decreased collision rates and their attendant injuries and fatalities are no doubt a societal good, but many questions arise with this level of data-sharing. Will law enforcement have access to velocity information that could result in automatic speeding tickets? If you turn around to give a pacifier to the baby in the car seat, will the increase in accident probability garner you an automatic moving violation? While we might all want the information about the careless drivers around us, are we willing to share our own driving foibles?


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. What technologies are New York and Barcelona employing to run their cities more efficiently and improve citizens' quality of life?
2. What are the management, organization, and technology issues that should be addressed by “smart city” initiatives?
3. What problems are solved by “smart cities?” What are the drawbacks?
4. Give examples of four decisions that would be improved in a “smart city.”
5. Would you be concerned if social media data were used to supplement public data to help improve the delivery of municipal services? Why or why not?

Operational Intelligence and Analytics

Some of the decisions described in the Interactive Session on smart cities deal with how to run the business of these cities on a day-to-day basis. These are largely operational decisions, and this type of business activity monitoring is called operational intelligence. Another example of operational intelligence is the use of data generated by sensors on trucks, trailers, and intermodal containers owned by Schneider National, one of North America’s largest truckload, logistics and intermodal services providers. The sensors monitor location, driving behaviors, fuel levels and whether a trailer or container is loaded or empty. Data from fuel tank sensors help Schneider identify the optimal location at which a driver should stop for fuel based on how much is left in the tank, the truck’s destination, and fuel prices en route. General Electric Company (GE) is using myriad sensors to collect data about heat, vibrations, and pressure inside a
massive steam-driven GE generator capable of powering 750,000 homes. These sensor data are analyzed along with data on fuel costs, local weather, demand for power, and alternative supplies of electricity to determine the optimal generator performance for the conditions of the moment (Davenport, 2014).

The Internet of Things is creating huge streams of data from Web activities, smartphones, sensors, gauges, and monitoring devices that can be used for operational intelligence about activities inside and outside the organization. Software for operational intelligence and analytics enables organizations to analyze these streams of big data as they are generated in real time. Companies can set trigger alerts on events or have them fed into live dashboards to help managers with their decisions. For example, Schneider’s sensors capture hard braking in a moving truck and relay the data to corporate headquarters, where the data are tracked in dashboards monitoring safety metrics. The event initiates a conversation between the driver and that person’s supervisor.

Another example of operational intelligence is the use of real-time data in the 34th America’s Cup race, as described in the Interactive Session on Management. As you read this case, try to determine the extent to which information technology was able to replace human decision-makers.

**Location Analytics and Geographic Information Systems**

The Interactive Session on smart cities also describes data and decisions based on location data. BI analytics include location analytics, the ability to gain business insight from the location (geographic) component of data, including location data from mobile phones, output from sensors or scanning devices, and data from maps. For example, location analytics might help a marketer determine which people to target with mobile ads about nearby restaurants.
AMERICA'S CUP: THE TENSION BETWEEN TECHNOLOGY AND HUMAN DECISION MAKERS

On September 25, 2013, Oracle Team USA pulled off one of the greatest comebacks in organized sports by winning the last race of the 34th America's Cup Race on breezy San Francisco Bay. Oracle was down 8–1 to its archival New Zealand in the previous week after losing seven races in a row. Looked like a rout. But then a miracle: Oracle won seven races in a row. And in a winner-take-all finale, Oracle beat Team New Zealand by 44 seconds over the 12-mile race course before thousands of spectators lined up along San Francisco Bay. Both Team USA and Team New Zealand were the highest of high-tech boats ever to leave a designer's computer screen.

In earlier days, America's Cup races were typically among single-hulled sailboats in the 70-foot range that looked like sailboats in the local yacht club, just more so: a single, long, narrow hull, and a really tall mast to hold the sails up. They might get up to 10 miles an hour on the race course.

In 2010, software billionaire Larry Ellison, founder of Oracle, changed all that by spending over $300 million on a new kind of Cup racer: a three-hulled catamaran made of carbon fiber with what looked like an aircraft wing instead of a mast with sails. In two races, the boat, BMW Oracle USA, beat its Swiss contender, Alinghi. Having won the 33rd America's Cup, Ellison could set the boat design and rules for the 34th race in 2013.

The 2013 design was a spectacular jump from traditional sailboats to 21st Century sailing machines. The 2013 boats were 72-foot, twin-hull catamarans dubbed AC72s, capable of over 50 miles per hour—among the fastest sailboats ever built. The AC72 used small hydrofoils underneath the hulls that provided over 12,000 pounds of lift, bringing the boats out of the water completely, and flying like an airplane. In the end, it was unclear to seasoned sailors worldwide whether the AC72 was really a sailboat at all, but rather more aptly called a “sailing machine.”

The 34th America's Cup campaign cost Ellison $100 million, including the cost of a single boat pegged at about $8 million. Oracle had two identical boats built. The new boats were also capable of going completely out of control, usually by digging their bows into the water, and then flipping.

Controlling this wickedly sleek sailing machine requires a lightning-fast collection of massive amounts of data, powerful data management, rapid real-time data analysis, quick decision making, and immediate measurement of the results. In short, all the information technologies needed by a modern business firm. When you can perform all these tasks thousands of times in an hour, you can incrementally improve your performance and have an overwhelming advantage over less IT-savvy opponents on race day. For Team USA, this meant using 250 sensors on the wing, hull, and rudder to gather real-time data on pressure, angles, loads, and strains to monitor the effectiveness of each adjustment. The sensors track 4,000 variables, 10 times a second, producing 90 million data points an hour. The sensors are wired to an onboard server that processes the information, and sends it out on a wireless network to crew member wrist displays. Managing all these data is Oracle Database 11g data management software. The data are also wirelessly transferred to a tender ship running Oracle 11g for near real-time analysis using a family of formulas (called velocity prediction formulas) geared to understanding what makes the boat go fast. Oracle's Application Express presentation graphics summarize the millions of data points and present the boat managers with charts that make sense of the information. The data are also sent to Oracle's Austin data center for more in-depth analysis. Using powerful data analysis tools, USA managers were able to find relationships they had never thought about before. Over several months of practice, from day one to the day before the race, the crew of Team USA could chart a steady improvement in performance. For the first time in history, it seemed possible to leave sailing to the computer hardware and software.

Each Team USA crew member wore a small mobile handheld computer on his wrist to display data on the key performance variables customized for that person’s responsibilities, such as the load balance on a specific rope or the current aerodynamic performance of the wing sail. The captain and tactician had data displayed on their sunglasses. In this way, each crew member gets the data he needs instantly to perform his job. The crew was trained to sail like pilots looking at instruments, rather than sailors looking at the boat and sea for clues. Professional and amateur sailors across the world wondered if the technology had
transformed sailing into something else, something akin to flying drones from a desk.

So, why did Team USA lose seven races in a row, and how was Oracle able to pull out a victory? After the seventh loss, skipper James Spithill called for a one-day “time-out” allowed by the rules. Team USA was losing the upwind legs of all the races where Team New Zealand had the edge. The sailors and engineers disagreed about the solution. The engineers called for boat modifications, while the sailors called for more attention to be paid to sailing and less attention to monitoring their wrist computers. In training for the races, the sailors were told to listen to the engineers who had the best technology to predict boat speeds. The engineers’ software program told them to sail Team USA as close as possible to wind on the upwind legs (about 45 degrees to the wind), but the sailors’ observations of the actual races suggested New Zealand was winning because it sailed five degrees off the wind at about 50 degrees, sailing a longer but faster upwind course. The difference was seconds per mile, which, all other things being equal, adds up to victory in a 12-mile race. The sailors claimed the engineers’ software was just wrong.

In the end, Team USA pursued both solutions: multiple small changes were made in the boat hull and underwater foils, and on the race course. Spithill and his team stopped looking so much at their wrist computer screens, and started to act like sailors on a race course rather than drone pilots in an office. Team USA won every upwind leg of the last eight races. The engineers admitted their software models were not providing accurate advice.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. How did information technology change the way America’s Cup boats were managed and sailed?
2. How did information technology impact decision making at Team USA?
3. How much was technology responsible for Team USA’s America’s Cup victory? Explain your answer.
4. Compare the role of big data in Team USA’s America’s Cup victory with its role in the German team’s 2014 World Cup victory described in the chapter-opening case.
and stores, or quantify the impact of mobile ads on in-store visits. Location analytics would help a utility company view and measure outages and their associated costs as related to customer location to help prioritize marketing, system upgrades and customer service efforts. UPS’s package tracking and delivery-routing systems described in Chapter 1 use location analytics, as does an application used by Starbucks to determine where to open new stores. The Starbucks application identifies geographic locations that will produce a high sales-to-investment ratio and per-store sales volume.

The Starbucks application and some of the New York City systems described earlier are examples of geographic information systems (GIS). GIS provide tools to help decision makers visualize problems that benefit from mapping. GIS software ties location data about the distribution of people or other resources to points, lines, and areas on a map. Some GIS have modeling capabilities for changing the data and automatically revising business scenarios.

GIS might be used to help state and local governments calculate response times to natural disasters and other emergencies or to help banks identify the best location for new branches or ATM terminals. For example, Columbia, South Carolina-based First Citizens Bank uses MapInfo GIS software to determine which markets to focus on for retaining customers and which to focus on for acquiring new customers. The GIS software also lets the bank drill down into details at the individual branch level and individualize goals for each branch. Each branch is able to see whether the greatest revenue opportunities are from mining its database of existing customers or from finding new customers.

**MANAGEMENT STRATEGIES FOR DEVELOPING BI AND BA CAPABILITIES**

There are two different strategies for adopting BI and BA capabilities for the organization: one-stop integrated solutions versus multiple best-of-breed vendor solutions. The hardware firms (IBM, HP, and now Oracle, which owns Sun Microsystems) want to sell your firm integrated hardware/software solutions that tend to run only on their hardware (the totally integrated solution). It's called "one-stop shopping." The software firms (SAP, SAS, and Microsoft) encourage firms to adopt the "best-of-breed" software that runs on any machine they want. In this strategy, you adopt the best database and data warehouse solution, and select the business intelligence and analytics package from whatever vendor you believe is best.

The first solution carries the risk that a single vendor provides your firm’s total hardware and software solution, making your firm dependent on its pricing power. However, it offers the advantage of dealing with a single vendor who can deliver on a global scale. The second solution offers greater flexibility and independence, but with the risk of potential difficulties integrating the software to the hardware platform, as well as to other software. Vendors always claim their software is "compatible" with other software, but the reality is that it can be very difficult to integrate software from different vendors.

Regardless of which strategy your firm adopts, all BI and BA systems lock the firm into a set of vendors and switching is very costly. Once you train thousands of employees across the world on using a particular set of tools, it is extremely difficult to switch. When you adopt these systems, you are in essence taking in a new partner.
12.3 How do different decision-making constituencies in an organization use business intelligence? What is the role of information systems in helping people working in a group make decisions more efficiently?

There are many different constituencies that make up a modern business firm. Earlier in this text and in this chapter we identified three levels of management: lower supervisory (operational) management, middle management, and senior management (vice president and above, including executive or “C level” management, e.g. chief executive officer, chief financial officers, and chief operational officer.) Each of these management groups has different responsibilities and different needs for information and business intelligence, with decisions becoming less structured among higher levels of management (review Figure 12.1).

**Decision Support for Operational and Middle Management**

Operational and middle management are generally charged with monitoring the performance of key aspects of the business, ranging from the down-time of machines on a factory floor, to the daily or even hourly sales at franchise food stores, to the daily traffic at a company’s Web site. Most of the decisions they make are fairly structured. Management information systems (MIS) are typically used by middle managers to support this type of decision making, and their primary output is a set of routine production reports based on data extracted and summarized from the firm’s underlying transaction processing systems (TPS). Increasingly, middle managers receive these reports online on the company portal, and are able to interactively query the data to find out why events are happening. To save even more analysis time, managers turn to exception reports, which highlight only exceptional conditions, such as when the sales quotas for a specific territory fall below an anticipated level or employees have exceeded their spending limits in a dental care plan. Table 12.6 provides some examples of MIS applications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMPANY</th>
<th>MIS APPLICATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>California Pizza Kitchen</td>
<td>Inventory Express application “remembers” each restaurant’s ordering patterns and compares the amount of ingredients used per menu item to predefined portion measurements established by management. The system identifies restaurants with out-of-line portions and notifies their managers so that corrective actions will be taken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PharMark</td>
<td>Extranet MIS identifies patients with drug-use patterns that place them at risk for adverse outcomes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black &amp; Veatch</td>
<td>Intranet MIS tracks construction costs for various projects across the United States.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taco Bell</td>
<td>Total Automation of Company Operations (TACO) system provides information on food, labor, and period-to-date costs for each restaurant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Support for Semistructured Decisions

Some managers are “super users” and keen business analysts who want to create their own reports, and use more sophisticated analytics and models to find patterns in data, to model alternative business scenarios, or to test specific hypotheses. Decision-support systems (DSS) are the BI delivery platform for this category of users, with the ability to support semistructured decision making.

DSS rely more heavily on modeling than MIS, using mathematical or analytical models to perform what-if or other kinds of analysis. “What-if” analysis, working forward from known or assumed conditions, allows the user to vary certain values to test results to predict outcomes if changes occur in those values. What happens if we raise product prices by 5 percent or increase the advertising budget by $1 million? Sensitivity analysis models ask what-if questions repeatedly to predict a range of outcomes when one or more variables are changed multiple times (see Figure 12.5). Backward sensitivity analysis helps decision makers with goal seeking: If I want to sell 1 million product units next year, how much must I reduce the price of the product?

Chapter 6 described multidimensional data analysis and OLAP as one of the key business intelligence technologies. Spreadsheets have a similar feature for multidimensional analysis called a pivot table, which manager “super users” and analysts employ to identify and understand patterns in business information that may be useful for semistructured decision making.

Figure 12.6 illustrates a Microsoft Excel pivot table that examines a large list of order transactions for a company selling online management training videos and books. It shows the relationship between two dimensions: the sales region and the source of contact (Web banner ad or e-mail) for each customer order. It answers the question: does the source of the customer make a difference in addition to region? The pivot table in this figure shows that most customers come from the West and that banner advertising produces most of the customers in all the regions.

One of the Hands-On MIS projects for this chapter asks you to use a pivot table to find answers to a number of other questions using the same list of transactions for the online training company as we used in this discussion. The complete Excel file for these transactions is available in MyMISLab. We have also added a Learning Track on creating pivot tables using Excel.
In the past, much of this modeling was done with spreadsheets and small stand-alone databases. Today these capabilities are incorporated into large enterprise BI systems where they are able to analyze data from large corporate databases. BI analytics include tools for intensive modeling, some of which we described earlier. Such capabilities help Progressive Insurance identify the best customers for its products. Using widely available insurance industry data, Progressive defines small groups of customers, or “cells,” such as motorcycle riders aged 30 or above with college educations, credit scores over a certain level, and no accidents. For each “cell,” Progressive performs a regression analysis to identify factors most closely correlated with the insurance losses that are typical for this group. It then sets prices for each cell, and uses simulation software to test whether this pricing arrangement will enable the company to make a profit. These analytic techniques, make it possible for Progressive to profitably insure customers in traditionally high-risk categories that other insurers would have rejected.

**DECISION SUPPORT FOR SENIOR MANAGEMENT: BALANCED SCORECARD AND ENTERPRISE PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT METHODS**

The purpose of executive support systems (ESS), introduced in Chapter 2, is to help C-level executive managers focus on the really important performance information that affect the overall profitability and success of the firm. There are two parts to developing ESS. First, you will need a methodology for understanding exactly what is “the really important performance information” for a specific firm that executives need, and second, you will need to develop systems capable of delivering this information to the right people in a timely fashion.
Currently, the leading methodology for understanding the really important information needed by a firm's executives is called the balanced scorecard method (Kaplan and Norton, 2004; Kaplan and Norton, 1992). The balanced scorecard is a framework for operationalizing a firm's strategic plan by focusing on measurable outcomes on four dimensions of firm performance: financial, business process, customer, and learning and growth (Figure 12.7).

Performance on each dimension is measured using key performance indicators (KPIs), which are the measures proposed by senior management for understanding how well the firm is performing along any given dimension. For instance, one key indicator of how well an online retail firm is meeting its customer performance objectives is the average length of time required to deliver a package to a consumer. If your firm is a bank, one KPI of business process performance is the length of time required to perform a basic function like creating a new customer account.

The balanced scorecard framework is thought to be “balanced” because it causes managers to focus on more than just financial performance. In this view, financial performance is past history—the result of past actions—and managers should focus on the things they are able to influence today, such as business process efficiency, customer satisfaction, and employee training. Once a scorecard is developed by consultants and senior executives, the next step is automating a flow of information to executives and other managers for each of the key performance indicators. There are literally hundreds of consulting and software firms that offer these capabilities, which are described below. Once these systems are implemented, they are often referred to as ESS.

**FIGURE 12.7 THE BALANCED SCORECARD FRAMEWORK**

In the balanced scorecard framework, the firm’s strategic objectives are operationalized along four dimensions: financial, business process, customer, and learning and growth. Each dimension is measured using several KPIs.
Another closely related popular management methodology is business performance management (BPM). Originally defined by an industry group in 2004 (led by the same companies that sell enterprise and database systems like Oracle, SAP, and IBM), BPM attempts to systematically translate a firm's strategies (e.g., differentiation, low-cost producer, market share growth, and scope of operation) into operational targets. Once the strategies and targets are identified, a set of KPIs are developed that measure progress towards the targets. The firm's performance is then measured with information drawn from the firm's enterprise database systems. BPM uses the same ideas as balanced scorecard but with a stronger strategy flavor.

Corporate data for contemporary ESS are supplied by the firm's existing enterprise applications (enterprise resource planning, supply chain management, and customer relationship management). ESS also provide access to news services, financial market databases, economic information, and whatever other external data senior executives require. ESS also have significant drill-down capabilities if managers need more detailed views of data.

Well-designed ESS help senior executives monitor organizational performance, track activities of competitors, recognize changing market conditions, and identify problems and opportunities. Employees lower down in the corporate hierarchy also use these systems to monitor and measure business performance in their areas of responsibility. For these and other business intelligence systems to be truly useful, the information must be "actionable"—it must be readily available and also easy to use when making decisions. If users have difficulty identifying critical metrics within the reports they receive, employee productivity and business performance will suffer.

GROUP DECISION-SUPPORT SYSTEMS (GDSS)

The DSS we have just described focus primarily on individual decision making. However, so much work is accomplished in groups within firms that a special category of systems called group decision-support systems (GDSS) has been developed to support group and organizational decision making.

A GDSS is an interactive computer-based system for facilitating the solution of unstructured problems by a set of decision makers working together as a group in the same location or in different locations. Collaboration systems and Web-based tools for videoconferencing and electronic meetings described earlier in this text support some group decision processes, but their focus is primarily on communication. GDSS, however, provide tools and technologies geared explicitly toward group decision making.

GDSS-guided meetings take place in conference rooms with special hardware and software tools to facilitate group decision making. The hardware includes computer and networking equipment, overhead projectors, and display screens. Special electronic meeting software collects, documents, ranks, edits, and stores the ideas offered in a decision-making meeting. The more elaborate GDSS use a professional facilitator and support staff. The facilitator selects the software tools and helps organize and run the meeting.

A sophisticated GDSS provides each attendee with a dedicated desktop computer under that person's individual control. No one will be able to see what individuals do on their computers until those participants are ready to share information. Their input is transmitted over a network to a central server that stores information generated by the meeting and makes it available to all on the meeting network. Data can also be projected on a large screen in the meeting room.
GDSS make it possible to increase meeting size while at the same time increasing productivity because individuals contribute simultaneously rather than one at a time. A GDSS promotes a collaborative atmosphere by guaranteeing contributors’ anonymity so that attendees focus on evaluating the ideas themselves without fear of personally being criticized or of having their ideas rejected based on the contributor. GDSS software tools follow structured methods for organizing and evaluating ideas and for preserving the results of meetings, enabling nonattendees to locate needed information after the meeting. GDSS effectiveness depends on the nature of the problem and the group and on how well a meeting is planned and conducted.

**Review Summary**

1. **What are the different types of decisions and how does the decision-making process work? How do information systems support the activities of managers and management decision making?**

   The different levels in an organization (strategic, management, operational) have different decision-making requirements. Decisions can be structured, semistructured, or unstructured, with structured decisions clustering at the operational level of the organization and unstructured decisions at the strategic level. Decision making can be performed by individuals or groups and includes employees as well as operational, middle, and senior managers. There are four stages in decision making: intelligence, design, choice, and implementation. Systems to support decision making do not always produce better manager and employee decisions that improve firm performance because of problems with information quality, management filters, and organizational culture.

   Early classical models of managerial activities stress the functions of planning, organizing, coordinating, deciding, and controlling. Contemporary research looking at the actual behavior of managers has found that managers’ real activities are highly fragmented, variegated, and brief in duration and that managers shy away from making grand, sweeping policy decisions.

   Information technology provides new tools for managers to carry out both their traditional and newer roles, enabling them to monitor, plan, and forecast with more precision and speed than ever before and to respond more rapidly to the changing business environment. Information systems have been most helpful to managers by providing support for their roles in disseminating information, providing liaisons between organizational levels, and allocating resources. However, information systems are less successful at supporting unstructured decisions. Where information systems are useful, information quality, management filters, and organizational culture can degrade decision making.

2. **How do business intelligence and business analytics support decision making?**

   Business intelligence and analytics promise to deliver correct, nearly real-time information to decision makers, and the analytic tools help them quickly understand the information and take action. A business intelligence environment consists of data from the business environment, the BI infrastructure, a BA toolset, managerial users and methods, a BI delivery platform (MIS, DSS, or ESS), and the user interface. There are six analytic functionalities that BI systems deliver to achieve these ends: predefined production reports, parameterized reports, dashboards and scorecards, ad hoc queries and searches, the ability to drill down to detailed views of data, and the ability to model scenarios and create forecasts.

3. **How do different decision-making constituencies in an organization use business intelligence? What is the role of information systems in helping people working in a group make decisions more efficiently?**

   Operational and middle management are generally charged with monitoring the performance of their firm. Most of the decisions they make are fairly structured. Management information systems (MIS) producing routine production reports are typically used to support this type of decision making. For making unstructured decisions, middle managers and analysts will use decision-support systems (DSS) with powerful analytics and modeling tools, including spreadsheets and pivot tables. Senior executives making unstructured decisions use dashboards and visual interfaces displaying key
performance information affecting the overall profitability, success, and strategy of the firm. The balanced scorecard and business performance management are two methodologies used in designing executive support systems (ESS).

Group decision-support systems (GDSS) help people working together in a group arrive at decisions more efficiently. GDSS feature special conference room facilities where participants contribute their ideas using networked computers and software tools for organizing ideas, gathering information, making and setting priorities, and documenting meeting sessions.

**Key Terms**

Balanced scorecard method, 489  
Behavioral models, 471  
Business performance management (BPM), 490  
Choice, 470  
Classical model of management, 471  
Data visualization, 477  
Decisional role, 472  
Design, 470  
Drill down, 477  
Geographic information systems (GIS), 485  
Group decision-support systems (GDSS), 490  
Implementation, 470  
Informational role, 472  
Intelligence, 470  
Interpersonal role, 471  
Key performance indicators (KPIs), 489  
Managerial roles, 471  
Location analytics, 482  
Operational intelligence, 481  
Pivot table, 487  
Predictive analytics, 478  
Semistructured decisions, 468  
Sensitivity analysis, 487  
Structured decisions, 468  
Unstructured decisions, 468

**Review Questions**

12-1 What are the different types of decisions and how does the decision-making process work? How do information systems support the activities of managers and management decision making?

- List and describe the different levels of decision making and decision-making constituencies in organizations. Explain how their decision-making requirements differ.
- Distinguish between an unstructured, semistructured, and structured decision.
- List and describe the stages in decision making.
- Compare the descriptions of managerial behavior in the classical and behavioral models.
- Identify the specific managerial roles that can be supported by information systems.

12-2 How do business intelligence and business analytics support decision making?

- Define and describe business intelligence and business analytics.
- List and describe the elements of a business intelligence environment.
- List and describe the analytic functionalities provided by BI systems.
- Compare two different management strategies for developing BI and BA capabilities.

12-3 How do different decision-making constituencies in an organization use business intelligence? What is the role of information systems in helping people working in a group make decisions more efficiently?

- List each of the major decision-making constituencies in an organization and describe the types of decisions each makes.
• Describe how MIS, DSS, or ESS provide decision support for each of these groups.
• Define and describe the balanced scorecard method and business performance management.
• Define a group decision-support system (GDSS) and explain how it differs from a DSS.
• Explain how a GDSS works and how it provides value for a business.

Discussion Questions

12-4 As a manager or user of information systems, what would you need to know to participate in the design and use of a DSS or an ESS? Why?

12-5 If businesses used DSS, GDSS, and ESS more widely, would managers and employees make better decisions? Why or why not?

12-6 How much can business intelligence and business analytics help companies refine their business strategy? Explain your answer.

Hands-On MIS Projects

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience identifying opportunities for DSS, using a spreadsheet pivot table to analyze sales data, and online retirement planning tools for financial planning.

Management Decision Problems

12-7 Dealerships for Subaru and other automobile manufacturers keep records of the mileage of cars they sell and service. Mileage data are used to remind customers of when they need to schedule service appointments, but they are used for other purposes as well. What kinds of decisions does this piece of data support at the local level and at the corporate level? What would happen if this piece of data were erroneous, for example, showing mileage of 130,000 instead of 30,000? How would it affect decision making? Assess its business impact.

12-8 Applebee’s is the largest casual dining chain in the world, with over 1,800 locations throughout the U.S. and also in 20 other countries. The menu features beef, chicken, and pork items, as well as burgers, pasta, and seafood. Applebee’s CEO wants to make the restaurant more profitable by developing menus that are tastier and contain more items that customers want and are willing to pay for despite rising costs for gasoline and agricultural products. How might business intelligence help management implement this strategy? What pieces of data would Applebee’s need to collect? What kinds of reports would be useful to help management make decisions on how to improve menus and profitability?

Improving Decision Making: Using Pivot Tables to Analyze Sales Data

Software skills: Pivot tables
Business skills: Analyzing sales data

12-9 This project gives you an opportunity to learn how to use Excel’s PivotTable feature to analyze a database or data list. Use the data file for Online Management Training Inc. described earlier in the chapter. This is a list of the sales transactions at OMT for one day. You can find this spreadsheet file at MyMISLab. Use Excel’s PivotTable to help you answer the following questions:

• Where are the average purchases higher? The answer might tell managers where to focus marketing and sales resources, or pitch different messages to different regions.
• What form of payment is the most common? The answer could be used to emphasize in advertising the most preferred means of payment.
• Are there any times of day when purchases are most common? Do people buy are products while at work (likely during the day) or at home (likely in the evening)?
• What’s the relationship between region, type of product purchased, and average sales price?

We provide instructions on how to use Excel PivotTables in our Learning Tracks.

**Improving Decision Making: Using a Web-Based DSS for Retirement Planning**

Software skills: Internet-based software  
Business skills: Financial planning

12-10 This project will help develop your skills in using Web-based DSS for financial planning.

The Web sites for CNN Money and Kiplinger feature Web-based DSS for financial planning and decision making. Select either site to plan for retirement. Use your chosen site to determine how much you need to save to have enough income for your retirement. Assume that you are 50 years old, single and plan to retire in 16 years. You have $100,000 in savings. Your current annual income is $85,000. Your goal is to be able to generate an annual retirement income of $60,000, including Social Security benefit payments.

Use the Web site you have selected to determine how much money you need to save to help you achieve your retirement goal. If you need to calculate your estimated Social Security benefit, use the Quick Calculator at the Social Security Administration Web site.

Critique the site—its ease of use, its clarity, the value of any conclusions reached, and the extent to which the site helps investors understand their financial needs and the financial markets.

**Collaboration and Teamwork Project**

12-11 In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Sites, Google Docs, Google+, or other open source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.
How Much Does Data-Driven Planting Help Farmers?

CASE STUDY

Like many other businesses, farming is being reshaped by information technology. Many tractors and combines today are guided by Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite-based navigation systems. The GPS computer receives signals from earth-orbiting satellites to track each piece of equipment’s location and where it has gone. The system issues instructions for hoses to deliver precise amounts of fertilizer right into the grooves cut by the tiller. The system helps steer the equipment, so farmers are able to monitor progress on iPads and other tablet computers in their tractor cabs. Placing seed and fertilizer together with this level of precision means farmers need to use fewer loads of fertilizer, potentially saving an individual farmer tens of thousands of dollars.

Now big agricultural companies like Monsanto and Dupont want to do more. Since adjustments in planting depth or the distance between crop rows can make a big difference in crop yields, these companies want their computers to analyze the data generated during this computerized planting work to show farmers how to further increase their crop output. This practice is also known as prescriptive planting. Proponents say prescriptive planting will spark an agricultural revolution rivalling the introduction of mechanized tractors in the first half of the 20th century and the rise of genetically modified seeds in the 1990s.

Here’s how prescriptive planting works: The farmer provides data on field boundaries, historic crop yields, and soil conditions to an agricultural data analysis company, which analyzes the data along with other data it has collected about seed performance and soil types in different areas. The company then sends a computer file with recommendations back to the farmer, who uploads the data into computerized planting equipment. The farmer’s planting equipment follows the recommendations as it plants fields. For example, the recommendations might tell an Iowa corn farmer to lower the number of seeds planted per acre or to plant more seeds per acre in specified portions of the field capable of growing more corn. The farmer might also receive advice on the exact type of seed to plant in different areas. The data analysis company monitors weather and other factors to advise farmers how to manage crops as they grow.

A new software application developed by Monsanto called FieldScripts takes into account variables such as the amount of sunlight and shade, and variations in soil nitrogen and phosphorous content down to an area as small as a 10-meter by 10-meter grid. Monsanto then analyzes the data in conjunction with the genetic properties of their seeds, combines all this information with climate predictions, and delivers precise planting instructions or “scripts” to iPads connected to planting equipment in the field. Tools such as FieldScripts would allow farmers to pinpoint areas that need more or less fertilizer, saving them the cost of spreading fertilizer everywhere, while boosting their yields in areas that have performed more poorly and reducing the amount of excess fertilizer that enters the water table. So, predictive planting could also be good for the environment.

Prescriptive planting could help improve the average corn harvest to more than 200 bushels an acre from the current 160 bushels, some experts say. Such a gain would generate an extra $182 an acre in revenue for farmers, based on recent prices. (Iowa corn farmers received about $759 an acre in 2013.) On a larger scale, according to Monsanto, the world’s largest seed company, data-driven planting advice to farmers could increase worldwide crop production by about $20 billion a year. So far, output from predictive planting systems has not achieved those spectacular levels. Farmers who use prescriptive planting report their yields rising by 5 to 10 bushels per acre.

The costs of investing in the new technology and vendor service fees can amount to more than what many small farmers can earn in extra yield from their farms. According to Sara Olson of Lux Research Inc., the problem with precision agriculture is the diminishing returns that come along with costly technologies on smaller farms. That means that only the really big farms are likely to benefit.

Monsanto estimates that FieldScripts will improve yields by 5 to 10 bushels per acre. With corn at around $4 per bushel, that’s an increase of $20–$40 per acre. A small farm, of about 500 acres, could get anywhere from $10,000 to $20,000 in extra revenue. Monsanto charges around $10 per acre for the service, so the farm will wind up paying around $5,000—in addition to paying tens of thousands of dollars to either retrofit its existing planting...
equipment or buy more modern tractors that include the electronics gear that syncs the "scripts" provided by the Monsanto online service with the planter's onboard navigation systems. Monsanto also charges an extra $15 per acre for its local climate prediction service. A small farm will most likely lose money or break even for the first two years of using a service like FieldScripts, according to Olson.

For large farm of about 5,000 acres, FieldScripts could increase revenues increase by between $100,000 and $200,000. With Monsanto's service costing around $50,000, that farm's total profits will run between $50,000 to $150,000, more than sufficient to offset the cost of updating farm machinery. Whether a farm is big or small the impact of FieldScripts would be minimal in good years because yields would be high regardless. Steve Pitstick, who owns a 2,600-acre corn and soybean farm near DeKalb, Ill., said that the technology is likely to have a bigger impact in years when conditions aren't so good. Since Midwest farming conditions were good in 2013, Pitstick found that yields from fields that he managed using FieldScripts were only between 1 percent and 2 percent higher than fields where he didn't use the service.

A spokesperson for Monsanto stated that the outcome of predictive planting is less about the size of the farm and more about the farmer's technology know-how. A wide range of farmers are currently using various types of precision agriculture technology. Both small-and large-scale farmers dealing with various crops and production methods are increasingly looking for new technologies and tools that can improve their yields while managing their overall risk. According to Michael Cox, co-director of investment research at securities firm Piper Jaffray Cos., revenue from FieldScripts and other technology-driven products and services could account for 20 percent of Monsanto's projected growth in per-share earnings by 2018.

Although some farmers have embraced predictive planting, others are critical. Many farmers are worried about the intrusion of big data into their once-insular businesses and are especially suspicious of what Monsanto and DuPont might do with the collected data. Others worry about seed prices rising too much, since the companies that developed predictive planting technology are the same ones that sell seeds. Farmers also fear that rivals could use the data to their own advantage. For instance, if nearby farmers saw crop-yield information, they might rush to rent farmland, pushing land and other costs higher. Other farmers worry that Wall Street traders could use the data to make bets on futures contracts. If such bets push futures-contract prices lower early in the growing season, it might squeeze the profits farmers could lock in for their crops by selling futures.

There are not yet any publicly known examples where a farmer's prescriptive-planting information has been misused. Monsanto and DuPont officials say the companies have no plans to sell data gathered from farmers. Deere& Co., which working with DuPont and Dow Chemical Co. to formulate specialized seed-planting recommendations based on data from its tractors, combines and other machinery, says it obtains consent from customers before sharing any of their data.

Kip Tom has been testing Monsanto's system on his 20,000-acre farm near Leesburg, Indiana, for about three years. He claims he would not plant a single acre without it. But he keeps close tabs on how data flow from and to his farm machinery. In 2013, Mr. Tom unplugged a cable inside one of his combine to prevent it from capturing details of his planting algorithm as he harvested corn. The combine's manufacturer didn't develop that information, so Tom didn't believe it should have access to it.

Some farmers have discussed aggregating planting data on their own so they could decide what information to sell and at what price. Other farmers are working with smaller technology companies that are trying to keep agricultural giants from dominating the prescriptive-planting business. Steve Cubbage, owner of Prime Meridian LLC in Nevada, Missouri, one of these small companies, says his company's independence from the seed, machinery and chemical industry adds credibility. About one hundred farmers use Prime Meridian's precision-seeding service, and Cubbage expects the number to increase dramatically. The company is developing a system to store farm-by-farm information on an online Web-based service that could give access to seed dealers, financial advisers and other outsiders approved by farmers.

The American Farm Bureau Federation, a trade group for farmers, has warned members that seed companies touting higher crop yields from prescriptive planting have a vested interest in persuading farmers to plant more. The Federation also says the services might steer farmers to buy certain seeds, sprays and equipment for their land. The Farm Bureau has held internal talks about whether the trade group should set up its own computer servers as a data storehouse, but no decision has been reached.
Brian Dunn, who grows wheat, corn and sorghum on 2,500 acres near St. John, Kansas, believes that big companies can help in the short-term, but is skeptical about the long-term. He uses Prime Meridian’s service.

In a move to ease farmers’ worries, Monsanto said last month that it supports industrywide standards for managing information collected from fields. The company aims to build a free online data storehouse where farmers could upload information ranging from crop yields to planting dates. Monsanto says it wouldn’t access the data without permission from farmers.

One reason that suspicions run deep among some farmers: a surge in seed prices as the biggest companies increased their market share during the past fifteen years, largely through takeovers. Monsanto and DuPont now sell about 70 percent of all corn seed in the U.S. In 2013, farmers paid about $118 an acre for corn seed, up 166 percent from the inflation-adjusted cost of $45 an acre in 2005, according to Purdue University estimates. The seed companies say the higher prices reflect the benefits of using their genetically modified seeds, including bigger crops and resistance to insects and weed-killing sprays that have helped reduce the usage of harmful pesticides.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

12-12 List and describe the technologies used in this case study.

12-13 How do the systems described in this case provide operational intelligence?

12-14 How does predictive planting support decision making? Identify three different decisions that can be supported.

12-15 How helpful is predictive planting to individual farmers and the agricultural industry? Explain your answer.

MyMISLab

Go to mymislab.com for Auto-graded writing questions as well as the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

12-16 Identify and describe three factors that prevent managers from making good decisions.

12-17 Give three examples of data used in location analytics and explain how each can help businesses.
Chapter 12 References


Harris, Jeanne G. and Vijay Mehtostra. “Getting Value from Your Data Scientists.” MIT Sloan Management Review (Fall 2014).


Part Four focuses on building and managing systems in organizations. This part answers questions such as: What activities are required to build a new information system? What alternative approaches are available for building system solutions? How should information systems projects be managed to ensure that new systems provide genuine business benefits and work successfully in the organization? What issues must be addressed when building and managing global systems?
LEARNING OBJECTIVES
After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. How does building new systems produce organizational change?
2. What are the core activities in the systems development process?
3. What are the principal methodologies for modeling and designing systems?
4. What are alternative methods for building information systems?
5. What are new approaches for system building in the digital firm era?

MyMISLab™
Visit mymislab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.

CHAPTER CASES
New Systems Help Work Flow More Smoothly at Moen
Datacard Group Redesigns the Way It Works
The Challenge of Mobile Application Development
SourceGas Goes for Better Workforce Scheduling Systems

VIDEO CASES
IBM: Business Process Management in a SaaS Environment
IBM Helps the City of Madrid with Real-Time BPM Software
Instructional Videos:
BPM Business Process Management Workflow Management Visualized
Does your kitchen sink have a single-handle faucet or two faucets? If it's one with a single handle, it was invented in 1939 by Al Moen, founder of Moen, Incorporated, the number one faucet brand in North America. Based in North Olmsted, Ohio, Moen manufactures and sells a wide range of kitchen and bath products, including sinks, showerheads, and numerous accessories. New products are constantly being launched, and each requires numerous capital expense requests throughout the product development process.

Moen has three manufacturing facilities in the U.S. and one in China, as well as two distribution facilities in the U.S., one in China, and one in Canada and Mexico. The company had implemented a single instance of the SAP enterprise resource planning (ERP) system for nearly every line of its business worldwide, including supply chain, sales, service, and manufacturing. As a result, many of Moen's automated business processes were streamlined and efficient. Until recently, the process for initiating a capital expense request was one of the exceptions.

Moen's process to initiate a capital expense request (CER) was heavily manual. First, a user submitted a paper form that was routed manually through the corporate office from inbox to inbox to obtain the proper supporting documentation and approvals. The exact route differed, depending on factors such as type and amount of funds requested, department of origin, and level of approval needed. This process was very inefficient and uncertain. Among Moen's 300 employees involved in the capital expense request process, only a few outside of the finance department understood where and how the request...
was being routed. Finance would know if required approvals were insufficient, but getting to that department involved a great deal of guesswork from people who weren't sure of exactly where a form needed to go. Manually-routed documents could be easily lost or misplaced, leaving the other people along the approval chain completely unaware of the request. Making matters worse, CERs originating in Moen's Chinese manufacturing facility had to be mailed to the corporate office, increasing chances of getting lost. The recipient of these overseas requests couldn't just walk down the hallway to ask the sender a question.

Moen needed a solution that automated business form development and routing and that could easily integrate with its global SAP ERP system and support yearly upgrades to the SAP software. There were other requirements: The system had to be easy to use, with business users capable of automating select processes with a minimum of IT support. The solution also had to easily integrate with Microsoft SharePoint, which was supporting other internal Moen processes. And management did not want to limit the solution to CERs; it wanted the selected tool to automate other processes as well.

With assistance from Clear Process Solutions as consultants, Moen selected Winshuttle workflow software in November 2013. Winshuttle enables users to build and adapt Excel and SharePoint-based interactive forms and workflows for SAP without costly custom development and without compromising on security or control. The software integrates easily with both SharePoint and SAP, and can be tailored to Moen's processes. It is able to provide complete visibility into exactly where a request is located within the routing process.

It took five months to implement Winshuttle. During that time, users were given training classes on how to build a workflow using the software. Gina Carlson, Moen's Director of Asia Pacific Customer Relationship and Financial Systems, also instituted a formal communication plan with additional training documents, Webinars, and IT town halls.

Before automation, the CER process took anywhere from four to ten business days, depending on the number of approvals required. After Winshuttle was implemented, even complex and high-profile CERs can be processed in one to two business days. Moen is able to see the status of a particular CER at any point in the processing cycle. Carlson and her colleagues are able to know at any time where a specific funding request is in the pipeline, who has seen it, and who needs to approve it.

Within the first month after the system went live, almost 70 Moen employees used the new automated CER process. With management anticipating savings from automating CER of two hours per person, the project is expected to pay for itself within three months. The days of tracking down paper-based forms at Moen are coming to an end.


The experience of Moen illustrates some of the steps required to design and build new information systems. Building a new system for processing capital expense requests entailed analyzing the organization’s problems with existing systems, assessing information requirements, selecting appropriate technology, and redesigning business processes and jobs. Management had to oversee the systems-building effort and evaluate benefits and costs. The new information system represented a process of planned organizational change.
The chapter-opening case calls attention to important points raised by this case and this chapter. Moen’s process for handling capital expense requests was hampered by outdated and inefficient manual processes, which raised costs, slowed down work, and limited the company’s ability to develop new products.

Management decided to redesign and automate this process using new workflow software that enables users to create interactive forms and workflows for SAP without costly custom development. The solution encompassed not just the application of new technology, but changes to corporate culture, business processes, and job functions. Moen’s pace of work and approvals for new capital expenditures have become much faster.

Here are some questions to think about: Why was Winshuttle software a good choice for Moen? How much did the new system change the way Moen ran its business?

### 13.1 How does building new systems produce organizational change?

Building a new information system is one kind of planned organizational change. The introduction of a new information system involves much more than new hardware and software. It also includes changes in jobs, skills, management, and organization. When we design a new information system, we are redesigning the organization. System builders must understand how a system will affect specific business processes and the organization as a whole.

**Systems Development and Organizational Change**

Information technology can promote various degrees of organizational change, ranging from incremental to far-reaching. Figure 13.1 shows four kinds of structural organizational change that are enabled by information technology: (1) automation, (2) rationalization, (3) business process redesign, and (4) paradigm shifts. Each carries different risks and rewards.
The most common forms of organizational change are automation and rationalization. These relatively slow-moving and slow-changing strategies present modest returns but little risk. Faster and more comprehensive change—such as redesign and paradigm shifts—carries high rewards but offers substantial chances of failure.

The most common form of IT-enabled organizational change is **automation**. The first applications of information technology involved assisting employees with performing their tasks more efficiently and effectively. Calculating paychecks and payroll registers, giving bank tellers instant access to customer deposit records, and developing a nationwide reservation network for airline ticket agents are all examples of early automation.

A deeper form of organizational change—one that follows quickly from early automation—is **rationalization of procedures**. Automation frequently reveals new bottlenecks in production and makes the existing arrangement of procedures and structures painfully cumbersome. Rationalization of procedures is the streamlining of standard operating procedures. For example, Moen’s new system for capital expense requests is effective not only because it uses computer technology but also because the company simplified its business processes for this function. Fewer manual steps are required.

Rationalization of procedures is often found in programs for making a series of continuous quality improvements in products, services, and operations, such as total quality management (TQM) and six sigma. **Total quality management (TQM)** makes achieving quality an end in itself and the responsibility of all people and functions within an organization. TQM derives from concepts developed by American quality experts such as W. Edwards Deming and Joseph Juran, but it was popularized by the Japanese. **Six sigma** is a specific measure of quality, representing 3.4 defects per million opportunities. Most companies cannot achieve this level of quality, but use six sigma as a goal for driving ongoing quality improvement programs.
A more powerful type of organizational change is **business process redesign**, in which business processes are analyzed, simplified, and redesigned. Business process redesign reorganizes workflows, combining steps to cut waste and eliminate repetitive, paper-intensive tasks. (Sometimes the new design eliminates jobs as well.) It is much more ambitious than rationalization of procedures, requiring a new vision of how the process is to be organized.

A widely cited example of business process redesign is Ford Motor Company’s invoiceless processing, which reduced headcount in Ford’s North American Accounts Payable organization of 500 people by 75 percent. Accounts payable clerks used to spend most of their time resolving discrepancies between purchase orders, receiving documents, and invoices. Ford redesigned its accounts payable process so that the purchasing department enters a purchase order into an online database that can be checked by the receiving department when the ordered items arrive. If the received goods match the purchase order, the system automatically generates a check for accounts payable to send to the vendor. There is no need for vendors to send invoices.

Rationalizing procedures and redesigning business processes are limited to specific parts of a business. New information systems can ultimately affect the design of the entire organization by transforming how the organization carries out its business or even the nature of the business. For instance, the long-haul trucking and transportation firm Schneider National used new information systems to change its business model. Schneider created a new business managing logistics for other companies. This more radical form of business change is called a **paradigm shift**. A paradigm shift involves rethinking the nature of the business and the nature of the organization.

Paradigm shifts and business process redesign often fail because extensive organizational change is so difficult to orchestrate (see Chapter 14). Why, then, do so many corporations contemplate such radical change? Because the rewards are equally high (see Figure 13.1). In many instances, firms seeking paradigm shifts and pursuing reengineering strategies achieve stunning, order-of-magnitude increases in their returns on investment (or productivity). Some of these success stories, and some failure stories, are included throughout this book.

### BUSINESS PROCESS REDESIGN

Like Moen, described in the chapter-opening case, many businesses today are trying to use information technology to improve their business processes. Some of these systems entail incremental process change, but others require more far-reaching redesign of business processes. To deal with these changes, organizations are turning to business process management. **Business process management (BPM)** provides a variety of tools and methodologies to analyze existing processes, design new processes, and optimize those processes. BPM is never concluded because process improvement requires continual change. Companies practicing business process management go through the following steps:

1. **Identify processes for change**: One of the most important strategic decisions that a firm can make is not deciding how to use computers to improve business processes, but understanding what business processes need improvement. When systems are used to strengthen the wrong business model or business processes, the business can become more efficient at doing what it should not do. As a result, the firm becomes vulnerable to competitors who may have discovered the right business
model. Considerable time and cost may also be spent improving business processes that have little impact on overall firm performance and revenue. Managers need to determine what business processes are the most important and how improving these processes will help business performance.

2. **Analyze existing processes**: Existing business processes should be modeled and documented, noting inputs, outputs, resources, and the sequence of activities. The process design team identifies redundant steps, paper-intensive tasks, bottlenecks, and other inefficiencies.

Figure 13.2 illustrates the “as-is” process for purchasing a book from a physical bookstore. Consider what happens when a customer visits a physical bookstore and searches its shelves for a book. If he or she finds the book, that person takes it to the checkout counter and pays for it via credit card, cash, or check. If the customer is unable to locate the book, he or she must ask a bookstore clerk to search the shelves or check the bookstore’s inventory records to see if it is in stock. If the clerk finds the book, the customer purchases it and leaves. If the book is not available locally, the clerk inquires about ordering it for the customer, from the bookstore’s warehouse or from the book’s distributor or publisher. Once the ordered book arrives at the bookstore, a bookstore employee telephones the customer with this information. The customer would have to go to the bookstore again to pick up the book and pay for it. If the bookstore is unable to order the book for the customer, the customer would have to try another bookstore. You can see that this process has many steps and might require the customer to make multiple trips to the bookstore.

3. **Design the new process**: Once the existing process is mapped and measured in terms of time and cost, the process design team will try to improve the process by designing a new one. A new streamlined “to-be” process will be documented and modeled for comparison with the old process.

**FIGURE 13.2 AS-IS BUSINESS PROCESS FOR PURCHASING A BOOK FROM A PHYSICAL BOOKSTORE**

Purchasing a book from a physical bookstore requires many steps to be performed by both the seller and the customer.
Figure 13.3 illustrates how the book-purchasing process can be redesigned by taking advantage of the Internet. The customer accesses an online bookstore over the Internet from his or her computer. He or she searches the bookstore’s online catalog for the book he or she wants. If the book is available, the customer orders the book online, supplying credit card and shipping address information, and the book is delivered to the customer’s home. If the online bookstore does not carry the book, the customer selects another online bookstore and searches for the book again. This process has far fewer steps than that for purchasing the book in a physical bookstore, requires much less effort on the part of the customer, and requires less sales staff for customer service. The new process is therefore much more efficient and time-saving.

The new process design needs to be justified by showing how much it reduces time and cost or enhances customer service and value. Management first measures the time and cost of the existing process as a baseline. In our example, the time required for purchasing a book from a physical bookstore might range from 15 minutes (if the customer immediately finds what he or she wants) to 30 minutes if the book is in stock but has to be located by sales staff. If the book has to be ordered from another source, the process might take one or two weeks and another trip to the bookstore for the customer. If the customer lives far away from the bookstore, the time to travel to the bookstore would have to be factored in. The bookstore will have to pay the costs for maintaining a physical store and keeping the book in stock, for sales staff on site, and for shipment costs if the book has to be obtained from another location.

The new process for purchasing a book online might only take several minutes, although the customer might have to wait several days or a week to receive the book in the mail and will have to pay a shipping charge. But the customer saves time and money by not having to travel to the bookstore or make additional visits to pick up the book. Booksellers’ costs are lower because they do not have to pay for a physical store location or for local inventory.

4. **Implement the new process:** Once the new process has been thoroughly modeled and analyzed, it must be translated into a new set of procedures and work rules. New information systems or enhancements to existing systems.

---

**FIGURE 13.3 REDESIGNED PROCESS FOR PURCHASING A BOOK ONLINE**

![Diagram of the redesigned process for purchasing a book online](image-url)

Using Internet technology makes it possible to redesign the process for purchasing a book so that it requires fewer steps and consumes fewer resources.
may have to be implemented to support the redesigned process. The new process and supporting systems are rolled out into the business organization. As the business starts using this process, problems are uncovered and addressed. Employees working with the process may recommend improvements.

5. **Continuous measurement**: Once a process has been implemented and optimized, it needs to be continually measured. Why? Processes may deteriorate over time as employees fall back on old methods, or they may lose their effectiveness if the business experiences other changes.

Although many business process improvements are incremental and ongoing, there are occasions when more radical change must take place. Our example of a physical bookstore redesigning the book-purchasing process so that it can be carried out online is an example of this type of radical, far-reaching change. When properly implemented, business process redesign produces dramatic gains in productivity and efficiency, and may even change the way the business is run. In some instances, it drives a “paradigm shift” that transforms the nature of the business itself.

This actually happened in book retailing when Amazon challenged traditional physical bookstores with its online retail model. By radically rethinking the way a book can be purchased and sold, Amazon and other online bookstores have achieved remarkable efficiencies, cost reductions, and a whole new way of doing business.

BPM poses challenges. Executives report that the largest single barrier to successful business process change is organizational culture. Employees do not like unfamiliar routines and often try to resist change. This is especially true of projects where organizational changes are very ambitious and far-reaching. Managing change is neither simple nor intuitive, and companies committed to extensive process improvement need a good change management strategy (see Chapter 14).

**Tools for Business Process Management**

Over 100 software firms provide tools for various aspects of BPM, including IBM, Oracle, and TIBCO. These tools help businesses identify and document processes requiring improvement, create models of improved processes, capture and enforce business rules for performing processes, and integrate existing systems to support new or redesigned processes. BPM software tools also provide analytics for verifying that process performance has been improved and for measuring the impact of process changes on key business performance indicators.

Some BPM tools document and monitor business processes to help firms identify inefficiencies, using software to connect with each of the systems a company uses for a particular process to identify trouble spots. Another category of tools automate some parts of a business process and enforce business rules so that employees perform that process more consistently and efficiently.

For example, American National Insurance Company (ANCO), which offers life insurance, medical insurance, property casualty insurance, and investment services, used Pega BPM workflow software to streamline customer service processes across four business groups. The software built rules to guide customer service representatives through a single view of a customer’s information that was maintained in multiple systems. By eliminating the need to juggle multiple applications simultaneously to handle customer and agent requests, the improved process increased customer service representative workload capacity by 192 percent.
A third category of tools helps businesses integrate their existing systems to support process improvements. They automatically manage processes across the business, extract data from various sources and databases, and generate transactions in multiple related systems (see the Interactive Session on Organizations).

13.2 WHAT ARE THE CORE ACTIVITIES IN THE SYSTEMS DEVELOPMENT PROCESS?

New information systems are an outgrowth of a process of organizational problem solving. A new information system is built as a solution to some type of problem or set of problems the organization perceives it is facing. The problem may be one in which managers and employees realize that the organization is not performing as well as expected, or that the organization should take advantage of new opportunities to perform more successfully.

The activities that go into producing an information system solution to an organizational problem or opportunity are called **systems development**. Systems development is a structured kind of problem solved with distinct activities. These activities consist of systems analysis, systems design, programming, testing, conversion, and production and maintenance.

Figure 13.4 illustrates the systems development process. The systems development activities depicted usually take place in sequential order. But some of the activities may need to be repeated or some may take place simultaneously, depending on the approach to system building that is being employed (see Section 13.4).

**SYSTEMS ANALYSIS**

**Systems analysis** is the analysis of a problem that a firm tries to solve with an information system. It consists of defining the problem, identifying its causes,
**Interactive Session: Organizations**

Datacard Group redesigns the way it works

Datacard Group is a global provider of machines and software for issuing personalized financial cards, passports, driver's licenses, and mobile devices. This Shakopee, Minnesota-based company's solutions are used to personalize and deliver over 90 percent of the world's payment, identification, telecommunications, gift, and loyalty cards. Datacard Group's customers include financial institutions and card bureaus, major corporations, and government agencies, and they issue over 10 million cards every day.

With 2,000 employees, customers in 150 countries, and about $500 million in revenue in 2013, Datacard Group had an impressive track record, but management believed the company could do better. In 2008, the Datacard Group launched a major initiative to increase revenue, customer satisfaction, operational efficiency, and employee productivity with an emphasis on strengthening cross-departmental communication and business processes.

In the past, Datacard's information systems were built around its various lines of business. Business units would request their own system solutions from the company's information systems department, with approval from the chief financial officer. Over time, this approach created many fragmented information systems that served the needs of specific departments, but not those of the company as a whole.

Datacard's CEO Todd Wilkinson and his managers decided that the company needed something less than a complete business process transformation. In 2010, Chris Pelletier was hired to lead the business process redesign effort. Pelletier quickly formed a business process team to encourage people from all areas of the enterprise to talk together and collectively work on ways of improving processes and reducing inefficiencies. The business process team also quickly became involved in information systems projects. The team worked closely with Datacard's information systems team to help them learn to develop solutions that were based on strengthening business processes for long-term enterprise-wide results. Working together, both groups tried to figure out what needed to be changed: Was it the business process, the supporting information technology, or a combination of both?

An example of a business process that was redesigned using this new way of working was the distribution of pricing to Datacard's partners. Datacard distributed pricing for its secure identification and card issuance products to approximately 250 partners quarterly by emailing them a price book made up of multiple spreadsheets. To create this price book, people in marketing and sales had to spend many hours inputting data manually and the Datacard partners that received the price books had to manually type their data into their own systems and check their accuracy, a process requiring as much as two days. Changing a price was very time-consuming, complex, and people-dependent, preventing Datacard's marketing and sales staff from performing more valuable work.

Datacard's business process team held a series of meetings with key sales, marketing, and IT staff members to examine this process and the IT systems supporting it from all angles. After eight months of intense collaboration and process review, Datacard's information systems team created a custom solution to automate the pricing process using Oracle E-Business Suite. The team created a single version of the price book, with each Datacard customer receiving a price book tailored to its specific needs that can automatically update its corporate systems. Redesigning this process dramatically decreased the amount of time required for price updates each quarter, saving 6,000 hours of work annually, and twice that amount at partners' sites.

Partner companies no longer have to manually enter Datacard pricing data into their own systems or pore through multiple pages and spreadsheets to find what they are looking for. Partner companies are even more likely to stay with Datacard because they no longer have to do manual data entry work. Redesigning took seven steps out of the process of creating price books and freed up time for sales and marketing staff to spend on higher-level work requiring more creativity and innovation.

At the heart of Datacard's redesigned processes are Oracle technology solutions, which make it possible to tightly integrate applications and support cross-departmental business processes. These Oracle tools include Oracle E-Business Suite (an integrated collection of enterprise resource planning, customer relationship management, and supply chain management applications based on Oracle database technology), Oracle Agile Product Lifecycle Management applications, and
Oracle PeopleSoft human resources applications, and they are all able to exchange data with one another. For example, when introducing a new product, Datacard's product engineering team will put parts and bills of materials data into Agile Product Lifecycle Management applications. These data flow through a third-party application and update Oracle E-Business Suite automatically, so that the parts order is processed and billed correctly.

Oracle CRM On Demand supports Datacard's sales processes. CRM On Demand is integrated with Oracle E-Business Suite so that data on sales opportunities and quotes automatically flow between the two applications. This tight integration means that Datacard customer service employees don't have to manually re-enter data, saving time and money spent on correcting errors in manually-entered data.

The payoff from redesigning Datacard's business processes has been huge. Improved processes for price book distribution and on-time shipment of supplies and spare parts has made customers happier. Employee productivity and morale have increased as the time spent on manual tasks has been reduced.

Other business processes improvements at Datacard include easier identification and development of new products, improved cross-selling and up-selling processes (for selling complementary or higher-price products to customers), greater operational efficiencies, reduced product time to market, standardized global processes, and greater overall organizational effectiveness. Datacard's revenues have almost doubled since the company began its process redesign work.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. How did Datacard Group's previous business processes affect operations and decision making?
2. What management, organization, and technology factors contributed to Datacard Group's problems with its business processes?
3. Diagram Datacard Group's old and redesigned business process for pricing.
4. Describe the role of technology in Datacard Group's business process changes.
5. How did Datacard Group's redesigned business processes change the way the company worked? What was their business impact? Explain.

specifying the solution, and identifying the information requirements that must be met by a system solution.

The systems analyst creates a road map of the existing organization and systems, identifying the primary owners and users of data along with existing hardware and software. The systems analyst then details the problems of existing systems. By examining documents, work papers, and procedures, observing system operations, and interviewing key users of the systems, the analyst can identify the problem areas and objectives a solution would achieve. Often, the solution requires building a new information system or improving an existing one.

The systems analysis also includes a feasibility study to determine whether that solution is feasible, or achievable, from a financial, technical, and organizational standpoint. The feasibility study determines whether the proposed system is expected to be a good investment, whether the technology needed for the system is available and can be handled by the firm's information systems specialists, and whether the organization can handle the changes introduced by the system.
Normally, the systems analysis process identifies several alternative solutions that the organization can pursue and assess the feasibility of each. A written systems proposal report describes the costs and benefits, and the advantages and disadvantages, of each alternative. It is up to management to determine which mix of costs, benefits, technical features, and organizational impacts represents the most desirable alternative.

**Establishing Information Requirements**

Perhaps the most challenging task of the systems analyst is to define the specific information requirements that must be met by the chosen system solution. At the most basic level, the *information requirements* of a new system involve identifying who needs what information, where, when, and how. Requirements analysis carefully defines the objectives of the new or modified system and develops a detailed description of the functions that the new system must perform. Faulty requirements analysis is a leading cause of systems failure and high systems development costs (see Chapter 14). A system designed around the wrong set of requirements will either have to be discarded because of poor performance or will need to undergo major modifications. Section 13.3 describes alternative approaches to eliciting requirements that help minimize this problem.

Some problems do not require an information system solution but instead need an adjustment in management, additional training, or refinement of existing organizational procedures. If the problem is information related, systems analysis still may be required to diagnose the problem and arrive at the proper solution.

**SYSTEMS DESIGN**

Systems analysis describes what a system should do to meet information requirements, and *systems design* shows how the system will fulfill this objective. The design of an information system is the overall plan or model for that system. Like the blueprint of a building or house, it consists of all the specifications that give the system its form and structure.

The systems designer details the system specifications that will deliver the functions identified during systems analysis. These specifications should address all of the managerial, organizational, and technological components of the system solution. Table 13.1 lists the types of specifications that would be produced during systems design.

Like houses or buildings, information systems may have many possible designs. Each design represents a unique blend of all technical and organizational components. What makes one design superior to others is the ease and efficiency with which it fulfills user requirements within a specific set of technical, organizational, financial, and time constraints.

**The Role of End Users**

User information requirements drive the entire system-building effort. Users must have sufficient control over the design process to ensure that the system reflects their business priorities and information needs, not the biases of the technical staff. Working on design increases users' understanding and acceptance of the system. As we describe in Chapter 14, insufficient user involvement in the design effort is a major cause of system failure. However, some systems require more user participation in design than others, and Section 13.3 shows how alternative systems development methods address the user participation issue.
The remaining steps in the systems development process translate the solution specifications established during systems analysis and design into a fully operational information system. These concluding steps consist of programming, testing, conversion, production, and maintenance.

**Programming**
During the programming stage, system specifications that were prepared during the design stage are translated into software program code. Today, many organizations no longer do their own programming for new systems. Instead, they purchase the software that meets the requirements for a new system from external sources such as software packages from a commercial software vendor, software services from an application service provider, or outsourcing firms that develop custom application software for their clients (see Section 13.3).

**Testing**
Exhaustive and thorough testing must be conducted to ascertain whether the system produces the right results. Testing answers the question, “Will the system produce the desired results under known conditions?” As Chapter 5 noted, some companies are starting to use cloud computing services for this work.

The amount of time needed to answer this question has been traditionally underrated in systems project planning (see Chapter 14). Testing is time-consuming: Test data must be carefully prepared, results reviewed, and corrections made in the system. In some instances, parts of the system may have to be redesigned. The risks resulting from glossing over this step are enormous.

Testing an information system can be broken down into three types of activities: unit testing, system testing, and acceptance testing. **Unit testing**, or program testing, consists of testing each program separately in the system. It is widely believed that the purpose of such testing is to guarantee that programs
are error-free, but this goal is realistically impossible. Testing should be viewed instead as a means of locating errors in programs, focusing on finding all the ways to make a program fail. Once they are pinpointed, problems can be corrected.

**System testing** tests the functioning of the information system as a whole. It tries to determine whether discrete modules will function together as planned and whether discrepancies exist between the way the system actually works and the way it was conceived. Among the areas examined are performance time, capacity for file storage and handling peak loads, recovery and restart capabilities, and manual procedures.

**Acceptance testing** provides the final certification that the system is ready to be used in a production setting. Systems tests are evaluated by users and reviewed by management. When all parties are satisfied that the new system meets their standards, the system is formally accepted for installation.

The systems development team works with users to devise a systematic test plan. The test plan includes all of the preparations for the series of tests we have just described.

Figure 13.5 shows an example of a test plan. The general condition being tested is a record change. The documentation consists of a series of test plan screens maintained on a database (perhaps a PC database) that is ideally suited to this kind of application.

**Conversion** is the process of changing from the old system to the new system. Four main conversion strategies can be employed: the parallel strategy, the direct cutover strategy, the pilot study strategy, and the phased approach strategy.

In a **parallel strategy**, both the old system and its potential replacement are run together for a time until everyone is assured that the new one functions correctly. This is the safest conversion approach because, in the event of errors or processing disruptions, the old system can still be used as a backup. However, this approach is very expensive, and additional staff or resources may be required to run the extra system.

The **direct cutover strategy** replaces the old system entirely with the new system on an appointed day. It is a very risky approach that can potentially be

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Address and Maintenance &quot;Record Change Series&quot;</th>
<th>Test Series 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Test Ref.</td>
<td>Condition Tested</td>
<td>Special Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>Change records</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Change existing record</td>
<td>Key field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>Change nonexistent record</td>
<td>Other fields</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>Change deleted record</td>
<td>Deleted record must be available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>Make second record</td>
<td>Change 2.1 above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>Insert record</td>
<td>OK if valid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>Abort during change</td>
<td>Abort 2.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When developing a test plan, it is imperative to include the various conditions to be tested, the requirements for each condition tested, and the expected results. Test plans require input from both end users and information systems specialists.
more costly than running two systems in parallel if serious problems with the
new system are found. There is no other system to fall back on. Dislocations,
disruptions, and the cost of corrections may be enormous.

The **pilot study strategy** introduces the new system to only a limited area
of the organization, such as a single department or operating unit. When this
pilot version is complete and working smoothly, it is installed throughout the
rest of the organization, either simultaneously or in stages.

The **phased approach strategy** introduces the new system in stages, either
by functions or by organizational units. If, for example, the system is introduced
by function, a new payroll system might begin with hourly workers who are
paid weekly, followed six months later by adding salaried employees (who are
paid monthly) to the system. If the system is introduced by organizational unit,
corporate headquarters might be converted first, followed by outlying operating
units four months later.

Moving from an old system to a new one requires that end users be trained to
use the new system. Detailed **documentation** showing how the system works
from both a technical and end-user standpoint is finalized during conversion
time for use in training and everyday operations. Lack of proper training and
documentation contributes to system failure, so this portion of the systems
development process is very important.

### Production and Maintenance

After the new system is installed and conversion is complete, the system
is said to be in **production**. During this stage, the system will be reviewed
by both users and technical specialists to determine how well it has met its
original objectives and to decide whether any revisions or modifications are in
order. In some instances, a formal **post-implementation audit** document is
prepared. After the system has been fine-tuned, it must be maintained while
it is in production to correct errors, meet requirements, or improve process-
ing efficiency. Changes in hardware, software, documentation, or procedures
to a production system to correct errors, meet new requirements, or improve
processing efficiency are termed **maintenance**.

Approximately 20 percent of the time devoted to maintenance is used for
debugging or correcting emergency production problems. Another 20 percent
is concerned with changes in data, files, reports, hardware, or system software.
But 60 percent of all maintenance work consists of making user enhance-
ments, improving documentation, and recoding system components for greater
processing efficiency. The amount of work in the third category of maintenance
problems could be reduced significantly through better systems analysis and
design practices. Table 13.2 summarizes the systems development activities.

### 13.3 What are the Principal Methodologies for Modeling and Designing Systems?

There are alternative methodologies for modeling and designing systems.
Structured methodologies and object-oriented development are the most
prominent.

### Structured Methodologies

Structured methodologies have been used to document, analyze, and design
information systems since the 1970s. **Structured** refers to the fact that
the techniques are step by step, with each step building on the previous one. Structured methodologies are top-down, progressing from the highest, most abstract level to the lowest level of detail—from the general to the specific.

Structured development methods are process-oriented, focusing primarily on modeling the processes, or actions that capture, store, manipulate, and distribute data as the data flow through a system. These methods separate data from processes. A separate programming procedure must be written every time someone wants to take an action on a particular piece of data. The procedures act on data that the program passes to them.

The primary tool for representing a system’s component processes and the flow of data between them is the data flow diagram (DFD). The data flow diagram offers a logical graphic model of information flow, partitioning a system into modules that show manageable levels of detail. It rigorously specifies the processes or transformations that occur within each module and the interfaces that exist between them.

Figure 13.6 shows a simple data flow diagram for a mail-in university course registration system. The rounded boxes represent processes, which portray the transformation of data. The square box represents an external entity, which is an originator or receiver of information located outside the boundaries of the system being modeled. The open rectangles represent data stores, which are either manual or automated inventories of data. The arrows represent data flows, which show the movement between processes, external entities, and data stores. They contain packets of data with the name or content of each data flow listed beside the arrow.

This data flow diagram shows that students submit registration forms with their name, identification number, and the numbers of the courses they wish to take. In process 1.0, the system verifies that each course selected is still open by referencing the university’s course file. The file distinguishes courses that are open from those that have been canceled or filled. Process 1.0 then determines which of the student’s selections can be accepted or rejected. Process 2.0 enrolls the student in the courses for which he or she has been accepted. It updates the university’s course file with the student’s name and identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 13.2 SYSTEMS DEVELOPMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>CORE ACTIVITY</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Programming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production and maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
number and recalculates the class size. If maximum enrollment has been reached, the course number is flagged as closed. Process 2.0 also updates the university's student master file with information about new students or changes in address. Process 3.0 then sends each student applicant a confirmation of registration letter listing the courses for which he or she is registered and noting the course selections that could not be fulfilled.

The diagrams can be used to depict higher-level processes as well as lower-level details. Through leveled data flow diagrams, a complex process can be broken down into successive levels of detail. An entire system can be divided into subsystems with a high-level data flow diagram. Each subsystem, in turn, can be divided into additional subsystems with second-level data flow diagrams, and the lower-level subsystems can be broken down again until the lowest level of detail has been reached.

Another tool for structured analysis is a data dictionary, which contains information about individual pieces of data and data groupings within a system (see Chapter 6). The data dictionary defines the contents of data flows and data stores so that systems builders understand exactly what pieces of data they contain. Process specifications describe the transformation occurring within the lowest level of the data flow diagrams. They express the logic for each process.

In structured methodology, software design is modeled using hierarchical structure charts. The structure chart is a top-down chart, showing each level of design, its relationship to other levels, and its place in the overall design structure. The design first considers the main function of a program or system, then breaks this function into subfunctions, and decomposes each subfunction until the lowest level of detail has been reached. Figure 13.7 shows a high-level structure chart for a payroll system. If a design has too many levels to fit onto one structure chart, it can be broken down further on more detailed structure charts. A structure chart may document one program, one system (a set of programs), or part of one program.
OBJECT-ORIENTED DEVELOPMENT

Structured methods are useful for modeling processes, but do not handle the modeling of data well. They also treat data and processes as logically separate entities, whereas in the real world such separation seems unnatural. Different modeling conventions are used for analysis (the data flow diagram) and for design (the structure chart).

Object-oriented development addresses these issues. Object-oriented development uses the object as the basic unit of systems analysis and design. An object combines data and the specific processes that operate on those data. Data encapsulated in an object can be accessed and modified only by the operations, or methods, associated with that object. Instead of passing data to procedures, programs send a message for an object to perform an operation that is already embedded in it. The system is modeled as a collection of objects and the relationships among them. Because processing logic resides within objects rather than in separate software programs, objects must collaborate with each other to make the system work.

Object-oriented modeling is based on the concepts of class and inheritance. Objects belonging to a certain class, or general categories of similar objects, have the features of that class. Classes of objects in turn can inherit all the structure and behaviors of a more general class and then add variables and behaviors unique to each object. New classes of objects are created by choosing an existing class and specifying how the new class differs from the existing class, instead of starting from scratch each time.

We can see how class and inheritance work in Figure 13.8, which illustrates the relationships among classes concerning employees and how they are paid. Employee is the common ancestor, or superclass, for the other three classes. Salaried, Hourly, and Temporary are subclasses of Employee. The class name is in the top compartment, the attributes for each class are in the middle portion of each box, and the list of operations is in the bottom portion of each box. The features that are shared by all employees (ID, name, address, date hired, position, and pay) are stored in the Employee superclass, whereas each subclass stores features that are specific to that particular type of employee. Specific to hourly employees, for example, are their hourly rates and overtime rates. A solid line from the subclass to the superclass is a generalization path showing that the subclasses Salaried, Hourly, and Temporary have common features that can be generalized into the superclass Employee.
Object-oriented development is more iterative and incremental than traditional structured development. During analysis, systems builders document the functional requirements of the system, specifying its most important properties and what the proposed system must do. Interactions between the system and its users are analyzed to identify objects, which include both data and processes. The object-oriented design phase describes how the objects will behave and how they will interact with one another. Similar objects are grouped together to form a class, and classes are grouped into hierarchies in which a subclass inherits the attributes and methods from its superclass.

The information system is implemented by translating the design into program code, reusing classes that are already available in a library of reusable software objects, and adding new ones created during the object-oriented design phase. Implementation may also involve the creation of an object-oriented database. The resulting system must be thoroughly tested and evaluated.

Because objects are reusable, object-oriented development could potentially reduce the time and cost of writing software because organizations can reuse software objects that have already been created as building blocks for other applications. New systems can be created by using some existing objects, changing others, and adding a few new objects. Object-oriented frameworks have been developed to provide reusable, semicomplete applications that the organization can further customize into finished applications.

**COMPUTER-AIDED SOFTWARE ENGINEERING**

Computer-aided software engineering (CASE)—sometimes called computer-aided systems engineering—provides software tools to automate the methodologies we have just described to reduce the amount of repetitive work the developer needs to do. CASE tools also facilitate the creation of clear documentation and the coordination of team development efforts. Team
members can share their work easily by accessing each other's files to review or modify what has been done. Modest productivity benefits can also be achieved if the tools are used properly.

CASE tools provide automated graphics facilities for producing charts and diagrams, screen and report generators, data dictionaries, extensive reporting facilities, analysis and checking tools, code generators, and documentation generators. In general, CASE tools try to increase productivity and quality by:

- Enforcing a standard development methodology and design discipline
- Improving communication between users and technical specialists
- Organizing and correlating design components and providing rapid access to them using a design repository
- Automating tedious and error-prone portions of analysis and design
- Automating code generation and testing and control rollout

CASE tools contain features for validating design diagrams and specifications. CASE tools thus support iterative design by automating revisions and changes and providing prototyping facilities. A CASE information repository stores all the information defined by the analysts during the project. The repository includes data flow diagrams, structure charts, entity-relationship diagrams, data definitions, process specifications, screen and report formats, notes and comments, and test results.

To be used effectively, CASE tools require organizational discipline. Every member of a development project must adhere to a common set of naming conventions and standards as well as to a development methodology. The best CASE tools enforce common methods and standards, which may discourage their use in situations where organizational discipline is lacking.

### 13.4 WHAT ARE ALTERNATIVE METHODS FOR BUILDING INFORMATION SYSTEMS?

Systems differ in terms of their size and technological complexity and in terms of the organizational problems they are meant to solve. A number of systems-building approaches have been developed to deal with these differences. This section describes these alternative methods: the traditional systems life cycle, prototyping, application software packages, end-user development, and outsourcing.

**TRADITIONAL SYSTEMS LIFE CYCLE**

The systems life cycle is the oldest method for building information systems. The life cycle methodology is a phased approach to building a system, dividing systems development into formal stages, as illustrated in Figure 13.9. Systems development specialists have different opinions on how to partition the systems-building stages, but they roughly correspond to the stages of systems development we have just described.

The systems life cycle methodology maintains a formal division of labor between end users and information systems specialists. Technical specialists, such as systems analysts and programmers, are responsible for much of the systems analysis, design, and implementation work; end users are limited to...
providing information requirements and reviewing the technical staff's work. The life cycle also emphasizes formal specifications and paperwork, so many documents are generated during the course of a systems project.

The systems life cycle is still used for building large complex systems that require a rigorous and formal requirements analysis, predefined specifications, and tight controls over the system-building process. However, the systems life cycle approach can be costly, time-consuming, and inflexible. Although systems builders can go back and forth among stages in the life cycle, the systems life cycle is predominantly a “waterfall” approach in which tasks in one stage are completed before work for the next stage begins. Activities can be repeated, but volumes of new documents must be generated and steps retraced if requirements and specifications need to be revised. This encourages freezing of specifications relatively early in the development process. The life cycle approach is also not suitable for many small desktop systems, which tend to be less structured and more individualized.

**PROTOTYPING**

Prototyping consists of building an experimental system rapidly and inexpen-sively for end users to evaluate. By interacting with the prototype, users can get a better idea of their information requirements. The prototype endorsed by the users can be used as a template to create the final system.

The prototype is a working version of an information system or part of the system, but it is meant to be only a preliminary model. Once operational, the prototype will be further refined until it conforms precisely to users' requirements. Once the design has been finalized, the prototype can be converted to a polished production system.
The process of building a preliminary design, trying it out, refining it, and trying again has been called an **iterative** process of systems development because the steps required to build a system can be repeated over and over again. Prototyping is more explicitly iterative than the conventional life cycle, and it actively promotes system design changes. It has been said that prototyping replaces unplanned rework with planned iteration, with each version more accurately reflecting users’ requirements.

**Steps in Prototyping**

Figure 13.10 shows a four-step model of the prototyping process, which consists of the following:

**Step 1**: Identify the user’s basic requirements. The systems designer (usually an information systems specialist) works with the user only long enough to capture the user’s basic information needs.

**Step 2**: Develop an initial prototype. The systems designer creates a working prototype quickly, using tools for rapidly generating software.

**Step 3**: Use the prototype. The user is encouraged to work with the system to determine how well the prototype meets his or her needs and to make suggestions for improving the prototype.

**Step 4**: Revise and enhance the prototype. The system builder notes all changes the user requests and refines the prototype accordingly. After the prototype has been revised, the cycle returns to Step 3. Steps 3 and 4 are repeated until the user is satisfied.

**FIGURE 13.10 THE PROTOTYPING PROCESS**

The process of developing a prototype can be broken down into four steps. Because a prototype can be developed quickly and inexpensively, systems builders can go through several iterations, repeating steps 3 and 4, to refine and enhance the prototype before arriving at the final operational one.
When no more iterations are required, the approved prototype then becomes an operational prototype that furnishes the final specifications for the application. Sometimes the prototype is adopted as the production version of the system.

**Advantages and Disadvantages of Prototyping**

Prototyping is most useful when there is some uncertainty about requirements or design solutions and often used for designing an information system’s end-user interface (the part of the system with which end users interact, such as online display and data entry screens, reports, or Web pages). Because prototyping encourages intense end-user involvement throughout the systems development life cycle, it is more likely to produce systems that fulfill user requirements.

However, rapid prototyping can gloss over essential steps in systems development. If the completed prototype works reasonably well, management may not see the need for reprogramming, redesign, or full documentation and testing to build a polished production system. Some of these hastily constructed systems may not easily accommodate large quantities of data or a large number of users in a production environment.

**END-USER DEVELOPMENT**

*End-user development* allows end users, with little or no formal assistance from technical specialists, to create simple information systems, reducing the time and steps required to produce a finished application. Using user-friendly query languages and reporting, Web site development, graphics, and PC software tools, end users can access data, create reports, and develop simple applications on their own, with little or no help from professional systems analysts or programmers. A **query language** is a software tool that provides immediate online answers to questions that are not predefined, such as “Who are the highest-performing sales representatives?” Query languages are often tied to data management software (see Chapter 6).

For example, Neways Enterprise, a multinational firm which designs, manufactures, and sells personal care, household and nutritional products that are free of harmful ingredients, used Information Builders WEBFOCUS to create an online self-service reporting system for its thousands of independent distributors and its business analysts. The business analysts use the self-service reports to monitor finances, anticipate trends, and predict results based on current insights. Neways’ globally dispersed independent distributors use the system to access real-time production data to support sales efforts and track qualification for monthly bonuses. The system’s reporting tools let them decide how deeply they want to drill into the data (Information Builders, 2014).

On the whole, end-user-developed systems can be completed more rapidly than those developed through the conventional systems life cycle. Allowing users to specify their own business needs improves requirements gathering and often leads to a higher level of user involvement and satisfaction with the system. However, end-user software tools still cannot replace conventional tools for some business applications because they cannot easily handle the processing of large numbers of transactions or applications with extensive procedural logic and updating requirements.

End-user computing also poses organizational risks because it occurs outside of traditional mechanisms for information systems management and control. When systems are created rapidly, without a formal development methodology, testing and documentation may be inadequate. Control over data can be lost in systems outside the traditional information systems department. To help
organizations maximize the benefits of end-user applications development, management should control the development of end-user applications by requiring cost justification of end-user information system projects and by establishing hardware, software, and quality standards for user-developed applications.

**APPLICATION SOFTWARE PACKAGES AND OUTSOURCING**

Chapter 5 points out that much of today’s software is not developed in-house but is purchased from external sources. Firms can rent the software from a software service provider, they can purchase a software package from a commercial vendor, or they can have a custom application developed by an outside outsourcing firm.

**Application Software Packages**

During the past several decades, many systems have been built on an application software package foundation. Many applications are common to all business organizations—for example, payroll, accounts receivable, general ledger, or inventory control. For such universal functions with standard processes that do not change a great deal over time, a generalized system will fulfill the requirements of many organizations.

If a software package can fulfill most of an organization’s requirements, the company does not have to write its own software. The company can save time and money by using the prewritten, predesigned, pretested software programs from the package. Package vendors supply much of the ongoing maintenance and support for the system, including enhancements to keep the system in line with ongoing technical and business developments. When a package solution is pursued, end users will be responsible for supplying the business information requirements for the system and information systems specialists will provide technical requirements.

If an organization has unique requirements that the package does not address, many packages include capabilities for customization. Customization features allow a software package to be modified to meet an organization’s unique requirements without destroying the integrity of the packaged software. If a great deal of customization is required, additional programming and customization work may become so expensive and time-consuming that they negate many of the advantages of software packages.

When a system is developed using an application software package, systems analysis will include a package evaluation effort, in which both end users and information systems specialists will participate. The most important evaluation criteria are the functions provided by the package, flexibility, user-friendliness, hardware and software resources, database requirements, installation and maintenance efforts, documentation, vendor quality, and cost. The package evaluation process often is based on a Request for Proposal (RFP), which is a detailed list of questions submitted to packaged-software vendors.

When a software package is selected, the organization no longer has total control over the systems design process. Instead of tailoring the systems design specifications directly to user requirements, the design effort will consist of trying to mold user requirements to conform to the features of the package. If the organization’s requirements conflict with the way the package works and the package cannot be customized, the organization will have to adapt to the package and change its procedures.
**Outsourcing**

If a firm does not want to use its internal resources to build or operate information systems, it can outsource the work to an external organization that specializes in providing these services. Cloud computing and software as a service (SaaS) providers, which we described in Chapter 5, are one form of outsourcing. Subscribing companies use the software and computer hardware provided by the service as the technical platform for their systems. In another form of outsourcing, a company could hire an external vendor to design and create the software for its system, but that company would operate the system on its own computers. The outsourcing vendor might be domestic or in another country.

Domestic outsourcing is driven primarily by the fact that outsourcing firms possess skills, resources, and assets that their clients do not have. Installing a new supply chain management system in a very large company might require hiring an additional 30 to 50 people with specific expertise in supply chain management software, licensed from a vendor. Rather than hire permanent new employees, most of whom would need extensive training in the software package, and then release them after the new system is built, it makes more sense, and is often less expensive, to outsource this work for a 12-month period.

In the case of offshore outsourcing, the decision tends to be much more cost-driven. A skilled programmer in India or Russia earns about USD $10,000–$20,000 per year, compared to about $60,000 per year for a comparable programmer in the United States. The Internet and low-cost communications technology have drastically reduced the expense and difficulty of coordinating the work of global teams in faraway locations. In addition to cost savings, many offshore outsourcing firms offer world-class technology assets and skills. Wage inflation outside the United States has recently eroded some of these advantages, and some jobs have moved back to the United States.

Nevertheless, there is a very strong chance that at some point in your career, you’ll be working with offshore outsourcers or global teams. Your firm is most likely to benefit from outsourcing if it takes the time to evaluate all the risks and to make sure outsourcing is appropriate for its particular needs. Any company that outsources its applications must thoroughly understand the project, including its requirements, method of implementation, anticipated benefits, cost components, and metrics for measuring performance.

Many firms underestimate costs for identifying and evaluating vendors of information technology services, for transitioning to a new vendor, for improving internal software development methods to match those of outsourcing vendors, and for monitoring vendors to make sure they are fulfilling their contractual obligations. Companies will need to allocate resources for documenting requirements, sending out RFPs, handling travel expenses, negotiating contracts, and project management. Experts claim it takes from three months to a full year to fully transfer work to an offshore partner and make sure the vendor thoroughly understands your business.

Outsourcing offshore incurs additional costs for coping with cultural differences that drain productivity and dealing with human resources issues, such as terminating or relocating domestic employees. All of these hidden costs undercut some of the anticipated benefits from outsourcing. Firms should be especially cautious when using an outsourcer to develop or to operate applications that give it some type of competitive advantage.
General Motors Corporation (GM) had outsourced 90 percent of its IT services, including its data centers and application development. The company recently decided to bring 90 percent of its IT infrastructure in-house, with only 10 percent managed by outsourcers. Lowering costs is important, but GM’s primary reason for cutting back outsourcing is to take back control of its information systems, which it believes were preventing the company from responding quickly to competitive opportunities. Bringing information systems in-house will make it easier for GM to cut its sprawling list of IT applications by at least 40 percent, move to a more standardized platform, complete innovative IT projects more quickly, and get a better grip on customer and production data, which had been housed in too many different systems. The automaker is consolidating 23 data centers worldwide into just two, both in Michigan, and running four software development centers (Murphy, 2012).

Figure 13.11 shows best- and worst-case scenarios for the total cost of an offshore outsourcing project. It shows how much hidden costs affect the total project cost. The best case reflects the lowest estimates for additional costs, and the worst case reflects the highest estimates for these costs. As you can see, hidden costs increase the total cost of an offshore outsourcing project by an extra 15 to 57 percent. Even with these extra costs, many firms will benefit from offshore outsourcing if they manage the work well. Under the worst-case scenario, a firm would still save about 15 percent.

13.5 What are new approaches for system building in the digital firm era?

In the digital firm environment, organizations need to be able to add, change, and retire their technology capabilities very rapidly to respond to new opportunities, including the need to provide applications for mobile devices. Figure 13.11 shows total cost of offshore outsourcing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Total Cost of Offshore Outsourcing</th>
<th>$10,000,000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hidden Costs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Best Case</td>
<td>Additional Cost ($)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Vendor selection</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Transition costs</td>
<td>2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Layoffs &amp; retention</td>
<td>3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Lost productivity/cultural issues</td>
<td>3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Improving development processes</td>
<td>1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Managing the contract</td>
<td>6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total additional costs</td>
<td>1,520,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If a firm spends $10 million on offshore outsourcing contracts, that company will actually spend 15.2 percent in extra costs even under the best-case scenario. In the worst-case scenario, where there is a dramatic drop in productivity along with exceptionally high transition and layoff costs, a firm can expect to pay up to 57 percent in extra costs on top of the $10 million outlay for an offshore contract.
platforms. Companies are starting to use shorter, more informal development processes that provide fast solutions. In addition to using software packages and external service providers, businesses are relying more heavily on fast-cycle techniques such as rapid application development, joint application design, agile development, and reusable standardized software components that can be assembled into a complete set of services for e-commerce and e-business.

**RAPID APPLICATION DEVELOPMENT (RAD)**

Object-oriented software tools, reusable software, prototyping, and fourth-generation language tools are helping systems builders create working systems much more rapidly than they could using traditional systems-building methods and software tools. The term rapid application development (RAD) is used to describe this process of creating workable systems in a very short period of time. RAD can include the use of visual programming and other tools for building graphical user interfaces, iterative prototyping of key system elements, the automation of program code generation, and close teamwork among end users and information systems specialists. Simple systems often can be assembled from prebuilt components. The process does not have to be sequential, and key parts of development can occur simultaneously.

Sometimes a technique called joint application design (JAD) is used to accelerate the generation of information requirements and to develop the initial systems design. JAD brings end users and information systems specialists together in an interactive session to discuss the system’s design. Properly prepared and facilitated, JAD sessions can significantly speed up the design phase and involve users at an intense level.

**Agile development** focuses on rapid delivery of working software by breaking a large project into a series of small subprojects that are completed in short periods of time using iteration and continuous feedback. Each mini-project is worked on by a team as if it were a complete project, including planning, requirements analysis, design, coding, testing, and documentation. Improvement or addition of new functionality takes place within the next iteration as developers clarify requirements. This helps to minimize the overall risk, and allows the project to adapt to changes more quickly. Agile methods emphasize face-to-face communication over written documents, encouraging people to collaborate and make decisions quickly and effectively.

**COMPONENT-BASED DEVELOPMENT AND WEB SERVICES**

We have already described some of the benefits of object-oriented development for building systems that can respond to rapidly changing business environments, including Web applications. To further expedite software creation, groups of objects have been assembled to provide software components for common functions such as a graphical user interface or online ordering capability that can be combined to create large-scale business applications. This approach to software development is called component-based development, and it enables a system to be built by assembling and integrating existing software components. Increasingly, these software components are coming from cloud services. Businesses are using component-based development to create their e-commerce applications by combining commercially available components for shopping carts, user authentication, search engines, and catalogs with pieces of software for their own unique business requirements.
Web Services and Service-Oriented Computing

Chapter 5 introduced Web services as loosely coupled, reusable software components delivered using Extensible Markup Language (XML) and other open protocols and standards that enable one application to communicate with another with no custom programming required to share data and services. In addition to supporting internal and external integration of systems, Web services can be used as tools for building new information system applications or enhancing existing systems. Because these software services use a universal set of standards, they promise to be less expensive and less difficult to weave together than proprietary components.

Web services can perform certain functions on their own, and they can also engage other Web services to complete more complex transactions, such as checking credit, procurement, or ordering products. By creating software components that can communicate and share data regardless of the operating system, programming language, or client device, Web services can provide significant cost savings in systems building while opening up new opportunities for collaboration with other companies.

MOBILE APPLICATION DEVELOPMENT: DESIGNING FOR A MULTI-SCREEN WORLD

Today, employees and customers expect, and even demand, to be able to use a mobile device of their choice to obtain information or perform a transaction anywhere and at any time. To meet these needs, companies will need to develop mobile Web sites, mobile apps, and native apps as well as traditional information systems. According to digital advertising agency Vertic, mobile app development projects will outnumber native PC projects by a 4-to-1 ratio by 2015 (Greengard, 2013).

Once an organization decides to develop mobile apps, it has to make some important choices, including the technology it will use to implement these apps (whether to write a native app or mobile Web app) and what to do about a mobile Web site. A mobile Web site is a version of a regular Web site that is scaled down in content and navigation for easy access and search on a small mobile screen. (Access Amazon's Web site from your computer and then from your smartphone to see the difference from a regular Web site.)

A mobile Web app is an Internet-enabled app with specific functionality for mobile devices. Users access mobile Web apps through their mobile device's Web browser. The Web app resides primarily on a server, is accessed via the Internet, and doesn't need to be installed on the device. The same application can be used by most devices that can surf the Web, regardless of their brand.

A native app is a standalone application designed to run on a specific platform and device. The native app is installed directly on a mobile device. Native apps can connect to the Internet to download and upload data, and they can also operate on these data even when not connected to the Internet. For example, an e-book reading app such as Kindle software can download a book from the Internet, disconnect from the Internet, and present the book for reading. Native mobile apps provide fast performance and a high degree of reliability. They are also able to take advantage of a mobile device's particular capabilities, such as its camera or touch features. However, native apps are expensive to develop because multiple versions of an app must be programmed for different mobile operating systems and hardware.
Developing applications for mobile platforms is quite different from development for PCs and their much larger screens. The reduced size of mobile devices makes using fingers and multi-touch gestures much easier than typing and using keyboards. Mobile apps need to be optimized for the specific tasks they are to perform; they should not try to carry out too many tasks; and they should be designed for usability. The user experience for mobile interaction is fundamentally different from using a desktop or laptop PC. Saving resources—bandwidth, screen space, memory, processing, data entry, and user gestures—is a top priority.

When a full Web site created for the desktop shrinks to the size of a smartphone screen, it is difficult for the user to navigate through the site. The user must continually zoom in and out and scroll to find relevant material. Therefore, companies need to design Web sites specifically for mobile interfaces and create multiple mobile sites to meet the needs of smartphones, tablets, and desktop browsers. This equates to at least three sites with separate content, maintenance, and costs. Currently, Web sites know what device you are using because your browser will send this information to the server when you log on. Based on this information, the server will deliver the appropriate screen.

One solution to the problem of having multiple Web sites is to use **responsive Web design**. Responsive Web design enables Web sites to automatically change layouts according to the visitor’s screen resolution, whether on a desktop, laptop, tablet, or smartphone. Responsive design uses tools such as flexible grid-based layouts, flexible images, and media queries, to optimize the design for different viewing contexts. This eliminates the need for separate design and development work for each new device. HTML5, which we introduced in Chapter 5, is also used for mobile application development because it can support cross-platform mobile applications.

The Interactive Session on Technology describes how some companies have addressed the challenges of mobile development we have just identified.
Just as everyone today has (or wants) a mobile phone, every business wants mobile apps. Companies of all stripes realize that the target audiences for their applications has shifted from users of personal computers to users of mobile devices. Businesses are frantically struggling to become more mobile, and they want them developed in a very short time frame. That's not so easy.

Developing successful mobile apps poses some unique challenges. The user experience on a mobile device is fundamentally different from that on a PC. There are special features on mobile devices such as location-based services that give firms the potential to interact with customers in meaningful new ways. Firms need to be able to take advantage of those features while delivering an experience that is appropriate to a small screen. There are multiple mobile platforms to work with, including iOS, Android, and Windows 8, and a firm may need a different version of an application to run on each of these. System-builders need to understand how, why, and where customers use mobile devices and how these mobile experiences change business interactions and behavior. You can’t just port a Web site or desktop application to a smartphone or tablet. It’s a different systems development process.

InterContinental Hotels Group (IHG), which includes InterContinental Hotels, Crowne Plaza Hotels & Resorts, and Holiday Inns clearly needs a mobile app to stay competitive. The Group must compete with other hotel chains and also online services with mobile apps such as Booking.com, Orbitz.com, and Hotels.com, which handle reservations for hundreds of thousands of hotels (see the Chapter 10 Interactive Session on Orbitz). Mobile devices are quickly becoming the preferred method of booking reservations online, and IHG doesn’t want to miss the opportunity.

Guests can use IHG’s mobile app, IHG Mobile, to book rooms at any of IHG’s 4,800 hotels. In addition, the IHG Mobile app includes customer reviews, photos of the hotel and surrounding neighborhood, maps, directions to nearby locales, push notifications, access to special corporate rates, and the ability to manage points for the IHG Rewards program. The app is available for 8 different mobile platforms.

Maintaining this app requires constant teamwork between marketing and mobile application developers. Bill Keen, director of IHG mobile solutions, works with a team of eight product managers and 12 information technology specialists on IHG Mobile. The 12 mobile developers have expertise in mobile application design and building APIs that access IHG’s transaction systems and public information services such as weather and maps. An API is an application programming interface that specifies how software components should interact. Both groups are housed in the same building and have face-to-face meetings every morning to test new features and discuss next steps.

The team works on app features and enhancements in two-week sprints. The product managers select the next mobile app feature to work on and the mobile application developers then inform them what can be done in the next two-week sprint. The product managers make the final decision about what to do in that time frame. Both groups use an Agile development process and operate as a single unit sharing responsibilities and accountability.

Supporting the team are an information architect and graphic designer. They analyze what hotel guests need from the app, based on customer feedback, and establish the interactive pattern design, photos, and graphics. The design is then handed to the developers to code into software programs and deploy.

Mobile apps should not be built for the sake of going mobile but for genuinely helping the company become more successful. The mobile app will need to be connected in a meaningful way to the systems that power the business. Alex and Ani learned this when it developed a mobile app for employees in its stores to use to help customers make selections and then complete the purchase transaction.

Alex and Ani, founded in 2004, designs, produces, and sells high-quality, eco-friendly jewelry in the U.S. using artisanal techniques, and is dedicated to helping its customers find inner peace and positive energy. Having customers in Alex and Ani stores wait on long checkout lines ran counter to the company’s philosophy and brand image.

Working with Mobiquity, a developer of enterprise mobile solutions, Alex and Ani created a mobile point-of-sales and payment solution where Alex and Ani’s Bangle Bartenders can swipe credit cards, scan bar codes, and print, allowing a customer to sign and
receive a copy of the credit-card receipt at the time of purchase while they are in the store aisles. They do not have to wait in line for a cashier. The mobile app helps store sales staff to be more attentive to customers while reducing time to pay for purchases. This enhances the in-store customer experience, improves brand perception, and provides better customer service, thereby increasing sales revenues.

The starting point for developing a mobile app is to identify the mobile moments (occasions when someone would pull out a mobile device to get something done) where a mobile app would be especially helpful. Alex and Ani’s chief technology officer Joe Lezon and head of retail operations Susan Soards mapped out the mobile moments where employees interact with customers. They then specified the context—the situation, preferences, and attitudes of customers and employees in these mobile moments. Lezon and Soards determined where physically in the store mobile moments occur, how long they last, the stage of the checkout process, what information is available, and customer expectations.

The second step is to design the mobile engagement. Business people, designers, and app developers get together to decide how to engage a customer during mobile moments, and which moments benefit both the customer and the company. A mobile app for moments that benefit both customers and the company is more likely to be successful. Alex and Ani had a small team draw pictures to design the mobile engagement, mapping out exactly how an employee would use an iPod Touch application and a credit card reader/printer linked directly to the company’s point-of-sale system to engage customers. The design specifications included screen layouts, the sequence of events, and transactions needed at each step.

The third step is to engineer people, processes, and platforms to deliver the mobile experience. An effective mobile app often requires changing the firm’s internal systems, such as those for inventory management, customers, and reservations. Changing those systems typically requires new APIs and tuning the systems to respond more quickly to requests; such changes account for 80 percent of the cost of most mobile projects. Alex and Ani connected their mobile app to the company’s point-of-sale systems as well as to systems with detailed product information.

The fourth, final step is to monitor performance and improve outcomes. Alex and Ani analyzed its mobile retail application to determine the length of time for checkouts, whether the app reduces checkout time from minutes to seconds and which customers complete transactions.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. What management, organization, and technology issues need to be addressed when building a mobile application?
2. How does user requirement definition for mobile applications differ from traditional systems analysis?
3. Describe Alex and Ani’s sales process before and after the mobile application was deployed.
Review Summary

1. How does building new systems produce organizational change?
   Building a new information system is a form of planned organizational change. Four kinds of technology-enabled change are (a) automation, (b) rationalization of procedures, (c) business process redesign, and (d) paradigm shift, with far-reaching changes carrying the greatest risks and rewards. Many organizations are using business process management to redesign work flows and business processes in the hope of achieving dramatic productivity breakthroughs. Business process management is also useful for promoting total quality management (TQM), six sigma, and other initiatives for incremental process improvement.

2. What are the core activities in the systems development process?
   The core activities in systems development are systems analysis, systems design, programming, testing, conversion, production, and maintenance. Systems analysis is the study and analysis of problems of existing systems and the identification of requirements for their solutions. Systems design provides the specifications for an information system solution, showing how its technical and organizational components fit together.

3. What are the principal methodologies for modeling and designing systems?
   The two principal methodologies for modeling and designing information systems are structured methodologies and object-oriented development. Structured methodologies focus on modeling processes and data separately. The data flow diagram is the principal tool for structured analysis, and the structure chart is the principal tool for representing structured software design. Object-oriented development models a system as a collection of objects that combine processes and data. Object-oriented modeling is based on the concepts of class and inheritance.

4. What are the alternative methods for building information systems?
   The oldest method for building systems is the systems life cycle, which requires that information systems be developed in formal stages. The stages must proceed sequentially and have defined outputs; each requires formal approval before the next stage can commence. The systems life cycle is useful for large projects that need formal specifications and tight management control over each stage of systems building, but it is very rigid and costly.
   Prototyping consists of building an experimental system rapidly and inexpensively for end users to interact with and evaluate. Prototyping encourages end-user involvement in systems development and iteration of design until specifications are captured accurately. The rapid creation of prototypes can result in systems that have not been completely tested or documented or that are technically inadequate for a production environment.
   Using a software package reduces the amount of design, programming, testing, installation, and maintenance work required to build a system. Application software packages are helpful if a firm does not have the internal information systems staff or financial resources to custom develop a system. To meet an organization’s unique requirements, packages may require extensive modifications that can substantially raise development costs.
   End-user development is the development of information systems by end users, either alone or with minimal assistance from information systems specialists. End-user developed systems can be created rapidly and informally using user-friendly software tools. However, end-user development may create information systems that do not necessarily meet quality assurance standards and that are not easily controlled by traditional means.
   Outsourcing consists of using an external vendor to build (or operate) a firm’s information systems instead of the organization’s internal information systems staff. Outsourcing can save application development costs or enable firms to develop applications without an internal information systems staff. However, firms risk losing control over their information systems and becoming too dependent on external vendors. Outsourcing also entails hidden costs, especially when the work is sent offshore.

5. What are new approaches for system building in the digital firm era?
   Companies are turning to rapid application design (RAD), joint application design (JAD), agile development, and reusable software components to accelerate the systems development process. RAD uses object-oriented software, visual programming, prototyping, and fourth-generation tools for very
rapid creation of systems. Agile development breaks a large project into a series of small subprojects that are completed in short periods of time using iteration and continuous feedback. Component-based development expedites application development by grouping objects into suites of software components that can be combined to create large-scale business applications. Web services provide a common set of standards that enable organizations to link their systems regardless of their technology platform through standard plug-and-play architecture. Mobile application development must pay attention to simplicity, usability, and the need to optimize tasks for tiny screens.

Key Terms

Acceptance testing, 514
Agile development, 527
Automation, 504
Business process management, 505
Business process redesign, 505
Component-based development, 527
Computer-aided software engineering (CASE), 519
Conversion, 514
Customization, 524
Data flow diagram (DFD), 516
Direct cutover strategy, 514
Documentation, 515
End-user development, 523
End-user interface, 512
Feasibility study, 511
Information requirements, 512
Iterative, 522
Joint application design (JAD), 527
Maintenance, 515
Mobile Web app, 528
Mobile Web site, 528
Native app, 528
Object, 518
Object-oriented development, 518
Offshore outsourcing, 525
Paradigm shift, 505
Parallel strategy, 514
Phased approach strategy, 515
Pilot study strategy, 515
Post-implementation audit, 515
Process specifications, 517
Production, 515
Programming, 513
Prototype, 521
Prototyping, 521
Query languages, 523
Rapid application development (RAD), 527
Rationalization of procedures, 504
Request for Proposal (RFP), 527
Responsive Web design, 529
Six sigma, 504
Structure chart, 517
Structured, 515
Systems analysis, 509
Systems design, 512
Systems development, 509
Systems life cycle, 520
System testing, 514
Test plan, 514
Testing, 513
Total quality management (TQM), 504
Unit testing, 513

MyMISLab

Go to mymislab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

Review Questions

13-1 How does building new systems produce organizational change?
- Describe each of the four kinds of organizational change that can be promoted with information technology.
- Define business process management and describe the steps required to carry it out.

13-2 What are the core activities in the systems development process?
- Distinguish between systems analysis and systems design. Describe the activities for each.
- Define information requirements and explain why they are difficult to determine correctly.
- Explain why the testing stage of systems development is so important. Name and describe the three stages of testing for an information system.
Hands-On MIS Projects

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience analyzing business processes, designing and building a customer system for auto sales, and analyzing Web site information requirements.

Management Decision Problems

13-9 For an additional fee, a customer purchasing a Sears Roebuck appliance, such as a washing machine, can purchase a three-year service contract. The contract provides free repair service and parts for the specified appliance using an authorized Sears service provider. When a person with a Sears service contract needs to repair an appliance, such as a washing machine, he or she calls the Sears Repairs & Parts department to schedule an appointment. The department makes the appointment and gives the caller the date and approximate time of the appointment. The repair technician arrives during the designated time framework and diagnoses the problem. If the problem is caused by a faulty part, the technician either replaces the part if he is carrying the part with him or orders the replacement part from Sears. If the part is not in stock at Sears, Sears orders the part and gives the customer an approximate time when the part will arrive. The part is shipped directly to the customer. After the part has arrived, the customer must call Sears to schedule a second appointment for a repair technician to replace the ordered part. This process is very lengthy. It may take two weeks to schedule the first repair visit, another two
weeks to order and receive the required part, and another week to schedule a second repair visit after the
ordered part has been received.

- Diagram the existing process.
- What is the impact of the existing process on Sears’ operational efficiency and customer
  relationships?
- What changes could be made to make this process more efficient? How could information systems
  support these changes? Diagram the new, improved process.

13-10 Management at your agricultural chemicals corporation has been dissatisfied with production planning.
Production plans are created using best guesses of demand for each product, which are based on how
much of each product has been ordered in the past. If a customer places an unexpected order or requests
a change to an existing order after it has been placed, there is no way to adjust production plans. The
company may have to tell customers it can’t fill their orders, or it may run up extra costs maintaining
additional inventory to prevent stock-outs.

At the end of each month, orders are totaled and manually keyed into the company’s production
planning system. Data from the past month’s production and inventory systems are manually entered
into the firm’s order management system. Analysts from the sales department and from the produc-
tion department analyze the data from their respective systems to determine what the sales targets and
production targets should be for the next month. These estimates are usually different. The analysts then
get together at a high-level planning meeting to revise the production and sales targets to take into account
senior management’s goals for market share, revenues, and profits. The outcome of the meeting is a final-
ized production master schedule.

The entire production planning process takes 17 business days to complete. Nine of these days are
required to enter and validate the data. The remaining days are spent developing and reconciling the production
and sales targets and finalizing the production master schedule.

- Draw a diagram of the existing production planning process.
- Analyze the problems this process creates for the company.
- How could an enterprise system solve these problems? In what ways could it lower costs? Diagram
  what the production planning process might look like if the company implemented enterprise
  software.

Improving Decision Making: Using Database Software to Design a
Customer System for Auto Sales

Software skills: Database design, querying, reporting, and forms
Business skills: Sales lead and customer analysis

13-11 This project requires you to perform a systems analysis and then design a system solution using database
software.

Ace Auto Dealers specializes in selling new vehicles from Subaru in Portland, Oregon. The company
advertises in local newspapers and is listed as an authorized dealer on the Subaru Web site and other major
Web sites for auto buyers. The company benefits from a good local word-of-mouth reputation and name
recognition.

Ace does not believe it has enough information about its customers. It cannot easily determine
which prospects have made auto purchases, nor can it identify which customer touch points have produced
the greatest number of sales leads or actual sales so it can focus advertising and marketing more on the
channels that generate the most revenue. Are purchasers discovering Ace from newspaper ads, from word
of mouth, or from the Web?

Prepare a systems analysis report detailing Ace’s problem and a system solution that can be
implemented using PC database management software. Then use database software to develop a simple
system solution. In MyMISLab, you will find more information about Ace and its information requirements
to help you develop the solution.
Achieving Operational Excellence: Analyzing Web Site Design and Information Requirements

Software skills: Web browser software
Business skills: Information requirements analysis, Web site design

13-12 Visit the Web site of your choice and explore it thoroughly. Prepare a report analyzing the various functions provided by that Web site and its information requirements. Your report should answer these questions: What functions does the Web site perform? What data does it use? What are its inputs, outputs, and processes? What are some of its other design specifications? Does the Web site link to any internal systems or systems of other organizations? What value does this Web site provide the firm?

Collaboration and Teamwork Project

13-13 In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Sites, Google Docs, Google+, or other open source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.

SourceGas Goes for Better Workforce Scheduling Systems

SourceGas is a utility headquartered in Golden, Colorado providing natural gas service to over 413,000 customers in Arkansas, Nebraska, Colorado, and Wyoming. The company has over 1,100 employees and operates nearly 18,000 miles of natural gas transmission and distribution pipeline covering a 332,437-square-mile area—about half the size of Alaska.

The number of work orders (authorizing specific work or repairs to be done) processed per mile traveled is a key performance indicator for utility companies, especially SourceGas. SourceGas's territory includes many large rural areas where re-routing work orders incurs very heavy fuel, maintenance, and other operational costs. The more work orders that can be processed per mile traveled, the lower the cost.

SourceGas's predecessor had installed a mobile information system in 2000 to dispatch approximately 500,000 work orders to approximately 500 field technicians equipped with mobile devices. However, this work order and dispatch system was starting to show its age, and the work order and dispatch processes required too much manual effort. All work was dispatched manually, and there were no systematized scheduling priorities, making it difficult for service technicians to consistently be assigned workloads that were aligned with business objectives.

SourceGas dispatchers were highly experienced and had the requisite knowledge to assign technicians with the appropriate set of skills to perform the work. However, to perform this process successfully, dispatchers had to commit to memory more than 225 different types of work that technicians performed in the field. SourceGas wound up spending a great deal of time and effort clarifying its scheduling policies.

SourceGas's work order process starts with a call from a customer to the SourceGas call center in Fayetteville, Arkansas. Under the company's old system, the company's SAP CRM software created a work order that was sent to the SourceGas dispatch center, where dispatchers assigned the work to technicians who received the assignments using Panasonic Toughbook mobile devices. Although the previous system integrated with SAP CRM software to enable SourceGas to track a work order from start to finish, the work order still had to be initiated manually by the dispatchers.

What's more, the outdated system could no longer be easily modified to keep up with new requirements. SourceGas serves both regulated and non-regulated markets in four states with
different business rules, so the system has to be able to accommodate rapid and constant change. Enhancements to the system were just too costly.

SourceGas needed a new system to automate its work order and scheduling processes that could be updated and changed much more easily. Management also wanted a system where SourceGas could make these changes using its own internal resources rather than external consultants, which the company had relied on heavily to make enhancements to its old system. The software for the legacy system had been custom-programmed by third-party vendors, making the system difficult to maintain and enhance.

In the summer of 2011, SourceGas initiated a requirements-gathering workshop with ClickSoftware, the external vendor the company had used in the past to make system enhancements. The objective was to establish system requirements and develop business rules to guide the work order and scheduling processes. SourceGas’s biggest priorities were to 1) automate work scheduling; 2) maintain the company’s existing timesheet process; and 3) ensure minimal change required for field technicians to use the new system.

For its solution, SourceGas chose SAP Workforce Scheduling & Optimization software package by ClickSoftware, which integrates with its existing SAP systems, including SAP ERP and SAP CRM. SAP Workforce Scheduling & Optimization by ClickSoftware is a real-time optimized scheduling solution for managing scheduling and dispatching, supporting mobile service operations, scheduling service appointments, and monitoring service operations. The software includes capabilities for demand forecasting to determine how much work is set to arrive, when, and where; deploying resources based on knowledge of worker skills, service commitments, location, and customer preferences; responding in real time to on-the-spot issues such as traffic and cancellations; and analyzing service performance by identifying problem areas and methods for improvement. Software users are able to meet anticipated workloads in a specific time frame with better capacity planning and resource allocation. SAP Workforce Scheduling & Optimization software integrates directly with all SAP applications.

An SAP NetWeaver Process Integration adapter automatically handles the messaging between the SAP Workforce Scheduling & Optimization and the SAP CRM system. Work orders are now automatically scheduled and dispatched using the company’s business rules configured in the system, with exceptions flagged for dispatchers to handle.

The entire process of implementing the new system—requirements analysis, development, testing, and training, took a little over one year. SourceGas rolled out the system in phases, with its last division going live with the system in December 2012. In implementing the SAP software package, SourceGas faced some special challenges because it had to design the system and configure the software to account for all the special conditions of its unique service area and complex rules for types of work. Some of the questions that had to be addressed were: Are work order priorities the same in an urban area, such as Fayetteville, Arkansas, as they are in rural Wyoming? What constitutes an emergency work order?

The SourceGas system had to be designed to schedule and route all the field technician work according to these various rules and conditions. The design also had to make the system as familiar and easy to use for SourceGas mobile workers as possible, with the new mobile app user experience mirroring field workers’ existing user experience as much as possible. This was especially critical for time reporting, which required some simplification while adhering nevertheless to company business rules for proper accounting.

SourceGas was able to enhance the software while maintaining the same user experience. To improve technician efficiency, the software was enhanced to tailor service order completion data sent back to SourceGas’s ERP system for each type of service order rather than displaying all data fields on all orders. Another important enhancement was to add audio alerts for dispatchers and technicians’ mobile devices to the SAP Workforce Scheduling & Optimization software so that emergency orders receive proper attention. An additional safety feature is the capability for technicians to set a timer to alert dispatch if they haven’t returned to their vehicle by a specified time.

SourceGas used an iterative approach and agile development methodology and took user input and user training very seriously. The system project had a committee of super-user technicians as well as an operations team to make sure the system was built to the right specifications. Its technicians had provided important input during the requirements-gathering and design stages of system-building, and they began training on the new application in June 2012. SourceGas trained 20 percent of its workforce to obtain their feedback about the new system (to
make sure it met their expectations), and used the experience to create training materials for when the system went totally live. This approach helped ensure users would buy into the new system and that no business process was overlooked.

The testing process had end users on SourceGas’s operations team perform all of the approximately 225 types of service orders handled by the company using the new application to make sure the system was able to handle every single business scenario. For example, to test the process of a technician closing out a work order for a meter exchange, the new system must be able to move data from a final reading of the old meter into SourceGas’s SAP ERP system, and the system has to perform certain steps before the new meter is recognized and synchronized to a customer account.

What benefits have been produced by the new system? SourceGas’s management has received positive feedback about the new system capabilities for automated scheduling, timesheet preparation as well as its improved usability compared to the previous system. Managers can more accurately gauge their workload in their divisions. SourceGas dispatchers can see their workloads more accurately and determine the appropriate resources. The company has already used the new system to complete 400,000 work orders and pay 900,000 timesheet records. However, management would like to see more manpower study reports before it can determine the extent of the new system’s operational efficiencies and benefits.

One key benefit that is already apparent, however, is the company’s ability to keep a lid on the costs of maintaining and updating the system because it is doing most of that work with in-house staff rather than turning to external vendors, as it had in the past. The SAP Workforce Scheduling and Optimization software package has made it possible for SourceGas to rapidly make changes in-house, which makes it easier for the company to respond to rapid changes in the utility industry.

SourceGas will be further enhancing its SAP Workforce Scheduling and Optimization software to focus more directly on serving customers. Potential changes to the system include allowing customers to place orders online, sending text messages to inform customers when technicians are on the way, and processing payment from customers directly in the field.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

13-14 Analyze SourceGas’s problems with its old system. What management, organization, and technology factors were responsible for these problems? What was the business impact of these problems?

13-15 What role did end users play in developing SourceGas’s new work order and dispatch system? How did the project team make sure users were involved? What would have happened to the project if they had not done this?

13-16 What types of system-building methods and tools did SourceGas use for building its system?

13-17 Discuss the issue of software package customization at SourceGas.

13-18 What other steps did SourceGas take to make sure the new system was successful?

13-19 What were the benefits of the new system? How did it change the way SourceGas ran its business? How successful was this system solution?

---

**MyMISLab**

Go to mymislab.com for Auto-graded writing questions as well as the following Assisted-graded writing questions:

13-20 Describe four system conversion strategies.

13-21 Describe the role of end users in developing systems using the traditional systems life cycle, prototyping, application software packages, and end-user development.
Chapter 13 References


Dibbern, Jess, Jessica Winkler, and Armin Heinzl. "Explaining Variations in Client Extra Costs between Software Projects Offshored to India." *MIS Quarterly* 32, No. 2 (June 2008).


Murphy, Chris. "GM's U-Turn." *Information Week* (July 9, 2012).


LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. What are the objectives of project management and why is it so essential in developing information systems?
2. What methods can be used for selecting and evaluating information systems projects and aligning them with the firm's business goals?
3. How can firms assess the business value of information systems?
4. What are the principal risk factors in information systems projects, and how can they be managed?

MyMISLab™
Visit mymislab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of-chapter problems.

CHAPTER CASES
Harrah's Cherokee Casino Wins with Sound Project Management
New York’s CityTime: An IS Project Goes Awry
Britain’s National Health Service Jettisons Choose and Book System
A Shaky Start for Healthcare.gov

VIDEO CASES
Blue Cross Blue Shield: Smarter Computing Project
NASA Project Management Challenges
Instructional Videos:
Software Project Management, Part 1
Software Project Management, Part 2
Harrah's Cherokee Casino Resort in Cherokee, North Carolina is owned by the Eastern Band of Cherokee Indians and is one of the few casinos to have performed well during the 2008 economic downturn and thereafter. As a matter of fact, the casino performed so well that it was able to undertake a US $650 million expansion of its facilities with more game tables and dealers.

The casino's business expansion required an upgrade to the casino's Oracle JD Edwards enterprise resource planning (ERP) system running the company's business operations. The upgrade was designed to maintain existing levels of operational support while providing casino employees with new capabilities to help them in their job.

James Caldwell, Harrah's Cherokee director of information technology and risk control, worked with CSS International consultants to develop a program to complete the upgrade in 100 days. This was an ambitious target for a large software project, but the project came in on time and nearly 15 percent under budget, allowing the company to spend more on streamlining additional human resources processes and automating error-prone, time-consuming tasks. How was Harrah's Cherokee able to pull this off?

The answer is: by good project management. Caldwell and his team accurately defined the scope of the project up front, organized project team leaders early on, and worked closely with key users to get a clear understanding of business needs. Caldwell also secured critical management support before moving the project forward.

Managing a world-class casino not only involves keeping game tables active and serving drinks but also managing a hotel, restaurants, nightclub, spas,
security, banking operations, housekeeping, and a customer database. An army of employees is required—2,700 at Harrah's Cherokee. Inefficient business processes for hiring and managing these employees was slowing down the business and taking too much time away from the company's core mission of enhancing the customer experience.

Harrah Cherokee's existing ERP system had modules for human resources (HR) and payroll, but they required considerable manual rekeying of data by the casino's HR staff. Data entry tasks were distributed among multiple HR employees. One person would key in data related to new hires and another would be responsible for entering data for job changes. The system's user interface was not user-friendly. HR staff entering data occasionally introduced errors or failed to include critical information, adding to time and operating costs.

For example, if an employee record contains incorrect data, that employee won't get paid on time. Like others companies in service industries, Harrah's Cherokee tends to have higher employee turnover, and that means a steady influx of new employees with data to enter into the system and more opportunities for error.

The solution to this problem was the Pages feature of JD Edwards EnterpriseOne Tools. Pages provides a user-friendly interface for employee self-service applications by giving the information systems department centralized control of users' work screens and letting them customize what employees see. For example, the steps in a specific process can be arranged in a visual process flow instead of just listing menu options on the screen. Page automates previously manual processes, such as a request for personal tie off. Employees are able to log into their self-service portal, submit these requests online, and secure management approval online. Pages also manages employee performance reviews and furnishes online benefits manuals and how-to guides. Since Harrah's Cherokee implemented Pages, help calls to Human Resources have decreased significantly.

Although the benefits of Pages were obvious, the new system represented change, and employees often resist the changes associated with a new information system. Caldwell and his project team proactively engaged with change management. They did not present users with a new system that they had to accept. Instead, they sought active user input on changes to menu design and interface layout. By reaching out to employees and showing they were prepared to support and train them, the project team got them to buy into the new system. Now the company's HR staff can spend more time finding high-quality applications and hiring them more expeditiously instead of spending all day keying in data.


One of the principal challenges posed by information systems is ensuring they deliver genuine business benefits. There is a very high failure rate among information systems projects because organizations have incorrectly assessed their business value or because firms have failed to manage the organizational change surrounding the introduction of new technology.

Harrah Cherokee Casino's management realized this when it undertook its system upgrade. The new system involved changes to important Human Resources (HR) business processes supported by new software. Harrah's Cherokee succeeded with this project because its management clearly understood that strong project management and attention to organizational and "people" issues were essential to success.
What are the objectives of project management and why is it so essential in developing information systems?

There is a very high failure rate among information systems projects. In nearly every organization, information systems projects take much more time and money to implement than originally anticipated or the completed system does not work properly. When an information system does not meet expectations or costs too much to develop, companies may not realize any benefit from their information system investment, and the system may not be able to solve the problems for which it was intended. The development of a new system must be carefully managed and orchestrated, and the way a project is executed is likely to be the most important factor influencing its outcome. That's why it's essential to have some knowledge about managing information systems projects and the reasons why they succeed or fail.

Runaway Projects and System Failure

How badly are projects managed? On average, private sector projects are underestimated by one-half in terms of budget and time required to deliver the
complete system promised in the system plan. Many projects are delivered with missing functionality (promised for delivery in later versions). The Standish Group consultancy, which monitors IT project success rates, found that only 32 percent of all technology investments were completed on time, on budget, and with all features and functions originally specified (McCafferty, 2010). A joint study by McKinsey and Oxford University found that large software projects on average run 66 percent over budget and 33 percent over schedule; as many as 17 percent of projects turn out so badly that they can threaten the existence of the company (Chandrasekaran et al., 2014). Between 30 and 40 percent of all software projects are “runaway” projects that far exceed the original schedule and budget projections and fail to perform as originally specified (see the Interactive Session on Management).

As illustrated in Figure 14.1, a systems development project without proper management will most likely suffer these consequences:

- Costs that vastly exceed budgets
- Unexpected time slippage
- Technical performance that is less than expected
- Failure to obtain anticipated benefits

The systems produced by failed information projects are often not used in the way they were intended, or they are not used at all. Users often have to develop parallel manual systems to make these systems work.

The actual design of the system may fail to capture essential business requirements or improve organizational performance. Information may not be provided quickly enough to be helpful, it may be in a format that is impossible to digest and use, or it may represent the wrong pieces of data.

The way in which nontechnical business users must interact with the system may be excessively complicated and discouraging. A system may be designed with a poor user interface. The user interface is the part of the system with which end users interact. For example, an online input form or data entry screen may be so poorly arranged that no one wants to submit data or request information. System outputs may be displayed in a format that is too difficult to comprehend.

Web sites may discourage visitors from exploring further if the Web pages are cluttered and poorly arranged, if users cannot easily find the information they are seeking, or if it takes too long to access and display the Web page on the user’s computer.

Additionally, the data in the system may have a high level of inaccuracy or inconsistency. The information in certain fields may be erroneous or ambiguous, or it may not be organized properly for business purposes. Information required for a specific business function may be inaccessible because the data are incomplete.

**Figure 14.1 Consequences of Poor Project Management**

Without proper management, a systems development project takes longer to complete and most often exceeds the allocated budget. The resulting information system most likely is technically inferior and may not be able to demonstrate any benefits to the organization.
NEW YORK’S CITYTIME: AN IS PROJECT GOES AWRY

New York City’s CityTime project started out with good intentions. CityTime was created to automate payroll timekeeping for 80 mayoral and other city agencies and in the process to curb undeserved overtime payments to city workers and improve accountability throughout the government. In an ironic twist, the project instead became permeated with fraud at every level. The original estimated project cost was about US $63 million, but CityTime ended up costing $720 million by the time it became fully operational in 2011.

Project managers from the project’s main consulting organization, Science Applications International Corporation (SAIC) were charged and convicted in 2014 of fraud and bribery, as was Mark Mazer, a former consultant to the city’s Office of Payroll Administration, who had managed the project for the city. In 2014, along with two others, he received a sentence of twenty years in prison. Manhattan US Attorney Preet Bharara stated that contractors and subcontractors systematically inflated costs, overbilled for consultants’ time, and artificially extended the completion date. Again, the biggest reason for the project’s unheard-of budget increases was lack of qualified oversight. The few government employees constantly monitoring the project turned a seemingly blind eye on the ballooning costs incurred by SAIC and the lack of progress in the project. Belief that the software developed for the system could be sold to other governments was perhaps another reason why the city let costs run wild.

Mark Page, budget director for New York City Mayor Michael Bloomberg, was reportedly the strongest voice in favor of CityTime. He had hoped to stop the trend of police officers, firefighters, and other aging city workers receiving unnecessary overtime at the end of their careers, presumably to increase their pensions. Page also wanted to limit lawsuits against the city from workers claiming their pay was too low for the hours they had worked. But Page’s background was in law, not information systems, making him a poor choice to oversee CityTime. Other government branches, like the city comptroller, left the project mostly to Page. William C. Thompson, the city comptroller from 2002 to 2009, never audited CityTime despite numerous warnings about the project from staffers. An aide for the mayor did suggest that the comptroller’s office had raised concerns about the project to the mayor, but those concerns too were ignored or dismissed by Page.

In 2000, work on the project was transferred to SAIC from the first contractor, a subsidiary of MCI. Instead of the usual competitive bidding process for contracts, the city opted simply to pass it off to SAIC. Shortly after SAIC took control of the contract, work on CityTime was switched from fixed-price to hourly billing. This, in turn, inflated costs from $224 million in 2006 to a total of $628 million by 2009. Thanks to the hourly contracts, the city was on the hook for all of the waste incurred by SAIC. The terms of contracts were also constantly changing: another consulting company hired to provide quality assurance for CityTime had its contract amended 11 times, increasing its value to almost $50 million from its original $3.4 million figure.

SAIC delegated most of the work on CityTime to subcontractors, further complicating the chain of command involved in the project. The most prominent of these, Technodyne, received $450 million in funds from the city. Today, over 150,000 city workers use CityTime to keep track of attendance and leave of absence requests, but the cost per user for the project is estimated to be approximately $4,000. The industry standard for projects of this size at that time was between $200 and $1,000 dollars. New York State had developed a system to perform similar tasks for only $217 million, which makes CityTime’s $720 million price tag look even worse by comparison.

In March 2012, the city received some good news—SAIC agreed to repay over $500 million in restitution and penalties back to the city to avoid federal prosecution for various instances of fraud involving the CityTime project. The city recovered most of that money and, according to Mayor Bloomberg, the SAIC repayment meant that taxpayers only had to pay $100 million for CityTime. The scandal nevertheless remained a black mark for Bloomberg and his goals to modernize city information systems.

The New York City Council called a hearing to respond to the budget-crippling cost overruns of both projects. The Bloomberg administration vowed once again to review the way it handles complex, multi-million dollar technology projects. Proposed changes included first looking for commercial software before developing customized software without a real need for it. The city also stated that it would bill contractors as functional benchmarks.
CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

1. How important was the CityTime project for New York City? What were its objectives and anticipated business benefits?
2. Evaluate the key risk factors in this project.
3. Classify and describe the problems encountered the CityTime system was being implemented. What management, organization, and technology factors were responsible for these problems?
4. What was the business impact of CityTime’s botched implementation? Explain your answer.
5. Describe the steps that should have been taken to prevent a negative outcomes in this project.

The Interactive Session on Organizations illustrates some of the problems we have just described. As you read this case, try to determine why this system was discarded and the role of project management in the outcome.

PROJECT MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES

A project is a planned series of related activities for achieving a specific business objective. Information systems projects include the development of new information systems, enhancement of existing systems, or upgrade or replacement of the firm's information technology (IT) infrastructure.

Project management refers to the application of knowledge, skills, tools, and techniques to achieve specific targets within specified budget and time constraints. Project management activities include planning the work, assessing risk, estimating resources required to accomplish the work, organizing the work, acquiring human and material resources, assigning tasks, directing activities, controlling project execution, reporting progress, and analyzing the results. As in other areas of business, project management for information systems must deal with five major variables: scope, time, cost, quality, and risk.

Scope defines what work is or is not included in a project. For example, the scope of a project for a new order processing system might be to include new modules for inputting orders and transmitting them to production and accounting but not any changes to related accounts receivable, manufacturing, distribution, or inventory control systems. Project management defines all the work...
When senior cardiologist Duncan Dymond complained in 2010 that patients were arriving at his hospital at incorrect times and, far worse, in need of a different specialist, it was neither the beginning nor the end of problems with the Choose and Book system. Installed in 2004 as part of a £200 million IT modernization of Great Britain’s National Health Service (NHS), the patient booking system was supposed to enable patients to select a hospital for an outpatient appointment from a range of options, primarily with the help and direction of their general practitioner (GP). A letter with a referral number and a secure code was then generated so that the patient could either go online or call a central booking service to confirm the appointment. Initial contact could also occur directly via the national appointments line or at the HealthSpace Web site. The goals were threefold: to speed up the referral process, eliminate costly paperwork, and encourage patient participation so as to stem losses of up to £225 million annually from 1.6 million patient no-shows.

Implementation was sluggish and plagued with glitches. One early problem was that many hospital Patient Administration Systems (PAS) and GP clinical computer systems were not compatible. Choose and Book served as the go-between between the two systems, thus, both had to be compliant. The objective to book 90 percent of all referrals by December 2006 was never met. Four years later, even though Choose and Book had been installed in 94 percent of all GP surgeries, it was used to book just 54 percent of appointments. Even a three year £100 million incentive program to encourage physician adoption failed to sway doctors who had witnessed patients unnecessarily travelling to distant hospitals and referral letters rebuffed when patients sought confirmation.

Designers also focused on building provider choice into the service. This turned out to be a solution in search of a problem. According to the NHS Alliance, a coalition of health care providers, managers, and patients dedicated to improving care and providing a voice to patients, the ability to choose physicians and facilities from a wide range of options was never a chief concern. Instead, patients were looking for swift referrals to their local hospital. In rural areas, choice was considerably limited anyway, and older patients, in particular, simply found the array of choices confusing, difficult to navigate, and time-consuming to select.

Although many doctors were fans, system misfires created a significant population of disgruntled caregivers who refused to use Choose and Book. Glitches included appointment letters gone astray, last-minute cancellations, costs incurred for phone calls to the booking line in some locations, and treatment delays due to lack of visit categorization—either urgent or routine—not incorporated because cases requiring immediate treatment bypassed the queuing system.

By 2014, Choose and Book’s cost had ballooned to £356 million. Still, out of a total public investment of £12.7 billion for the National Programme for IT (NPfIT), it was considered to be one of its few successes, providing reliable, secure, and certain referrals for more than half of first-time outpatients and used—at least to some degree—by over 90 percent of providers. But when a study by the Public Accounts Committee (PAC) reported that use by both doctors and patients had dropped and that waiting times for elective care had shown no improvement, Choose and Book’s days were numbered. The system had never been able to function optimally because not all available outpatient appointments were listed. Members of Parliament (MPs) were fatigued by nearly a decade of patchwork fixes and frustrated that projected annual savings of up to £51 million had never materialized.

The discreet replacement of Choose and Book by a new system of unstipulated—and perhaps greater—cost underscores both the mission and the challenges of NHS. Launched in 1948, the comprehensive health system is funded by tax dollars (£108.9 billion in 2012/13) and administered by the Department of Health (DH). All British citizens are afforded care from their first newborn exam to their end-of-life care, with many services free of charge. NHS England covers 53 million citizens. Another 10.2 million people are covered by NHS divisions in Northern Ireland, Wales, and Scotland. All told, the four divisions of the NHS employ approximately 1.7 million people, making it the fourth largest employer in the world. This includes GPs, nurses, ambulance personnel, and hospital and community health service (HCHS) medical and dental staff.
The most pressing and urgent challenge faced by NHS England is the often lengthy waiting time to receive care, which can sometimes yield dire consequences. Healthcare for all, regardless of wealth, is a core value of British society. A 2013, Commonwealth Fund study of national healthcare systems ranked NHS first for quality of care, safety, coordination of care, patient-centered care, and cost. On timeliness of care, the UK ranked third.

With timeliness of care the overriding goal, NHS England launched the e-Referral Service at the end of 2014. Director of Strategic Systems and Technology, Beverley Bryant, expects significantly reduced paperwork and fewer data errors, along with an accelerated referral process, as patients monitor and manage their own hospital appointments. Several ideas to encourage adoption are being explored including making physician participation mandatory and developing an incentive program that incorporates penalties as well as rewards. The goal is to improve upon or eliminate the flaws of Choose and Book—for example, moving away from the hybrid electronic/paper environment that has proved burdensome for hospitals. The switch to all-digital will occur by 2019.


**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. Clarify and describe the problems of the NHS Choose and Book System. What management, organization, and technology factors were responsible for those problems?
2. To what extent was Choose and Book a failure? Explain your answer.
3. What was the economic and social impact of Choose and Book?
4. Describe the steps that should have been taken to make Choose and Book more successful.

---

**Required to complete a project successfully, and should ensure that the scope of a project does not expand beyond what was originally intended.**

**Time** is the amount of time required to complete the project. Project management typically establishes the amount of time required to complete major components of a project. Each of these components is further broken down into activities and tasks. Project management tries to determine the time required to complete each task and establish a schedule for completing the work.

**Cost** is based on the time to complete a project multiplied by the cost of human resources required to complete the project. Information systems project costs also include the cost of hardware, software, and work space. Project management develops a budget for the project and monitors ongoing project expenses.

**Quality** is an indicator of how well the end result of a project satisfies the objectives specified by management. The quality of information systems projects usually boils down to improved organizational performance and
decision making. Quality also considers the accuracy and timeliness of information produced by the new system and ease of use.

Risk refers to potential problems that would threaten the success of a project. These potential problems might prevent a project from achieving its objectives by increasing time and cost, lowering the quality of project outputs, or preventing the project from being completed altogether. Section 14.4 describes the most important risk factors for information systems.

### 14.2 What methods can be used for selecting and evaluating information systems projects and aligning them with the firm’s business goals?

Companies typically are presented with many different projects for solving problems and improving performance. There are far more ideas for systems projects than there are resources. Firms will need to select from this group the projects that promise the greatest benefit to the business. Obviously, the firm’s overall business strategy should drive project selection. How should managers choose among all the options?

### MANAGEMENT STRUCTURE FOR INFORMATION SYSTEMS PROJECTS

Figure 14.2 shows the elements of a management structure for information systems projects in a large corporation. It helps ensure that the most important projects are given priority.

**Figure 14.2 Management Control of Systems Projects**

Each level of management in the hierarchy is responsible for specific aspects of systems projects, and this structure helps give priority to the most important systems projects for the organization.
At the apex of this structure is the corporate strategic planning group and the information system steering committee. The corporate strategic planning group is responsible for developing the firm's strategic plan, which may require the development of new systems. Often, this group will have developed objective measures of firm performance (called "key performance indicators," introduced in Chapter 12) and choose to support IT projects which can make a substantial improvement in one or several key performance indicators. These performance indicators are reviewed and discussed by the firm's board of directors.

The information systems steering committee is the senior management group with responsibility for systems development and operation. It is composed of department heads from both end-user and information systems areas. The steering committee reviews and approves plans for systems in all divisions, seeks to coordinate and integrate systems, and occasionally becomes involved in selecting specific information systems projects. This group also has a keen awareness of the key performance indicators decided on by higher level managers and the board of directors.

The project team is supervised by a project management group composed of information systems managers and end-user managers responsible for overseeing several specific information systems projects. The project team is directly responsible for the individual systems project. It consists of systems analysts, specialists from the relevant end-user business areas, application programmers, and perhaps database specialists. The mix of skills and the size of the project team depend on the specific nature of the system solution.

**LINKING SYSTEMS PROJECTS TO THE BUSINESS PLAN**

In order to identify the information systems projects that will deliver the most business value, organizations need to develop an information systems plan that supports their overall business plan and in which strategic systems are incorporated into top-level planning. The plan serves as a road map indicating the direction of systems development (the purpose of the plan), the rationale, the current systems/situation, new developments to consider, the management strategy, the implementation plan, and the budget (see Table 14.1).

The plan contains a statement of corporate goals and specifies how information technology will support the attainment of those goals. The report shows how general goals will be achieved by specific systems projects. It identifies specific target dates and milestones that can be used later to evaluate the plan's progress in terms of how many objectives were actually attained in the time frame specified in the plan. The plan indicates the key management decisions concerning hardware acquisition; telecommunications; centralization/decentralization of authority, data, and hardware; and required organizational change. Organizational changes are also usually described, including management and employee training requirements, recruiting efforts, changes in business processes, and changes in authority, structure, or management practice.

In order to plan effectively, firms will need to inventory and document all of their information system applications and IT infrastructure components. For projects in which benefits involve improved decision making, managers should try to identify the decision improvements that would provide the greatest additional value to the firm. They should then develop a set of metrics to quantify the value of more timely and precise information on the outcome of the decision. (See Chapter 12 for more detail on this topic.)
### Table 14.1 Information Systems Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Purpose of the Plan</td>
<td>Overview of plan contents&lt;br&gt;Current business organization and future organization&lt;br&gt;Key business processes&lt;br&gt;Management strategy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Strategic Business Plan Rationale</td>
<td>Current situation&lt;br&gt;Current business organization&lt;br&gt;Changing environments&lt;br&gt;Major goals of the business plan&lt;br&gt;Firm’s strategic plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Current Systems</td>
<td>Major systems supporting business functions and processes&lt;br&gt;Current infrastructure capabilities&lt;br&gt;Hardware&lt;br&gt;Software&lt;br&gt;Database&lt;br&gt;Telecommunications and Internet&lt;br&gt;Difficulties meeting business requirements&lt;br&gt;Anticipated future demands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. New Developments</td>
<td>New system projects&lt;br&gt;Project descriptions&lt;br&gt;Business rationale&lt;br&gt;Applications’ role in strategy&lt;br&gt;New infrastructure capabilities required&lt;br&gt;Hardware&lt;br&gt;Software&lt;br&gt;Database&lt;br&gt;Telecommunications and Internet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Management Strategy</td>
<td>Acquisition plans&lt;br&gt;Milestones and timing&lt;br&gt;Organizational realignment&lt;br&gt;Internal reorganization&lt;br&gt;Management controls&lt;br&gt;Major training initiatives&lt;br&gt;Personnel strategy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Implementation Plan</td>
<td>Anticipated difficulties in implementation&lt;br&gt;Progress reports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Budget Requirements</td>
<td>Requirements&lt;br&gt;Potential savings&lt;br&gt;Financing&lt;br&gt;Acquisition cycle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS AND KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS

To develop an effective information systems plan, the organization must have a clear understanding of both its long- and short-term information requirements. A strategic approach to information requirements, strategic analysis, or critical success factors argues that an organization’s information requirements are determined by a small number of key performance indicators (KPIs) of managers. KPIs are shaped by the industry, the firm, the manager, and the broader environment. For instance, KPIs for an automobile firm might be unit production costs, labor costs, factory productivity, re-work and error rate, customer brand recognition surveys, J.D. Power quality rankings, employee job satisfaction ratings, and health costs. New information systems should focus on providing information that helps the firm meet these goals implied by key performance indicators.

PORTFOLIO ANALYSIS

Once strategic analyses have determined the overall direction of systems development, portfolio analysis can be used to evaluate alternative system projects. Portfolio analysis inventories all of the organization’s information systems projects and assets, including infrastructure, outsourcing contracts, and licenses. This portfolio of information systems investments can be described as having a certain profile of risk and benefit to the firm (see Figure 14.3) similar to a financial portfolio.

Each information systems project carries its own set of risks and benefits. (Section 14.4 describes the factors that increase the risks of systems projects.) Firms would try to improve the return on their portfolios of IT assets by balancing the risk and return from their systems investments. Although there is no ideal profile for all firms, information-intensive industries (e.g., finance) should have a few high-risk, high-benefit projects to ensure that they stay current with technology. Firms in non-information-intensive industries should focus on high-benefit, low-risk projects.

Most desirable, of course, are systems with high benefit and low risk. These promise early returns and low risks. Second, high-benefit, high-risk systems should be examined; low-benefit, high-risk systems should be totally avoided; and low-benefit, low-risk systems should be reexamined for the possibility of rebuilding and replacing them with more desirable systems having higher benefits. By using portfolio analysis, management can determine the optimal mix of investment risk and reward for their firms, balancing riskier high-reward projects with safer lower-reward ones. Firms where portfolio analysis is aligned with business strategy have been found to have a superior return on their IT assets, better alignment of IT investments with business objectives, and better organization-wide coordination of IT investments (Jeffrey and Leliveld, 2004).

SCORING MODELS

A scoring model is useful for selecting projects where many criteria must be considered. It assigns weights to various features of a system and then calculates the weighted totals. Using Table 14.2, the firm must decide among two alternative enterprise resource planning (ERP) systems. The first column lists the criteria that decision makers will use to evaluate the systems. These criteria are usually the result of lengthy discussions among the decision-making
group. Often the most important outcome of a scoring model is not the score but agreement on the criteria used to judge a system. Table 14.2 shows that this particular company attaches the most importance to capabilities for sales order processing, inventory management, and warehousing. The second column in Table 14.2 lists the weights that decision makers attached to the decision criteria. Columns 3 and 5 show the percentage of requirements for each function that each alternative ERP system can provide. Each vendor’s score can be calculated by multiplying the percentage of requirements met for each function by the weight attached to that function. ERP System B has the highest total score.

As with all “objective” techniques, there are many qualitative judgments involved in using the scoring model. This model requires experts who understand the issues and the technology. It is appropriate to cycle through the scoring model several times, changing the criteria and weights, to see how sensitive the outcome is to reasonable changes in criteria. Scoring models are used most commonly to confirm, to rationalize, and to support decisions, rather than as the final arbiters of system selection.

14.3 **How can firms assess the business value of information systems?**

Even if a system project supports a firm’s strategic goals and meets user information requirements, it needs to be a good investment for the firm. The value of systems from a financial perspective essentially revolves around the issue of return on invested capital. Does a particular information system investment produce sufficient returns to justify its costs?

**Information System Costs and Benefits**

Table 14.3 lists some of the more common costs and benefits of systems. **Tangible benefits** can be quantified and assigned a monetary value. **Intangible benefits**, such as more efficient customer service or enhanced decision making, cannot be immediately quantified but may lead to quantifiable gains in the long run. Transaction and clerical systems that displace labor and save space always
produce more measurable, tangible benefits than management information systems, decision-support systems, and computer-supported collaborative work systems (see Chapters 2 and 11).

Chapter 5 introduced the concept of total cost of ownership (TCO), which is designed to identify and measure the components of information technology expenditures beyond the initial cost of purchasing and installing hardware and software. However, TCO analysis provides only part of the information needed to evaluate an information technology investment because it does not typically deal with benefits, cost categories such as complexity costs, and “soft” and strategic factors discussed later in this section.

Capital Budgeting for Information Systems

To determine the benefits of a particular project, you’ll need to calculate all of its costs and all of its benefits. Obviously, a project where costs exceed benefits should be rejected. But even if the benefits outweigh the costs, additional financial analysis is required to determine whether the project represents a good return on the firm’s invested capital. Capital budgeting models are one of several techniques used to measure the value of investing in long-term capital investment projects.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CRITERIA</th>
<th>WEIGHT</th>
<th>ERP SYSTEM A %</th>
<th>ERP SYSTEM A SCORE</th>
<th>ERP SYSTEM A %</th>
<th>ERP SYSTEM B SCORE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.0 Order Processing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Online order entry</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>268</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Online pricing</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>324</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Inventory check</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>288</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 Customer credit check</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 Invoicing</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>292</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Order Processing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1,370</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 Inventory Management</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Production forecasting</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>216</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Production planning</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>316</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 Inventory control</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>272</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4 Reports</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>213</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Inventory Management</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1,017</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,079</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0 Warehousing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 Receiving</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 Picking/packing</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>231</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 Shipping</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>368</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Warehousing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>741</td>
<td></td>
<td>752</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grand Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3,128</td>
<td></td>
<td>3,300</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Capital budgeting methods rely on measures of cash flows into and out of the firm; capital projects generate those cash flows. The investment cost for information systems projects is an immediate cash outflow caused by expenditures for hardware, software, and labor. In subsequent years, the investment may cause additional cash outflows that will be balanced by cash inflows resulting from the investment. Cash inflows take the form of increased sales of more products (for reasons such as new products, higher quality, or increasing market share) or reduced costs in production and operations. The difference between cash outflows and cash inflows is used for calculating the financial worth of an investment. Once the cash flows have been established, several alternative methods are available for comparing different projects and deciding about the investment.

The principal capital budgeting models for evaluating IT projects are: the payback method, the accounting rate of return on investment (ROI), net table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COSTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hardware</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telecommunications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personnel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TANGIBLE BENEFITS (COST SAVINGS)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Increased productivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower operational costs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced workforce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower computer expenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower outside vendor costs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower clerical and professional costs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced rate of growth in expenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced facility costs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INTANGIBLE BENEFITS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Improved asset utilization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improved resource control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improved organizational planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased organizational flexibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More timely information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased organizational learning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legal requirements attained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enhanced employee goodwill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased job satisfaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improved decision making</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improved operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Higher client satisfaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Better corporate image</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 14.3 COSTS AND BENEFITS OF INFORMATION SYSTEMS
present value, and the internal rate of return (IRR). You can find out more about how these capital budgeting models are used to justify information system investments in the Learning Tracks for this chapter.

**REAL OPTIONS PRICING MODELS**

Some information systems projects are highly uncertain, especially investments in IT infrastructure. Their future revenue streams are unclear and their up-front costs are high. Suppose, for instance, that a firm is considering a $20 million investment to upgrade its IT infrastructure—its hardware, software, data management tools, and networking technology. If this upgraded infrastructure were available, the organization would have the technology capabilities to respond more easily to future problems and opportunities. Although the costs of this investment can be calculated, not all of the benefits of making this investment can be established in advance. But if the firm waits a few years until the revenue potential becomes more obvious, it might be too late to make the infrastructure investment. In such cases, managers might benefit from using real options pricing models to evaluate information technology investments.

Real options pricing models (ROPMs) use the concept of options valuation borrowed from the financial industry. An option is essentially the right, but not the obligation, to act at some future date. A typical call option, for instance, is a financial option in which a person buys the right (but not the obligation) to purchase an underlying asset (usually a stock) at a fixed price (strike price) on or before a given date.

For instance, let's assume that on September 19, 2014, you could purchase a call option for $31.00 that would give you the right to buy a share of Procter & Gamble (P&G) common stock for $50 per share on a certain date. Options expire over time, and this call option has an expiration date of January 15, 2016. If the price of P&G common stock does not rise above $50 per share by the stock market close on January 15, 2016, you would not exercise the option, and the value of the option would fall to zero on the strike date. If, however, the price of P&G stock rose to, say, $100 per share, you could purchase the stock for the strike price of $50 and retain the profit of $50 per share minus the cost on the option. (Because the option is sold as a 100-share contract, the cost of the contract would be 100 × $31.00 before commissions, or $3100, and you would be purchasing and obtaining a profit from 100 shares of Procter & Gamble.) The stock option enables the owner to benefit from the upside potential of an opportunity while limiting the downside risk.

ROPMs value information systems projects similar to stock options, where an initial expenditure on technology creates the opportunity to obtain the benefits associated with further development and deployment of the technology as long as management has the freedom to cancel, defer, restart, or expand the project. ROPMs give managers the flexibility to stage their IT investment or test the waters with small pilot projects or prototypes to gain more knowledge about the risks of a project before investing in the entire implementation. The disadvantages of this model are primarily in estimating all the key variables affecting option value, including anticipated cash flows from the underlying asset and changes in the cost of implementation. Models for determining option value of information technology platforms are being developed (Fichman, 2004; McGrath and MacMillan, 2000).
LIMITATIONS OF FINANCIAL MODELS

The traditional focus on the financial and technical aspects of an information system tends to overlook the social and organizational dimensions of information systems that may affect the true costs and benefits of the investment. Many companies’ information systems investment decisions do not adequately consider costs from organizational disruptions created by a new system, such as the cost to train end users, the impact that users’ learning curves for a new system have on productivity, or the time managers need to spend overseeing new system-related changes. Benefits, such as more timely decisions from a new system or enhanced employee learning and expertise, may also be overlooked in a traditional financial analysis (Ryan, Harrison, and Schkade, 2002).

14.4 WHAT ARE THE PRINCIPAL RISK FACTORS IN INFORMATION SYSTEMS PROJECTS, AND HOW CAN THEY BE MANAGED?

We have already introduced the topic of information system risks and risk assessment in Chapter 8. In this chapter, we describe the specific risks to information systems projects and show what can be done to manage them effectively.

DIMENSIONS OF PROJECT RISK

Systems differ dramatically in their size, scope, level of complexity, and organizational and technical components. Some systems development projects are more likely to create the problems we have described earlier or to suffer delays because they carry a much higher level of risk than others. The level of project risk is influenced by project size, project structure, and the level of technical expertise of the information systems staff and project team.

- **Project size.** The larger the project—as indicated by the dollars spent, the size of the implementation staff, the time allocated for implementation, and the number of organizational units affected—the greater the risk. Very large-scale systems projects have a failure rate that is 50 to 75 percent higher than that for other projects because such projects are complex and difficult to control. The organizational complexity of the system—how many units and groups use it and how much it influences business processes—contribute to the complexity of large-scale systems projects just as much as technical characteristics, such as the number of lines of program code, length of project, and budget. In addition, there are few reliable techniques for estimating the time and cost to develop large-scale information systems.

- **Project structure.** Some projects are more highly structured than others. Their requirements are clear and straightforward so outputs and processes can be easily defined. Users know exactly what they want and what the system should do; there is almost no possibility of the users changing their minds. Such projects run a much lower risk than those with relatively undefined, fluid, and constantly changing requirements; with outputs that cannot be fixed easily because they are subject to users’ changing ideas; or with users who cannot agree on what they want.

- **Experience with technology.** The project risk rises if the project team and the information system staff lack the required technical expertise. If the team...
is unfamiliar with the hardware, system software, application software, or database management system proposed for the project, it is highly likely that the project will experience technical problems or take more time to complete because of the need to master new skills.

Although the difficulty of the technology is one risk factor in information systems projects, the other factors are primarily organizational, dealing with the complexity of information requirements, the scope of the project, and how many parts of the organization will be affected by a new information system.

**CHANGE MANAGEMENT AND THE CONCEPT OF IMPLEMENTATION**

The introduction or alteration of an information system has a powerful behavioral and organizational impact. Changes in the way that information is defined, accessed, and used to manage the organization's resources often lead to new distributions of authority and power. This internal organizational change breeds resistance and opposition and can lead to the demise of an otherwise good system.

A very large percentage of information systems projects stumble because the process of organizational change surrounding system building was not properly addressed. Successful system building requires careful change management.

**The Concept of Implementation**

To manage the organizational change surrounding the introduction of a new information system effectively, you must examine the process of implementation. **Implementation** refers to all organizational activities working toward the adoption, management, and routinization of an innovation, such as a new formation system. In the implementation process, the systems analyst is a change agent. The analyst not only develops technical solutions but also redefines the configurations, interactions, job activities, and power relationships of various organizational groups. The analyst is the catalyst for the entire change process and is responsible for ensuring that all parties involved accept the changes created by a new system. The change agent communicates with users, mediates between competing interest groups, and ensures that the organizational adjustment to such changes is complete.

**The Role of End Users**

System implementation generally benefits from high levels of user involvement and management support. User participation in the design and operation of information systems has several positive results. First, if users are heavily involved in systems design, they have more opportunities to mold the system according to their priorities and business requirements, and more opportunities to control the outcome. Second, they are more likely to react positively to the completed system because they have been active participants in the change process. Incorporating user knowledge and expertise leads to better solutions.

The relationship between users and information systems specialists has traditionally been a problem area for information systems implementation efforts. Users and information systems specialists tend to have different backgrounds, interests, and priorities. This is referred to as the **user-designer communications gap**. These differences lead to divergent organizational loyalties, approaches to problem solving, and vocabularies.
Information systems specialists, for example, often have a highly technical, or machine, orientation to problem solving. They look for elegant and sophisticated technical solutions in which hardware and software efficiency is optimized at the expense of ease of use or organizational effectiveness. Users prefer systems that are oriented toward solving business problems or facilitating organizational tasks. Often the orientations of both groups are so at odds that they appear to speak in different tongues.

These differences are illustrated in Table 14.4, which depicts the typical concerns of end users and technical specialists (information systems designers) regarding the development of a new information system. Communication problems between end users and designers are a major reason why user requirements are not properly incorporated into information systems and why users are driven out of the implementation process.

Systems development projects run a very high risk of failure when there is a pronounced gap between users and technical specialists and when these groups continue to pursue different goals. Under such conditions, users are often driven away from the project. Because they cannot comprehend what the technicians are saying, users conclude that the entire project is best left in the hands of the information specialists alone.

Management Support and Commitment
If an information systems project has the backing and commitment of management at various levels, it is more likely to be perceived positively by both users and the technical information services staff. Both groups will believe that their participation in the development process will receive higher-level attention and priority. They will be recognized and rewarded for the time and effort they devote to implementation. Management backing also ensures that a systems project receives sufficient funding and resources to be successful. Furthermore, to be enforced effectively, all the changes in work habits and procedures and any organizational realignments associated with a new system depend on management backing. If a manager considers a new system a priority, the system will more likely be treated that way by his or her subordinates.

Change Management Challenges for Business Process Reengineering, Enterprise Applications, and Mergers and Acquisitions
Given the challenges of innovation and implementation, it is not surprising to find a very high failure rate among enterprise application and business process

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>USER CONCERNS</th>
<th>DESIGNER CONCERNS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Will the system deliver the information we need for our work?</td>
<td>What demands will this system put on our servers?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can we access the data on our iPhones, BlackBerrys, tablets, and PCs?</td>
<td>What kind of programming demands will this place on our group?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What new procedures do we need to enter data into the system?</td>
<td>Where will the data be stored? What’s the most efficient way to store them?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How will the operation of the system change employees’ daily routines?</td>
<td>What technologies should we use to secure the data?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
reengineering (BPR) projects, which typically require extensive organizational change and which may require replacing old technologies and legacy systems that are deeply rooted in many interrelated business processes. A number of studies have indicated that 70 percent of all business process reengineering projects fail to deliver promised benefits. Likewise, a high percentage of enterprise applications fail to be fully implemented or to meet the goals of their users even after three years of work.

Many enterprise application and reengineering projects have been undermined by poor implementation and change management practices that failed to address employees’ concerns about change. Dealing with fear and anxiety throughout the organization, overcoming resistance by key managers, and changing job functions, career paths, and recruitment practices have posed greater threats to reengineering than the difficulties companies faced visualizing and designing breakthrough changes to business processes. All of the enterprise applications require tighter coordination among different functional groups as well as extensive business process change (see Chapter 9).

Projects related to mergers and acquisitions have a similar failure rate. Mergers and acquisitions are deeply affected by the organizational characteristics of the merging companies as well as by their IT infrastructures. Combining the information systems of two different companies usually requires considerable organizational change and complex systems projects to manage. If the integration is not properly managed, firms can emerge with a tangled hodgepodge of inherited legacy systems built by aggregating the systems of one firm after another. Without a successful systems integration, the benefits anticipated from the merger cannot be realized, or, worse, the merged entity cannot execute its business processes effectively.

**CONTROLLING RISK FACTORS**

Various project management, requirements gathering, and planning methodologies have been developed for specific categories of implementation problems. Strategies have also been devised for ensuring that users play appropriate roles throughout the implementation period and for managing the organizational change process. Not all aspects of the implementation process can be easily controlled or planned. However, anticipating potential implementation problems and applying appropriate corrective strategies can increase the chances for system success.

The first step in managing project risk involves identifying the nature and level of risk confronting the project (Schmidt et al., 2001). Implementers can then handle each project with the tools and risk management approaches geared to its level of risk (Iversen, Mathiassen, and Nielsen, 2004; Barki, Rivard, and Talbot, 2001; McFarlan, 1981).

**Managing Technical Complexity**

Projects with challenging and complex technology for users to master benefit from **internal integration tools**. The success of such projects depends on how well their technical complexity can be managed. Project leaders need both heavy technical and administrative experience. They must be able to anticipate problems and develop smooth working relationships among a predominantly technical team. The team should be under the leadership of a manager with a strong technical and project management background, and team members should be highly experienced. Team meetings should take place frequently.
Essential technical skills or expertise not available internally should be secured from outside the organization.

**Formal Planning and Control Tools**

Large projects benefit from appropriate use of *formal planning tools* and *formal control tools* for documenting and monitoring project plans. The two most commonly used methods for documenting project plans are Gantt charts and PERT charts. A **Gantt chart** lists project activities and their corresponding start and completion dates. The Gantt chart visually represents the timing and duration of different tasks in a development project as well as their human resource requirements (see Figure 14.4). It shows each task as a horizontal bar whose length is proportional to the time required to complete it.

Although Gantt charts show when project activities begin and end, they don’t depict task dependencies, how one task is affected if another is behind schedule, or how tasks should be ordered. That is where **PERT charts** are useful. PERT stands for Program Evaluation and Review Technique, a methodology developed by the U.S. Navy during the 1950s to manage the Polaris submarine missile program. A PERT chart graphically depicts project tasks and their interrelationships. The PERT chart lists the specific activities that make up a project and the activities that must be completed before a specific activity can start, as illustrated in Figure 14.5.

The PERT chart portrays a project as a network diagram consisting of numbered nodes (either circles or rectangles) representing project tasks. Each node is numbered and shows the task, its duration, the starting date, and the completion date. The direction of the arrows on the lines indicates the sequence of tasks and shows which activities must be completed before the commencement of another activity. In Figure 14.5, the tasks in nodes 2, 3, and 4 are not dependent on each other and can be undertaken simultaneously, but each is dependent on completion of the first task. PERT charts for complex projects can be difficult to interpret, and project managers often use both techniques.

These project management techniques can help managers identify bottlenecks and determine the impact that problems will have on project completion times. They can also help systems developers partition projects into smaller, more manageable segments with defined, measurable business results. Standard control techniques can successfully chart the progress of the project against budgets and target dates, so deviations from the plan can be spotted.

**Increasing User Involvement and Overcoming User Resistance**

Projects with relatively little structure and many undefined requirements must involve users fully at all stages. Users must be mobilized to support one of many possible design options and to remain committed to a single design. **External integration tools** consist of ways to link the work of the implementation team to users at all organizational levels. For instance, users can become active members of the project team, take on leadership roles, and take charge of installation and training. The implementation team can demonstrate its responsiveness to users, promptly answering questions, incorporating user feedback, and showing their willingness to help.

Participation in implementation activities may not be enough to overcome the problem of user resistance to organizational change. Different users may be affected by the system in different ways. Whereas some users may welcome
The Gantt chart in this figure shows the task, person-days, and initials of each responsible person, as well as the start and finish dates for each task. The resource summary provides a good manager with the total person-days for each month and for each person working on the project to manage the project successfully. The project described here is a data administration project.
a new system because it brings changes they perceive as beneficial to them, others may resist these changes because they believe the shifts are detrimental to their interests.

If the use of a system is voluntary, users may choose to avoid it; if use is mandatory, resistance will take the form of increased error rates, disruptions, turnover, and even sabotage. Therefore, the implementation strategy must not only encourage user participation and involvement, but it must also address the issue of counterimplementation. **Counterimplementation** is a deliberate strategy to thwart the implementation of an information system or an innovation in an organization.

Strategies to overcome user resistance include user participation (to elicit commitment as well as to improve design), user education and training, management edicts and policies, and better incentives for users who cooperate. The new system can be made more user friendly by improving the end-user interface. Users will be more cooperative if organizational problems are solved prior to introducing the new system.

**DESIGNING FOR THE ORGANIZATION**

Because the purpose of a new system is to improve the organization’s performance, information systems projects must explicitly address the ways in which the organization will change when the new system is installed, including installation of intranets, extranets, and Web applications. In addition to

---

**FIGURE 14.5 A PERT CHART**

This is a simplified PERT chart for creating a small Web site. It shows the ordering of project tasks and the relationship of a task with preceding and succeeding tasks.
procedural changes, transformations in job functions, organizational structure, power relationships, and the work environment should be carefully planned.

Areas where users interface with the system require special attention, with sensitivity to ergonomics issues. Ergonomics refers to the interaction of people and machines in the work environment. It considers the design of jobs, health issues, and the end-user interface of information systems. Table 14.5 lists the organizational dimensions that must be addressed when planning and implementing information systems.

Although systems analysis and design activities are supposed to include an organizational impact analysis, this area has traditionally been neglected. An organizational impact analysis explains how a proposed system will affect organizational structure, attitudes, decision making, and operations. To integrate information systems successfully with the organization, thorough and fully documented organizational impact assessments must be given more attention in the development effort.

**Sociotechnical Design**

One way of addressing human and organizational issues is to incorporate sociotechnical design practices into information systems projects. Designers set forth separate sets of technical and social design solutions. The social design plans explore different workgroup structures, allocation of tasks, and the design of individual jobs. The proposed technical solutions are compared with the proposed social solutions. The solution that best meets both social and technical objectives is selected for the final design. The resulting sociotechnical design is expected to produce an information system that blends technical efficiency with sensitivity to organizational and human needs, leading to higher job satisfaction and productivity.

**PROJECT MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE TOOLS**

Commercial software tools that automate many aspects of project management facilitate the project management process. Project management software typically features capabilities for defining and ordering tasks, assigning resources to tasks, establishing starting and ending dates to tasks, tracking progress, and facilitating modifications to tasks and resources. Many automate the creation of Gantt and PERT charts.

Some of these tools are large sophisticated programs for managing very large projects, dispersed work groups, and enterprise functions. These high-end

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 14.5 ORGANIZATIONAL FACTORS IN SYSTEMS PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Employee participation and involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standards and performance monitoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ergonomics (including equipment, user interfaces, and the work environment)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employee grievance resolution procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health and safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government regulatory compliance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
tools can manage very large numbers of tasks and activities and complex relationships.

Microsoft Project has become the most widely used project management software today. It is PC-based, with capabilities for producing PERT and Gantt charts and for supporting critical path analysis, resource allocation, project tracking, and status reporting. Project also tracks the way changes in one aspect of a project affect others. Products such as Easy Projects and Vertabase are useful for firms that want Web-based project management tools.

Going forward, delivery of project management software as a software service (SaaS) will make this technology accessible to more organizations, especially smaller ones. Open source versions of project management software such as Open Workbench and OpenProj will further reduce the total cost of ownership and attract new users. Thanks to the popularity of social media such as Facebook and Twitter, project management software is also likely to become more flexible, collaborative, and user-friendly.

While project management software helps organizations track individual projects, the resources allocated to them, and their costs, project portfolio management software helps organizations manage portfolios of projects and dependencies among them. Project portfolio management software helps managers compare proposals and projects against budgets and resource capacity levels to determine the optimal mix and sequencing of projects that best achieves the organization's strategic goals.

Review Summary

1. What are the objectives of project management and why is it so essential in developing information systems?
   Good project management is essential for ensuring that systems are delivered on time, on budget, and provide genuine business benefits. Project management activities include planning the work, assessing the risk, estimating and acquiring resources required to accomplish the work, organizing the work, directing execution, and analyzing the results. Project management must deal with five major variables: scope, time, cost, quality, and risk.

2. What methods can be used for selecting and evaluating information systems projects and aligning them with the firm’s business goals?
   Organizations need an information systems plan that describes how information technology supports the attainment of their business goals and documents all their system applications and IT infrastructure components. Large corporations will have a management structure to ensure the most important systems projects receive priority. Key performance indicators, portfolio analysis, and scoring models can be used to identify and evaluate alternative information systems projects.

3. How can firms assess the business value of information systems projects?
   To determine whether an information systems project is a good investment, one must calculate its costs and benefits. Tangible benefits are quantifiable, and intangible benefits that cannot be immediately quantified may provide quantifiable benefits in the future. Benefits that exceed costs should be analyzed using capital budgeting methods to make sure a project represents a good return on the firm's invested capital. Real options pricing models, which apply the same techniques for valuing financial options to systems investments, can be useful when considering highly uncertain IT investments.
4. What are the principal risk factors in information systems projects, and how can they be managed?
   The level of risk in a systems development project is determined by (1) project size, (2) project structure, and (3) experience with technology. IS projects are more likely to fail when there is insufficient or improper user participation in the systems development process, lack of management support, and poor management of the implementation process. There is a very high failure rate among projects involving business process reengineering, enterprise applications, and mergers and acquisitions because they require extensive organizational change.

   Implementation refers to the entire process of organizational change surrounding the introduction of a new information system. User support and involvement and management support and control of the implementation process are essential, as are mechanisms for dealing with the level of risk in each new systems project. Project risk factors can be brought under some control by a contingency approach to project management. The risk level of each project determines the appropriate mix of external integration tools, internal integration tools, formal planning tools, and formal control tools to be applied.

Key Terms

- Capital budgeting, 554
- Change agent, 558
- Change management, 558
- Counterimplementation, 563
- Ergonomics, 564
- External integration tools, 561
- Formal control tools, 561
- Formal planning tools, 561
- Gantt chart, 561
- Implementation, 558
- Information systems plan, 550
- Intangible benefits, 553
- Internal integration tools, 560
- Organizational impact analysis, 564
- PERT chart, 561
- Portfolio analysis, 552
- Project, 546
- Project management, 546
- Project portfolio management, 565
- Real options pricing models (ROPMs), 556
- Scope, 546
- Scoring model, 552
- Sociotechnical design, 564
- Tangible benefits, 553
- User-designer communications gap, 558
- User interface, 544

Review Questions

14-1 What are the objectives of project management and why is it so essential in developing information systems?
   - Describe information system problems resulting from poor project management.
   - Define project management. List and describe the project management activities and variables addressed by project management.

14-2 What methods can be used for selecting and evaluating information systems projects and aligning them with the firm’s business goals?
   - Name and describe the groups responsible for the management of information systems projects.

14-3 How can firms assess the business value of information systems projects?
   - Describe the purpose of an information systems plan and list the major categories in the plan.
   - Explain how key performance indicators, portfolio analysis, and scoring models can be used to select information systems projects.
   - List and describe the major costs and benefits of information systems.
   - Distinguish between tangible and intangible benefits.
• Explain how real options pricing models can help managers evaluate information technology investments.

14-4 What are the principal risk factors in information systems projects, and how can they be managed?
• Identify and describe each of the principal risk factors in information systems projects.
• Explain why builders of new information systems need to address implementation and change management.
• Explain why eliciting support of management and end users is so essential for successful implementation of information systems projects.
• Explain why there is such a high failure rate for implementations involving enterprise applications, business process reengineering, and mergers and acquisitions.
• Identify and describe the strategies for controlling project risk.
• Identify the organizational considerations that should be addressed by project planning and implementation.
• Explain how project management software tools contribute to successful project management.

Discussion Questions

14-5 How much does project management impact the success of a new information system?
14-6 It has been said that most systems fail because systems builders ignore organizational behavior problems. Why might this be so?
14-7 What is the role of end users in information systems project management?

Hands-On MIS Projects

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience evaluating information systems projects, using spreadsheet software to perform capital budgeting analyses for new information systems investments, and using Web tools to analyze the financing for a new home.

Management Decision Problems

14-8 The U.S. Census launched an IT project to arm its census takers in the field with high-tech handheld devices that would save taxpayer money by directly beaming population data to headquarters from census takers in the field. Census officials signed a $600 million contract with Harris Corporation in 2006 to build 500,000 devices, but still weren't sure which features they wanted included in the units. Census officials did not specify the testing process to measure the performance of the handheld devices. As the project progressed, 400 change requests to project requirements were added. Two years and hundreds of millions of taxpayer dollars later, the handhelds were far too slow and unreliable to be used for the 2010 U.S. census. What could Census Bureau management and the Harris Corporation have done to prevent this outcome?

14-9 Caterpillar is the world's leading maker of earth-moving machinery and supplier of agricultural equipment. Caterpillar wants to end its support for its Dealer Business System (DBS), which it licenses to its dealers to help them run their businesses. The software in this system is becoming outdated, and senior management wants to transfer support for the hosted version of the software to Accenture Consultants so it can concentrate on its core business. Caterpillar never required its dealers to use DBS, but the system had become a de facto standard for doing business with the company. The majority of the 50 Cat dealers in North America use some version of DBS, as do about half of the 200 or so Cat dealers in the rest of the world. Before Caterpillar turns the product over to Accenture, what factors and issues should it consider? What questions should it ask? What questions should its dealers ask?
Improving Decision Making: Using Spreadsheet Software for Capital Budgeting for a New CAD System

Software skills: Spreadsheet formulas and functions
Business skills: Capital budgeting

14-10 This project provides you with an opportunity to use spreadsheet software to use the capital budgeting models discussed in this chapter to analyze the return on an investment for a new computer-aided design (CAD) system.

Your company would like to invest in a new computer-aided design (CAD) system that requires purchasing hardware, software, and networking technology, as well as expenditures for installation, training, and support. MyMISLab contains tables showing each cost component for the new system as well as annual maintenance costs over a five-year period, along with a Learning Track on capital budgeting models. You believe the new system will reduce the amount of labor required to generate designs and design specifications, thereby increasing your firm's annual cash flow.

- Using the data provided in these tables, create a worksheet that calculates the costs and benefits of the investment over a five-year period and analyzes the investment using the four capital budgeting models presented in this chapter's Learning Track.
- Is this investment worthwhile? Why or why not?

Improving Decision Making: Using Web Tools for Buying and Financing a Home

Software skills: Internet-based software
Business skills: Financial planning

14-11 This project will develop your skills using Web-based software for searching for a home and calculating mortgage financing for that home.

You would like to purchase a home in Fort Collins, Colorado. Ideally, it should be a single-family house with at least three bedrooms and one bathroom that costs between $150,000 and $225,000 and finance it with a 30-year fixed rate mortgage. You can afford a down payment that is 20 percent of the value of the house. Before you purchase a house, you would like to find out what homes are available in your price range, find a mortgage, and determine the amount of your monthly payment. Use the Yahoo! Homes site to help you with the following tasks:

- Locate homes in Fort Collins, Colorado, that meet your specifications.
- Find a mortgage for 80 percent of the list price of the home. Compare rates from at least three sites (use search engines to find sites other than Yahoo).
- After selecting a mortgage, calculate your closing costs and the monthly payment.

When you are finished, evaluate the whole process. For example, assess the ease of use of the site and your ability to find information about houses and mortgages, the accuracy of the information you found, and the breadth of choice of homes and mortgages.

Collaboration and Teamwork Project

14-12 In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Sites, Google Docs, Google+, or other open source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.
The administration of President Barack Obama has made Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, often called "Obamacare", its chief domestic accomplishment and the centerpiece of Obama's legacy. Essential to Obama's health care reform plan is Healthcare.gov, a health insurance exchange Web site that facilitates the sale of private health insurance plans to U.S. residents, assists people eligible to sign up for Medicaid, and has a separate marketplace for small businesses.

The site allows users to compare prices on health insurance plans in their states, to enroll in a plan they choose, and to find out if they qualify for government health care subsidies. Users must sign up and create their own specific account first, providing some personal information, in order to receive detailed information about available health care plans in their area.

Healthcare.gov was launched on October 1, 2013, as promised, but visitors quickly encountered numerous technical problems. Software that assigned digital identities to enrollees and ensured that they saw only their own personal data was overwhelmed. Customers encountered cryptic error messages and could not log in to create accounts. There was insufficient computing capacity in the Herndon, Virginia, data center housing the system for the site. Many users received quotes that were incorrect because the feature used prices based on just two age groups.

It was estimated that only 1 percent of interested consumers were able to enroll through the site for the first week of operations, and many applications sent to insurers contained erroneous information. Thousands of enrollees for HealthCare.gov—at least one in five at the height of the problems—received inaccurate assignments to Medicaid or to private health plans. Some people were wrongly denied coverage.

Insurers received enrollment files from the federal exchange that were incomplete or inaccurate—as many as one in ten. The information includes who is enrolling and what subsidies they may receive. Some insurers reported being deluged with phone calls from people who believe they have signed up for a particular health plan, only to find that the company has no record of the enrollment. Enrollment problems with insurers persisted into November.

U.S. chief technology officer Todd Park stated on October 6 that Healthcare.gov's glitches were caused by an unexpectedly high volume of users. About 50,000–60,000 had been expected, but the site had to handle 250,000 simultaneous users. Over 8.1 million people visited Healthcare.gov between October 1 and October, 2013.

White House officials later admitted that Healthcare.gov's problems were not just caused by high traffic volume but also by software and system design issues. Stress tests performed by contractors a day before the launch date revealed the site slowed substantially with only 1,100 simultaneous users, far fewer than the 50,000–60,000 that were anticipated. Technical experts found out that the site was riddled with hardware and software defects, amounting to more than 600 items that needed to be fixed.

A major contributor to these problems was the part of the system's design that requires users to create individual accounts before shopping for health insurance. This means that before users can shop for coverage, they must input personal data that are exchanged among separate computer systems built or run by multiple vendors, including CGI Group, developer of healthcare.gov, Quality Software Services, and credit-checker Experian PLC. If any part of this web of systems fails to work properly, users will be blocked from entering the exchange marketplace. A bottleneck had been created where these systems interacted with a software component called Oracle Identity Manager supplied by Oracle Corporation that was embedded in the government's identity-checking system. Quality Software Services had subcontracted with Oracle for this part of the system. This problem might have been averted if the system allowed users to browse plans without first going through the complex registration process.

Problems persisted into the third week of operations, including pull-down menus that only worked intermittently and excruciatingly long wait times. For some weeks in October, the site was down 60 percent of the time.

What happened to Healthcare.gov is another example of IT project management gone awry, which often happens with large technology projects, especially those for the U.S. federal government. There was no single leader overseeing the
Healthcare.gov implementation. The U.S. Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) coordinated the development effort. However, CMS had a siloed management structure, and no single unit was designated to take charge of the entire project.

CMS parceled out the work for building and implementing the Healthcare.gov system to a number of different outside contractors. The front end of the Web site (including the user interface) was developed by the startup Development Seed. The back end (where all the heavy-duty processing of enrollment data and transactions with insurers takes place) was contracted to CGI Federal, a subsidiary of the Canadian multinational CGI Group, which received $231 million for the project. CGI then subcontracted much of its work to other companies. This is common in large government projects. Functions relating to digital identity authentication were contracted to Experian, the global information services company noted for its credit-checking expertise.

CMS set deadlines for the contractors, who were expected to attend meetings to hammer out the details of the specifications for the Web site. But the computer specialists skipped some of those sessions. Relations between CMS and its primary contractor CGI Federal had deteriorated in the months prior to the Healthcare.gov launch. Contractors for different parts of the system barely communicated with each other.

Some IT experts also criticized CMS’s decision to use database software from a company called MarkLogic, which handles data management differently from more mainstream database management systems from companies such as IBM and Oracle. Work proceeded more slowly because so few people were familiar with MarkLogic, and MarkLogic continued to perform below expectations after the Healthcare.gov Web site was launched.

The Web site had not been thoroughly tested before it went live, so a number of software and hardware defects had not been detected. Testing of the system by insurers had been scheduled for July but didn’t begin until the third week in September. CMS was responsible for testing the system during the final weeks, not its software developers. Usually software developers handle the portion of the testing for identifying remaining problems before users see the final product.

Fixing the account creation software exposed other problems. As few as 500 users could cripple the system.

Technology experts also faulted Healthcare.gov’s developers for trying to go live with all parts of a large and very complex system all at once. It would have been better to roll out system functions gradually. CGI believed that a full-function Healthcare.gov with all the anticipated bells and whistles was an unrealistic target. Given the time required to complete and test the software, it was impossible to launch a full-function exchange by Oct. 1. But government officials insisted that Oct. 1 was not negotiable and had become impatient with CGI’s pattern of excuses for missed deadlines. The Obama administration kept on modifying regulations and policies until the summer of 2013, which meant that contractors had to deal with changing requirements.

The Healthcare.gov enrollment system is very complex. It connects to other federal computer networks, including SSA, IRS, VA, Office of Personnel Management, and the Peace Corps. It has to verify a considerable amount of personal information, including income and immigration status.

Vital components were never secured. There was insufficient access to a data center to prevent the Web site from crashing. No backup system for a Web site crash was created. The interaction between the data center where the information is stored and the system was so poorly configured that it had to be redesigned.

CMS had several warnings between March and July that the project was going off-track, but didn’t seek deep White House involvement or change the leadership structure, according to officials, congressional aides and e-mails from the period. An administration report noted that inadequate management oversight and coordination among technical teams prevented real-time decision making and efficient responses to address the issues with the site. The House Energy and Commerce Committee, which had been investigating Healthcare.gov, found no evidence of extensive communication between CMS and the White House even in July, when CMS technology official Henry Chao expressed serious concern about the project.

In March, a White House Web site that tracks the status of major government technology projects labeled the project high risk. Officials attributed the downgrade to a lag in submitting information, and the project’s status was upgraded the following month. The consulting firm McKinsey & Co. detailed the project’s potential risks in a presentation between March 28 and April 8 to the top CMS official, Marilyn Tavenner, to Health and Human Services Secretary Kathleen Sebelius, and to White House Chief Technology Officer Todd Park.
The McKinsey report anticipated many of the site’s pitfalls and urged the administration to name a single project leader to streamline decision-making. It also emphasized the importance of White House support for CMS to meet the Oct. 1 launch date. But according to documents from the period and officials, the White House’s minimal involvement in the project’s details didn’t change after the McKinsey report.

By July, CMS officials were growing alarmed about the project’s status, including a shortage of staff to address the ever-mounting list of problems. They brought more personnel on board while bickering with contractors over the distribution of resources. But the depth of the website’s difficulties still didn’t become apparent until weeks after the Oct. 1 launch.

The White House assembled experts from government and industry who worked frantically to fix the system. The Obama administration appointed contractor Quality Software Services Inc. (QSSI) to coordinate the work involved in fixing the Web site. QSSI had worked earlier on the Web site’s back-end. Former deputy director of the Office of Management and Budget Jeffrey Zients was appointed to act as the adviser to CMS. In January 2014, Accenture replaced CGI Group as the Web site’s lead contractor.

Work on fixing the Web site continued through October and November 2013, and the Web site appeared to be working more smoothly. For the vast majority of users, Healthcare.gov was working more than 90 percent of the time. Response time (the time required for a Web page to load) was reduced from 8 seconds to less than one. The incidence of error messages preventing people from using the site went from 6 percent down to .75 percent. But on November 13, the Obama administration revealed that less than 27,000 people had signed up for private health insurance using Healthcare.gov. Only 137,000 people had done so by November 30. These enrollment numbers were well below what the government had forecast. Healthcare.gov also forced the Obama administration to delay by one year an online exchange for small business.

A spokeswoman for the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services said on Nov. 19 that the government had fixed “two-thirds of the high-priority bugs” that were responsible for inaccuracies in enrollment data. Mr. Chao said the government was still working on “back office systems,” including those needed to pay insurance companies.

Reuters reported in mid-October 2013, that the total cost of building Healthcare.gov using contractors had tripled from an initial estimate of $93.7 million to about $292 million. Overall cost for building the Web site reached $500 million by October 2013.

By early 2014, Healthcare.gov was working much better, but was not problem-free. The Healthcare.gov site went down shortly after midnight March 30, 2014 and remained unusable until about 7:45 a.m. the following morning. It then experienced another problem around noon that same day that prevented new users from creating accounts, while some people who already had accounts were unable to log in. Some of the hundreds of thousands of Americans trying to sign up for health care at the last minute of the enrollment period were unable to do so. Obama administration officials nevertheless remained confident that they would reach their initial target of seven million health insurance signups by the March 31, 2014 deadline.

On July 30, 2014 the U.S. Government Accountability Office (GAO) released a non-partisan study finding that the Healthcare.gov Web site was developed without effective planning or oversight practices. Kathleen Sibelius resigned as Secretary for Health and Human Services on April 10, 2014 and was replaced by Sylvia Mathews Burwell on June 9 of that year.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

14-13 Why was the Healthcare.gov project so important?
14-14 Evaluate the key risk factors in this project.
14-15 Classify and describe the problems encountered by this project. What management, organization, and technology factors were responsible for these problems?
Chapter 14 References


Jiang, James J., Jamie Y.T.Chang, Hong-Gee Chen, Eric T.G. Wang, and Gary Klein, "Achieving IT Program Goals with


LEARNING OBJECTIVES
After reading this chapter, you will be able to answer the following questions:

1. What major factors are driving the internationalization of business?
2. What are the alternative strategies for developing global businesses?
3. What are the challenges posed by global information systems and management solutions for these challenges?
4. What are the issues and technical alternatives to be considered when developing international information systems?

MyMISLab™
Visit mymislab.com for simulations, tutorials, and end-of chapter problems.

CHAPTER CASES
New Systems Help Fiat Become a Global Powerhouse
E-Commerce Russian-Style
South Korea’s Restricted Internet
Unilever’s Push Toward Unified Global Systems

VIDEO CASES
Daum Runs Oracle Apps on Linux
Lean Manufacturing and Global ERP: Humanetics and Global Shop
Monsanto Uses Cisco and Microsoft to Manage Globally
Turin, Italy-based Fiat Group Automobiles S.p.A was one of the founders of the European car industry, and is one of the world's leading auto makers. As a result of its partnership with Chrysler, it has the brands and manufacturing capabilities to compete as a global automaker. Worldwide, Fiat manages 215,000 employees, 158 plants, and 77 R&D centers, with 2013 revenues approaching €90 billion.

Fiat now sells Jeep in Europe and the Fiat 500 in the U.S.A. Management sees even stronger global growth and is working to develop Jeep products for international markets while maintaining a strong global presence in markets for light commercial vehicles and Fiat passenger cars.

As the company expanded globally and added operations and brands, management needed more capabilities for managing the company from a worldwide perspective. These included the ability to easily cross-analyze data among countries, channels, and products and to drill down into variables such as model, power train, and vehicle equipment. Fiat’s managers needed to be able to conduct planning and analysis within each region, brand, and legal entity, and senior management wanted to be able to monitor the business with up-to-the-minute information.

Until recently, this was extremely difficult or nearly impossible. Management had to reconcile information from more than one outdated legacy system and run multiple queries to determine the impact of exchanging products between Fiat's various companies. There was a lack of data consistency between regions and brands.
The solution was to develop new information systems that could provide enterprise-wide data for management reporting and analysis. Working with Techedge SPA consultants, Fiat's information and communications technology team implemented a new group reporting platform based on Oracle Hyperion enterprise performance management and business intelligence software. Fiat now uses Oracle Hyperion Financial Management software to draw data from a third-party ERP system and Microsoft Excel spreadsheets to provide users with pre-aggregated data across countries, legal entities and business functions.

For example, Fiat's finance managers use the system to track profit margins by brand, generate balance sheets, and monitor cash flow across the entire Fiat Group organization. Regional reports break down the data by brand and geographical location to provide management with more precise information about pricing, profit and loss, and dealer incentives. Controllers use the reports to analyze sales activity among dealers as well as fleet, rental car, and government sales channels. The new system delivers information on operational performance, especially all the variables related to new and used cars, plant productions, and after-sales service. The enterprise-wide system allows Fiat managers to analyze the profitability of every type of car sold in each country.

Fiat further enhanced the system to allow managers to perform "what if" analyses by linking Oracle Business Intelligence Enterprise Edition to the Oracle Hyperion Financial Management and Planning applications. This information is displayed through dashboards and parameterized reports, and it provides a more detailed view of profitability. About 50 senior finance professionals now use this system, from regional controllers to the highest officers in the company. Before this system was implemented, it took Fiat several hours running queries just to extract the data.

Today more than 1,500 people in more than 70 business units across Fiat worldwide use the Oracle Hyperion systems for management reporting. Employees can drill down into financial results to analyze profit margins or cash flow at a more minute level, viewing the data in dashboards or exporting the data to Excel spreadsheets for further analysis. Senior management has immediate access to data for strategic planning, forecasting, and budgeting, while marketing and sales department analysts are able to track the effectiveness of promotions and campaigns. With a single common environment for determining pricing, profit and loss, and incentives, Fiat Group is able to engage in planning activities such as product simulation and sales price optimization based on factors such as time, product, and market. Data can be sorted by model and region to obtain consistent answers from anywhere in the world.


Fiat Group's efforts to create global reporting systems identify some of the issues that truly global organizations need to consider if they want to operate worldwide. Like many large, multinational firms, Fiat Group has numerous operating units in many different countries. These units had their own systems, business processes, and reporting standards. As a result, Fiat Group was unable to effectively coordinate global operations or manage its brands across multiple countries and regions. Management was unable to see how Fiat was performing enterprise-wide.

The chapter-opening diagram calls attention to important points raised by this case and this chapter. To solve its global management and business
In earlier chapters, we describe the emergence of a global economic system and global world order driven by advanced networks and information systems. The new world order is sweeping away many national corporations, national industries, and national economies controlled by domestic politicians. Many localized firms will be replaced by fast-moving networked corporations that transcend national boundaries. The growth of international trade has radically altered domestic economies around the globe.

Consider the path to market for an iPhone, which is illustrated in Figure 15.1. The iPhone was designed by Apple engineers in the United States, sourced with more than 100 high-tech components from around the world, and assembled in China. Among the iPhone 5’s major suppliers, Samsung Electronics in South Korea has supplied the applications processor. The iPhone 5’s accelerometer and gyroscope are made in Italy and France by STMicroelectronics, and its electronic compass is made by AKM Semiconductor in Japan. Germany’s Dialog Semiconductor designed chips for power management. Texas Instruments (TI) and Broadcom in the United States supply the touch screen controller. Japan’s

15.1 **What major factors are driving the internationalization of business?**

In earlier chapters, we describe the emergence of a global economic system and global world order driven by advanced networks and information systems. The new world order is sweeping away many national corporations, national industries, and national economies controlled by domestic politicians. Many localized firms will be replaced by fast-moving networked corporations that transcend national boundaries. The growth of international trade has radically altered domestic economies around the globe.

Consider the path to market for an iPhone, which is illustrated in Figure 15.1. The iPhone was designed by Apple engineers in the United States, sourced with more than 100 high-tech components from around the world, and assembled in China. Among the iPhone 5’s major suppliers, Samsung Electronics in South Korea has supplied the applications processor. The iPhone 5’s accelerometer and gyroscope are made in Italy and France by STMicroelectronics, and its electronic compass is made by AKM Semiconductor in Japan. Germany’s Dialog Semiconductor designed chips for power management. Texas Instruments (TI) and Broadcom in the United States supply the touch screen controller. Japan’s
Japan Display and Sharp Electronics and South Korea’s LG Display make the high-definition display screen. Foxconn, a Chinese division of Taiwan’s Hon Hai Group, is in charge of manufacturing and assembly.

**DEVELOPING AN INTERNATIONAL INFORMATION SYSTEMS ARCHITECTURE**

This chapter describes how to go about building an international information systems architecture suitable for your international strategy. An international information systems architecture consists of the basic information systems required by organizations to coordinate worldwide trade and other activities. Figure 15.2 illustrates the reasoning we follow throughout the chapter and depicts the major dimensions of an international information systems architecture.

The basic strategy to follow when building an international system is to understand the global environment in which your firm is operating. This means understanding the overall market forces, or business drivers, that are pushing your industry toward global competition. A business driver is a force in the environment to which businesses must respond and that influences the direction of the business. Likewise, examine carefully the inhibitors or negative factors that create management challenges—factors that could scuttle the development of a global business. Once you have examined the global environment, you will need to consider a corporate strategy for competing in that environment. How will your firm respond? You could ignore the global market and focus on domestic competition only, sell to the globe from a domestic base, or organize production and distribution around the globe. There are many in-between choices.

After you have developed a strategy, it is time to consider how to structure your organization so it can pursue the strategy. How will you accomplish a division of labor across a global environment? Where will production, administration, accounting, marketing, and human resource functions be located? Who will handle the systems function?
Next, you must consider the management issues in implementing your strategy and making the organization design come alive. Key here will be the design of business processes. How can you discover and manage user requirements? How can you induce change in local units to conform to international requirements? How can you reengineer on a global scale, and how can you coordinate systems development?

The last issue to consider is the technology platform. Although changing technology is a key driving factor leading toward global markets, you need to have a corporate strategy and structure before you can rationally choose the right technology.

After you have completed this process of reasoning, you will be well on your way toward an appropriate international information systems portfolio capable of achieving your corporate goals. Let’s begin by looking at the overall global environment.

**THE GLOBAL ENVIRONMENT: BUSINESS DRIVERS AND CHALLENGES**

Table 15.1 lists the business drivers in the global environment that are leading all industries toward global markets and competition.

The global business drivers can be divided into two groups: general cultural factors and specific business factors. Easily recognized general cultural factors have driven internationalization since World War II. Information, communication, and transportation technologies have created a *global village* in which communication (by telephone, television, radio, or computer network) around the globe is no more difficult and not much more expensive than communication down the block. The cost of moving goods and services to and from geographically dispersed locations has fallen dramatically.

The development of global communications has created a global village in a second sense: A *global culture* created by television, the Internet, and
other globally shared media such as movies now permits different cultures and peoples to develop common expectations about right and wrong, desirable and undesirable, heroic and cowardly. The collapse of the Eastern bloc has accelerated the growth of a world culture enormously, increased support for capitalism and business, and reduced the level of cultural conflict in Europe considerably.

A last factor to consider is the growth of a global knowledge base. At the end of World War II, knowledge, education, science, and industrial skills were highly concentrated in North America, western Europe, and Japan, with the rest of the world euphemistically called the Third World. This is no longer true. Latin America, China, India, southern Asia, and eastern Europe have developed powerful educational, industrial, and scientific centers, resulting in a much more democratically and widely dispersed knowledge base.

These general cultural factors leading toward internationalization result in specific business globalization factors that affect most industries. The growth of powerful communications technologies and the emergence of world cultures lay the groundwork for global markets—global consumers interested in consuming similar products that are culturally approved. Coca-Cola, American sneakers (made in Korea but designed in Los Angeles), and Cable News Network (CNN) programming can now be sold in Latin America, Africa, and Asia.

Responding to this demand, global production and operations have emerged with precise online coordination between far-flung production facilities and central headquarters thousands of miles away. At SeaLand Transportation, a major global shipping company based in Newark, New Jersey, shipping managers in Newark can watch the loading of ships in Rotterdam online, check trim and ballast, and trace packages to specific ship locations as the activity proceeds. This is all possible through an international satellite link.

The new global markets and pressure toward global production and operation have called forth whole new capabilities for global coordination. Production, accounting, marketing and sales, human resources, and systems development (all the major business functions) can be coordinated on a global scale.

Frito Lay, for instance, can develop a marketing sales force automation system in the United States and, once provided, may try the same techniques and technologies in Spain. Micromarketing—marketing to very small geographic and social units—no longer means marketing to neighborhoods in the United States, but to neighborhoods throughout the world! Internet-based marketing means marketing to individuals and social networks through out the world. These new levels of global coordination permit for the first time in history the location of business activity according to comparative advantage. Design should be located where it is best accomplished, as should marketing, production, and finance.

---

### Table 15.1 The Global Environment: Business Drivers and Challenges

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General Cultural Factors</th>
<th>Specific Business Factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Global communication and transportation technologies</td>
<td>Global markets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development of global culture</td>
<td>Global production and operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergence of global social norms</td>
<td>Global coordination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Political stability</td>
<td>Global workforce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global knowledge base</td>
<td>Global economies of scale</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
Finally, global markets, production, and administration create the conditions for powerful, sustained global economies of scale. Production driven by worldwide global demand can be concentrated where it can best be accomplished, fixed resources can be allocated over larger production runs, and production runs in larger plants can be scheduled more efficiently and precisely estimated. Lower-cost factors of production can be exploited wherever they emerge. The result is a powerful strategic advantage to firms that can organize globally. These general and specific business drivers have greatly enlarged world trade and commerce.

Not all industries are similarly affected by these trends. Clearly, manufacturing has been much more affected than services that still tend to be domestic and highly inefficient. However, the localism of services is breaking down in telecommunications, entertainment, transportation, finance, law, and general business. Clearly, those firms within an industry that can understand the internationalization of the industry and respond appropriately will reap enormous gains in productivity and stability.

**Business Challenges**

Although the possibilities of globalization for business success are significant, fundamental forces are operating to inhibit a global economy and to disrupt international business. Table 15.2 lists the most common and powerful challenges to the development of global systems.

At a cultural level, **particularism**, making judgments and taking action on the basis of narrow or personal characteristics, in all its forms (religious, nationalist, ethnic, regionalism, geopolitical position) rejects the very concept of a shared global culture and rejects the penetration of domestic markets by foreign goods and services. Differences among cultures produce differences in social expectations, politics, and ultimately legal rules. In certain countries, such as the United States, consumers expect domestic name-brand products to be built domestically and are disappointed to learn that much of what they thought of as domestically produced is in fact foreign made.

Different cultures produce different political regimes. Among the many different countries of the world are different laws governing the movement of information, information privacy of their citizens, origins of software and hardware in systems, and radio and satellite telecommunications. Even the hours of business and the terms of business trade vary greatly across political cultures. These different legal regimes complicate global business and must be considered when building global systems.

**Table 15.2 Challenges and Obstacles to Global Business Systems**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Global</th>
<th>Specific</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cultural particularism: Regionalism,</td>
<td>Standards: Different Electronic Data Interchange (EDI),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nationalism, language differences</td>
<td>e-mail, telecommunications standards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social expectations: Brand-name</td>
<td>Reliability: Phone networks not uniformly reliable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expectations, work hours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Political laws: Transborder data and</td>
<td>Speed: Different data transfer speeds, many slower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>privacy laws, commercial regulations</td>
<td>than United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Personnel: Shortages of skilled consultants</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For instance, European countries have very strict laws concerning transborder data flow and privacy. **Transborder data flow** is defined as the movement of information across international boundaries in any form. Some European countries prohibit the processing of financial information outside their boundaries or the movement of personal information to foreign countries. The European Union Data Protection Directive, which went into effect in October 1998, restricts the flow of any information to countries (such as the United States) that do not meet strict European information laws on personal information. Financial services, travel, and health care companies are often directly affected. In response, most multinational firms develop information systems within each European country to avoid the cost and uncertainty of moving information across national boundaries.

Cultural and political differences profoundly affect organizations' business processes and applications of information technology. A host of specific barriers arise from the general cultural differences, everything from different reliability of phone networks to the shortage of skilled consultants.

National laws and traditions have created disparate accounting practices in various countries, which impact the ways profits and losses are analyzed. German companies generally do not recognize the profit from a venture until the project is completely finished and they have been paid. Conversely, British firms begin posting profits before a project is completed, when they are reasonably certain they will get the money.

These accounting practices are tightly intertwined with each country's legal system, business philosophy, and tax code. British, U.S., and Dutch firms share a predominantly Anglo-Saxon outlook that separates tax calculations from reports to shareholders to focus on showing shareholders how fast profits are growing. Continental European accounting practices are less oriented toward impressing investors, focusing rather on demonstrating compliance with strict rules and minimizing tax liabilities. These diverging accounting practices make it difficult for large international companies with units in different countries to evaluate their performance.

Language remains a significant barrier. Although English has become a kind of standard business language, this is truer at higher levels of companies and not throughout the middle and lower ranks. Software may have to be built with local language interfaces before a new information system can be successfully implemented.

Currency fluctuations can play havoc with planning models and projections. A product that appears profitable in Mexico or Japan may actually produce a loss because of changes in foreign exchange rates.

These inhibiting factors must be taken into account when you are designing and building international systems for your business. For example, companies trying to implement “lean production” systems spanning national boundaries typically underestimate the time, expense, and logistical difficulties of making goods and information flow freely across different countries.

**STATE OF THE ART**

One might think, given the opportunities for achieving competitive advantages as outlined previously and the interest in future applications, that most international companies have rationally developed marvelous international systems architectures. Nothing could be further from the truth. Most companies have inherited patchwork international systems from the distant past,
often based on concepts of information processing developed in the 1960s—batch-oriented reporting from independent foreign divisions to corporate headquarters, manual entry of data from one legacy system to another, with little online control and communication. Corporations in this situation increasingly face powerful competitive challenges in the marketplace from firms that have rationally designed truly international systems. Still other companies have recently built technology platforms for international systems but have nowhere to go because they lack global strategy.

As it turns out, there are significant difficulties in building appropriate international architectures. The difficulties involve planning a system appropriate to the firm's global strategy, structuring the organization of systems and business units, solving implementation issues, and choosing the right technical platform. Let's examine these problems in greater detail.

15.2 What are the alternative strategies for developing global businesses?

Three organizational issues face corporations seeking a global position: choosing a strategy, organizing the business, and organizing the systems management area. The first two are closely connected, so we discuss them together.

GLOBAL STRATEGIES AND BUSINESS ORGANIZATION

Four main global strategies form the basis for global firms' organizational structure. These are domestic exporter, multinational, franchiser, and transnational. Each of these strategies is pursued with a specific business organizational structure (see Table 15.3). For simplicity's sake, we describe three kinds of organizational structure or governance: centralized (in the home country), decentralized (to local foreign units), and coordinated (all units participate as equals). Other types of governance patterns can be observed in specific companies (e.g., authoritarian dominance by one unit, a confederacy of equals, a federal structure balancing power among strategic units, and so forth).

The domestic exporter strategy is characterized by heavy centralization of corporate activities in the home country of origin. Nearly all international companies begin this way, and some move on to other forms. Production, finance/accounting, sales/marketing, human resources, and strategic management are set up to optimize resources in the home country. International sales are sometimes dispersed using agency agreements or subsidiaries, but

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BUSINESS FUNCTION</th>
<th>DOMESTIC EXPORTER</th>
<th>MULTINATIONAL</th>
<th>FRANCHISER</th>
<th>TRANSNATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Production</td>
<td>Centralized</td>
<td>Dispersed</td>
<td>Coordinated</td>
<td>Coordinated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finance/Accounting</td>
<td>Centralized</td>
<td>Centralized</td>
<td>Centralized</td>
<td>Coordinated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales/Marketing</td>
<td>Mixed</td>
<td>Dispersed</td>
<td>Coordinated</td>
<td>Coordinated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human Resources</td>
<td>Centralized</td>
<td>Centralized</td>
<td>Coordinated</td>
<td>Coordinated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strategic Management</td>
<td>Centralized</td>
<td>Centralized</td>
<td>Centralized</td>
<td>Coordinated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
even here, foreign marketing relies on the domestic home base for marketing themes and strategies. Caterpillar Corporation and other heavy capital-equipment manufacturers fall into this category of firm.

The **multinational** strategy concentrates financial management and control out of a central home base while decentralizing production, sales, and marketing operations to units in other countries. The products and services on sale in different countries are adapted to suit local market conditions. The organization becomes a far-flung confederation of production and marketing facilities in different countries. Many financial service firms, along with a host of manufacturers, such as General Motors, Chrysler, and Intel, fit this pattern.

**Franchisers** are an interesting mix of old and new. On the one hand, the product is created, designed, financed, and initially produced in the home country, but for product-specific reasons must rely heavily on foreign personnel for further production, marketing, and human resources. Food franchisers such as McDonald's, Mrs. Fields Cookies, and KFC fit this pattern. McDonald's created a new form of fast-food chain in the United States and continues to rely largely on the United States for inspiration of new products, strategic management, and financing. Nevertheless, because the product must be produced locally—it is perishable—extensive coordination and dispersal of production, local marketing, and local recruitment of personnel are required.

Generally, foreign franchisees are clones of the mother country units, but fully coordinated worldwide production that could optimize factors of production is not possible. For instance, potatoes and beef can generally not be bought where they are cheapest on world markets but must be produced reasonably close to the area of consumption.

Transnational firms are the stateless, truly globally managed firms that may represent a larger part of international business in the future. Transnational firms have no single national headquarters but instead have many regional headquarters and perhaps a world headquarters. In a **transnational** strategy, nearly all the value-adding activities are managed from a global perspective without reference to national borders, optimizing sources of supply and demand wherever they appear, and taking advantage of any local competitive advantages. Transnational firms take the globe, not the home country, as their management frame of reference. The governance of these firms has been likened to a federal structure in which there is a strong central management core of decision making, but considerable dispersal of power and financial muscle throughout the global divisions. Few companies have actually attained transnational status.

Information technology and improvements in global telecommunications are giving international firms more flexibility to shape their global strategies. Protectionism and a need to serve local markets better encourage companies to disperse production facilities and at least become multinational. At the same time, the drive to achieve economies of scale and take advantage of short-term local advantage moves transnationals toward a global management perspective and a concentration of power and authority. Hence, there are forces of decentralization and dispersal, as well as forces of centralization and global coordination.

**GLOBAL SYSTEMS TO FIT THE STRATEGY**

Information technology and improvements in global telecommunications are giving international firms more flexibility to shape their global strategies. The configuration, management, and development of systems tend to follow the
global strategy chosen. Figure 15.3 depicts the typical arrangements. By systems we mean the full range of activities involved in building and operating information systems: conception and alignment with the strategic business plan, systems development, and ongoing operation and maintenance. For the sake of simplicity, we consider four types of systems configuration. Centralized systems are those in which systems development and operation occur totally at the domestic home base. Duplicated systems are those in which development occurs at the home base but operations are handed over to autonomous units in foreign locations. Decentralized systems are those in which each foreign unit designs its own unique solutions and systems. Networked systems are those in which systems development and operations occur in an integrated and coordinated fashion across all units.

As can be seen in Figure 15.3, domestic exporters tend to have highly centralized systems in which a single domestic systems development staff develops worldwide applications. Multinationals offer a direct and striking contrast: Here, foreign units devise their own systems solutions based on local needs with few if any applications in common with headquarters (the exceptions being financial reporting and some telecommunications applications). Franchisers have the simplest systems structure: Like the products they sell, franchisers develop a single system usually at the home base and then replicate it around the world. Each unit, no matter where it is located, has identical applications. Last, the most ambitious form of systems development is found in transnational firms: Networked systems are those in which there is a solid, singular global environment for developing and operating systems. This usually presupposes a powerful telecommunications backbone, a culture of shared applications development, and a shared management culture that crosses cultural barriers. The networked systems structure is the most visible in financial services where the homogeneity of the product—money and money instruments—seems to overcome cultural barriers.

**REORGANIZING THE BUSINESS**

How should a firm organize itself for doing business on an international scale? To develop a global company and information systems support structure, a firm needs to follow these principles:

**FIGURE 15.3  GLOBAL STRATEGY AND SYSTEMS CONFIGURATIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SYSTEM CONFIGURATION</th>
<th>Strategy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Domestic Exporter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centralized</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duplicated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decentralized</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Networked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The large Xs show the dominant patterns, and the small Xs show the emerging patterns. For instance, domestic exporters rely predominantly on centralized systems, but there is continual pressure and some development of decentralized systems in local marketing regions.
1. Organize value-adding activities along lines of comparative advantage. For instance, marketing/sales functions should be located where they can best be performed, for least cost and maximum impact; likewise with production, finance, human resources, and information systems.

2. Develop and operate systems units at each level of corporate activity—regional, national, and international. To serve local needs, there should be host country systems units of some magnitude. Regional systems units should handle telecommunications and systems development across national boundaries that take place within major geographic regions (European, Asian, American). Transnational systems units should be established to create the linkages across major regional areas and coordinate the development and operation of international telecommunications and systems development (Roche, 1992).

3. Establish at world headquarters a single office responsible for development of international systems—a global chief information officer (CIO) position.

Many successful companies have devised organizational systems structures along these principles. The success of these companies relies not only on the proper organization of activities, but also on a key ingredient—a management team that can understand the risks and benefits of international systems and that can devise strategies for overcoming the risks. We turn to these management topics next.

### 15.3 What are the challenges posed by global information systems and management solutions for these challenges?

Table 15.4 lists the principal management problems posed by developing international systems. It is interesting to note that these problems are the chief difficulties managers experience in developing ordinary domestic systems as well. But these are enormously complicated in the international environment.

#### A typical scenario: disorganization on a global scale

Let’s look at a common scenario. A traditional multinational consumer-goods company based in the United States and operating in Europe would like to expand into Asian markets and knows that it must develop a transnational strategy and a supportive information systems structure. Like most multinationals, it would...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Challenges in Developing Global Systems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agreeing on common user requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introducing changes in business processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinating applications development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinating software releases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encouraging local users to support global systems</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
has dispersed production and marketing to regional and national centers while maintaining a world headquarters and strategic management in the United States. Historically, it has allowed each of the subsidiary foreign divisions to develop its own systems. The only centrally coordinated system is financial controls and reporting. The central systems group in the United States focuses only on domestic functions and production.

The result is a hodgepodge of hardware, software, and telecommunications. The e-mail systems between Europe and the United States are incompatible. Each production facility uses a different manufacturing resources planning system (or a different version of the same ERP system), and different marketing, sales, and human resource systems. Hardware and database platforms are wildly different. Communications between different sites are poor, given the high cost of European intercountry communications. The central systems group at headquarters in the United States recently was decimated and dispersed to the U.S. local sites in the hope of serving local needs better and reducing costs.

What do you recommend to the senior management leaders of this company, who now want to pursue a transnational strategy and develop an information systems architecture to support a highly coordinated global systems environment? Consider the problems you face by reexamining Table 15.4. The foreign divisions will resist efforts to agree on common user requirements; they have never thought about much other than their own units’ needs. The systems groups in American local sites, which have been enlarged recently and told to focus on local needs, will not easily accept guidance from anyone recommending a transnational strategy. It will be difficult to convince local managers anywhere in the world that they should change their business procedures to align with other units in the world, especially if this might interfere with their local performance. After all, local managers are rewarded in this company for meeting local objectives of their division or plant. Finally, it will be difficult to coordinate development of projects around the world in the absence of a powerful telecommunications network and, therefore, difficult to encourage local users to take on ownership in the systems developed.

**GLOBAL SYSTEMS STRATEGY**

Figure 15.4 lays out the main dimensions of a solution. First, consider that not all systems should be coordinated on a transnational basis; only some core systems are truly worth sharing from a cost and feasibility point of view. **Core systems** support functions that are absolutely critical to the organization. Other systems should be partially coordinated because they share key elements, but they do not have to be totally common across national boundaries. For such systems, a good deal of local variation is possible and desirable. A final group of systems is peripheral, truly provincial, and needed to suit local requirements only.

**Define the Core Business Processes**

How do you identify core systems? The first step is to define a short list of critical core business processes. Business processes are defined and described in Chapter 2, which you should review. Briefly, business processes are sets of logically related tasks to produce specific business results, such as shipping out correct orders to customers or delivering innovative products to the market. Each business process typically involves many functional areas, communicating and coordinating work, information, and knowledge.
The way to identify these core business processes is to conduct a business process analysis. How are customer orders taken, what happens to them once they are taken, who fills the orders, and how are they shipped to the customers? What about suppliers? Do they have access to manufacturing resource planning systems so that supply is automatic? You should be able to identify and set priorities in a short list of ten business processes that are absolutely critical for the firm.

Next, can you identify centers of excellence for these processes? Is the customer order fulfillment superior in the United States, manufacturing process control superior in Germany, and human resources superior in Asia? You should be able to identify some areas of the company, for some lines of business, where a division or unit stands out in the performance of one or several business functions.

When you understand the business processes of a firm, you can rank-order them. You then can decide which processes should be core applications, centrally coordinated, designed, and implemented around the globe, and which should be regional and local. At the same time, by identifying the critical business processes, the really important ones, you have gone a long way to defining a vision of the future that you should be working toward.

**Identify the Core Systems to Coordinate Centrally**

By identifying the critical core business processes, you begin to see opportunities for transnational systems. The second strategic step is to conquer the
core systems and define these systems as truly transnational. The financial and political costs of defining and implementing transnational systems are extremely high. Therefore, keep the list to an absolute minimum, letting experience be the guide and erring on the side of minimalism. By dividing off a small group of systems as absolutely critical, you divide opposition to a transnational strategy. At the same time, you can appease those who oppose the central worldwide coordination implied by transnational systems by permitting peripheral systems development to progress unabated, with the exception of some technical platform requirements.

**Choose an Approach: Incremental, Grand Design, Evolutionary**

A third step is to choose an approach. Avoid piecemeal approaches. These surely will fail for lack of visibility, opposition from all who stand to lose from transnational development, and lack of power to convince senior management that the transnational systems are worth it. Likewise, avoid grand design approaches that try to do everything at once. These also tend to fail, because of an inability to focus resources. Nothing gets done properly, and opposition to organizational change is needlessly strengthened because the effort requires huge resources. An alternative approach is to evolve transnational applications incrementally from existing applications with a precise and clear vision of the transnational capabilities the organization should have in five years. This is sometimes referred to as the “salami strategy,” or one slice at a time.

**Make the Benefits Clear**

What is in it for the company? One of the worst situations to avoid is to build global systems for the sake of building global systems. From the beginning, it is crucial that senior management at headquarters and foreign division managers clearly understand the benefits that will come to the company as well as to individual units. Although each system offers unique benefits to a particular budget, the overall contribution of global systems lies in four areas.

Global systems—truly integrated, distributed, and transnational systems—contribute to superior management and coordination. A simple price tag cannot be put on the value of this contribution, and the benefit will not show up in any capital budgeting model. It is the ability to switch suppliers on a moment’s notice from one region to another in a crisis, the ability to move production in response to natural disasters, and the ability to use excess capacity in one region to meet raging demand in another.

A second major contribution is vast improvement in production, operation, and supply and distribution. Imagine a global value chain, with global suppliers and a global distribution network. For the first time, senior managers can locate value-adding activities in regions where they are most economically performed.

Third, global systems mean global customers and global marketing. Fixed costs around the world can be amortized over a much larger customer base. This will unleash new economies of scale at production facilities.

Last, global systems mean the ability to optimize the use of corporate funds over a much larger capital base. This means, for instance, that capital in a surplus region can be moved efficiently to expand production of capital-starved regions; that cash can be managed more effectively within the company and put to use more effectively.

These strategies will not by themselves create global systems. You will have to implement what you strategize.
THE MANAGEMENT SOLUTION: IMPLEMENTATION

We now can reconsider how to handle the most vexing problems facing managers developing the global information systems architectures that were described in Table 15.4.

Agreeing on Common User Requirements
Establishing a short list of the core business processes and core support systems will begin a process of rational comparison across the many divisions of the company, develop a common language for discussing the business, and naturally lead to an understanding of common elements (as well as the unique qualities that must remain local).

Introducing Changes in Business Processes
Your success as a change agent will depend on your legitimacy, your authority, and your ability to involve users in the change design process. Legitimacy is defined as the extent to which your authority is accepted on grounds of competence, vision, or other qualities. The selection of a viable change strategy, which we have defined as evolutionary but with a vision, should assist you in convincing others that change is feasible and desirable. Involving people in change, assuring them that change is in the best interests of the company and their local units, is a key tactic.

Coordinating Applications Development
Choice of change strategy is critical for this problem. At the global level there is far too much complexity to attempt a grand design strategy of change. It is far easier to coordinate change by making small incremental steps toward a larger vision. Imagine a five-year plan of action rather than a two-year plan of action, and reduce the set of transnational systems to a bare minimum to reduce coordination costs.

Coordinating Software Releases
Firms can institute procedures to ensure that all operating units convert to new software updates at the same time so that everyone’s software is compatible.

Encouraging Local Users to Support Global Systems
The key to this problem is to involve users in the creation of the design without giving up control over the development of the project to parochial interests. The overall tactic for dealing with resistant local units in a transnational company is cooptation. Cooptation is defined as bringing the opposition into the process of designing and implementing the solution without giving up control over the direction and nature of the change. As much as possible, raw power should be avoided. Minimally, however, local units must agree on a short list of transnational systems, and raw power may be required to solidify the idea that transnational systems of some sort are truly required.

How should cooptation proceed? Several alternatives are possible. One alternative is to permit each country unit the opportunity to develop one transnational application first in its home territory, and then throughout the world. In this manner, each major country systems group is given a piece of the action in developing a transnational system, and local units feel a sense of ownership in the transnational effort. On the downside, this assumes the ability to develop high-quality systems is widely distributed, and that, a German team, for example, can successfully implement systems in France and Italy. This will not always be the case.
A second tactic is to develop new transnational centers of excellence, or a single center of excellence. There may be several centers around the globe that focus on specific business processes. These centers draw heavily from local national units, are based on multinational teams, and must report to worldwide management. Centers of excellence perform the initial identification and specification of business processes, define the information requirements, perform the business and systems analysis, and accomplish all design and testing. Implementation, however, and pilot testing are rolled out to other parts of the globe. Recruiting a wide range of local groups to transnational centers of excellence helps send the message that all significant groups are involved in the design and will have an influence.

Even with the proper organizational structure and appropriate management choices, it is still possible to stumble over technology issues. Choices of technology platforms, networks, hardware, and software are the final element in building transnational information systems architectures.

15.4 What are the issues and technical alternatives to be considered when developing international information systems?

Once firms have defined a global business model and systems strategy, they must select hardware, software, and networking standards along with key system applications to support global business processes. Hardware, software, and networking pose special technical challenges in an international setting.

One major challenge is finding some way to standardize a global computing platform when there is so much variation from operating unit to operating unit and from country to country. Another major challenge is finding specific software applications that are user friendly and that truly enhance the productivity of international work teams. The universal acceptance of the Internet around the globe has greatly reduced networking problems. But the mere presence of the Internet does not guarantee that information will flow seamlessly throughout the global organization because not all business units use the same applications, and the quality of Internet service can be highly variable (just as with the telephone service). For instance, German business units may use an open source collaboration tool to share documents and communicate, which is incompatible with American headquarters teams, which use Microsoft solutions. Overcoming these challenges requires systems integration and connectivity on a global basis.

Computing platforms and systems integration

The development of a transnational information systems architecture based on the concept of core systems raises questions about how the new core systems will fit in with the existing suite of applications developed around the globe by different divisions, different people, and for different kinds of computing hardware. The goal is to develop global, distributed, and integrated systems to support digital business processes spanning national boundaries. Briefly, these are the same problems faced by any large domestic systems development effort. However, the problems are magnified in an international environment. Just imagine the challenge of integrating systems based on the Windows,
Linux, Unix, or proprietary operating systems running on IBM, Sun, HP, and other hardware in many different operating units in many different countries!

Moreover, having all sites use the same hardware and operating system does not guarantee integration. Some central authority in the firm must establish data standards, as well as other technical standards with which sites are to comply. For instance, technical accounting terms such as the beginning and end of the fiscal year must be standardized (review the earlier discussion of the cultural challenges to building global businesses), as well as the acceptable interfaces between systems, communication speeds and architectures, and network software.

**CONNECTIVITY**

Truly integrated global systems must have connectivity—the ability to link together the systems and people of a global firm into a single integrated network just like the phone system but capable of voice, data, and image transmissions. The Internet has provided an enormously powerful foundation for providing connectivity among the dispersed units of global firms. However, many issues remain. The public Internet does not guarantee any level of service (even in the United States). Few global corporations trust the security of the Internet and generally use private networks to communicate sensitive data, and Internet virtual private networks (VPNs) for communications that require less security. Not all countries support even basic Internet service that requires obtaining reliable circuits, coordinating among different carriers and the regional telecommunications authority, and obtaining standard agreements for the level of telecommunications service provided. Table 15.5 lists the major challenges posed by international networks.

While private networks have guaranteed service levels and better security than the Internet, the Internet is the primary foundation for global corporate networks when lower security and service levels are acceptable. Companies can create global intranets for internal communication or extranets to exchange information more rapidly with business partners in their supply chains. They can use the public Internet to create global networks using VPNs from Internet service providers, which provide many features of a private network using the public Internet (see Chapter 7). However, VPNs may not provide the same level of quick and predictable response as private networks, especially during times

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>TABLE 15.5 CHALLENGES OF INTERNATIONAL NETWORKS</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Quality of service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Costs and tariffs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation delays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor quality of international service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulatory constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network capacity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
of the day when Internet traffic is very congested, and they may not be able to support large numbers of remote users.

The high cost of PCs, and low incomes, limit access to Internet service in many developing countries (see Figure 15.5). Where an Internet infrastructure exists in less-developed countries, it often lacks bandwidth capacity, and is unreliable in part due to power grid issues. The purchasing power of most people in developing countries makes access to Internet services very expensive in local currencies. In the case of Russia, uneven Internet service and an undeveloped infrastructure for distributing and paying for goods has hampered the growth of e-commerce (see the Interactive Session on Organizations).

In addition, many countries monitor transmissions (see the Interactive Session on Management). Governments in China, Singapore, Iran, and Saudi Arabia monitor Internet traffic and block access to Web sites considered morally or politically offensive. On the other hand, the rate of growth in the Internet population is far faster in Asia, Africa, and the Middle East than in North America and Europe, where the Internet population is growing slowly if at all. Therefore, in the future, Internet connectivity will be much more widely available and reliable in less-developed regions of the world, and it will play a significant role in integrating these economies with the world economy.

**SOFTWARE LOCALIZATION**

The development of core systems poses unique challenges for application software: How will the old systems interface with the new? Entirely new interfaces must be built and tested if old systems are kept in local areas (which is common). These interfaces can be costly and messy to build. If new software must be created, another challenge is to build software that can be realistically used by multiple business units from different countries given that business units are accustomed to their unique business processes and definitions of data.

**FIGURE 15.5  INTERNET POPULATION IN SELECTED COUNTRIES**

![Bar chart showing internet population in selected countries](image)

The percentage of the total population using the Internet in developing countries is much smaller than in the United States and Europe, but it is growing rapidly.

Source: Based on data from Internetworldstats.com, 2014, Pew Global Attitudes Project, 2014 and authors.
Nearly 63.6 million Russians have Internet access, making Russia the second-largest e-commerce market in all of Europe, behind only Germany. By the end of 2014, Russia will surpass Germany with an estimated 80 million users. Broadband reach is estimated at 40 percent of all households—around 20 million households. Still, only a scant 24 to 26 million—about 30 percent to 40 percent of Internet users—have made an online purchase through 2013 and e-commerce accounts for only 2 percent of Russian retail sales. Why? What’s holding e-commerce back?

Russia has expanded its online consumer base faster than any other country, but there are serious barriers to further growth. Russia lacks both logistics infrastructures and online payment systems for e-commerce to flourish. The postal system is both expensive and unreliable, with lost or stolen packages, excessive delivery time, and non-distributed parcel rates of up to 100 percent in remote areas. Cash is the predominant payment method due to an under-developed financial services sector, exorbitant bank charges, and lack of consumer trust in electronic payments. Pre-authorization is often required for card use, merchants lack the infrastructure to store card data, and fraud poses a significant threat to merchants. Combined with the prohibitively expensive investment required to deploy fiber connections across the vast expanses of Russian terrain, the impediments to e-commerce expansion are substantial.

Russian online consumers by and large pay cash-on-delivery (COD) at “pick-up stores” where they collect their purchases. The collection centers accumulate large quantities of cash, which must be deposited every few hours to reduce the risk of theft. A system of payment kiosks has also sprung up on street corners, and in grocery stores, small shops, and convenience stores. These kiosks also serve as bill payment centers and often include multiple terminals from different companies, fashioning a comprehensive payment island. Several online payment systems have been developed including Yandex Money and WebMoney. These e-wallets, often subject to daily transaction limits, are linked to domestic bank accounts or debit cards or loaded with funds at the kiosks or offline stores. Though Yandex Money has signed up 20,000 merchants and 14 million consumers, and WebMoney 2,200 merchants and 6 million users, 80 percent of all B2C e-commerce in Russia is still conducted in cash.

Russian e-commerce is developing, but at a slower pace than Western markets. Half of habitual e-commerce consumers only began shopping online in the last two years. Card and online payment systems are gaining acceptance for digital goods (software, e-books, and digital music) and travel purchases such as airline tickets and hotel reservations. Shoppers have entered the online sphere for these products as well as for books, and are expanding to electronics, computers, and home appliances, and then jewelry, cosmetics, clothing, and shoes.

Online shopping mall Ozon began in 1998 as an online bookstore but now stocks well over 2 million items. Ozon adopted a multi-pronged strategy to combat Russia’s market challenges. In the short-term, it accepted customer preference for COD in order to build trust, expand its customer base, and establish market position. Its delivery service (O’Courier) and 2,100 pick-up centers serve 350 cities throughout Russia and Kazakhstan. This logistics network dwarfs those of its competitors.

Another domestic leader, KupiVIP, has also succeeded largely because it built its own logistics network including multiple warehouses and a fleet of delivery trucks. Centered on its original high-fashion flash sales site, KupiVIP (kupi means buy in Russian) now includes nine white-label sites and ShopTime, a full-priced fashion site. KupiVIP’s delivery drivers to double as customer service reps. In addition to collecting COD payments and merchandise for return, they will even wait at the door while customers try on merchandise to decide if they want to keep it.

The unexpected leader of Russian e-commerce, however, is hybrid online-offline retailer Ulmart, which recently became the first Russian e-tailer to surpass $1 billion (USD) in sales. Founded in August 2008 to sell computers online, it quickly expanded into home electronics, household appliances children’s goods, auto parts, and tires. Ulmart complements its online selling with 32 Kibermarkets—electronics superstores open 24 hours a day—as well as around 140 pick-up outlets in 150 cities across Russia. Five hubs supply the fulfillment centers, and a fleet of nearly 200 trucks transports merchandise from the warehouses to the outposts and makes home deliveries. Floor space that would traditionally be taken up with row after row of product is instead used for computer

**E-COMMERCE RUSSIAN-STYLE**
Describe the technical and organizational obstacles to e-commerce growth in Russia.

How do these technical and organizational factors hamper companies from doing business in Russia or setting up Russian e-commerce sites?

Aside from integrating the new with the old systems, there are problems of human interface design and functionality of systems. For instance, to be truly useful for enhancing productivity of a global workforce, software interfaces must be easily understood and mastered quickly. Graphical user interfaces are ideal for this but presuppose a common language—often English. When international systems involve knowledge workers only, English may be the assumed international standard. But as international systems penetrate deeper into management and clerical groups, a common language may not be assumed and human interfaces must be built to accommodate different languages and even conventions. The entire process of converting software to operate in a second language is called software localization.

What are the most important software applications? Many international systems focus on basic transaction and management reporting systems. Increasingly, firms are turning to supply chain management and enterprise systems to standardize their business processes on a global basis and to create coordinated global supply chains. However, these cross-functional systems are not always compatible with differences in languages, cultural heritages, and business processes in other countries (Martinons, 2004; Liang et al., 2004; Accenture, 2014). Company units in countries that are not technically sophisticated may also encounter problems trying to manage the technical complexities of enterprise applications.
INTERACTIVE SESSION: MANAGEMENT

SOUTH KOREA’S RESTRICTED INTERNET

At an average speed of 17 MBPs, South Korea boasts the highest average Internet speed in the world and tops the world on speed for the price. All large office and apartment buildings are equipped with fiber-optic broadband and a $24 billion high-speed backbone links public institutions and government facilities. This country’s population also boasts a high level of Internet usage: 97 percent of South Koreans have high-speed Internet access at home and subway riders in Seoul enjoy free access on their smartphones. By the end of 2014, Koreans will have access to 1GB per second connections, 200 times faster than the average household connection in the United States.

The paradox is that this flourishing tech-savvy democracy, which enjoys broad constitutional freedoms, is also among the most Internet-regulated countries in the world. South Korea’s 1995 Electronic Communication Business Law granted wide latitude to the Information and Communications Ethics Office to block material deemed morally offensive or harmful to South Korean youth. Political speech, particularly relating to longtime foe North Korea, was, and still is, rigorously controlled. North Korean URLs have been off-limits and online support for North Korea could be grounds for investigation, detention, and revocation of Internet access.

The Internet Content Filtering Ordinance, enacted by the Ministry of Information and Communication (MIC) in 2001, required ISPs to block a specific list of Web sites. Schools and public libraries were required to provide access but had to install filtering software. Web sites are ostensibly self-monitoring based on a content ratings system administered today by the Korean Communications Standards Commission (KCSC). However, if MIC orders a site to classify itself as “indecent,” failure to block access to minors can result in fines or imprisonment.

The Internet Content Filtering Ordinance also recommended a verifiable real-name registration system that would require all users who posted comments or uploaded content to have an account that included their Resident Registration Number (RRN). In 2003, MIC asked the four major Web portals to develop such a system. These actions were sold to the public as necessary to curb abusive behavior and cyber-bullying, particularly following a number of high-profile celebrity suicides.

One of the largest sites affected was Google-owned YouTube, which chose to block South Korean users from uploading content rather than collect RRNs. The system was easily thwarted, however, by simply changing the location setting for an account to Worldwide. Press reports even indicated that the YouTube channel for the presidential office used this simple ploy.

While pressure from citizens’ groups and court challenges have rolled back some restrictions, the threat of criminal liability has fostered a culture of fear and self-censorship. ISPs are ultimately held responsible if inappropriate—immoral, violent, obscene, speculative, or antisocial—content is found on their networks. RRNs must still be proffered for adults to access online games at night because curfews bar minors. Mobile service providers do not yet know if the ruling exempts them from collecting RRNs, and there have been several high-profile prosecutions involving online postings on Twitter and Facebook. Searching the Internet is often unproductive because Web sites prohibit search engines from indexing their pages.

Google is also finding South Korea a challenging environment for Google Maps. The National Security Law (NSL), the basis for censoring Web sites with North Korean content, also prohibits the export of map data to safeguard infrastructure details. For travelers, and the companies that want to profit from helping them navigate, this has presented a challenge. Directions from airports to area hotels can only be divined for mass transit, thanks to publically available routes and schedules.

President Park Geun-hye has expressed willingness to ease regulations for foreign competition. A division of the Ministry of Land, Infrastructure, and Transport will release an English-language digital map in 2014. However, points of interest, pedestrian overpasses, bicycle lanes, and details of intersections will still not be available. What’s more, without domestic servers, Google will not be able to provide the level of detail of local rivals such as Naver—which only serves Korean-language users. Driving directions, traffic data, and building floor plans must be processed at Google’s servers outside of South Korea, subjecting them to export restrictions.

Even in this game-obsessed nation, home to half the world’s professional gamers, who are often
celebrities netting six-figure contracts, game developers must contend not only with the nighttime curfew for minors but also with the Game Rating Board (GRB). The GRB can ban any game, though its focus has been graphically violent games such as Grand Theft Auto III. The already lengthy approval process increases development costs for mobile games and discourages young entrepreneurs. Domestic companies such as Nexon Co. and NCSoft Corp. are competitively disadvantaged globally, and global companies such as Apple and Google have decided not to enter the Korean market.

If President Park is serious about developing the high-tech software and services sector to match South Korea’s success in hardware—Samsung and LG, for example—she must perform a balancing act. Elimination of online restrictions must be balanced with rational national security objectives. Safeguarding citizens must be balanced against disadvantaging domestic operators whose users will simply switch to foreign competitors. Conversely, leveling the playing field so that domestic operators are not advantaged—and are pushed to develop world-class service—must be balanced against the threat that foreign competitors (such as Google) could squash domestic competition.

South Korea’s dilemma illustrates the struggle all organizations face to balance competing interests. The South Korean government must decide how its cultural mores and national security concerns can coexist with its economic development goals. For both foreign and domestic companies trying to do business in South Korea, government control of information can create a challenging and even hostile environment.


Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) systems and supply chain management systems are widely used by manufacturing and distribution firms to connect to suppliers on a global basis. Collaboration systems, e-mail, and videoconferencing are especially important worldwide collaboration tools for knowledge- and data-based firms, such as advertising firms, research-based firms in medicine and engineering, and graphics and publishing firms. Internet-based tools will be increasingly employed for such purposes.

**CASE STUDY QUESTIONS**

1. Why is the Internet restricted in South Korea?
2. What are the implications of South Korea’s Internet restrictions for international companies doing business in South Korea?
3. What management, organization, and technology factors should be taken into account when developing an e-commerce presence for the South Korean market?

**Review Summary**

1. **What major factors are driving the internationalization of business?**

   The growth of inexpensive international communication and transportation has created a world culture with stable expectations or norms. Political stability and a growing global knowledge base that is widely shared also contribute to the world culture. These general factors create the conditions for global markets, global production, coordination, distribution, and global economies of scale.
2. What are the alternative strategies for developing global businesses?
   There are four basic international strategies: domestic exporter, multinational, franchiser, and transnational. In a transnational strategy, all factors of production are coordinated on a global scale. However, the choice of strategy is a function of the type of business and product.

   There is a connection between firm strategy and information systems design. Transnational firms must develop networked system configurations and permit considerable decentralization of development and operations. Franchisers almost always duplicate systems across many countries and use centralized financial controls. Multinationals typically rely on decentralized independence among foreign units with some movement toward development of networks. Domestic exporters typically are centralized in domestic headquarters with some decentralized operations permitted.

3. What are the challenges posed by global information systems and management solutions for these challenges?
   Global information systems pose challenges because cultural, political, and language diversity magnifies differences in organizational culture and business processes and encourages proliferation of disparate local information systems that are difficult to integrate. Typically, international systems have evolved without a conscious plan. The remedy is to define a small subset of core business processes and focus on building systems to support these processes. Tactically, managers will have to coopt widely dispersed foreign units to participate in the development and operation of these systems, being careful to maintain overall control.

4. What are the issues and technical alternatives to be considered when developing international information systems?
   Implementing a global system requires an implementation strategy that considers both business design and technology platforms. The main hardware and telecommunications issues are systems integration and connectivity. The choices for integration are to go either with a proprietary architecture or with open systems technology. Global networks are extremely difficult to build and operate. Firms can build their own global networks or they can create global networks based on the Internet (intranets or virtual private networks). The main software issues concern building interfaces to existing systems and selecting applications that can work with multiple cultural, language, and organizational frameworks.

Key Terms

- Business driver, 578
- Cooptation, 590
- Core systems, 587
- Domestic exporter, 583
- Franchisers, 584
- Global culture, 579
- International information systems architecture, 578
- Legitimacy, 590
- Multinational, 584
- Particularism, 581
- Software localization, 595
- Transborder data flow, 582
- Transnational, 584

MyMISLab

Go to mymislab.com to complete the problems marked with this icon.

Review Questions

15-1 What major factors are driving the internationalization of business?
   - List and describe the five major dimensions for developing an international information systems architecture.
   - Describe the five general cultural factors leading toward growth in global business and the four specific business factors. Describe the interconnection among these factors.
• List and describe the major challenges to the development of global systems.
• Explain why some firms have not planned for the development of international systems.

15-2 What are the alternative strategies for developing global businesses?
• Describe the four main strategies for global business and organizational structure.
• Describe the four different system configurations that can be used to support different global strategies.

15-3 What are the challenges posed by global information systems and management solutions for these challenges?
• List and describe the major management issues in developing international systems.

• Identify and describe three principles to follow when organizing the firm for global business.
• Identify and describe three steps of a management strategy for developing and implementing global systems.
• Define cooptation and explain how it can be used in building global systems.

15-4 What are the issues and technical alternatives to be considered when developing international information systems?
• Describe the main technical issues facing global systems.
• Identify some technologies that will help firms develop global systems.

Discussion Questions

15-5 If you were a manager in a company that operates in many countries, what criteria would you use to determine whether an application should be developed as a global application or as a local application?

15-6 Describe ways the Internet can be used in international information systems.

Hands-On MIS Projects

The projects in this section give you hands-on experience conducting international market research, analyzing international systems issues for an expanding business, and building a job posting database and Web page for an international company.

Management Decision Problems

15-7 United Parcel Service (UPS) has been expanding its package delivery and logistics services in China, serving both multinational companies and local businesses. UPS drivers in China need to use UPS systems and tools such as its handheld Driver Information and Delivery Acquisition Device for capturing package delivery data. UPS wants to make its WorldShip, CampusShip, and other shipping-management services accessible to Chinese and multinational customers via the Web. What are some of the international systems issues UPS must consider in order to operate successfully in China?

15-8 Your company manufactures and sells tennis rackets and would like to start selling outside the United States. You are in charge of developing a global Web strategy and the first countries you are thinking of targeting are Brazil, China, Germany, Italy, and Japan. Using the statistics in the CIA World Factbook, which of these countries would you target first? What criteria did you use? What other considerations should you address in your Web strategy? What features would you put on your Web site to attract buyers from the countries you target?
Achieving Operational Excellence: Building a Job Database and Web Page for an International Consulting Firm

Software skills: Database and Web page design
Business skills: Human resources internal job postings

15-9 Companies with many overseas locations need a way to inform employees about available job openings in these locations. In this project you'll use database software to design a database for posting internal job openings and a Web page for displaying this information.

KTP Consulting operates in various locations around the world. KTP specializes in designing, developing, and implementing enterprise systems for medium- to large-size companies. KTP offers its employees opportunities to travel, live, and work in various locations throughout the United States, Europe, and Asia. The firm's human resources department has a simple database that enables its staff to track job vacancies. When an employee is interested in relocating, she or he contacts the human resources department for a list of KTP job vacancies. KTP also posts its employment opportunities on the company Web site.

What type of data should be included in the KTP job vacancies database? What information should not be included in this database? Based on your answers to these questions, build a job vacancies database for KTP. Populate the database with at least 20 records. You should also build a simple Web page that incorporates job vacancy data from your newly created database. Submit a copy of the KTP database and Web page to your professor.

Improving Decision Making: Conducting International Marketing and Pricing Research

Software skills: Internet-based software
Business skills: International pricing and marketing

15-10 In this project you'll use the Web to research overseas distributors and customs regulations and use Internet-based software to calculate prices in foreign currencies.

You are in charge of marketing for a U.S. manufacturer of office furniture that has decided to enter the international market. You have been given the name of Sorin SRL, a major Italian office furniture retailer, but your source had no other information. You want to test the market by contacting this firm to offer it a specific desk chair that you have to sell at about $125. Using the Web, locate the information needed to contact this firm and to find out how many European euros you would need to get for the chair in the current market. One source for locating European companies is the Europages Business Directory. In addition, consider using the Universal Currency Converter Web site, which determines the value of one currency expressed in other currencies. Obtain both the information needed to contact the firm and the price of your chair in their local currency. Then locate and obtain customs and legal restrictions on the products you will export from the United States and import into Italy. Finally, locate a company that will represent you as a customs agent and gather information on shipping costs.

Collaboration and Teamwork Project

15-11 In MyMISLab, you will find a Collaboration and Teamwork Project dealing with the concepts in this chapter. You will be able to use Google Drive, Google Docs, Google Sites, Google +, or other open source collaboration tools to complete the assignment.
Palm oil was the driving force behind the 1929 merger that created what is today the third largest consumer goods company in the world behind Proctor Gamble and Nestlé. What may have seemed an odd marriage between British soap maker, Lever Brothers, and Dutch margarine producer, Margarine Unie, provided new company, Unilever, unprecedented purchasing power for the primary raw material of both products.

Today Unilever focuses on 14 brands, each netting more than €1 billion annually including laundry soap Surf (Omo), soap, shower gel, shampoo and conditioner brands Lux, Dove, and Sunsilk, and deodorant and personal care brands Axe (Lynx) and Rexona, also sold as Sure, Degree, Shield, and Rexena. On the edible side, top sellers include ice cream brands Magnum and Heartbrand, margarine brands Becel (Flora/Promise/Fruit d’Or) and Rama, mayonnaise brands Hellmann’s and Best Foods, and soup, seasonings, and tea brands Lipton and Knorr. All told, the Anglo-Dutch multinational boasts over 400 brands, sells its products in over 190 countries, and employs more than 175,000 people worldwide.

Unilever is organized as two separate holding companies: Unilever PLC (public limited company), headquartered in London, United Kingdom, and Unilever N.V., headquartered in Rotterdam, The Netherlands. The two legal divisions operate as nearly as possible to a single economic entity—The Unilever Group—with unity of management, operations, purpose, and mission.

Since 2009, when Dutchman Paul Polman took the reins as CEO, The Unilever Group has made sustainable living the core goal of its business model. Using the inputs common to all major packaged goods manufacturers—brands, people, and operations—Unilever’s Compass strategy focuses on using cost leveraging and cost efficiencies, innovation in marketing and marketing investment, and profitable volume growth to yield sustained growth, lowered environmental impact, and positive social impact.

By 2010, a 10 year plan quantified the goals: to double sales from €40 billion to €80 billion, halve its environmental footprint, reach 4 billion of the world’s estimated 9 billion 2020 citizens, bring safe drinking water to 500 million people, source 100 percent of its raw materials sustainably, and improve the lives of 500,000 small farmers and distributors by bringing them into its supply chain. Given the reality of climate change and the growing scarcity of water and other natural resources, Polman believes viable business models for the 21st century must include strategies for maximizing social and environmental returns along with profits and investor returns.

In order to grow its business in developing and emerging markets, Unilever needed to unify its core business processes, including supply chain management. Standardized processes were essential to effectively manage volatile prices and changing commodity supplies. However, ambitious company-wide goal setting such as this was not feasible prior to 2007. At that point, almost every business in each of the more than 190 countries in which Unilever operated functioned as an independent division.

Approximately 30,000 transactions per minute, including every order received, invoice issued, material produced, and product shipped were processed through 250 different enterprise resource planning (ERP) systems.

Unilever’s Global ERP Vice President Marc Bechet has pointed out that the company’s worldwide business runs on ERP systems. Every transaction for each order it receives, material it produces, item it ships, and invoice it issues runs through Unilever’s backbone ERP systems. Trying to run a global business that was doubling its transaction volume with 250 systems proved too challenging.

Instead of adding layers of IT infrastructure to prepare for rapid business growth, Unilever’s globalization strategy involved the exact opposite action. For the past two decades, Unilever has been consolidating and simplifying its technology platform so that it would support the company operating as a single global entity. Unilever transitioned to running its worldwide business on only four instances of SAP ERP, with the ultimate goal of managing these landscapes as one global platform by 2015.

By 2008, the rollout of the Western European regional SAP ERP system was complete with three more regional centers to come. North America was online by the beginning of 2012. Return on this investment was already notable by 2013. IT research and advisory firm, Gartner ranked Unilever fourth on its Supply Chain Top 25 list, and revenue had increased €10 billion, already one quarter of the way towards its 2020 goal.
With transactions slated to reach the 60,000 per minute range, Unilever was still investigating additional tools to increase transaction processing speed. To remain a leader in modern demand-driven supply chain management, Unilever began adding SAP HANA (High-Performance Analytic Appliance) software to some of its key SAP ERP applications at the end of 2012. HANA is an in-memory data platform (see Chapter 6) that is deployable as an on-premise appliance, or in the cloud. It is very well suited for performing real-time analytics and processing extremely large numbers of transactions very rapidly.

One of Unilever’s first projects was implementing SAP CO-PA (Controlling-Profitability Analysis) Accelerator powered by SAP HANA. The enhanced financial analysis software reduced the number of days to produce the month-end close from three to just one. This experience was valuable for Unilever on several levels. It allowed the company to start with a single critical business process that could easily be rolled back into a traditional database if necessary, gain experience, and lay the groundwork for future HANA implementations. The success of this project and its enthusiastic embrace by end users convinced Unilever that other business processes could indeed benefit from the addition of the SAP HANA in-memory computing platform.

The second tangible benefit was the ability to input raw material costs and quickly calculate product price. Understanding its margins—the percent profit after all costs have been deducted—enabled Unilever to analyze ways to improve them. Production cost analysis confirmed for Unilever that HANA’s ability to accelerate business processes was well worth the investment, substantially improving real-time decision making.

Unilever’s Enterprise Data Warehouse (EDW) system extracts, transforms, and integrates ERP transaction data with external data for use in reporting and data analysis. The next target of the SAP HANA initiative was to accelerate, simplify, and harmonize all ERP transaction systems so that the data being fed into its global EDW was of the highest quality possible. Valuable business insights depend on real-time analysis of accurate data. The profitability analysis accelerator analyzes reams of financial data and outputs valuable statistics about cost and profit drivers. By mid-2013, the SAP CO-PA Accelerator had been added to all four regional ERP centers over a 16 week timeframe and was being managed as a single global platform. Each region now runs a 27 terabyte relational database using 30 gigabytes of HANA in-memory system. Two hundred million records are now processed in 30 seconds, down from 440.

Cost Center assessment time was reduced 39 percent, pushing this data into CO-PA in 6.7 hours rather than 11 hours and speeding profitability reporting. Overall, controlling and profitability reports were produced ten times more quickly. The Material Ledger Accelerator reduced runtime for period-end closing reports by 66 percent, and cost reduction opportunities were identified by the Overall Equipment Effectiveness (OEE) Management platform. Four and a half billion records for General Ledger line items and over 400 million controlling and profitability analysis records are now run through the CO-PA Accelerator.

Next, SAP Cash Forecasting was added to SAP ERP Financials to minimize liquidity risk and maximize the use of working capital and cash. Product Cost Planning (CO-PC-PCP) was incorporated to help Unilever plan the costs for materials independently from orders; set prices for materials, operations, production lines, and processes; analyze the costs of manufactured materials; and assess product profitability. The time to analyze the approximately 150 million records produced each month was halved, and product cost forecasts could be generated in 30 seconds, down from seven minutes.

On the macro level, the SAP HANA initiative transformed Unilever’s attitude towards IT. Until HANA, IT pushed solutions to functions in need of modernization. Now, optimized functions pinpoint business opportunities and stakeholders ripe for HANA solutions. Unilever’s Global Director of Finance Thomas Benthien believes this swing from push to pull is a driver for innovation and a growth agenda. Proofs of concept (prototypes used for feasibility testing) were conducted to add the HANA in-memory platform to many components of Unilever’s SAP Business Suite, including the SCM (Supply Chain Management) application. Other tests involved components of the Enterprise Performance Management (EPM) system, SAP Advanced Planning & Optimization (APO), SAP Business Planning and Consolidation, and SAP Trade Promotion Management.

Unilever wanted to maximize product availability on store shelves during new product launches and promotional campaigns. Since trade promotion processes drive a significant portion of its sales, Marc Béchet wanted to enhance the speed and efficiency with which they could be planned, budgeted, and executed and in how stock was allocated. Previously, Unilever used a process in
which stock was sequentially assigned to orders as they were received. There was no mechanism for assigning limited stock between customers running a promotion and those who were not. Using HANA-accelerated trade promotion management tools, different inventory matching scenarios are instantly available. Allocation options can be compared and the most profitable chosen. Inventory shortfalls can be handled while safeguarding current promotions to the maximum extent possible.

Plans are now underway to add in-memory technology to the rest of the SAP Business Suite. SAP released the first version of SAP Business Suite powered by HANA in January 2013. Unilever is weighing its options so that the risk of adoption to one of the largest SAP ERP systems in the industry is minimized, but it is likely to switch to the newest product before 2015.

By significantly cutting the time it takes to calculate product costs, the HANA in-memory database accelerators fast-track raw material sourcing decisions and pricing analysis. Unilever estimates that time spent tracking raw materials has declined by 80 percent. Improved understanding of the supply chain, in turn, supports managerial decision-making to both improve efficiency and reduce environmental impact. Without the analytics solution it devised and implemented, Unilever would have had a difficult time tracking the 10,000 home and personal care products that use the 2,000 different chemicals that must be reduced to meet the European Union's REACH (Registration, Evaluation, Authorization and Restriction of Chemicals) regulations and its own more stringent sustainability goals. Consolidation of its ERP platforms and the transaction and processing speed of the HANA platform are the keys to improved performance, reporting, and scalability that will enable Unilever to fulfill its ambitious growth, social impact, and environmental goals.


CASE STUDY QUESTIONS

15-12 What management problems typical of global systems was Unilever experiencing? What management, organization, and technology factors were responsible for those problems?

15-13 How did Unilever’s new systems and use of SAP HANA support its business strategy? How effective was the solution chosen by the company?

15-14 How did Unilever’s new systems improve operations and management decision-making?

15-15 What influence does the global business environment have on firms like Unilever and how does that affect its choice of systems?
Chapter 15 References


Martinsons, Maris G. "ERP In China: One Package Two Profiles." *Communications of the ACM* 47, No. 7 (July 2004).


Soh, Christina, Sia Siew Kien, and Joanne Tay-Yap. "Cultural Fits and Misfits: Is ERP a Universal Solution?" *Communications of the ACM* 43, No. 3 (April 2000).

Glossary

3-D printing Uses machines to make solid objects, layer by layer, from specifications in a digital file. Also known as additive manufacturing.

3G networks Cellular networks based on packet-switched technology with speeds ranging from 144 Kbps for mobile users to over 2 Mbps for stationary users, enabling users to transmit video, graphics, and other rich media, in addition to voice.

4G networks The next evolution in wireless communication is entirely packet switched and capable of providing between 1 Mbps and 1 Gbps speeds, up to ten times faster than 3G networks.

acceptable use policy (AUP) Defines acceptable uses of the firm's information resources and computing equipment, including desktop and laptop computers, wireless devices, telephones, and the Internet, and specifies consequences for noncompliance.

acceptance testing Provides the final certification that the system is ready to be used in a production setting.

accountability The mechanisms for assessing responsibility for decisions made and actions taken.

advertising revenue model Web site generating revenue by attracting a large audience.

affiliate revenue model An e-commerce revenue model in which Web sites are paid as ‘affiliates’ for sending their visitors to other sites in return for a referral fee.

agency theory Economic theory that views the firm as a nexus of contracts among self-interested individuals who must be supervised and managed.

agent-based modeling Modeling complex phenomena as systems of autonomous agents that follow relatively simple rules for interaction.

agile development Rapid delivery of working software by breaking a large project into a series of small sub-projects that are completed in short periods of time using iteration and continuous feedback.

analytic platform Preconfigured hardware-software system that is specifically designed high-speed analysis of large datasets.

analytical CRM Customer relationship management applications dealing with the analysis of customer data to provide information for improving business performance.

Android A mobile operating system developed by Android, Inc. (purchased by Google) and later the Open Handset Alliance as a flexible, upgradeable mobile device platform.

antivirus software Software designed to detect, and often eliminate, computer viruses from an information system.

application controls Specific controls unique to each computerized application that ensure that only authorized data are completely and accurately processed by that application.

application server Software that handles all application operations between browser-based computers and a company's back-end business applications or databases.

apps Small pieces of software that run on the Internet, on your computer, or on your cell phone and are generally delivered over the Internet.

artificial intelligence (AI) The effort to develop computer-based systems that can behave like humans, with the ability to learn languages, accomplish physical tasks, use a perceptual apparatus, and emulate human expertise and decision making.

attribute A piece of information describing a particular entity.

augmented reality A technology for enhancing visualization. Provides a live direct or indirect view of a physical real-world environment whose elements are augmented by virtual computer-generated imagery.

authentication The ability of each party in a transaction to ascertain the identity of the other party.

automation Using the computer to speed up the performance of existing tasks.

autonomic computing Effort to develop systems that can manage themselves without user intervention.

backward chaining A strategy for searching the rule base in an expert system that acts like a problem solver by beginning with a hypothesis and seeking out more information until the hypothesis is either proved or disproved.

balanced scorecard method Framework for operationalizing a firm's strategic plan by focusing on measurable financial, business process, customer, and learning and growth outcomes of firm performance.

bandwidth The capacity of a communications channel as measured by the difference between the highest and lowest frequencies that can be transmitted by that channel.

behavioral models Descriptions of management based on behavioral scientists' observations of what managers actually do in their jobs.

behavioral targeting Tracking the click-streams (history of clicking behavior) of individuals across multiple Web sites for the purpose of understanding their interests and intentions, and exposing them to advertisements which are uniquely suited to their interests.

benchmarking Setting strict standards for products, services, or activities and measuring organizational performance against those standards.

best practices The most successful solutions or problem-solving methods that have been developed by a specific organization or industry.

big data Datasets with volumes so huge that they are beyond the ability of typical relational DBMS to capture, store, and analyze. The data are often unstructured or semi-structured.

biometric authentication Technology for authenticating system users that compares a person’s unique characteristics such as fingerprints, face, or retinal image, against a stored set profile of these characteristics.

bit A binary digit representing the smallest unit of data in a computer system. It can only have one of two states, representing 0 or 1.

blade server Entire computer that fits on a single, thin card (or blade) and that is plugged into a single chassis to save space, power and complexity.

blog Popular term for Weblog, designating an informal yet structured Web site where individuals can publish stories, opinions, and links to other Web sites of interest.

blogosphere Totality of blog-related Web sites.

Bluetooth Standard for wireless personal area networks that can transmit up to 722 Kbps within a 10-meter area.
**botnet**  A group of computers that have been infected with bot malware without users’ knowledge, enabling a hacker to use the amassed resources of the computers to launch distributed denial-of-service attacks, phishing campaigns or spam.

**broadband**  High-speed transmission technology. Also designates a single communications medium that can transmit multiple channels of data simultaneously.

**bugs**  Software program code defects.

**bullwhip effect**  Distortion of information about the demand for a product as it passes from one entity to the next across the supply chain.

**business continuity planning**  Planning that focuses on how the company can restore business operations after a disaster strikes.

**business driver**  A force in the environment to which businesses must respond and that influences the direction of business.

**business ecosystem**  Loosely coupled but interdependent networks of suppliers, distributors, outsourcing firms, transportation service firms, and technology manufacturers.

**business functions**  Specialized tasks performed in a business organization, including manufacturing and production, sales and marketing, finance and accounting, and human resources.

**business intelligence**  Applications and technologies to help users make better business decisions.

**business model**  An abstraction of what an enterprise is and how the enterprise delivers a product or service, showing how the enterprise creates wealth.

**business performance management**  Attempts to systematically translate a firm’s strategies (e.g., differentiation, low-cost producer, market share growth, and scope of operation) into operational targets.

**business process management**  Business process management (BPM) is an approach to business which aims to continuously improve and manage business processes.

**business process redesign**  Type of organizational change in which business processes are analyzed, simplified, and redesigned.

**business processes**  The unique ways in which organizations coordinate and organize work activities, information, and knowledge to produce a product or service.

**business-to-business (B2B) electronic commerce**  Electronic sales of goods and services among businesses.

**business-to-consumer (B2C) electronic commerce**  Electronic retailing of products and services directly to individual consumers.

**byte**  A string of bits, usually eight, used to store one number or character in a computer system.

**cable Internet connections**  Internet connections that use digital cable lines to deliver high-speed Internet access to homes and businesses.

**capital budgeting**  The process of analyzing and selecting various proposals for capital expenditures.

**carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS)**  Type of RSI in which pressure on the median nerve through the wrist’s bony carpal tunnel structure produces pain.

**case-based reasoning (CBR)**  Artificial intelligence technology that represents knowledge as a database of cases and solutions.

**cell phone**  A device that transmits voice or data, using radio waves to communicate with radio antennas placed within adjacent geographic areas called cells.

**change agent**  In the context of implementation, the individual acting as the catalyst during the change process to ensure successful organizational adaptation to a new system or innovation.

**change management**  Managing the impact of organizational change associated with an innovation, such as a new information system.

**chat**  Live, interactive conversations over a public network.

**chief data officer (CDO)**  Responsible for enterprise-wide governance and utilization of information to maximize the value the organization can realize from its data.

**chief information officer (CIO)**  Senior manager in charge of the information systems function in the firm.

**chief knowledge officer (CKO)**  Senior executive in charge of the organization’s knowledge management program.

**chief privacy officer (CPO)**  Responsible for ensuring the company complies with existing data privacy laws.

**chief security officer (CSO)**  Heads a formal security function for the organization and is responsible for enforcing the firm’s security policy.

**choice**  Simon’s third stage of decision making, when the individual selects among the various solution alternatives.

**Chrome OS**  Google’s lightweight computer operating system for users who do most of their computing on the Internet, runs on computers ranging from netbooks to desktop computers.

**churn rate**  Measurement of the number of customers who stop using or purchasing products or services from a company. Used as an indicator of the growth or decline of a firm’s customer base.

**classical model of management**  Traditional description of management that focused on its formal functions of planning, organizing, coordinating, deciding, and controlling.

**click fraud**  Fraudulently clicking on an online ad in pay per click advertising to generate an improper charge per click.

**client**  The user point-of-entry for the required function in client/server computing. Normally a desktop computer, workstation, or laptop computer.

**client/server computing**  A model for computing that splits processing between clients and servers on a network, assigning functions to the machine most able to perform the function.

**cloud computing**  Web-based applications that are stored on remote servers and accessed via the "cloud" of the Internet using a standard Web browser.

**collaboration**  Working with others to achieve shared and explicit goals.

**co-location**  A kind of Web site hosting in which firm purchase or rent a physical server computer at a hosting company’s location in order to operate a Web site.

**community provider**  A Web site business model that creates a digital online environment where people with similar interests can transact (buy and sell goods), share interests, photos, videos, communicate with like-minded people, receive interest-related information, and even play out fantasies by adopting online personalities called avatars.

**communities of practice (COPs)**  Informal social networks of professionals and employees within and outside the firm who have similar work-related activities and interests and share their knowledge.

**competitive forces model**  Model used to describe the interaction of external influences, specifically threats and opportunities, that affect an organization’s strategy and ability to compete.

**complementary assets**  Additional assets required to derive value from a primary investment.

**component-based development**  Building large software systems by combining pre-existing software components.

**computer abuse**  Any act that may not be illegal but are considered unethical.

**computer crime**  The commission of illegal acts through the use of a computer or against a computer system.

**computer forensics**  The scientific collection, examination, authentication, preservation, and analysis of data held on or retrieved from computer storage media in such a way that the information can be used as evidence in a court of law.

**computer hardware**  Physical equipment used for input, processing, and output activities in an information system.

**computer literacy**  Knowledge about information technology, focusing on understanding of how computer-based technologies work.
computer software  Detailed, preprogrammed instructions that control and coordinate the work of computer hardware components in an information system.

customization  Online file-sharing service that allows users to upload files to a secure online storage site from which the files can be synchronized and shared with others.

cybervandalism  Intentional disruption, defacement, or destruction of a Web site or corporate information system.

cyberwarfare  State-sponsored activity designed to cripple and defeat another state or nation by damaging or disrupting its computers or networks.

data  Streams of raw facts representing events occurring in organizations or the physical environment before they have been organized and arranged into a form that people can understand and use.

data administration  A special organizational function for managing the organization's data resources, concerned with information policy, data planning, maintenance of data dictionaries, and data quality standards.

data cleansing  Activities for detecting and correcting data in a database or file that are incorrect, incomplete, improperly formatted, or redundant. Also known as data scrubbing.

data definition  DBMS capability that specifies the structure and content of the database.

data dictionary  An automated or manual tool for storing and organizing information about the data maintained in a database.

data element  A simple attribute or concept that is used to describe data.

data flow diagram (DFD)  Primary tool for structured analysis that graphically illustrates a system's component process and the flow of data between them.

data governance  Policies and processes for managing the availability, usability, integrity, and security of the firm's data.

data inconsistency  The presence of different values for the same attribute when the same data are stored in multiple locations.

data management technology  Software governing the organization of data on physical storage media.

data manipulation language  A language associated with a database management system that end users and programmers use to manipulate data in the database.

data mart  A small data warehouse containing only a portion of the organization's data for a specified function or population of users.

data mining  Analysis of large pools of data to find patterns and rules that can be used to guide decision making and predict future behavior.

data quality audit  A survey and/or sample of files to determine the accuracy and completeness of data in an information system.

data redundancy  The presence of duplicate data in multiple data files.

data visualization  Technology for helping users see patterns and relationships in large amounts of data by presenting the data in graphical form.

data warehouse  A database, with reporting and query tools, that stores current and historical data extracted from various operational systems and consolidated for management reporting and analysis.

data workers  People such as secretaries or bookkeepers who process the organization's paperwork.

database  A group of related files.

database (rigorous definition)  A collection of data organized to serve many applications at the same time by storing and managing data so that they appear to be in one location.

database administration  Refers to the more technical and operational aspects of managing data, including physical database design and maintenance.

database management system (DBMS)  Special software to create and maintain a database and enable individual business applications to extract the data they need without having to create separate files or data definitions in their computer programs.
database server  A computer in a client/server environment that is responsible for running a DBMS to process SQL statements and perform database management tasks.
decisional roles  Mintzberg's classification for managerial roles where managers initiate activities, handle disturbances, allocate resources, and negotiate conflicts.
decision-support systems (DSS)  Information systems at the organization's management level that combine data and sophisticated analytical models or data analysis tools to support semistructured and unstructured decision making.
deep packet inspection (DPI)  Technology for managing network traffic by examining data packets, sorting out low-priority data from higher priority business-critical data, and sending packets in order of priority.
demand planning  Determining how much product a business needs to make to satisfy all its customers' demands.
denial of service (DoS) attack  Flooding a network server or Web server with false communications or requests for services in order to crash the network.
Descartes' rule of change  A principle that states that if an action cannot be taken repeatedly, then it is not right to be taken at any time.
design  Simon's second stage of decision making, when the individual conceives of possible alternative solutions to a problem.
digital asset management systems  Classify, store, and distribute digital objects such as photographs, graphic images, video, and audio content.
digital certificate  An attachment to an electronic message to verify the identity of the sender and to provide the receiver with the means to encode a reply.
digital divide  Large disparities in access to computers and the Internet among different social groups and different locations.
digital firm  Organization where nearly all significant business processes and relationships with customers, suppliers, and employees are digitally enabled, and key corporate assets are managed through digital means.
digital goods  Goods that can be delivered over a digital network.
Digital Millennium Copyright Act (DMCA)  Adjusts copyright laws to the Internet Age by making it illegal to make, distribute, or use devices that circumvent technology-based protections of copyright materials.
digital subscriber line (DSL)  A group of technologies providing high-capacity transmission over existing copper telephone lines.
direct cutover  A risky conversion approach where the new system completely replaces the old one on an appointed day.
disaster recovery planning  Planning for the restoration of computing and communications services after they have been disrupted.
disintermediation  The removal of organizations or business process layers responsible for certain intermediary steps in a value chain.
disruptive technologies  Technologies with disruptive impact on industries and businesses, rendering existing products, services and business models obsolete.
distributed denial-of-service (DDoS) attack  Numerous computers inundating and overwhelming a network from numerous launch points.
documentation  Descriptions of how an information system works from either a technical or end-user standpoint.
domain name  English-like name that corresponds to the unique 32-bit numeric Internet Protocol (IP) address for each computer connected to the Internet.
Domain Name System (DNS)  A hierarchical system of servers maintaining a database enabling the conversion of domain names to their numeric IP addresses.
domestic exporter  Form of business organization characterized by heavy centralization of corporate activities in the home county of origin.
downtime  Period of time in which an information system is not operational.
drill down  The ability to move from summary data to lower and lower levels of detail.
drive-by download  Malware that comes with a downloaded file a user intentionally or unintentionally requests.
due process  A process in which laws are well-known and understood and there is an ability to appeal to higher authorities to ensure that laws are applied correctly.
dynamic pricing  Pricing of items based on real-time interactions between buyers and sellers that determine what a item is worth at any particular moment.
e-government  Use of the Internet and related technologies to digitally enable government and public sector agencies' relationships with citizens, businesses, and other arms of government.
efficient customer response system  System that directly links consumer behavior back to distribution, production, and supply chains.
electronic business (e-business)  The use of the Internet and digital technology to execute all the business processes in the enterprise. Includes e-commerce as well as processes for the internal management of the firm and for coordination with suppliers and other business partners.
electronic commerce  The process of buying and selling goods and services electronically involving transactions using the Internet, networks, and other digital technologies.
electronic data interchange (EDI)  The direct computer-to-computer exchange between two organizations of standard business transactions, such as orders, shipment instructions, or payments.
e-mail  The computer-to-computer exchange of messages.
employee relationship management (ERM)  Software dealing with employee issues that are closely related to CRM, such as setting objectives, employee performance management, performance-based compensation, and employee training.
encryption  The coding and scrambling of messages to prevent or their being read or accessed without authorization.
end-user development  The development of information systems by end users with little or no formal assistance from technical specialists.
end-user interface  The part of an information system through which the end user interacts with the system, such as on-line screens and commands.
end users  Representatives of departments outside the information systems group for whom applications are developed.
enterprise applications  Systems that can coordinate activities, decisions, and knowledge across many different functions, levels, and business units in a firm. Include enterprise systems, supply chain management systems, and knowledge management systems.
enterprise content management systems  Help organizations manage structured and semistructured knowledge, providing corporate repositories of documents, reports, presentations, and best practices and capabilities for collecting and organizing e-mail and graphic objects.
enterprise software  Set of integrated modules for applications such as sales and distribution, financial accounting, investment management, materials management, production planning, plant maintenance, and human resources that allow data to be used by multiple functions and business processes.
Glossary

**formal control tools**  Project management technique that helps monitor the progress toward completion of a task and fulfillment of goals.

**formal planning tools**  Project management technique that structures and sequences tasks, budgeting time, money, and technical resources required to complete the tasks.

**forward chaining**  A strategy for searching the rule base in an expert system that begins with the information entered by the user and searches the rule base to arrive at a conclusion.

**franchiser**  Form of business organization in which a product is created, designed, financed, and initially produced in the home country, but for product-specific reasons relies heavily on foreign personnel for further production, marketing, and human resources.

**free/freemium revenue model**  an e-commerce revenue model in which a firm offers basic services or content for free, while charging a premium for advanced or high value features.

**fuzzy logic**  Rule-based AI that tolerates imprecision by using nonspecific terms called membership functions to solve problems.

**Gantt chart**  Visually represents the timing, duration, and resource requirements of project tasks.

**general controls**  Overall control environment governing the design, security, and use of computer programs and the security of data files in general throughout the organization's information technology infrastructure.

**genetic algorithms**  Problem-solving methods that promote the evolution of solutions to specified problems using the model of living organisms adapting to their environment.

**geoadvertising**  Delivering ads to users based on their GPS location.

**geographic information system (GIS)**  System with software that can analyze and display data using digitized maps to enhance planning and decision-making.

**geoinformation services**  Information on local places and things based on the GPS position of the user.

**geosocial services**  Social networking based on the GPS location of users.

**Golden Rule**  Putting oneself in the place of others as the object of a decision.

**Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act**  Requires financial institutions to ensure the security and confidentiality of customer data.

**green computing**  Refers to practices and technologies for designing, manufacturing, using, and disposing of computers, servers, and associated devices such as monitors, printers, storage devices, and networking and communications systems to minimize impact on the environment.

**grid computing**  Applying the resources of many computers in a network to a single problem.

**group decision-support system (GDSS)**  An interactive computer-based system to facilitate the solution to unstructured problems by a set of decision makers working together as a group.

**hacker**  A person who gains unauthorized access to a computer network for profit, criminal mischief, or personal pleasure.

**Hadoop**  Open-source software framework that enables distributed parallel processing of huge amounts of data across many inexpensive computers.

**hertz**  Measure of frequency of electrical impulses per second, with 1 Hertz equivalent to 1 cycle per second.

**high-availability computing**  Tools and technologies, including backup hardware resources, to enable a system to recover quickly from a crash.

**HIPAA**  Law outlining rules for medical security, privacy, and the management of health care records.
G 6  Glossary

**hotspot** A specific geographic location in which an access point provides public Wi-Fi network service.

**HTML (Hypertext Markup Language)** Page description language for creating Web pages.

**HTML5** Next evolution of HTML, which will make it possible to embed images, video, and audio directly into a document without add-on software.

**hubs** Very simple devices that connect network components, sending a packet of data to all other connected devices.

**hybrid AI systems** Integration of multiple AI technologies into a single application to take advantage of the best features of these technologies.

**hybrid cloud** Computing model where firms use both their own IT infrastructure and also public cloud computing services.

**hypertext transfer protocol (HTTP)** The communications standard used to transfer pages on the Web. Defines how messages are formatted and transmitted.

**identity management** Business processes and software tools for identifying the valid users of a system and controlling their access to system resources.

**identity theft** Theft of key pieces of personal information, such as credit card or Social Security numbers, in order to obtain merchandise and services in the name of the victim or to obtain false credentials.

**Immanuel Kant's Categorical Imperative** A principle that states that if an action is not right for everyone to take it is not right for anyone.

**implementation** All the organizational activities surrounding the adoption, management, and routinization of an innovation, such as a new information system.

**in-memory computing** Technology for very rapid analysis and processing of large quantities of data by storing the data in the computer's main memory rather than in secondary storage.

**inference engine** The strategy used to search through the rule base in an expert system, can be forward or backward chaining.

**information** Data that have been shaped into a form that is meaningful and useful to human beings.

**information asymmetry** Situation where the relative bargaining power of two parties in a transaction is determined by one party in the transaction possessing more information essential to the transaction than the other party.

**information density** The total amount and quality of information available to all market participants, consumers, and merchants.

**information policy** Formal rules governing the maintenance, distribution, and use of information in an organization.

**information requirements** A detailed statement of the information needs that a new system must satisfy, identifies who needs what information, and when, where, and how the information is needed.

**information rights** The rights that individuals and organizations have with respect to information that pertains to themselves.

**information system** Interrelated components working together to collect, process, store, and disseminate information to support decision making, coordination, control, analysis, and visualization in an organization.

**information systems audit** Identifies all the controls that govern individual information systems and assesses their effectiveness.

**information systems department** The formal organizational unit that is responsible for the information systems function in the organization.

**information systems literacy** Broad-based understanding of information systems that includes behavioral knowledge about organizations and individuals using information systems as well as technical knowledge about computers.

**information systems managers** Leaders of the various specialists in the information systems department.

**information systems plan** A road map indicating the direction of systems development: the rationale, the current situation, the management strategy, the implementation plan, and the budget.

**information technology (IT)** All the hardware and software technologies a firm needs to achieve its business objectives.

**information technology (IT) infrastructure** Computer hardware, software, data, storage technology, and networks providing a portfolio of shared IT resources for the organization.

**informational roles** Mintzberg's classification for managerial roles where managers act as the nerve centers of their organizations, receiving and disseminating critical information.

**informed consent** Consent given with knowledge of all the facts needed to make a rational decision.

**input** The capture or collection of raw data from within the organization or from its external environment for processing in an information system.

**instant messaging** Chat service that allows participants to create their own private chat channels so that a person can be alerted whenever someone on his or her private list is on-line to initiate a chat session with that particular individual.

**intangible benefits** Benefits that are not easily quantified; they include more efficient customer service or enhanced decision making.

**intellectual property** Intangible property created by individuals or corporations that is subject to protections under trade secret, copyright, and patent law.

**intelligence** The first of Simon's four stages of decision making, when the individual collects information to identify problems occurring in the organization.

**intelligent agent** Software program that uses a built-in or learned knowledge base to carry out specific, repetitive, and predictable tasks for an individual user, business process, or software application.

**intelligent techniques** Technologies that aid human decision makers by capturing individual and collective knowledge, discovering patterns and behaviors in large quantities of data, and generating solutions to problems that are too large and complex for human beings to solve on their own.

**internal integration tools** Project management technique that ensures that the implementation team operates as a cohesive unit.

**international information systems architecture** The basic information systems required by organizations to coordinate worldwide trade and other activities.

**Internet** Global network of networks using universal standards to connect millions of different networks.

**Internet of Things** Pervasive Web in which each object or machine has a unique identity and is able to use the Internet to link with other machines or send data. Also known as the Industrial Internet.

**Internet Protocol (IP) address** Four-part numeric address indicating a unique computer location on the Internet.

**Internet Service Provider (ISP)** A commercial organization with a permanent connection to the Internet that sells temporary connections to subscribers.

**Internet2** Research network with new protocols and transmission speeds that provides an infrastructure for supporting high bandwidth Internet applications.

**interorganizational systems** Information systems that automate the flow of information across organizational boundaries and link a company to its customers, distributors, or suppliers.

**interpersonal roles** Mintzberg's classification for managerial roles where managers act as figureheads and leaders for the organization.

**intranet** An internal network based on Internet and World Wide Web technology and standards.

**intrusion detection system** Tools to monitor the most vulnerable points in a network to detect and deter unauthorized intruders.
investment workstation Powerful desktop computer for financial specialists, which is optimized to access and manipulate massive amounts of financial data.

iOS Operating system for the Apple iPad, iPhone, and iPod Touch.


IT governance Strategy and policies for using information technology within an organization, specifying the decision rights and accountabilities to ensure that information technology supports the organization's strategies and objectives.

iterative A process of repeating over and over again the steps to build a system.

Java Programming language that can deliver only the software functionality needed for a particular task, such as a small applet downloaded from a network, can run on any computer and operating system.

Joint Application Design (JAD) Process to accelerate the generation of information requirements by having end users and information systems specialists work together in intensive interactive design sessions.

just-in-time Scheduling system for minimizing inventory by having components arrive exactly at the moment they are needed and finished goods shipped as soon as they leave the assembly line.

key field A field in a record that uniquely identifies instances of that record so that it can be retrieved, updated, or sorted.

key performance indicators Measures proposed by senior management for understanding how well the firm is performing along specified dimensions.

keylogger Spyware that records every keystroke made on a computer to steal personal information or passwords or to launch Internet attacks.

knowledge Concepts, experience, and insight that provide a framework for creating, evaluating, and using information.

knowledge base Model of human knowledge that is used by expert systems.

knowledge discovery Identification of novel and valuable patterns in large databases.

knowledge management The set of processes developed in an organization to create, gather, store, maintain, and disseminate the firm's knowledge.

knowledge management systems Systems that support the creation, capture, storage, and dissemination of firm expertise and knowledge.

knowledge network system Online directory for locating corporate experts in well-defined knowledge domains.

knowledge workers People such as engineers or architects who design products or services and create knowledge for the organization.

knowledge work systems Information systems that aid knowledge workers in the creation and integration of new knowledge into the organization.

learning management system (LMS) Tools for the management, delivery, tracking, and assessment of various types of employee learning.

legacy system A system that has been in existence for a long time and that continues to be used to avoid the high cost of replacing or redesigning it.

legitimacy The extent to which one's authority is accepted on grounds of competence, vision, or other qualities. Making judgments and taking actions on the basis of narrow or personal characteristics.

liability The existence of laws that permit individuals to recover the damages done to them by other actors, systems, or organizations.

Linux Reliable and compactly designed operating system that is an offshoot of UNIX and that can run on many different hardware platforms and is available free or at very low cost. Used as alternative to UNIX and Windows NT.

local area network (LAN) A telecommunications network that requires its own dedicated channels and that encompasses a limited distance, usually one building or several buildings in close proximity.

location-based services GPS map services available on smartphones.

location analytics Ability to gain insights from the location (geographic) component of data, including location data from mobile phones, output from sensors or scanning devices, and data from maps.

long tail marketing Refers to the ability of firms to profitably market goods to very small online audiences, largely because of the lower costs of reaching very small market segments (people who fall into the long tail ends of a Bell curve).

machine learning Study of how computer programs can improve their performance without explicit programming.

mainframe Largest category of computer, used for major business processing.

maintenance Changes in hardware, software, documentation, or procedures to a production system to correct errors, meet new requirements, or improve processing efficiency.

malware Malicious software programs such as computer viruses, worms, and Trojan horses.

managed security service provider (MSSP) Company that provides security management services for subscribing clients.

management information systems (MIS) Specific category of information system providing reports on organizational performance to help middle management monitor and control the business.

managerial roles Expectations of the activities that managers should perform in an organization.

market creator An e-commerce business model in which firms provide a digital online environment where buyers and sellers can meet, search for products, and engage in transactions.

market entry costs The cost merchants must pay to bring their goods to market.

marketspace A marketplace extended beyond traditional boundaries and removed from a temporal and geographic location.

mashups Composite software applications that depend on high-speed networks, universal communication standards, and open-source code.

mass customization The capacity to offer individually tailored products or services using mass production resources.

massive open online course (MOOC) Online course made available via the Web to very large numbers of participants.

menu costs Merchants' costs of changing prices.

metric A standard measurement of performance.

metropolitan area network (MAN) Network that spans a metropolitan area, usually a city and its major suburbs. Its geographic scope falls between a WAN and a LAN.

microblogging Blogging featuring very short posts, such as using Twitter.

micropayment Payment for a very small sum of money, often less than $10.

middle management People in the middle of the organizational hierarchy who are responsible for carrying out the plans and goals of senior management.

minicomputer Middle-range computer used in systems for universities, factories, or research laboratories.

mobile Web app Internet-enabled app with specific functionality for mobile devices that is accessed through a mobile device’s Web browser.

mobile commerce (m-commerce) The use of wireless devices, such as cell phones or handheld digital information appliances, to conduct both business-to-consumer and business-to-business e-commerce transactions over the Internet.
G 8  Glossary

modem A device for translating a computer’s digital signals into analog form for transmission over ordinary telephone lines, or for translating analog signals back into digital form for reception by a computer.

Moore’s Law Assertion that the number of components on a chip doubles each year.

multicore processor Integrated circuit to which two or more processors have been attached for enhanced performance, reduced power consumption and more efficient simultaneous processing of multiple tasks.

multinational Form of business organization that concentrates financial management and control out of a central home base while decentralizing.

multitiered (N-tier) client/server architecture Client/server network which the work of the entire network is balanced over several different levels of servers.

multitouch Interface that features the use of one or more finger gestures to manipulate lists or objects on a screen without using a mouse or keyboard.

nanotechnology Technology that builds structures and processes based on the manipulation of individual atoms and molecules.

native app Standalone application designed to run on a specific platform and device and is installed directly on the mobile device.

net marketplace A single digital marketplace based on Internet technology linking many buyers to many sellers.

network The linking of two or more computers to share data or resources, such as a printer.

network economics Model of strategic systems at the industry level based on the concept of a network where adding another participant entails zero marginal costs but can create much larger marginal gains.

network operating system (NOS) Special software that routes and manages communications on the network and coordinates network resources.

networking and telecommunications technology Physical devices and software that link various computer hardware components and transfer data from one physical location to another.

neural network Hardware or software that attempts to emulate the processing patterns of the biological brain.

non-relational database management system Database management system for working with large quantities of structured and unstructured data that would be difficult to analyze with a relational model.

nonobvious relationship awareness (NORA) Technology that can find obscure hidden connections between people or other entities by analyzing information from many different sources to correlate relationships.

normalization The process of creating small stable data structures from complex groups of data when designing a relational database.

object Software building block that combines data and the procedures acting on the data.

object-oriented development Approach to systems development that uses the object as the basic unit of systems analysis and design. The system is modeled as a collection of objects and the relationship between them.

offshore outsourcing Outsourcing systems development work or maintenance of existing systems to external vendors in another country.

on-demand computing Firms off-loading peak demand for computing power to remote, large-scale data processing centers, investing just enough to handle average processing loads and paying for only as much additional computing power as the market demands. Also called utility computing.

on-line analytical processing (OLAP) Capability for manipulating and analyzing large volumes of data from multiple perspectives.

online transaction processing Transaction processing mode in which transactions entered on-line are immediately processed by the computer.

open-source software Software that provides free access to its program code, allowing users to modify the program code to make improvements or fix errors.

operating system Software that manages the resources and activities of the computer.

operational CRM Customer-facing applications, such as sales force automation, call center and customer service support, and marketing automation.

operational intelligence Business analytics that delivers insight into data, streaming events and business operations.

operational management People who monitor the day-to-day activities of the organization.

opt-in Model of informed consent permitting prohibiting an organization from collecting any personal information unless the individual specifically takes action to approve information collection and use.

opt-out Model of informed consent permitting the collection of personal information until the consumer specifically requests that the data not be collected.

organization (behavioral definition) A collection of rights, privileges, obligations, and responsibilities that are delicately balanced over a period of time through conflict and conflict resolution.

organization (technical definition) A stable, formal, social structure that takes resources from the environment and processes them to produce outputs.

organizational and management capital Investments in organization and management such as new business processes, management behavior, organizational culture, or training.

organizational impact analysis Study of the way a proposed system will affect organizational structure, attitudes, decision making, and operations.

organizational learning Creation of new standard operating procedures and business processes that reflect organizations’ experience.

output The distribution of processed information to the people who will use it or to the activities for which it will be used.

outsourcing The practice of contracting computer center operations, telecommunications networks, or applications development to external vendors.

packet switching Technology that breaks messages into small, fixed bundles of data and routes them in the most economical way through any available communications channel.

paradigm shift Radical reconceptualization of the nature of the business and the nature of the organization.

parallel strategy A safe and conservative conversion approach where both the old system and its potential replacement are run together for a time until everyone is assured that the new one functions correctly.

particularism Making judgments and taking action on the basis of narrow or personal characteristics, in all its forms (religious, nationalistic, ethnic, regionalism, geopolitical position).

partner relationship management (PRM) Automation of the firm’s relationships with its selling partners using customer data and analytical tools to improve coordination and customer sales.

password Secret word or string of characters for authenticating users so they can access a resource such as a computer system.

patch Small pieces of software to repair the software flaws without disturbing the proper operation of the software.

patent A legal document that grants the owner an exclusive monopoly on the ideas behind an invention for 17 years,
designed to ensure that inventors of new machines or methods are rewarded for their labor while making widespread use of their inventions.

**peer-to-peer** Network architecture that gives equal power to all computers on the network, used primarily in small networks.

**personal area network (PAN)** Computer network used for communication among digital devices (including telephones and PDAs) that are close to one person.

**personalization** Ability of merchants to target marketing messages to specific individuals by adjusting the message for a person’s name, interests, and past purchases.

**PERT chart** Network diagram depicting project tasks and their interrelationships.

**phishing** Phishing technique that redirects users to a bogus Web page, even when an individual enters the correct Web page address.

**phased approach** Introduces the new system in stages either by functions or by organizational units.

**pivot table** Spreadsheet tool for reorganizing and summarizing two or more dimensions of data in a tabular format.

**podcasting** Publishing audio broadcasts via the Internet so that subscribing users can download audio files onto their personal computers or portable music players.

**portal** Web interface for presenting integrated personalized content from a variety of sources. Also refers to a Web site service that provides an initial point of entry to the Web.

**portfolio analysis** An analysis of the portfolio of potential applications within a firm to determine the risks and benefits, and to select among alternatives for information systems.

**post-implementation audit** Formal review process conducted after a system has been placed in production to determine how well the system has met its original objectives.

**prediction markets** An analysis of the portfolio of potential applications within a firm to determine the risks and benefits, and to select among alternatives for information systems.

**predictive analytics** The use of data mining techniques, historical data, and assumptions about future conditions to predict outcomes of events, such as the probability a customer will respond to an offer or purchase a specific product.

**Predictive search** Part of a search algorithm that predicts what a user query is looking as it is entered based on popular searches. Produces a dropdown list of suggested search queries.

**price discrimination** Selling the same goods, or nearly the same goods, to different targeted groups at different prices.

**price transparency** The ease with which consumers can find out the variety of prices in a market.

**primary activities** Activities most directly related to the production and distribution of a firm’s products or services.

**primary key** Unique identifier for all the information in any row of a database table.

**privacy** The claim of individuals to be left alone, free from surveillance or interference from other individuals, organizations, or the state.

**private cloud** A proprietary network or a data center that ties together servers, storage, networks, data, and applications as a set of virtualized services that are shared by users inside a company.

**private exchange** Another term for a private industrial network.

**private industrial networks** Web-enabled networks linking systems of multiple firms in an industry for the coordination of trans-organizational business processes.

**process specifications** Describe the logic of the processes occurring within the lowest levels of a data flow diagram.

**process specifications** The conversion, manipulation, and analysis of raw input into a form that is more meaningful to humans.

**product differentiation** Competitive strategy for creating brand loyalty by developing new and unique products and services that are not easily duplicated by competitors.

**production** The stage after the new system is installed and the conversion is complete; during this time the system is reviewed by users and technical specialists to determine how well it has met its original goals.

**production or service workers** People who actually produce the products or services of the organization.

**profiling** The use of computers to combine data from multiple sources and create electronic dossiers of detailed information on individuals.

**program-data dependence** The close relationship between data stored in files and the software programs that update and maintain those files. Any change in data organization or format requires a change in all the programs associated with those files.

**programmers** Highly trained technical specialists who write computer software instructions.

**programming** The process of translating the system specifications prepared during the design stage into program code.

**project** Planned series of related activities for achieving a specific business objective.

**project management** Application of knowledge, tools, and techniques to achieve specific targets within a specified budget and time period.

**project portfolio management software** Helps organizations evaluate and manage portfolios of projects and dependencies among them.

**protocol** A set of rules and procedures that govern transmission between the components in a network.

**prototype** The preliminary working version of an information system for demonstration and evaluation purposes.

**prototyping** The process of building an experimental system quickly and inexpensively for demonstration and evaluation so that users can better determine information requirements.

**public cloud** A cloud maintained by an external service provider, accessed through the Internet, and available to the general public.

**public key encryption** Uses two keys: one shared (or public) and one private.

**public key infrastructure (PKI)** System for creating public and private keys using a certificate authority (CA) and digital certificates for authentication.

**pull-based model** Supply chain driven by actual customer orders or purchases so that members of the supply chain produce and deliver only what customers have ordered.

**push-based model** Supply chain driven by production master schedules based on forecasts or best guesses of demand for products, and products are “pushed” to customers.

**quantum computing** Use of principles of quantum physics to represent data and perform operations on the data, with the ability to be in many different states at once and to perform many different computations simultaneously.

**query language** Software tool that provides immediate online answers to requests for information that are not predefined.

**radio-frequency identification (RFID)** Technology using tiny tags with embedded microchips containing data about an item and its location to transmit short-distance radio signals to special RFID readers that then pass the data on to a computer for processing.

**ransomware** Malware that extorts money from users by taking control of their computers or displaying annoying pop-up messages.
Rapid Application Development (RAD)  Process for developing systems in a very short time period by using prototyping, fourth-generation tools, and close teamwork among users and systems specialists.

rationalization of procedures  The streamlining of standard operating procedures, eliminating obvious bottlenecks, so that automation makes operating procedures more efficient.

real options pricing models  Models for evaluating information technology investments with uncertain returns by using techniques for valuing financing options.

record  A group of related fields.

referential integrity  Rules to ensure that relationships between coupled database tables remain consistent.

relational DBMS  A type of logical database model that treats data as if they were stored in two-dimensional tables. It can relate data stored in one table to data in another as long as the two tables share a common data element.

Repetitive Stress Injury (RSI)  Occupational disease that occurs when muscle groups are forced through repetitive actions with high-impact loads or thousands of repetitions with low-impact loads.

Request for Proposal (RFP)  A detailed list of questions submitted to vendors of software or other services to determine how well the vendor's product can meet the organization's specific requirements.

responsibility  Accepting the potential costs, duties, and obligations for the decisions one makes.

responsive Web design  Ability of a Web site to automatically change screen resolution and image size as a user switches to devices of different sizes, such as a laptop, tablet computer, or smartphone. Eliminates the need for separate design and development work for each new device.

revenue model  A description of how a firm will earn revenue, generate profits, and produce a return on investment.

richness  Measurement of the depth and detail of information that a business can supply to the customer as well as information the business collects about the customer.

risk assessment  Determining the potential frequency of the occurrence of a problem and the potential damage if the problem were to occur. Used to determine the cost/benefit of a control.

Risk Aversion Principle  Principle that one should take the action that produces the least harm or incurs the least cost.

router  Specialized communications processor that forwards packets of data from one network to another network.

routines  Precise rules, procedures and practices that have been developed to cope with expected situations.

RSS  Technology using aggregator software to pull content from Web sites and feed it automatically to subscribers' computers.

SaaS (Software as a Service)  Services for delivering and providing access to software remotely as a Web-based service.

safe harbor  Private self-regulating policy and enforcement mechanism that meets the objectives of government regulations but does not involve government regulation or enforcement.

sales revenue model  Selling goods, information, or services to customers as the main source of revenue for a company.

Sarbanes-Oxley Act  Law passed in 2002 that imposes responsibility on companies and their management to protect investors by safeguarding the accuracy and integrity of financial information that is used internally and released externally.

scalability  The ability of a computer, product, or system to expand to serve a larger number of users without breaking down.

scope  Defines what work is and is not included in a project.

scoring model  A quick method for deciding among alternative systems based on a system of ratings for selected objectives.

search costs  The time and money spent locating a suitable product and determining the best price for that product.

search engine  A tool for locating specific sites or information on the Internet.

search engine marketing  Use of search engines to deliver in their results sponsored links, for which advertisers have paid.

search engine optimization (SEO)  The process of changing a Web site's content, layout, and format in order to increase the ranking of the site on popular search engines, and to generate more site visitors.

Secure Hypertext Transfer Protocol (S-HTTP)  Protocol used for encrypting data flowing over the Internet, limited to individual messages.

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)  Enables client and server computers to manage encryption and decryption activities as they communicate with each other during a secure Web session.

security  Policies, procedures, and technical measures used to prevent unauthorized access, alteration, theft, or physical damage to information systems.

security policy  Statements ranking information risks, identifying acceptable security goals, and identifying the mechanisms for achieving these goals.

Semantic Web  Ways of making the Web more "intelligent," with machine-facilitated understanding of information so that searches can be more intuitive, effective, and executed using intelligent software agents.

semistructured decisions  Decisions in which only part of the problem has a clear-cut answer provided by an accepted procedure.

senior management  People occupying the topmost hierarchy in an organization who are responsible for making long-range decisions.

sensitivity analysis  Models that ask “what-if” questions repeatedly to determine the impact of changes in one or more factors on the outcomes.

sentiment analysis  Mining text comments in an e-mail message, blog, social media conversation, or survey form to detect favorable and unfavorable opinions about specific subjects.

server  Computer specifically optimized to provide software and other resources to other computers over a network.

service level agreement (SLA)  Formal contract between customers and their service providers that defines the specific responsibilities of the service provider and the level of service expected by the customer.

service-oriented architecture  Software architecture of a firm built on a collection of software programs that communicate with each other to perform assigned tasks to create a working software application.

shopping bot  Software with varying levels of built-in intelligence to help electronic commerce shoppers locate and evaluate products or service they might wish to purchase.

six sigma  A specific measure of quality, representing 3.4 defects per million opportunities, used to designate a set of methodologies and techniques for improving quality and reducing costs.

smart card  A credit-card-size plastic card that stores digital information and that can be used for electronic payments in place of cash.

smartphone  Wireless phone with voice, text, and Internet capabilities.

sniffer  Type of eavesdropping program that monitors information traveling over a network.

social business  Use of social networking platforms, including Facebook, Twitter, and internal corporate social tools, to engage employees, customers, and suppliers.

social CRM  Tools enabling a business to link customer conversations, data, and relationships from social networking sites to CRM processes.

social engineering  Trick people into revealing their passwords by pretending to rrbe legitimate users or members of a company in need of information.
social graph  Map of all significant online social relationships, comparable to a social network describing offline relationships.

social networking sites  Online community for expanding users' business or social contacts by making connections through their mutual business or personal connections.

social search  Effort to provide more relevant and trustworthy search results based on a person's network of social contacts.

social shopping  Use of Web sites featuring user-created Web pages to share knowledge about items of interest to other shoppers.

sociotechnical design  Design to produce information systems that blend technical efficiency with sensitivity to organizational and human needs.

sociotechnical view  Seeing systems as composed of both technical and social elements.

software-defined networking (SDN)  Using a central control program separate from network devices to manage the flow of data on a network.

software localization  Process of converting software to operate in a second language.

software package  A prewritten, precoded, commercially available set of programs that eliminates the need to write software programs for certain functions.

spam  Unsolicited commercial e-mail.

telepresence  A technology that allows a person to be present at a location other than his or her true physical location.

telegraphy  A form of telecommunication in which messages are transmitted in a code of signs, sounds, or patterns of light or heat.

technology standards  Specifications that establish the compatibility of products and the ability to communicate in a network.

telecasting  Broadcasting of television programs to large numbers of people in different locations.

telecommuting  Working away from a traditional office environment and communicating with colleagues and others through the use of telecommunications technology.

telephony  Art or science of receiving, conveying, and transmitting telephone communication.

MRP II  Manufacturing Resource Planning II, a computerized system that integrates the planning and control of enterprise operations with the broader purpose of making resources available to meet market demand.

support activities  Activities that make the delivery of a firm's primary activities possible. Consist of the organization’s infrastructure, human resources, technology, and procurement.

storage area network (SAN)  A high-speed network dedicated to storage that connects different kinds of storage devices, such as tape libraries and disk arrays so they can be shared by multiple servers.

structural model  A representation of an organization's structure, which includes the hierarchy, roles, and relationships among individuals.

structure chart  System documentation showing each level of design, the relationship among the levels, and the overall place in the design structure; can document one program, one system, or part of one program.

structured  Refers to the fact that techniques are carefully drawn up, step by step, with each step building on a previous one.

structured decisions  Decisions that are repetitive, routine, and have a definite procedure for handling them.

structured knowledge  Knowledge in the form of structured documents and reports.

structured Query Language (SQL)  The standard data manipulation language for relational database management systems.

supply chain  Network of organizations and business processes for procuring materials, transforming raw materials into intermediate and finished products, and distributing the finished products to customers.

supply chain execution systems  Systems to manage the flow of products through distribution centers and warehouses to ensure that products are delivered to the right locations in the most efficient manner.

supply chain management systems  Information systems that automate the flow of information between a firm and its suppliers in order to optimize the planning, sourcing, manufacturing, and delivery of products and services.

supply chain planning systems  Systems that enable a firm to generate demand forecasts for a product and to develop sourcing and manufacturing plans for that product.

supply chain systems  Information systems that provide support activities to primary activities and planning activities. Examples include supply chain planning systems and supply chain execution systems.

switch  Device to connect network components that has more intelligence than a hub and can filter and forward data to a specified destination.

switching costs  The expense a customer or company incurs in lost time and expenditure of resources when changing from one supplier or system to a competing supplier or system.

switches  Devices that connect network components that can filter and forward data to a specified destination.

system testing  Tests the functioning of the information system as a whole in order to determine if discrete modules will function together as planned.

systems analysis  The analysis of a problem that the organization will try to solve with an information system.

systems analysts  Specialists who translate business problems and requirements into information requirements and systems, acting as liaison between the information systems department and the rest of the organization.

systems design  Details how a system will meet the information requirements as determined by the systems analysis.

systems development  The activities that go into producing an information systems solution to an organizational problem or opportunity.

systems life cycle  A traditional methodology for developing an information system that partitions the systems development process into formal stages that must be completed sequentially with a very formal division of labor between end users and information systems specialists.

T lines  High-speed guaranteed service level data lines leased from communications providers, such as T-1 lines (with a transmission capacity of 1.544 Mbps).

teamware  Group collaboration software that is customized for teamwork.

tacit knowledge  Expertise and experience of organizational members that has not been formally documented.

tangible benefits  Benefits that can be quantified and assigned a monetary value; they include lower operational costs and increased cash flows.

taxonomy  Method of classifying things according to a predetermined system.

telegraphy  A form of telecommunication in which messages are transmitted in a code of signs, sounds, or patterns of light or heat.

telecasting  Broadcasting of television programs to large numbers of people in different locations.

telephony  Art or science of receiving, conveying, and transmitting telephone communication.

telepresence  Telepresence is a technology that allows a person to give the appearance of being present at a location other than his or her true physical location.

telnet  Network tool that allows someone to log on to one computer system while doing work on another.
G 12  Glossary

**test plan**  Prepared by the development team in conjunction with the users, it includes all of the preparations for the series of tests to be performed on the system.

**testing**  The exhaustive and thorough process that determines whether the system produces the desired results under known conditions.

**text mining**  Discovery of patterns and relationships from large sets of unstructured data.

**token**  Physical device similar to an identification card that is designed to prove the identity of a single user.

**Total Cost of Ownership (TCO)**  Designates the total cost of owning technology resources, including initial purchase costs, the cost of hardware and software upgrades, maintenance, technical support, and training.

**Total Quality Management (TQM)**  A concept that makes quality control a responsibility to be shared by all people in an organization.

**touch point**  Method of firm interaction with a customer, such as telephone, e-mail, customer service desk, conventional mail, or point-of-purchase.

**trade secret**  Any intellectual work or product used for a business purpose that can be classified as belonging to that business, provided it is not based on information in the public domain.

**transaction costs**  Costs incurred when a firm buys on the marketplace what it cannot make itself.

**transaction cost theory**  Economic theory stating that firms grow larger because they can conduct marketplace transactions internally more cheaply than they can with external firms in the marketplace.

**transaction fee revenue model**  An online e-commerce revenue model where the firm receives a fee for enabling or executing transactions.

**transaction processing systems (TPS)**  Computerized systems that perform and record the daily routine transactions necessary to conduct the business; they serve the organization’s operational level.

**transborder data flow**  The movement of information across international boundaries in any form.

**Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)**  Dominant model for achieving connectivity among different networks. Provides a universally agree-on method for breaking up digital messages into packets, routing them to the proper addresses, and then reassembling them into coherent messages.

**transnational**  Truly global form of business organization with no national headquarters; value-added activities are managed from a global perspective without reference to national borders, optimizing sources of supply and demand and local competitive advantage.

**Trojan horse**  A software program that appears legitimate but contains a second hidden function that may cause damage.

**tuple**  A row or record in a relational database.

**two-factor authentication**  Validating user identity with two means of identification, one of which is typically a physical token, and the other of which is typically data.

**Unified communications**  Integrates disparate channels for voice communications, data communications, instant messaging, e-mail, and electronic conferencing into a single experience where users can seamlessly switch back and forth between different communication modes.

**unified threat management (UTM)**  Comprehensive security management tool that combines multiple security tools, including firewalls, virtual private networks, intrusion detection systems, and Web content filtering and anti-spam software.

**uniform resource locator (URL)**  The address of a specific resource on the Internet.

**unit testing**  The process of testing each program separately in the system. Sometimes called program testing.

**UNIX**  Operating system for all types of computers, which is machine independent and supports multiuser processing, multitasking, and networking. Used in high-end workstations and servers.

**unstructured decisions**  Nonroutine decisions in which the decision maker must provide judgment, evaluation, and insights into the problem definition; there is no agreed-upon procedure for making such decisions.

**user interface**  The part of the information system through which the end user interacts with the system; type of hardware and the series of on-screen commands and responses required for a user to work with the system.

**user-designer communications gap**  The difference in backgrounds, interests, and priorities that impede communication and problem solving among end users and information systems specialists.

**Utilitarian Principle**  Principle that assumes one can put values in rank order of utility and understand the consequences of various courses of action.

**value chain model**  Model that highlights the primary or support activities that add a margin of value to a firm’s products or services where information systems can best be applied to achieve a competitive advantage.

**value web**  Customer-driven network of independent firms who use information technology to coordinate their value chains to collectively produce a product or service for a market.

**virtual company**  Organization using networks to link people, assets and ideas to create and distribute products and services without being limited to traditional organizational boundaries or physical location.

**Virtual Private Network (VPN)**  A secure connection between two points across the Internet to transmit corporate data. Provides a low-cost alternative to a private network.


**virtual reality systems**  Interactive graphics software and hardware that create computer-generated simulations that provide sensations that emulate real-world activities.

**virtuarization**  Presenting a set of computing resources so that they can all be accessed in ways that are not restricted by physical configuration or geographic location.

**visual web**  Refers to Web linking visual sites such as Pinterest where pictures replace text documents and where users search on pictures and visual characteristics.

**Voice over IP (VoIP)**  Facilities for managing the delivery of voice information using the Internet Protocol (IP).

**war driving**  Technique in which eavesdroppers drive by buildings or park outside and try to intercept wireless network traffic.

**wearable computer**  Small wearable computing device such as a smartwatch, smartglasses, or activity tracker.

**Web 2.0**  Second-generation, interactive Internet-based services that enable people to collaborate, share information, and create new services online, including mashups, blogs, RSS, and wikis.

**Web 3.0**  Future vision of the Web where all digital information is woven together with intelligent search capabilities.

**Web beacons**  Tiny objects invisibly embedded in e-mail messages and Web pages that are designed to monitor the behavior of the user visiting a Web site or sending e-mail.

**Web browser**  An easy-to-use software tool for accessing the World Wide Web and the Internet.

**Web hosting service**  Company with large Web server computers to maintain the Web sites of fee-paying subscribers.

**Web mining**  Discovery and analysis of useful patterns and information from the World Wide Web.
Web server  Software that manages requests for Web pages on the computer where they are stored and that delivers the page to the user’s computer.

Web services  Set of universal standards using Internet technology for integrating different applications from different sources without time-consuming custom coding. Used for linking systems of different organizations or for linking disparate systems within the same organization.

Web site  All of the World Wide Web pages maintained by an organization or an individual.

Wi-Fi  Standards for Wireless Fidelity and refers to the 802.11 family of wireless networking standards.

Wide Area Network (WAN)  Telecommunications network that spans a large geographical distance. May consist of a variety of cable, satellite, and microwave technologies.

Wiki  Collaborative Web site where visitors can add, delete, or modify content, including the work of previous authors.

WiMax  Popular term for IEEE Standard 802.16 for wireless networking over a range of up to 31 miles with a data transfer rate of up to 75 Mbps. Stands for Worldwide Interoperability for Microwave Access.

Windows  Microsoft family of operating systems for both network servers and client computers. The most recent version is Windows Vista.

Windows 8  Most recent Microsoft Windows operating system, which runs on tablets as well as PCs, and includes multitouch capabilities.

Wintel PC  Any computer that uses Intel microprocessors (or compatible processors) and a Windows operating system.

wireless sensor networks (WSNs)  Networks of interconnected wireless devices with built-in processing, storage, and radio frequency sensors and antennas that are embedded into the physical environment to provide measurements of many points over large spaces.

Wisdom  The collective and individual experience of applying knowledge to the solution of problems.

Wisdom of crowds  The belief that large numbers of people can make better decisions about a wide range of topics or products than a single person or even a small committee of experts (first proposed in a book by James Surowiecki).

World Wide Web  A system with universally accepted standards for storing, retrieving, formatting, and displaying information in a networked environment.

Worms  Independent software programs that propagate themselves to disrupt the operation of computer networks or destroy data and other programs.
Index

Name Index

A
Afshar, Vala, 423
Agarwal, Anant, 74
Atick, Joseph J., 451

B
Béchet, Marc, 601, 602
Benthien, Thomas, 602
Blake, Frank, 36
Blank, Arthur, 35, 36
Brin, Sergey, 279, 297
Brown, Chris, 415
Bryant, Beverley, 548
Bryant, Diane, 210
Brynjolfsson, Erik, 154
Burwell, Sylvia Mathews, 571

C
Caldwell, James, 542
Carey, Matt, 37
Carlson, Gina, 502
Caroline, Ari, 461
Chao, Henry, 570, 571
Chin, Elizabeth, 460
Clarkson, Andrew, 243, 244
Clinton, Hillary, 342
Cohen, Steven, 126
Columbus, Christopher, 8
Cox, Michael, 496
Cubbage, Steve, 496

D
D’Ambrosio, Lou, 250
Dean, Jeff, 449
DeRhodes, Bob, 36
Dunn, Brian, 497
Dyche, Jill, 424
Dymond, Duncan, 547

E
Eckman, Paul, 451-452
Ellison, Larry, 65, 483-484

F
Fayol, Henri, 471
Filo, David, 279
Flowers, Michael, 480
Ford, Henry, 57
Friedman, Thomas, 11

G
Gates, Bill, 57
Ginsberg, Allen, 73
Gonzales, Albert, 314
Gosling, James, 195

H
Holifield, Mark, 37
Horan, Jeanette, 210
Howes, Rick, 256
I
Iannone, Jamie, 117
J
Jacob, Beth, 316
Jennings, Ken, 459
John, Steve, 57
K
Kant, Immanuel, 134
Kantar Retail, 316
Keep, Bill, 530
Kim Jong-un, 343
Koonin, Steven E., 480
Kris, Mark, 460
Kumar, Pradeep, 424
L
Laping, Chris, 65
Lebwohl, Andrew, 422
Lezon, Joe, 531
M
Marcus, Bernie, 35, 36
McAfee, Andrew P., 154
McClendon, Sean, 9
Merkel, Angela, 132
Metcalfe, Robert, 178
Milnes, Chris, 440
Mintzberg, Henry, 471
Moen, Al, 501
Monash, Curt, 461
Mullen, Mike, 342
N
Nardelli, Robert, 36, 37
Ng, Andrew Y., 449
O
Obama, Barack, 133, 341, 569
Olson, Cliff, 181
Olson, Sara, 495, 496
Orwell, George, 150
Osborne, Kelly, 422
O’Sullivan, Niall, 377
Oxley, Michael, 318
P
Page, Larry, 279, 287
Panettiere, Hayden, 422
Parikh, Selene, 186
Park, Todd, 569, 570
Pelletier, Chris, 510
Perelman, Les, 73, 74, 75
Pitstick, Steve, 486
Polman, Paul, 601
Porter, Michael, 94, 102
R
Rockefeller, Jay D., 138
Roman, Eugene, 210
Rutter, Brad, 459
S
Sandel, Michael, 74
Sarhanes, Paul, 319
Schlough, Bill, 4
Shermis, Mark, 73, 74
Sibelius, Kathleen, 571
Snowden, Edward, 132-133
Soards, Susan, 531
Solorway, Robert, 154
Spidull, James, 484
Steinhafel, Gregg, 316
Steward, Donnie, 348
Sullivan, Jim, 251
T
Tavenner, Marilyn, 570
Tom, Kip, 496
Torvalds, Linus, 194
V
Vonn, Lindsey, 50
W
Wallace, Sanford, 154
Watson, Thomas J., 459
Wheeler, Tom, 271
Wilkinson, Todd, 510
Y
Yang, Jerry, 279
Z
Zients, Jeffrey, 571
Zuckerberg, Mark, 161, 298

Organizations Index

A
Accenture, 377, 571
ACH Food Companies, 347-348, 349, 370
Actian, 472
Adobe, 342
Advanced Micro Design (AMD), 11
Airbnb, 372
Airborne Express, 23
AirWatch, 10
Ajax Boiler, 275
AKM Semiconductor, 577
Alcatel-Lucent, 164, 416
Alcoa, 352
Alex and Ani, 530-531
Allegiant Travel, 101
Amazon Merchant Platform, 397
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C</th>
<th>Cable News Network, 580</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cablevision, 258, 274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caesars Entertainment, 237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>California Pizza Kitchen, 486</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Canadian Tire, 210-211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Capital One, 341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Catapult Sports, 187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caterpillar Corp., 408, 584</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Celaara, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cemex, 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CenterPoint Properites, 276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CGI Federal, 570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CGI Group, 569, 570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Champion Technologies, 324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Charles Schwab, 238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Check Point Technology, 336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chelepech Mine, 255-256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cherokee Casino Resort, 541-542</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chevron, 342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ChoicePoint, 129-130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chrysler Corp., 90, 100, 575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CIRA. See U.S. Central Intelligence Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cisco Systems, 12, 23, 90, 184, 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Citibank, 15, 87, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Citigroup, 341, 584</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clear Process Solutions, 502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ClickSoftware, 357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Coca-Cola, 342, 436-437, 580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Colgate-Palmolive Co., 437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Colloquy, 251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Comcast, 124, 142, 258, 270, 271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Comdisco Disaster Recovery Services, 324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Computer Security Institute, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CompScore, 65, 407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Con-Way transportation, 445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consumer Reports, 161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Continental Airlines, 414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Countrywide Financial Corp., 107, 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Coursera, 75, 437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crown Plaza Hotels &amp; Resorts, 530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CVC Solutions, LLC, 437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CYBERCOM. See U.S. Cyber Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>DARPA. See U.S. Department of Defense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced Research Projects Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dassault Systèmes, 428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Datcard Group, 510-511</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DEC (Digital Equipment Corp.), 88, 173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decisive Analytics, 335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Deere &amp; Co., 496</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dell Inc., 90, 181, 184, 194, 209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delta Airlines, 101, 414, 437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Demand Foresight, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Development Seed, 570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dialog Semiconductor, 577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dictionary.com, 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Digicert, 437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Doosy.com, 271, 396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dollar General Corp., 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dollar Rent A Car, 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Doostang, 397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dow Chemical Co., 342, 496</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DraftFCB, 424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dropbox, 210, 395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drugstore.com, 386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Duke Medical Center, 186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Duke University, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dundee Precious Metals (DPM), 255-256, 280-291</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>E</th>
<th>E*Trade, 13, 395, 399</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EastLink, 266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Easton-Bell Sports, 315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eBay, 12, 37, 97, 103, 108, 111, 313, 314, 384, 395, 397, 399, 595</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Educational Testing Service (ETS), 73, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EdX, 73, 74, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eHarmony, 398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Electronic Privacy Information Center (EPIC), 161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Elemica, 395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EMC Corp. (Documentum), 183, 435-436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Endo Health Solutions, 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enron, 318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enterasys Networks, 423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Entitle, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Epinions, 399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ePolicy Institute, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Epelon, 314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exostar, 395, 411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Expedia, 384, 396, 414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Experian PLC, 569</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Famous Footwear, 230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fatio Mechanical Services, 315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Federal Communications Commission (FCC), 270-271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FedEx, 6, 23, 45, 105, 111, 288, 416, 478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fiat Group Automobiles S.p.A., 573-576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fidelity Financial Services, 396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fidelity National Information Services, 482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fifth Third Bank, 341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Finncontainers, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First Citizens Bank, 485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flickr, 283, 399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fluid Retail, 460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ford Motor Company, 57, 89, 102, 427, 439, 441-442, 584</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Forrester Consulting, 209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Foursquare, 413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Foxconn, 576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FP International, Inc., 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Frito Lay, 580</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G</th>
<th>Galileo Group, 126</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Games.com, 395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gap.com, 302, 398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gartner Inc., 60, 181, 209, 241, 275, 475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GCHQ (British intelligence), 132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GE Aviation, 441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Genealogy.com, 398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>General Electric (GE), 61, 88, 437, 452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>General Mills, 302, 423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>General Motors Corp. (GM), 88, 89, 126, 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Georgetown University, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GettyImages.com, 395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GlaxoSmithKline, 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Globe and Mail, 215-216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GoDaddy.com, 412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Goddard Space Flight Center, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company/Institution</td>
<td>Page Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iranian Oil Ministry</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iowa Electronic Markets (IEM)</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Internet Architecture Board (IAB)</td>
<td>269, 293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Data Corp.</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Data Center</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InterContinental Hotels Group (IHG)</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intel Corp.</td>
<td>11, 61, 88, 109, 117, 183, 185, 189, 190, 191, 195, 199, 232, 240, 276, 286, 289, 316, 342, 384, 385, 393, 395, 398, 406, 413, 416, 449, 450, 474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Google</td>
<td>6, 61, 62, 286, 288, 382, 397, 406, 413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grabble, 116</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graybar, 368-369</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Britain National Health Service</td>
<td>547-548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green Mountain Coffee</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grokster</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Guardian (newspaper)</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUESS</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harper Collins</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harra's</td>
<td>541-542</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harrah's Entertainment</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harrah's</td>
<td>541-542</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harper Collins</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harrah's, 541-542</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heartland Payment Systems</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heinz</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hewlett Foundation</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hewlett Packard (HP)</td>
<td>88, 145, 180, 181, 182, 184, 232, 286, 378, 485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hilton Hotels</td>
<td>190, 416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hitachi</td>
<td>455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hitachi Business Microscope (HBM)</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holiday Inns</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Depot</td>
<td>35-38, 250, 357, 416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Goods</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hon Hai Group</td>
<td>578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honda</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hotels.com</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HP Enterprise Security</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSRC</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hulu.com</td>
<td>147, 270, 398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hunch.com</td>
<td>482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyatt</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM Technologies</td>
<td>370, 453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM</td>
<td>6, 8, 61, 68, 109, 171, 173, 175, 180, 181, 182, 184, 188, 190, 191, 194, 196, 199, 208, 210, 232, 240, 276, 286, 352, 428, 434, 436, 448, 450, 459-461, 475, 482, 485, 490, 508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBM Global Services</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infor Global Solutions</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Informatica</td>
<td>376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Builders</td>
<td>523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Week</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infosys</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inktomi</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instagram</td>
<td>286, 309, 423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intel Corp.</td>
<td>11, 61, 68, 109, 171, 173, 181, 194, 210, 416, 483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InterContinental Hotels Group (IHG)</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Data Center</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Data Company (IDC)</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Data Corp.</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internet Architecture Board (IAB)</td>
<td>269, 293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Numbers (ICANN)</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intravest</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iowa Electronic Markets (IEM)</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iranian Oil Ministry</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iVillage</td>
<td>108, 395, 397</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Advanced Planning and Optimization (APO) system (SAP), 348
advertising networks, 404-405
"blast and scatter" advertising, 405
display ads, 385
on Facebook, 161
geoadvertising, 413, 415
mobile advertising, 297, 413, 416
online advertising, 6-7, 413, 407
See also marketing, online marketing
advertising exchanges, 404
advertising networks, 404-405
advertising revenue model, 397-399
AdWords (Google), 297, 398
AeroScout MobileView (software), 255, 256
AES. See automated essay scoring (AES) software
affiliate revenue model, 399
Affiliate Web sites, 399
agency theory, 90, 112
agent-based modeling, 454
Aglé (Oracle), 510
agile development, 527, 533
government, 297, 485-497
AI. See artificial intelligence
AirBNB (online service), 192
airline industry, 101, 102
AirPrint technology, 9
Altair B800 (computer), 87, 173
Amazon Kindle, 45, 116, 147, 185
Amazon Kindle Fire, 415
Amazon Prime (shopping service), 116, 117
Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS), 226
Amazon SimpleDB, 224
Amazon Web Services, 191, 224
ambient data, 320
America Online (AOL), 143, 395
American Standard Code for Information Interchange. See ASCII
America's Cup Race, case study, 459-460
analog signal, 263
applets, 195
application controls, 321
application development, 502-503
Application Express (Oracle), 403
Application layer, 262, 263
application proxy filtering, 329
application servers, 175
application software packages, 524, 532
application software services, IT infrastructure,
169
apps, 200, 205, 414, 528-529
APT1 (malware), 342
AR. See augmented reality
artificial intelligence (AI), 443, 455
ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange), 180
Asia, imports and exports, 11
associations (data analysis), 237
asynchronous collaboration, 64, 66
ATMs, 87, 304
Atom (Intel), 191
attorney. See attorney
auto industry, 390, 427, 505
automated essay scoring (AES) software, 73
automated high-speed decision making, 474
automated teller machines (ATMs), 15, 67, 149
automation
organizational change, 503, 504, 532
sales force automation (SFA), 363
automobiles, Java for, 195
avatars, 61
AWRE system, 186
AWX Cloud (Amazon), 191
...
CRM On Demand (Oracle), 511
CRM systems. See customer relationship management (CRM) systems
cross-selling, 365
crowdsourcing, 58, 408, 418
CryptoLocker (malware), 311
Crystal Reports (software), 227
CSO. See chief security officer
CTS. See carpal tunnel syndrome
culture
collaborative, 60
global, 578
organizational, 20, 84-85
of work and business, 57
Customer Analytics (SAP), 369
Customer intimacy, 14-15, 100
customers
competitive advantage and, 95-96
“wisdom of crowds”, 57, 407-408, 418
customization
in e-commerce, 388, 390
of software packages, 524
CVS. See computer vision syndrome
Cyber Corps (Iran), 341, 342
cyberbullying, 151
cybercrime. See computer abuse; computer crime
cyberlockers, 61, 62
cyberterrorism, 317
cybervandalism, 311, 312
cyberwarfare, 317
case study, 341-343

Dark Seoul (malware), 341
dashboards, 15, 52, 69, 477
Dassault 3-D Live, 428
Dassault ENOVIA PLM, 428
data, 16
ambient data, 320
“big data”, 7, 8, 230-231, 249-251, 292, 479
data administration, 240-242, 245
data governance, 240-241
data mining, 236-237, 245, 435, 443
data quality, 157, 241-242, 245
data scrubbing, 242
data security, 337
defined, 16, 17, 430
encryption, 330-332, 337
file organization, 218-221
multidimensional data model, 236
packet switching, 261-262
processing, 18
Snowden as traitor or privacy protector, 132-133
storage on secure medium, 320
text mining, 237-238, 245
See also data management,
data administration, 240-242, 245
data analysis, nonobvious relationship awareness (NORA), 130, 131
data analysis techniques, 129
data analytics, 6, 466
data breaches, 314, 336
data brokers, 402
data centers, 182
corporate, 19, 182, 193
green centers, 193
data cleaning, 242, 243
data communication, 258
data definition, 226
data dictionary, 226, 517
data-driven management, 53
data-driven marketing, 101-102
data encryption, 330-332, 337
data error, 150
data flow diagram (DFD), 516-517
data governance, 240-241
data inconsistency, 219
data leakage, cloud computing, 335
data management
about, 163
case study, 215-217
cloud-based, 226
database approach, 221-230
database management system (DBMS), 221-230, 244
importance of, 218
IT infrastructure, 171
non-relational DBMS, 224
relational DBMS, 222-224, 244
traditional file environment, 218-221, 244
data management technology, 21
data mart, 232
data mining, 236-237, 245, 435, 443
data quality, 157, 241-242, 245
data quality audit, 242
data redundancy, 219
data resources
information policy, 240-241, 245
managing, 240-242
data scrubbing, 242
Data Security and Breach Notification Act, 314
data security controls, 321
data storage, 128-129, 183
data theft, credit cards, 315-16
Data Use Policy, 144, 162
data visualization, 477
data warehouses, 215-216, 232, 250
data workers, 19
database administration, 241
Database Cloud Service (Oracle), 226
database management systems (DBMS), 221-230, 244
Database (Oracle), 223, 227
database server, 239
databases, 221-230
“big data”, 7, 8, 230, 249-251, 479
in the cloud, 224, 226
data mining, 236-237, 245, 435, 443
defined, 221
designing, 227-230, 245
entity-relationship diagram, 229-230
knowledge management and, 433
non-relational databases, 224, 226, 245
normalization, 228
Web and, 238-240, 245
Web-enabled databases, 238, 245
See also database management system (DBMS)
DB2 (IBM), 223
DBMS. See database management systems
DDoS attacks. See distributed denial-of-service (DDoS) attacks
debt cards, authentication of, 304
debugging, 336
decentralized systems, 565
decision making, 467-497
automated high-speed decision making, 474
business intelligence and analytics for, 476
as business objective, 15
business value of, 468
case study, 465-467
time systems, 352
geographic information systems, 484, 485
information quality and, 472, 473
management filters, 473
managerial roles, 468, 471-472
managers and, 469, 471-472
organizational politics and inertia, 472
process, 470-471, 491
semistructured knowledge for, 435
stages in, 470-471, 491
decision-support systems (DSS), 58-62, 69, 476,
487, 491
case study, 495-497
time dashboard, 15, 52, 69, 477
effective-support systems (ESS), 52, 69,
476, 489, 492
group decision-support systems (GDSS),
490-491, 492
pivot tables, 487, 488
voyage-estimating systems, 49-52
decisional roles, of management, 472
decisions
semi structured, 468, 476, 491
structured, 468, 491
types, 468-470, 491
unstructured, 468, 491
deep packet inspection (DPI), 332-333
“deep Web”, 278
DeepFace (Facebook), 451
Delivery Information Acquisition Device
(DIAD), 23, 24, 25
demand-driven supply chains, 359-360
demand planning, 356
denial-of-service (DoS) attacks, 312, 337
Descartes’ rule of change, 135
design, 470
DDF. See data flow diagram
digital asset management systems, 437
digital certificates, 331-332, 337
digital content delivery, 396
digital dashboard, 15, 52, 69, 477
digital data
growth of, 7, 183
retention of, 7
digital data. See data
digital divide, 155
digital firms, 12, 108-109
digital goods, 392-393, 418
digital logistic nervous system, 360
digital markets, 390-391, 392, 418
See also e-commerce
digital media
time impact of, 6
information technology (IT), 157
about, 21
behavioral impact of, 92
“bring your own device” (BYOD), 185, 187-188, 209-211
business ecosystems and, 309
business objectives and, 111
business processes, 45
capital investment statistics, 6
defined, 16
economic impacts of, 89-90
equal access to information and computing, 155
flattened organizations and, 90-91
information rights, 136-144
job loss due to technology, 154-155
liability law, 133, 149, 150
organizational change and, 84, 85, 92, 93, 503-505, 532
organizational impacts of, 90-92
postindustrial organizations, 91-92
potential for catastrophic failure, 150
quality of life, 127, 128, 150-156
return on investment, 27, 28
system performance, 150
system quality, 127, 128, 150
information technology (IT) education services, 171
information technology (IT) governance, 69, 201
information technology (IT) infrastructure, 22
cloud computing, 7, 8, 172, 176, 188-193
competitive forces model, 94-96, 108, 112, 203-204
components, 170, 180-185, 204
computer hardware platforms, 6-8, 22, 170, 180-181
computing platforms, 170
consulting and system integration services, 184-185
data management and storage, 183
decreasing communication costs and, 176, 177, 178-179
defined, 169-171
ecosystem, 181
terprise software applications, 183
green computing (green IT), 183, 205
hardware platform trends, 165-193
history and evolution of, 171-175
hybrid cloud computing model, 193
Internet platforms, 184
Law of Mass Digital Storage, 176, 204
as major investment, 201
management issues, 200-204, 205
Metcalfe’s law, 178, 204
mobile digital platform, 185
Moore’s law, 175, 204
network infrastructure, 250-259
networking/telecommunications platforms, 184
operating system platforms, 182-183, 194, 204-205
quantum computing, 204
rent vs. buy decision, 201
technology standards, 179, 180
telecommunications services, 169
total cost of ownership (TCO), 201-202, 554
virtualization, 188, 204
Web services, 190, 195-196, 205, 528, 533
information technology (IT) management services, 171
information technology (IT) research and development services, 171
information technology (IT) standards services, 171
information value chain, 25-26, 103-105, 113
informational roles, of management, 472
informed consent, 139, 143
infrastructure as a service (IaaS), 190
inheritance, 518, 519
innovation, 57, 59
input, 16-17
input controls, 321, 322
insider abuse, 153
Instagram (online service), 192
instant messaging (IM), 61, 272, 273, 307
intangible benefits, 553, 565
Intel 8086 processor, 181
Intel Atom, 191
Intel i7 quad-core processor, 169
Intellectual property rights, 127, 144-148, 157
organized, 150
information and communication technologies, 150
informational roles, of management, 472
informational roles, of management, 472
international information systems, 578-579
internationalization. See globalization;
international information systems
Internet
about, 21, 184, 266, 272, 293
addressing, 267, 278
architecture, 268, 269
behavioral targeting, 138, 141-142, 144, 402-405, 418
blocking and monitoring access in other countries, 593
case study, 297-299
client/server computing, 173-174, 261, 273
competitive advantage and, 100, 102-103
connection speed, 258
copyrighted information and, 147-148
cyberwarfare, 317
decreasing communication costs and, 176, 178
Domain Name System (DNS), 267-269, 271-272, 293
e-business, 55
e-commerce, 55, 383-424
e-government, 55-58
economic impacts of, 89-90
ethical issues in, 132-133, 135-136
history of, 88
HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol), 263, 278
hypercrap, 278
intelligent agent shopping bots, 283
inner agents, 433, 453-454, 456
intelligent techniques, 435, 442-456
artificial intelligence (AI), 443, 455
case-based reasoning, 446, 455
data mining, 236-237, 245, 435, 443
expert systems, 433, 435, 442, 443-446, 455
fuzzy logic, 435, 446-448, 455
gene algorithms, 435, 443, 450, 452-453, 455
intelligent agents, 435, 453-454, 456
machine learning, 448-449, 456
neural networks, 435, 443, 449-450, 455, 456
Interactive Care Reviewer (WellPoint), 459
interactive dashboards, 8
interactivity, in e-commerce, 389
interference, Wi-Fi, 289
internal integration tools, 560
internal rate of return (IRR), 555-556
international information systems, 577-583
accounting practices and, 582
business challenges to, 581-582
business drivers, 578
case studies, 394-595, 601-603
computing platforms, 591-592
connectivity, 592
core systems, 507-509
currency fluctuations and, 502
foreign franchises, 565, 598
global business strategies, 513-514
global value chains, 509
language barriers, 582
managing, 507-509
organizing, 583-585
particularism, 501
reorganizing for international scale, 583-586
software localization, 593, 595
state of the art, 582-583
systems architecture, 578, 579, 580, 591
vertical integration, 591-592
teleservice systems, 585
transborder data flow, 582
international information systems architecture, 578-579
international information systems
Internet
about, 21, 184, 266, 272, 293
addressing, 267, 278
architecture, 268, 269
behavioral targeting, 138, 141-142, 144, 402-405, 418
blocking and monitoring access in other countries, 593
client/server computing, 173-174, 261, 273
competitive advantage and, 100, 102-103
connection speed, 258
copyrighted information and, 147-148
cyberwarfare, 317
decreasing communication costs and, 176, 178
Domain Name System (DNS), 267-269, 271-272, 293
e-business, 55
e-commerce, 55, 383-424
e-government, 55-58
ethical issues in, 132-133, 135-136
future of, 272
global user statistics, 593
governance, 268-269, 271-272
hardware platforms, 184
history of, 88
HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol), 263, 278
hypercrap, 278
intelligent agent shopping bots, 283
as international communications system, 1
Internet service providers (ISPs), 147-148, 153, 270
Internet2, 272
IP addresses, 267
IPv6, 272
marketing and, 389, 401-402
monitoring employee Internet activity, 135
net neutrality, 270-271
organizations and, 92-93
privacy, 139-140, 142-144, 160-163
reel on, 395-396
search engines, 270-279
security vulnerabilities, 307
software platforms, 184
supply chains and, 361
URL (Uniform Resource Locator), 278
wikis, 284, 309, 455
wireless Internet access, 286-289
See also Web
Internet architecture, 268, 269
Internet connection speed, 258
Internet Crime Complaint Center (IC3), 152
Internet Explorer (Microsoft), 143, 195
Internet governance, 268-269, 271-272
Internet Information Services (Microsoft), 278
Internet layer, 262, 263
Internet music, 88, 95
Index

behavioral models, 471
classical model, 471
decision making by, 472
implementation of new project, 558-560, 580-581
information systems (IS) and, 21, 32 of international information systems, 587-589
IT infrastructure and, 200-204, 205
management capital, 28, 432
management information systems (MIS) about, 18, 30, 47-48, 69, 476, 486, 481 globalization and, 11
managerial complementary assets, 28
managers, 21, 81, 469, 471-472, 477
Mintzberg's role classifications, 472 violations of the law and, 125
Manager's Briefcase pp, 9
MANs (metropolitan area networks), 264, 265, 283
manufacturing, business processes, 44
MapInfo GIS software, 485
MapReduce (Google), 232
MapReduce (Hadoop), 232
market creators, 396-397
market entry costs, 389
market niches, 97, 99-100, 101-102
marketing
and CRM systems, 364-366
data-driven, 101-102
display ad marketing, 402-403, 405
e-commerce and, 385, 387, 389, 401-402
long tail marketing, 401
micromarketing, 580
online marketing, 385
predictive analytics, 478-479
social media and, 405-408
social media marketing, 422-424
"wisdom of crowds", 57, 407-408, 418
marketspace, 387
mashups, 199-200, 205
mass customization, 97
massive open online courses. See MOOCs
Match Insights (SA), 465, 466
material inventory tracking system software, 249
Maxx Flash (website), 80
medical applications
neural networks, 450
Watson computer, 460-461
medical records
HIPAA legislation, 138, 319, 337
security, 319-320
Melissa (malware), 310
membership functions, 447
menu costs, 391
 messaging. See instant messaging, text messaging
Metcalf's law, 178, 284
metropolitan area networks. See MANs
microblogging, 263
micromarketing, 580
micropayment systems, 398
microprocessor chips, 68, 181
microprocessors, 175-176, 182
high-performance processors, 193
Moore's law, 175, 176, 204
multicore processors, 193, 204
power-saving processors, 193
Microsoft, 191
Microsoft Access, 215, 222, 226-227
Microsoft Advertising, 139
Microsoft Bing, 279, 280, 395
Microsoft Dynamics CRM, 363
Microsoft Dynamics suite, 371
Microsoft Excel, 215, 243, 487, 576
Microsoft Internet Explorer, 195
Microsoft Internet Explorer 10, 143
Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS), 278
Microsoft Lync, 62
Microsoft .NET family, 184, 196
Microsoft .NET platform, 196
Microsoft Office, 62, 179, 453
Microsoft OneDrive, 62
Microsoft Outlook, 310
Microsoft SharePoint, 61, 475
Microsoft SQL Azure Database, 226
Microsoft SQL Server, 223, 226, 475
Microsoft Visual Studio, 184
Microsoft Windows operating system, 109, 174, 182
Microsoft Windows Server, 182, 184, 258, 265
Microsoft Xbox, 398
Microsoft Yammer, 42-43, 61, 63, 64, 66
middle management, 19, 469, 486, 491
Mimo (device), 440
MIMO (multiple input multiple output), 289
minicomputers, 173
See also computers
Mintzberg's role classifications, 87, 472
MIPS (millions of instructions per second), 176
MIS. See management information systems
MIS audit, 325
MITS Altair 8800 (computer), 173
minicomputers, 173
mobile commerce. See m-commerce
mobile computing, 175
mobile device management, virtualization for, 188
Mobile Device Management (app), 10
mobile digital platforms, 6-8, 182, 183, 205
apps, 200, 205, 228-229
corporate uses of, 9-10
Linux for, 194
security, 334
mobile e-commerce, 385
mobile handheld devices, 9-10, 37, 182, 297
accessing corporate systems, 334
BYOD, 209
computers, 249
ethical issues with, 129
m-commerce, 394, 412-416, 419
mobile and, 309
search, 279-280
security for, 334
security vulnerabilities, 307, 309
mobile search, 279-280
Mobile Steals (Orbitz), 414
Mobile Steals (Orbitz), 414
mobile Web app, 528
mobile Web site, 528
MobileView (AeroScout), 255, 256
Mobistealth (software), 275
modeling
object-oriented development, 518-519, 532
structured methodologies, 515-518, 532
modem, 263-264
Mongodb (software), 224
monitoring
employee Internet activity, 276
of Internet access in other countries, 593
Monsanto FieldScripts, 495-496
MOOCs (massively open online courses), 73-75, 437
Moore's law, 175, 204
motion picture industry, piracy in, 147
Mozilla Firefox, 194, 185
MP3 music files, piracy, 147
MSSPs. See managed security service providers
multi-stakeholder community, 271
multicore processors, 193, 205
multidimensional data model, 236
multidivisional firms, 88
multinational business organization, 583, 584, 586, 588
multinational information systems. See international information systems
multiple input multiple output. See MIMO
multitiered client/server architecture, 174
multitouch interface, 163
music files, piracy, 147
music industry, 14
mydlinkLite (app), 9
MyDoom.A (malware), 310
MyMobileHub (cloud service), 210
MySimon.com, 283
MySpace, 407
MySQL (software), 183, 223, 226
N
N-tier client/server architecture, 174
NAI. See Network Advertising Initiative
NameTag (app), 451
nanotechnology, 176, 177
NAT. See Network Address Translation
National Information Infrastructure Protection Act (1996), 314
national security, 151
native app, 526
natural language processing, 459
.NET family (Microsoft), 184, 196
net marketplaces, 411, 419
net neutrality, 270-271
.NET platform (Microsoft), 196
Net Spy (software), 275
netbooks, 185
Netezza (IBM), 234
Netfix, 147, 270, 381, 383
Netherlands, 317
NetWare (Novell), 174
NetWeaver BW data warehouse (SA), 216
NetWeaver Process Integration (SA), 537
Network Address Translation (NAT), 329
Network Advertising Initiative (NAI), 143
network-based strategies, 107-110
network economics, 107-108, 178
network infrastructure, 250-259
network interface controller (NIC), 308
Network Interface layer, 262, 263
network notification, with social commerce, 407
network operating system (NOS), 258
network service providers, 268
networks and networking
about, 22, 258-260, 585
bandwidth, 265
Bluetooth networks, 287-288, 293, 307
CANS (campus area networks), 264
client/server computing, 173, 260
components of simple computer network, 258
controlling network traffic, 332-333
digital networking, 260-263
digital vs. analog signals, 263
Index  I 15

online advertising, 6-7, 143, 407
online analytical processing (OLAP), 236-237, 245, 366
online collaboration, 7, 11
online marketing, 365, 387, 399, 401-402
online music, 147
online payment systems, in Russia, 594
Online Privacy Alliance, 143
online tracking, 139, 140, 141-142, 144, 402-405
online transaction processing, 332
opVoo (software), 61
Open Enterprise Server (Novell), 258
Open for Business (OFBiz) (Apache), 371
Open Handset Alliance, 297
‘Open Internet’ rules, 271
open source software, 194, 205, 371
Openbravo (open source software), 371
OpenOffice (Apache), 194
OpenSSL, 318
OpenText Content Suite Platform, 436
operating systems, 182-183
operational customer relationship management, 366
operational excellence, as business objective, 15
operational intelligence, 481-482
operational management, 19, 468, 469, 491
operations research, 29, 30
opt-in policy, 136, 143
opt-out model, 556
Oracle Agile, 510
Oracle Application Express, 483
Oracle CRM On Demand, 511
Oracle Database, 223, 227, 483
Oracle Database Cloud Service, 226
Oracle E-Business Suite, 371, 510, 511
Oracle Exadata, 234
Oracle Hyperion Financial Management, 576
Oracle Identity Manager, 569
Oracle JD Edwards EnterpriseOne Tools, 542
Oracle JD Edwards ERP system, 541
Oracle NoSQL Database, 226
Oracle PeopleSoft, 511
Oracle Product Lifecycle Management applications, 510
Oracle-Sun Java, 104
Oracle Team USA, 483-484
order fulfillment, 44-45, 53-54
organizational capital, 28, 432
organizational change
automation, 503, 504, 532
business process redesign, 505-509, 532
business process reengineering, 559-560
case study, 547-548
paradigm shift, 503, 505, 532
rationale of procedures, 503, 504, 505
reengineering, 505
resistance to, 84, 85, 92, 93, 561, 563
risks and rewards, 504
systems development and, 503-505, 532
organizational complementary assets, 28
organizational culture, 20, 84-85
organizational environments, 86-87
organizational impact analysis, 564
organizational intelligence, 446
organizational learning, 431
organizational politics, 84
organizational structure, 20, 87-89
changing nature of, 57
flattened organizations, 90-91
P2P architecture. See peer-to-peer (P2P) architecture
PaaS. See platform as a service
package tracking systems, 23
packet filtering, 326
packet switching, 261-262
PageRank algorithm, 68, 279
Pandora, 147, 275, 398, 399-401
Pandora One, 400
PANs (personal area networks), 287, 283
paradigm shift, 503, 505, 532
parallel strategy, systems development, 514
parameterized reports, 477
particularism, 501
partner relationship management (PRM), 362, 363
passive RFID tags, 290
passwords, 326, 337
patch management, 318
patches, 318
Patient Administration Systems (PAS), 547
patient information. See medical records
Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, 569
payback method, 555
“payload”, malware, 308-309
payroll processing, transaction processing system for, 46-47
PDP-11 (computer), 173
peer-to-peer (P2P) architecture, 265, 307
Pega BPM workflow software, 506
Penguin (Google), 281
people, inter-connectedness of, 406
PeopleSoft (Oracle), 511
personal area networks. See PANs
personal computers. See computers
relations (database), 222
rent vs. buy decision, 201
repetitive stress injury (RSI), 155, 156
reporting, 227
Request for Proposals (RFPs), 524
resistance, to organizational change, 84, 85, 92, 93, 561, 563
responsibility, 131
responsible Web design, 529
return on investment (ROI), 555
revenue models, e-commerce, 397-399
RFID reader, 290
RFID wristbands, 187
RFPs. See Request for Proposals
rich media, 402
richness, in e-commerce, 389
Rift (smart glasses), 186
“right to be forgotten”, 139
RightMedia (Yahoo), 403
Right to Be Foregiven, 139
RISC. See reduced instruction set computing
risk, health risks of computers, 155-156
See also project risk
risk assessment, 322, 337
ROI. See return on investment
root domain, 267, 268
routers, 258, 259
routes, 84, 85, 112
row (database), 223
RSI. See repetitive stress injury
RSS, 284
Ruby (software), 195
rules, expert systems, 443, 444, 446
“runaway” projects, 543
Russia
cyberwarfare and, 317
e-commerce in, 594-595
Internet service and infrastructure, 593
S
S-HTTP. See Secure Hypertext Transfer Protocol
SaaS. See software as a service
Safe Harbor, 139
sales and marketing, business processes, 44
sales force automation (SFA), 363
sales revenue model, 398
Salesforce Chatter, 61, 63
Samsung Galaxy, 146
Samsung Galaxy 10.1, 146
SANs (storage area networks), 183
SAP Advanced Planning & Optimization (APO), 602
SAP Advanced Planning and Optimization (APO) system, 348
SAP Business Objects, 372
SAP Business Objects Web Intelligence tools, 243-244
SAP Business Suite, 371, 602, 603
SAP BusinessObjects Dashboards, 369
SAP BusinessObjects Explorer, 233
SAP Cash Forecasting, 602
SAP CO-PA Accelerator, 602
SAP CRM software, 536, 537
SAP Customer Analytics, 369
SAP Customer Value Intelligence, 369
SAP Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) system, 347-348, 501
SAP ERP Financials, 602
SAP HANA ONE, 216
SAP High Performance Analytics Appliance (HANA), 233, 234, 369, 465, 602
SAP Manufacturing, 348
SAP Mash Insights, 465, 466
SAP NetWeaver BW data warehouse, 216
SAP NetWeaver Process Integration, 537
SAP Project Cost Planning (CO-PC-PCCP), 602
SAP Product Lifecycle Management, 348
SAP Recipe Management, 348
SAP Trade Promotion Management, 602
SAP Workforce Scheduling & Optimization, 537
Sarbanes-Oxley Act (2002), 15, 319-320, 337
Sasser.ftpd (malware), 310
Saudi Arabia, monitoring and blocking of Internet access, 593
scalability, 201
SCM systems. See supply chain management (SCM) systems
scope (of project), 246
scorecards, 477, 486, 488-489
scoring models, 552-553, 554
SDN. See software-defined networking
search algorithms, 281
search engines, 278-279
semantic search, 282-283
social search, 282
search algorithms, 281
search costs, 389
search engine marketing, 280-281, 404
Search engine optimization (SEO), 281
search engines, 278-279
second-level domain, 267, 268
Second Life (online game), 61, 132
“second movers”, 87
Secure Hypertext Transfer Protocol (S-HTTP), 330
Secure Sockets Layer (SSL), 330, 333
security, 305-343
Android mobile devices, 335
antivirus and antispyware software, 329, 337
auditing, 325, 326
authentication, 326, 327
botnets, 153, 154, 312, 316
“bring your own device” (BYOD), 187-188, 335-336
business continuity planning, 324-325
business value of, 319-320
case history, 303-304
chief security officer (CSO), 67-68
cloud computing, 333-334, 335, 337
computer abuse, 153
counterterrorism and cyberwarfare, 317, 341-343
data breaches, 314, 336
defined, 306
digital certificates, 331-332, 337
disaster recovery planning, 324
electronic evidence, 320
electronic records management, 319-320, 337
encryption, 330-334, 337
firewalls, 328-329, 337
hackers, 307-308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 314, 319, 337
homeland security, 130-131
identity management, 325-326
internal threats from employees, 317
intrusion detection systems, 329, 337
malicious software (malware), 142-144, 153, 308-311, 314, 318-319
medical records, 319-320
mobile platforms, 334
outsourcing, 333
passwords, 326, 337
protecting information resources, 325-328
public key infrastructure (PKI), 331, 332
risk assessment, 322
security policy, 323, 324, 337
smartphones, 334
spyware, 142-144, 311
system vulnerability, 306-308
unified threat management (UTM), 329-330
war driving, 300
Wi-Fi, 269
wireless networks, 330
See also computer crime
security audits, 325
security policy, 323-324, 337
select operation, 224, 225
sentiment analysis, 282-283
Semantic Web, 285
semistructured decisions, 468, 497, 491
senior managers, 19, 57, 60
decision-making by, 469, 489-490
sentiment analysis, 467
sentiment analysis software, 236
SEO. See search engine optimization
sequences (data analysis), 237
sequential supply chains, 360
Server (Microsoft), 182, 184
server virtualization, 188
servers, 173, 182, 184, 258
Linux for, 194
virtualization, 188
Web servers, 174, 184, 278
service industries, 12
service jobs, offshoring, 11
service level agreement (SLA), 195
service-oriented architecture (SOA), 196, 371, 373
service-oriented computing, 528
“service platform” perspective, 171
service providers, 397
service set identifiers. See SSIDs
service workers, 19
services, 82
SFA. See sales force automation
Shamoon (virus), 341
SharePoint Services (Microsoft), 61, 62-63, 475
SharePoint (Microsoft), 8
sharing economy, 397
Shopkick (mobile app), 416
shopping bots, 283
SIIA. See Software and Information Industry Association
Silverlight (plug-in), 195
Simple Storage Service (S3), 190
SimpleDB (Amazon), 224
Singapore, monitoring and blocking of Internet access, 593
Siri (Apple), 210, 280, 453
six sigma, 503, 532
Skype, 274
Skype (software), 61
SLA. See service level agreement
slippery-slope rule, 135
small world theory, 406
systems design, 512, 516, 532
systems architecture, international information systems analysts, 67
systems analysis, 509, 511-512, 516, 532
system testing, 514
system quality, 127, 128, 150
system performance, software bugs and, 150
system integration services, 184-185
Syrian Electronic Army (hackers), 311
synergies, 107, 113
synchronous collaboration, 64, 66
Symantec Social Media Protection Flash Poll, 275
switching costs, 100
survival, as business objective, 15-16
support activities, business value chain model, 104
supply chain management (SCM) systems, 578, 579, 590, 591
supply chain management, 24, 290, 291
supply chain execution systems, 358-359
supply chain operators, 173
T
T1 lines, 267, 293
T3 lines, 267
tables (database), 222
telecommunications platforms, 184
telecommunications services, information technology infrastructure, 169, 184
telecommunications technology, 167-168
Teambox (cloud storage), 335
teams, 56
teamwork, 56
technology
disruptive technologies, 87-88
ethical issues in, 127-155, 157
job loss due to, 154-155
technology standards, 179
Technostress, 156
telecommunications platforms, 184
telecommunications services, information technology infrastructure, 169, 184
telecommunications technology, 167-168
about, 21, 257, 293
international information systems, 585
RFID, 255-256, 290-291, 293
VoIP, 307
See also networks and networking
telecommuting, 151
telephone standards, 267
telephone systems
ethical issues in, 132-133, 135
liability law, 149
telepresence technology, 8, 61
television industry, piracy in, 123-124, 147
telework, 8
Telnet, 273
terrorism, Snowden case, 132-133
test plan, 514
testing, 513-514, 516
text messaging, 61
text mining, 237-238, 245
Theft
digital media piracy, 146-147
hard, 153
See also piracy
third-party cookies, 140
third-party plug-in applications, 195
Third World, 500
3-D Live (Dassault), 428
3-D printing, 439, 440-441
3G networks, 287, 293
time shifting, 12
time/space matrix, 64
tokens, 247, 337
top-level domain, 267
total cost of ownership (TCO), 201-202, 205, 554
total quality management (TQM), 503, 532
touch point, 362
touch technology, 183
Toxic Substances Control Act (1976), 15
TPS. See transaction processing systems
TQM. See total quality management
trackbacks, 283
tracking, 137-138, 140, 144, 402-403, 405
‘tradable service’ jobs, 11
Trade Promotion Management (SAP), 602
trade secrets, 145
traditional file environment, 218-221, 244
transaction brokers, 396
transaction costs, 89, 367
transaction fee revenue model, 399
transaction processing systems (TPS), 46-47, 486
transborder data flow, 512
Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. See TCP/IP
transnational information systems. See international information systems
transnational strategy, 583, 584, 586, 598
transnational systems units, 586
Transport layer, 262, 263
transportation management, 359
travel industry, 100-102
Trojan horses, 309-310
TRUSTe, 143
Tumlbr, 6, 286, 397, 406, 423
tunneling, 277
tuples (database), 223
unstructured decisions, 127-155, 157
unified threat management (UTM), 329-330
Unilever Enterprise Data Warehouse (EDW), 602
unit testing, 513
United Kingdom, cyberwarfare and, 317
United States
cell phone standards, 287
imports and exports, 11
privacy as constitutional right, 136
spamming regulation, 154
universal standards, in e-commerce, 388-389
Unix, 179, 180, 182, 184
unstructured decisions, 468, 491
UPS Supply Chain Solutions, 359
URL (uniform resource locator), 278
U.S. Constitution
First Amendment, 136
Fourth Amendment, 133
U.S. Cost of a Data Breach Study (Ponemon Institute), 314
U.S. Department of Commerce, 271
U.S. Department of Defense (DARPA), 266, 269
U.S. International Trade Commission, 146
U.S. legislation
behavioral targeting, 138, 143
collection of personal information, 143
crime, 314
REVIEWERS AND CONSULTANTS

CONSULTANTS

AUSTRALIA
Robert MacGregor, University of Wollongong
Alan Underwood, Queensland University of Technology

CANADA
Wynne W. Chin, University of Calgary
Len Fertuck, University of Toronto
Robert C. Goldstein, University of British Columbia
Rebecca Grant, Wilfrid Laurier University
Anne B. Pidduck, University of Waterloo

Greece
Anastasios V. Katos, University of Macedonia

HONG KONG
Enoch Tse, Hong Kong Baptist University

INDIA
Sanjiv D. Vaidya, Indian Institute of Management, Calcutta

ISRAEL
Phillip Ein-Dor, Tel-Aviv University
Peretz Shoval, Ben Gurion University

MEXICO
Noe Urzua Bustamante, Universidad Tecnológica de México

NETHERLANDS
E.O. de Brock, University of Groningen
Theo Thjadens, University of Twente
Charles Van Der Mast, Delft University of Technology

PUERTO RICO
Commonwealth of the United States
Brunilda Marrero, University of Puerto Rico

SOUTH AFRICA
Daniel Botha, University of Stellenbosch

SWEDEN
Mats Daniels, Uppsala University

SWITZERLAND
Andrew C. Boynton, International Institute for Management Development
Walter Brenner, University of St. Gallen
Donald A. Marchand, International Institute for Management Development

UNITED KINGDOM

ENGLAND
G.R. Hidderley, University of Central England, Birmingham
Christopher Kimble, University of York
Jonathan Liebenau, London School of Economics and Political Science
Kecheng Liu, Staffordshire University

SCOTLAND
William N. Dyer, Falkirk College of Technology

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

Tom Abraham, Kean University
Evans Adams, Fort Lewis College
Kamal Nayan Agarwal, Howard University
Roy Alvarez, Cornell University
Chandra S. Amaravadi, Western Illinois University
Beverly Amer, Northern Arizona University
John Anderson, Northeastern State University
Rahul C. Basole, Georgia Institute of Technology
Jon W. Beard, University of Richmond
Patrick Becka, Indiana University Southeast
Michel Benaroch, Syracuse University
Cynthia Bennett, University of Arkansas at Pine Bluff
Nancy Brome, Southern NH University
Kimberly Cass, University of Redlands
Jason Chen, Gonzaga University
Edward J. Cherian, George Washington University
P. C. Chu, Ohio State University, Columbus
Kungwen Chu, Purdue University, Calumet
Richard Clemens, West Virginia Wesleyan College
Lynn Collen, St. Cloud State University
Jakov Crnkovic, SUNY-Albany
John Dalphin, SUNY Potsdam
Marica Deeb, Waynesburg College
William DeLone, American University
Cindy Drexel, Western State College of Colorado
Warren W. Fisher, Stephen F. Austin State University
Sherry L. Fowler, North Carolina State University
William B. Fredenberger, Valdosta State University
Bob Fuller, Golden Gate University
Mark A. Fuller, Baylor University
Minnie Ghent, Florida Atlantic University
Amita Goyal, Virginia Commonwealth University
Bobby Granville, Florida A&M University
Richard Grenci, John Carroll University
Jeet Gupta, Ball State University
Vijay Gurbaxani, University of California, Irvine
Rassoule Hadidi, University of Illinois, Springfield
Jeff Harper, Indiana State University
William L. Harrison, Oregon State University
Joe Harrison, Union University
Dorest Harvey, University of Nebraska Omaha
Shohreh Hashemi, University of Houston—Downtown
Albert M. Hayashi, Loyola Marymount University
Anthony Hendrickson, Iowa State University
Michelle Hepner, University of Central Oklahoma
Rick Hicks, Florida Atlantic University
Marianne Hill, Furman University
Bart Hodge, Virginia Commonwealth University
Jack Hogue, University of North Carolina, Charlotte
Rui Huang, Binghamton University, SUNY
Duke Hutchings, Elon University
George Jacobson, California State University, Los Angeles
Carolyn Jacobson, Marymount University
Murray Jennex, University of Phoenix
Rob Kauffman, University of Minnesota
Timothy Kayworth, Baylor University
Robert W. Key, University of Phoenix
Stephen Klein, Ramapo College
Virginia Kleist, West Virginia State University
Cenk Kocas, Michigan State University
Brian Kovar, Kansas State University
Al Lederer, University of Kentucky
Ingyu Lee, Troy University
Robert Lee, Chapman University
Roger Letts, Fairleigh Dickinson University
Stanley Lewis, The University of Southern Mississippi
Teresita Leyell, Washburn University
Susan K. Lippert, George Washington University
Jeffrey Livermore, Walsh College
Bruce Lo, University of Wisconsin-Eau Claire
Carl Longnecker, Loyola University
Treise Lynn, Wingate University
Jane Mackay, Texas Christian University
Efrem G. Mallach, University of Massachusetts, Lowell
Gary Margot, Ashland University
Kipp Martin, University of Chicago
Khris McAlister, University of Alabama, Birmingham
Sue McDaniel, Bellevue University
Ronald E. McGaughey, Arkansas Tech University
Roger McHaney, Kansas State University
Patricia McQuaid, California Polytechnic State Institute
Charles Menifield, University of Memphis
Lisa Miller, University of Central Oklahoma
Cindi Nadelman, New England College
Peter J. Natale, Regent University
Denise Nitterhouse, DePaul University
Michelle Parker, Indiana University—Purdue University Fort Wayne

Alan Graham Peace, West Virginia University
Leah R. Pietron, University of Nebraska
Jack Powell, University of South Dakota
Leonard Presby, William Patterson University
Sheizaif Rafaei, University of Michigan
Sasan Rahmatian, California State University, Fresno
Eliot Rich, University at Albany, SUNY
Leasa Richards-Mealy, Columbia College
James Riha, Northern Illinois University
Stephanie Robbins, University of North Carolina, Charlotte
Marcel Robelis, University of North Dakota
Ian Robinson, University of San Francisco
Alan Roper, Golden Gate University
Peter A. Rosen, University of Evansville
Paula Ruby, Arkansas State University
Naveed Saleem, University of Houston, Clear Lake
Joko W. Saputro, University of Wisconsin, Madison
David Scanlan, California State University, Sacramento
Donna M. Schaeffer, Marymount University
Werner Schenk, University of Rochester
Kala Chand Seal, Loyola Marymount University
Richard S. Segall, Arkansas State University
Ivan J. Singer, University of Hartford
Rod Sink, Northern Illinois University
Guy Smith, Embry-Riddle Aeronautical University
Kathy Stevens, Merrimack College
Troy Strader, Drake University
Dennis Strouble, Bowling Green State University
Michael JD Sutton, Kent State University
Glodys Swindler, Fort Hays State University
Bernadette Szajna, Texas Christian University
John Tarjan, California State University, Bakersfield
Pam Taylor, University of Tennessee at Chattanooga
Claire Theriault-Perkins, University of Maine at Augusta
Jennifer Thomas, Pace University
Jon C. Tomlinson, University of Northwestern Ohio
Kranti Toraskar, Penn State University
Goran Trajkovski, Towson University
Duane Truex, Georgia State University
B.S. Vijayaraman, University of Akron
Patrick J. Walsh, State University of New York, Binghamton
Diane Walz, University of Texas, San Antonio
Frederick Wheeler, University of Maryland, University College
Lanny Wilke, Montana State University-Northern
Karen L. Williams, University of Texas at San Antonio
Jennifer Williams, University of Southern Indiana
Paul Witman, California Lutheran University
Erma Wood, University of Arkansas, Little Rock
Kathie Wright, Purdue University
Marie A. Wright, Western Connecticut State University
James H. Yu, Santa Clara University
Fan Zhao, Florida Gulf Coast University
INTEGRATING BUSINESS WITH TECHNOLOGY

By completing the projects in this text, students will be able to demonstrate business knowledge, application software proficiency, and Internet skills. These projects can be used by instructors as learning assessment tools and by students as demonstrations of business, software, and problem-solving skills to future employers. Here are some of the skills and competencies students using this text will be able to demonstrate:

**Business Application skills:** Use of both business and software skills in real-world business applications. Demonstrates both business knowledge and proficiency in spreadsheet, database, and Web page/blog creation tools.

**Internet skills:** Ability to use Internet tools to access information, conduct research, or perform online calculations and analysis.

**Analytical, writing and presentation skills:** Ability to research a specific topic, analyze a problem, think creatively, suggest a solution, and prepare a clear written or oral presentation of the solution, working either individually or with others in a group.

### Business Application Skills

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BUSINESS SKILLS</th>
<th>SOFTWARE SKILLS</th>
<th>CHAPTER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Finance and Accounting</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financial statement analysis</td>
<td>Spreadsheet charts</td>
<td>Chapter 2*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spreadsheet formulas</td>
<td>Chapter 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spreadsheet downloading and formatting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pricing hardware and software</td>
<td>Spreadsheet formulas</td>
<td>Chapter 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology rent vs. buy decision</td>
<td>Spreadsheet formulas</td>
<td>Chapter 5*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Cost of Ownership (TCO) analysis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analyzing telecommunications services and costs</td>
<td>Spreadsheet formulas</td>
<td>Chapter 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk assessment</td>
<td>Spreadsheet charts and formulas</td>
<td>Chapter 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retirement planning</td>
<td>Spreadsheet formulas and logical functions</td>
<td>Chapter 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capital budgeting</td>
<td>Spreadsheet formulas</td>
<td>Chapter 14*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Human Resources</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employee training and skills tracking</td>
<td>Database design</td>
<td>Chapter 13*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Database querying and reporting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job posting database and Web page</td>
<td>Database design</td>
<td>Chapter 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Web page design and creation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Manufacturing and Production</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analyzing supplier performance and pricing</td>
<td>Spreadsheet date functions</td>
<td>Chapter 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Database functions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Data filtering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inventory management</td>
<td>Importing data into a database</td>
<td>Chapter 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Database querying and reporting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill of materials cost sensitivity analysis</td>
<td>Spreadsheet data tables</td>
<td>Chapter 12*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spreadsheet formulas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sales and Marketing</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales trend analysis</td>
<td>Database querying and reporting</td>
<td>Chapter 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Internet Skills

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Using online software tools for job hunting and career development</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using online interactive mapping software to plan efficient transportation routes</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Researching product information and evaluating Web sites for auto sales</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analyzing Web browser privacy protection</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Researching travel costs using online travel sites</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Searching online databases for products and services</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Web search engines for business research</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Researching and evaluating business outsourcing services</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Researching and evaluating supply chain management services</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaluating e-commerce hosting services</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using shopping bots to compare product price, features, and availability</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using online software tools for retirement planning</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analyzing Web site design and information requirements</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Researching real estate prices</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Researching international markets and pricing</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Analytical, Writing and Presentation Skills*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Management analysis of a business</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value chain and competitive forces analysis</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business strategy formulation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formulating a corporate privacy policy</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employee productivity analysis</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disaster recovery planning</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locating and evaluating suppliers</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Developing an e-commerce strategy</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifying knowledge management opportunities</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifying international markets</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Dirt Bikes Running Case on MyMISLab